DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 070 332	48	FL 003 583

AUTHOR	Kovtun, Emil, Comp.; Micklesen, Lew R., Comp.
TITLE	Textbook for Beginning Czech.
INSTITUTION	Washington Univ., Seattle.
SPONS AGENCY	Office of Education (DHEW), Washington, D.C. Bureau of Research.
BUREAU NO	BR-9-7764
PUB DATE	31 Aug 72
CONTRACT	OEC-070-3331-823
NOTE	656p.; Prepublication version
EDRS PRICE	MF-$0.65 HC-$23.03
DESCRIPTORS	College Instruction; *Czech; Glossaries; *Grammar; *Instructional Materials; Language Instruction; Morphology (Languages); Phonetics; *Slavic Languages; Syntax; Teacher Developed Materials; *Textbooks; Traditional Grammar; Vocabulary Development

ABSTRACT

This textbook contains 20 lessons in basic Czech grammar, including phonetics, morphology, and selected aspects of syntax. Some 2,500 high frequency vocabulary items are integrated into the instructional materials. Each lesson begins with an introductory vocabulary list, followed by an exposition of grammatical points together with illustrative drills and exercises. Also contained in each lesson are a collection of sentences in dialogue format, a reading selection representing a recasting of the dialogue sentences, translation exercises from English into Czech, and suggestions for conversation in the classroom. An appendix contains lessons devoted to a presentation of the special morphological and lexical idiosyncrasies of colloquial Czech. Czech-English and English-Czech glossaries are included. (RL)

Title VI, NDEA, Sec. 602
Bureau # 9-7764

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

ED 070332

TEXTBOOK FOR BEGINNING CZECH
(Prepublication version)

Compiled by

Emil Kovtun and Lew R. Micklesen
Department of Slavic Languages and Literature
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington 98105

The compilation of this textbook was carried out under Contract No. OEC-070-3331-(823) instituted between the United States Office of Education and the University of Washington.

FILMED FROM BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Date: August 31, 1972

FL003583

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION I

LESSON I 1

- VERBS
  - Infinitive 5
  - Present Tense 6
  - Class I Verbs 6
  - The Verb "to have" 7
  - Negation 7
- NOUNS
  - Nominative singular 8
  - Accusative singular 9
  - Double Stems 10

LESSON II 14

- WORD ORDER 19
- VERBS
  - Class II Verbs 19
  - Present tense of *být* 19
- NOUNS
  - Nominative plural 20
  - Accusative plural 21

LESSON III 26

- VERBS
  - Class III Verbs 28
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS 29
- ADJECTIVES
  - Nominative singular 31
  - Accusative singular 31
  - Nominative plural 32
  - Accusative plural 32

LESSON IV 38

- NOUNS
  - Locative singular 43
  - Locative plural 44
- PRONOUNS
  - Locative case 45
- ADJECTIVES
  - Locative case 46
- VERBS
  - Class IV Verbs 47
  - Some irregular verbs 47
- PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES 49
- PRE[illegible]JECTIVE *rád* 50

LESSON V 56

- VERBS
  - Perfective and Imperfective 60
  - *budu* + Infinitive Construction 64
  - Class V Verbs 65

LESSON VI 73
- NOUNS
  - Dative Case 77
  - Dative singular 79
  - Dative plural 80
- PRONOUNS
  - Dative Case 81
- ADJECTIVES
  - Dative Case 81
- VERBS
  - Past tense 83
  - Perfect Participle plus být 84
  - Hierarchy of Enclitics 85
  - Use of Past Tense Forms 86

LESSON VII 98
- PRONOUNS
  - Demonstrative Pronouns 102
  - Use of Demonstrative Pronouns 102
  - Particularizing pronoun jeden 107
- VERBS
  - Class VI Verbs 109
  - Some irregular Class V Verbs 110

LESSON VIII 119
- NOUNS
  - Genitive singular 123
  - Genitive plural 124
- PRONOUNS
  - Genitive Case 126
- ADJECTIVES
  - Genitive Case 127
  - Usage of Genitive Case 127
- PRONOUNS
  - Possessive pronouns 130

LESSON IX 142
- VERBS
  - Determinate and Indeterminate 146
  - Uses of Indeterminate Verbs 146
  - Uses of Determinate Verbs 148
  - Class VII Verbs 151
- ADJECTIVES
  - Denominal Possessive Adjectives 153
  - The Determiner všechen 155

LESSON X 165
- NOUNS
  - Instrumental singular 167
  - Instrumental plural 168
- PRONOUNS
  - Instrumental Case 169
- ADJECTIVES
  - Instrumental Case 171
  - Usage of Instrumental Case 171
    - Instrumental with Adjectives 175
    - Instrumental with Prepositions 175
- VERBS
  - Class VIII Verbs 177
- NOUNS
  - Some Irregular Nouns 178

LESSON XI 187
NOUNS Vocative Case (Usage) 191
Vocative Case (Formation) 192
VERBS Class IX Verbs 193
Imperative (Formation) 194
Imperative (Usage) 197
Czech Equivalents of "Let/Have him..." 200
NOUNS Some Irregular Nouns 202

LESSON XII 210
NUMERALS Declension 212
Formation 214
Counting 217
Arithmetical Operations
Addition 217
Subtraction 218
Multiplication 218
Division 219
Fractions 219
Syntax in Noun Phrases 220
Numerals with Predicates 223
Ordinal Numerals 225
TIME EXPRESSIONS Time of Day 226
Days of the Week 228
Months 229
Dates 230
WEIGHTS AND MEASURES 232
NUMERALS Collective Numerals (Formation) 234
Collective Numerals (Usage) 235
Number Nouns 237

LESSON XIII 245
ADJECTIVES Short Adjectives 249
The Adjective sám 251
ADJECTIVAL ADVERBS 252
ADJECTIVES Formation of Comparatives 255
Equal and Unequal Comparison 257
The Superlative 259
ADVERBS Formation of Comparatives 260
Equal and Unequal Comparison 261
The Superlative 263
Czech Equivalents for "to like" and "to love" 264
NOUNS Mixed declensional patterns 267

LESSON XIV 276

VERBS
Reflexive Verbs 281
Underlying Transitive Verbs with Animate Direct Objects 282
Underlying Transitive Verbs with Inanimate Direct Objects 286
Underlying Intransitive Verbs with developing Direct Objects 289
Verbs with Indirect Objects 291
Reflexiva Tantum 293

PRONOUNS
Independent Reflexive Pronouns 294

LESSON XV 304

CONDITIONAL
Definition and Formation 308
Uses: The Conditional Proper 309
Real Conditions 309
Unreal Conditions: Present 310
Unreal Conditions: Past 311
Uses: Other Conditions 315
Uses: Expression of Goal 318
Uses: After negative Verbs 322

NOUNS
Declension of Borrowed Nouns 323

LESSON XVI 334

PARTICIPLES
Present Active (Formation) 338
Present Active (Use) 340
Past Active (Formation) 343
Past Active (Use) 344
Past Passive (Formation) 346
Past Passive (Use) 349

VERBAL NOUNS
Formation 351
Use 353

ADJECTIVE
Adjective of Purpose 355
Resultative Adjectives 356

LESSON XVII 364

IMPERSONAL SENTENCES 369

Verbal Predicates excluding *být* 369
(Nonreflexive Verbs) 369
(Reflexive Verbs) 370
Predicates containing *být* 374
Adjectives after *být* 374
Miscellaneous Parts of Speech after *být* 378
Infinitives after *být* 379
Interrogative-Relative Pronouns and Adverbs after *být* 379
Past Passive Participles after *být* 380

PRONOUNS
The Pronoun *to* 382
To as Emphatic Particle 383
Pronouns *on*/*ona*/*ono*/*oni* 384

LESSON XVIII 394

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS 398

- Forms from *ně-* and *-si* 398
- Forms from *-koli(v)* 399
- Negative Indefinite Forms 400
- Forms from *lec-/leda-* or *všeli-* 401
- Forms from *málo-* (*skoro ni-*) 401
- Forms from *jin-* 402
- Forms from *vš-/každ-* 403
- Pronouns from *kde-* 403
- Table 404

VERBS
- Iterative (Formation) 406
- Iterative (Usage) 407
- Distributive Verbs 409

PRONOUNS
- Pronouns *jenž* and *tentýž* 410
- Czech Equivalents of "whose" 411

LESSON XIX 421

VERBS
- Derived Imperfectives 434
- Prefixed Determinate-Indeterminate Verbs 426

LESSON XX 451

VERBS
- Prefixed Verbal Derivatives 452

APPENDIX COLLOQUIAL CZECH 478

CZECH-ENGLISH GLOSSARY 516

ENGLISH-CZECH GLOSSARY 577

INTRODUCTION

THE CZECH LANGUAGE

Czech is spoken by more than nine million people in Bohemia and Moravia, the two provinces which comprise the Czech Socialist Republic and which are located in the western part of Czechoslovakia. The eastern part of the federated Czechoslovak state is occupied by the Slovak Socialist Republic in which Slovak is the national language.

Czech belongs to the Western group of Slavic languages whose other members include Slovak, Polish, and Lower and Upper Sorbian. The remaining Slavic languages of today are classed as belonging either to the Eastern (Russian, Ukrainian, Byelorussian) or the Southern (Serbo-Croatian, Slovenian, Macedonian, Bulgarian) group. Constituting a branch of the Indo-European family of languages, the Slavic languages are genealogically related to the Baltic, Germanic, Italic, Celtic, Albanian, Iranian, and Indic languages.

Czech has a distinguished literary tradition dating back to the last quarter of the 13th century. Significantly, a part of the Czech cultural effort has always been an interest in, and a concern for, the viability and efficiency of language as a medium of intellectual and artistic creation. Jan Hus, the Czech religious reformer and writer, who died at the stake in 1415, was among the first to make a conscious contribution to the codification and consolidation of the Czech literary language. In particular, Hus is thought to be the one to have suggested for the first time that, to simplify the process of writing and reading, single written symbols with diacritical marks should be used instead of digraphs (combinations of letters).

During the religious wars and political upheavals of the 17th century, which were accompanied by large-scale, and sometimes enforced, emigration of the cultural élite from the Czech speaking territory, and which, in 1620, led to Bohemia's and Moravia's loss of political autonomy, there occurred a break in the Czech literary continuity and in the cultivation of the Czech literary language. For over 100 years, Czech ceased to be used for literary purposes and survived largely as a spoken language among the semiliterate or illiterate peasantry.

When the Czech restoration movement of the late 18th and 19th century, usually called the National Revival, had set as its major goal the reestablishment of Czech society and its return to its former status as an active participant in the affairs of Europe, the revival of Czech as a literary code figured prominently in its program. In the end, the Czech National Revival succeeded in the realization of both its political and its cultural ambitions. The movement's effort culminated in 1918 in the creation of an independent Czechoslovakia. By this time, the Czechs had managed to build a democratic industrial society (at that period Bohemia and Moravia were the most industrialized of all the Slavic countries) and to produce a modern culture with cosmopolitan affiliations.

The nature of the new Czech literary language, as it came about as a result of the scholarly and literary activities of the Revival, will be discussed in greater detail elsewhere in this book. Also illuminated will be its relation to, and its impact on, the spoken Czech dialects. Here it will be enough to note that the Czech literary language differs in some respects from the commonly spoken form of Czech (to a degree which is not encountered in the other Slavic languages), that it displays a pronounced archaic tendency, and that it is functionally reserved for strictly formal communications. In general, in Czech there obtains an interesting linguistic situation in which usage depends on the observance of well-defined stylistic conventions and in which spoken utterances are frequently composed of elements belonging to two distinct co-existing systems, the literary and the colloquial. This interplay of the two codes is characteristic of Czech and must be realized as well as faced by all those who study the language, particularly by those interested in acquiring more than a mere passive knowledge of Czech written texts. This textbook is designed to provide a realistic introduction to this problem.

THE USE OF THE TEXTBOOK

This textbook consists of twenty lessons designed to cover what may be termed basic Czech grammar in the course of an academic year at the rate of approximately one lesson for every two weeks. Basic Czech grammar may be defined here as Czech phonetics, Czech morphology, a vocabulary of about 2500 words including most of the high-frequency words in the language, and the practical aspects of Czech syntax, particularly those syntactic features that differ from English. Each lesson consists of a vocabulary, an exposition of selected grammatical points together with illustrative drills and exercises, a collection of sentences in dialogue format, a reading selection representing a recasting of the dialogue sentences, translation exercises from English into Czech, and suggestions for conversation in the classroom.

In addition to this, the appendix contains lessons devoted to a presentation of the special morphological and lexical idiosyncracies of Colloquial Czech. This section should be used only after the student has gained real familiarity with the features of Literary Czech.

At first glance the individual vocabularies for each lesson may strike both students and teachers as too extensive, but preoccupation with each lesson over a period of two weeks should ensure assimilation of all words. Besides,most words are recycled through succeeding lessons at regular intervals. A little reflection will convince one that while the vocabulary in a beginning textbook must necessarily be controlled, it need not be unnecessarily curtailed. This book proposes to use classroom conversation as one of the principal vehicles for mastery of the Czech language, and this goal will require that the students operate with a fair-sized basic vocabulary.

The grammatical descriptions and explanations in this text are pitched at college students to help them in every way to sense and acquire how Czech expresses the ideas common to all languages. The compilers of this text have made strenuous efforts to account in a reasoned way for all Czech grammatical phenomena that have come to their attention. Each grammatical point is drilled, sometimes in several ways, just after it has been presented, another device for aiding acquisition of the vocabulary before the core of the lesson, the dialogue, is reached. It is strongly suggested that the grammar exercises and drills be done at home by the student both orally and in writing and that they be handed in to the teacher for inspection but they not be the subject of attention in the classroom unless special circumstances should warrant this. The classroom hours should be devoted to conversation, to exercising the use of the language, the only way the students can ever gain real fluency.

The dialogues contain natural Czech sentences strung together, if possible, into conversational vignettes. Such connections are established among sentences not so much to reflect the usual exchange of ideas in conversation (after all, this is typical of all languages of the world) as to exemplify the subtleties of Czech syntax that arise in different contexts. The dialogues represent the central core of each lesson; they provide carefully chosen illustrations of both the grammar and the vocabulary of the lessons. The dialogues need not be memorized (conversations in the student's own life are certainly not going to be preprogrammed),but they must be studied carefully from the standpoint of all aspects of grammar and imitated by the student in his own sallies into Czech conversation.

The dialogue in each lesson is followed by a so-called reading selection that recasts the semantic concepts gained in that lesson and preceding lessons into slightly different and more nearly narrative contexts. The student will do well to study the reading selections also with care. As the vocabulary grows, the reading selections can be used as a primary source for conversational material by the class.

A very significant section of each lesson is the set of English sentences to be translated into Czech. All students need writing practice in a foreign language and in a beginning text the best way to accomplish this goal is to direct the student's efforts by means of his native language. Only in this way can the student's attention be drawn efficiently and systematically to vocabulary, grammar, and usage in Czech. From the very first lesson the compilers have taken care to use natural English sentences to express whatever concepts have been learned by the students for Czech. This means that the students will have to pay very close attention to the exact significance of each English sentence before rendering it into Czech. This process, it is hoped, will make the students consciously aware of the subtleties of English and alert to discover similar subtleties in Czech. It is strongly recommended that classroom time be expended on these sentences only in extenuating circumstances.

In the last section of each lesson the authors have endeavored to provide the teacher with some suggestions for classroom conversation. Only "some" suggestions are included, for this is strictly the province of the teacher and, incidentally, the most important part of the language learning process. The authors have tried to create a textbook that will essentially free the teacher to converse in Czech with the students the better part of each class hour. This is the really critical role of the teacher--to involve the students actively every day in using the lexical and grammatical concepts they are absorbing in the Czech language. This is the most effective way of learning a language, and the teacher bears the responsibitity of properly exploiting the precious hours in the classroom.

The authors want to call particular attention to the fact that while this textbook fundamentally teaches Literary Czech (spisovná čeština, abbreviated to SČ everywhere in this book), it also presents the structural and lexical features of Common Czech or Colloquial Czech (obecná čeština, abbreviated hereafter to OČ). Even though OČ has never been presented systematically to students,the coexistence of these two linguistic codes, SČ and OČ, is a definite and distinct fact of Czech linguistic behavior, especially in Prague and Bohemia. SČ, it is true, is used practically exclusively in all written media of communication and in all formal situations where the spoken language is used, but OČ is used by Czechs in all other linguistic situations. And what is more, the Czechs use subtle mixtures of OČ and SČ in situations calling for varying degrees of formality or informality. The principles of mixing are too complex to tackle in such a textbook; so the authors have settled for a presentation of the basic features of OČ in order to prepare the student for what he will hear when he arrives in Czechoslovakia and to give him a firm foundation upon which to build his gradual acquisition of the intricacies of OČ usage. The teacher may do what he wishes with the OČ section.

PRONUNCIATION

The student fully realizes that careful imitation of his language teacher's pronunciation will always gain him the desired result, but a number of well directed remarks about the phonetic system of a foreign language can be extremely useful even for a person who can adapt himself quickly and easily to the mode of pronunciation of any foreign language. Such remarks can at least alert the student to what he may hear in the speech of his instructor; can help the student make a more systematic comparison of the phonetic structure of his own language with that of the foreign language; and, if the student is a good practical phonetician, can tell him exactly how to form a difficult sound in the foreign language. The vowels of Czech will be discussed first and then the consonants. Before reading the following material on Czech pronunciation, the student should know that all polysyllabic words are stressed on their initial syllables.

Vowels

There are essentially only five vowels in Czech, a, i, e, o, u; but each one appears in a short and long variant. The distinction between long and short vowels is a very important one in Czech, and this feature of length and pervasive word-initial stress are mostly responsible for the particular acoustic effect produced on the ears of non-Czech speakers. Czech long vowels have the following general characteristics: 1) they are sounded approximately twice as long as the short vowels; 2) they are produced with slightly more muscular tension in the tongue, lips, and walls of the oral and pharyngeal cavities than the short vowels; 3) they are indicated in writing by the presence of an acute accent "´"(called "čárka" in Czech) placed over the vowel (small circle "˚", termed "kroužek" is also used in the case of long u's that are not absolutely initial). In reading the material on Czech vowels the student need only be aware that the quality of the vowel is primarily a function of the position of the tongue. Most of the useful remarks in what follows will be directed toward this feature of tongue position and will involve comparison with similar sounds in English, French, or Russian.

a/á The short vowel is heard in many European languages. The tongue is held in the mouth approximately in the position of rest, but it is not held in as forward a position as the French a in "patte" or as far back as the English a in "father". The long vowel is sounded with the mouth slightly more open and with the tongue slightly more backed.

Examples:

rada	(advice)	ráda	(glad, fem.sg.)
mapa	(map)	mám	(I have)
matka	(mother)	dávám	(I give)
strana	(side)	káva	(coffee)

i/í
y/ý There is absolutely no difference in sound between the i and y spelling of this high front vowel. In the discussion of the consonants the student will learn that the i variety causes palatalization or softening of some preceding consonants. The short vowel is not articulated as high in the mouth as the French vowel i in "fini" nor is it quite as open as the English i in "bit," but the acoustic effect of the vowel is very much like that of the i in "bit." The long vowel is very close to the sound of ee in "feed"; and, therefore, the tongue is farther forward and higher than it is for the short vowel. It is, however, not as high or as tense as it is for the vowel in the French word "vie."

Examples:

vila	(villa)	být	(to be)
byt	(apartment)	síla	(strength)
silný	(strong)	bílý	(white)
milý	(dear)	mísa	(plate)

e/ě/é The variety of the short vowel written with the diacritical mark "ˇ", termed "háček" in Czech, is pronounced exactly like the Czech short e, but it causes palatalization or softening of certain preceding consonants. Again, this matter will be discussed under the heading of consonants. The short vowel is pronounced very much like the e in English "men," i.e., it is neither as close as the é in French "été" or as open as the ê in French "tête." In between two palatalized consonants, however, it sounds somewhat like the French é. The long vowel sounds very much like the short vowel, but the tongue is positioned slightly higher and slightly farther forward. It does not sound at all like the é in French "été."

Examples:

vesele	(merrily)	lék	(medicine)
sever	(north)	mléko	(milk)
Helena	(Helen)	chléb	(bread)
děti	(children)	déle	(longer)

o/ó These vowels are the back counterparts of e/é, i.e.,they are pronounced with the tongue at the same height, but at the back of the mouth. The short vowel, accordingly, should not have the tongue positioned as high as for o in French "pose" nor as low as for o in Russian "TOT." Students of Russian, particularly, should avoid identification of Czech o with the Russian stressed o. The long vowel is found only in foreign words but may accompany emotional usage of native Czech words. The tongue should be higher and more backed in the articulation of this vowel than it is for the corresponding short vowel.

Examples:

potom	(then)	móda	(fashion)
voda	(water)	tón	(tone)
slovo	(word)	dóm	(cathedral)
most	(bridge)	milión	(million)

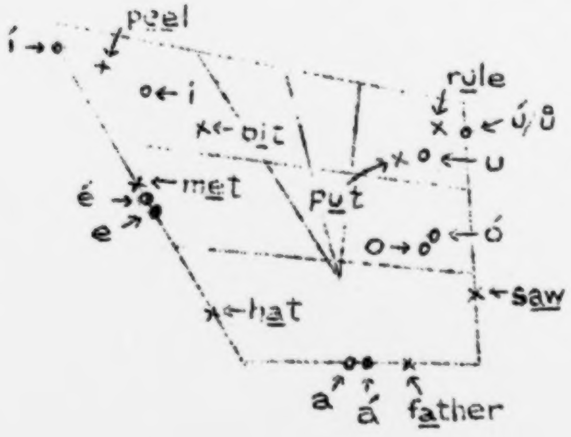
u/ú/ů Both ú and ů represent a long u. The symbol ú is used when a long u is absolutely initial in a word and occasionally in medial position in foreign words; ů is used elsewhere. Just as the o/ó vowels correspond to e/é, this high back pair corresponds in all respects to the high front pair i/í. That is, the short vowel lies between a close u as in French "bout" and an open u as in English "put". The long vowel is more backed and higher then the short, but it is not as close as the u in French "bout".

Examples:

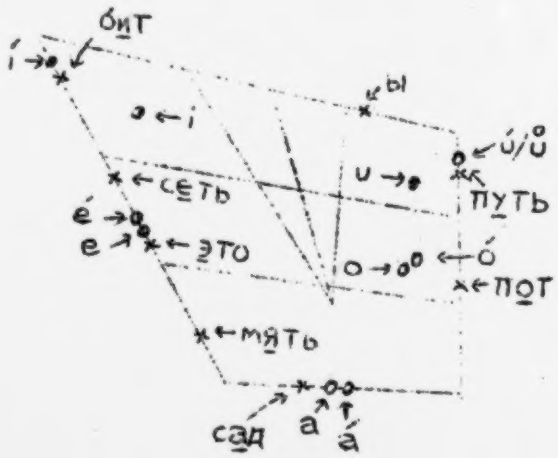
tupý	(blunt)	múza	(muse)
ruka	(hand)	úmysl	(intention)
muka	(torture)	stůl	(table)
dub	(oak)	domů	(homewards)

The following quadrilateral of a type developed by Prof. Daniel Jones for the practical representation on paper of tongue positions on both horizontal and vertical axes may be of use to students with at least a rudimentary knowledge of phonetics. It compares Czech long and short vowels with the corresponding vowels in English, French, and Russian. The vocalic symbols that would be located at the intersections of lines are the so called "cardinal vowels". On an absolute basis the qualities of these cardinal vowels should be known, but the student can profit from a comparison of the articulatory positions for similar vowels in these other languages.

Czech/English

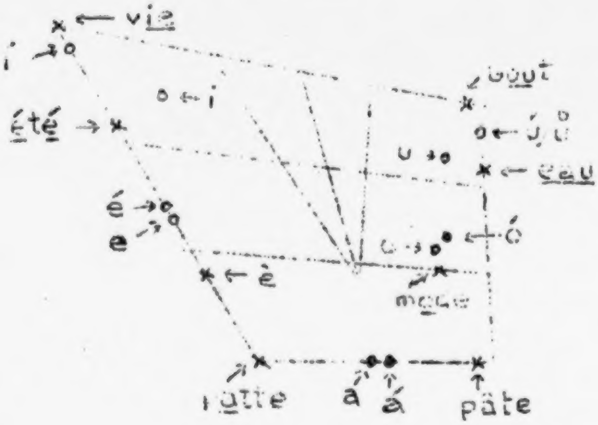


Czech/Russian



FILMED FROM BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Czech/French



Initial Pre-Vocalic Glottal Stop

All Czech vowels in the absolutely initial position in a word are preceded by a glottal stop termed "ráz" in Czech. This occurs even when the initial vowel is preceded by a prefix or by part of a compound word. The glottis is closed prior to the pronunciation of all such initial vowels. A slight "catch" is heard when the vocal cords are forced apart to permit production of the following vowel. The same phenomenon is heard in German. Pronounce all words below with an initial vowel in accordance with this phonetic rule. The presence of this glottal stop is part and parcel of a good Czech accent.

a	(and)	obava	(apprehension)
ano	(yes)	originál	(original)
akademik	(academician)	úvod	(introduction)
idea	(idea)	ukázat	(to point out)
informace	(information)	antialkoholický	(antialcoholic)
elán	(élan)	kontraindikace	(contraindication)
energický	(energetic)	neústrojný	(inorganic)
on	(he, it)	modrooký	(blue-eyed)

Diphthongs

There are only three true diphthongs in the Czech language, and they are compounded from the Czech vowels a, e, o plus an u element. They are written au, eu, ou. The first element in these diphthongs is sounded exactly like the corresponding Czech short vowels. The second element acquires the tongue position for the short Czech u, but in duration it lies between an English w sound and the short Czech u. English speaking students should note carefully that the second element of the Czech diphthongs is pronounced with slightly higher tongue position and slightly more rounded lips than the corresponding English sound. The combination is definitely monosyllabic. The combination of initial vowel, transition articulation, and final u has an over-all duration slightly greater than that for the Czech long vowels. The au/eu diphthongs occur only in borrowed words.

Examples:

auto	(car)	pneumatika	(tire)	louka	(meadow)
astronaut	(astronaut)	neuróza	(neurosis)	nesou	(they carry)

autor	(author)	neurolog	(neurologist)	koupat	(to bathe)
autorita	(authority)	leukémie	(leukemia)	ouško	(small ear)

Consonants

The consonants will be discussed in groups according to their primary manner of articulation. To the first group belong the so-called stops, consonants produced by means of a complete closure. The student should pay strict attention to the fact that none of the Czech stops is aspirated, i.e., followed by a puff of breath as the corresponding stops in English frequently are.

Stops

1) The first subgroup of stops consists of the labials, p, b, m. The student will experience no trouble with these sounds, but he must note that the p is unaspirated and that the b is more fully voiced than in English and is therefore like the corresponding sound in Russian and French.

Examples:

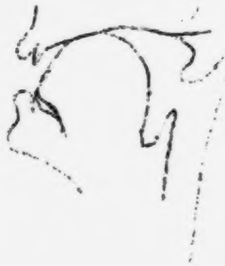
papír	(paper)	bílá	(white)	mapa	(map)
pero	(pen)	berou	(they take)	míra	(measure)
pot	(sweat)	buben	(drum)	mráz	(frost)

2) The second subgroup comprises the dentals, t, d, n. The student will do well to note that the tip of the tongue rests against the alveolar ridge in the articulation of all three sounds, but the tongue is farther advanced than in the production of the corresponding English sounds so that the very tip of the tongue also touches the back of the upper front teeth in the case of t and almost touches the teeth in the case of d and n. Again the d is more fully voiced than the English sound.

Examples:

ten	(that)	den	(day)	nuda	(tedium)
tabule	(blackboard)	doba	(age)	nula	(zero)
tabák	(tobacco)	dobrý	(good)	norma	(norm)

3) The next subgroup of stops include the palatals, so-called because they are articulated against the hard palate just behind the alveolar ridge. In absolutely final position these consonants are symbolized in Czech orthography as t', d', ň; otherwise they are always signaled by an immediately following i, í, or ě. These sounds may offer some difficulty to the student; the accompanying diagram indicates the position of the tongue. Note that the tip of the tongue rests against the backs of the lower front teeth. Remember that these palatals are stops, not affricates. Their sounds are very light and are not prolonged.



Examples:

labut'	(swan	dělá	(he does)	daň	(tax)
tělo	(body,	vodí	(he leads)	žízeň	(thirst)
letí	(he flies)	mládí	(youth)	brání	(he defends)

Note: ň also appears directly after m when the latter is followed in Czech orthography by the vowel symbol ě. In other words, the combination mě is always pronounced as mňe.

Examples:

město	(town)	země	(land)
dámě	(to the lady)	měnit	(to change)

Note: In words of foreign origin the orthographic combinations di, ti, ni do not signal palatals, but the regular dental stops.

Examples:

kritika	(criticism)	nikotin	(nicotine)
diplom	(diploma)	titul	(title)
disk	(disc)	nivó	(level)

4) The last subgroup of stops embraces the velars, k and g. The student should avoid aspiration of the k and should avoid noticeably fronting the articulation of both these sounds before front vowels, as he would naturally do in the English word "kin". The sound g is rather rare in Czech; it appears only in foreign words, as a result of assimilation and in slang.

Examples:

také	(also)	gigant	(giant)
kabát	(jacket)	geolog	(geologist)
kus	(piece)	magnet	(magnet)

Fricatives

This kind of consonants does not have a complete closure in the oral cavity but features a more or less complex obstruction including a narrow passage for the escape of the breath.

1) The labiodentals f, v constitute the first subclass of fricatives. Their mode of articulation is completely in accord with that for the same sounds in most European languages. The student should be aware of the fact that f occurs practically exclusively in foreign words.

Examples:

výstava	(exhibition)	fotograf	(photographer)
právo	(right, law)	doufat	(to hope)
veselý	(merry)	figura	(figure)

2) The dental sibilants s, z are pronounced just as they are in most languages.

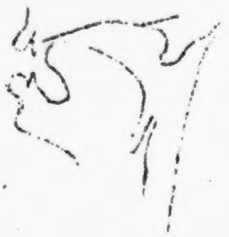
Examples:

prosit	(to request)	zima	(winter)
syn	(son)	zlato	(gold)
maso	(meat)	zebra	(zebra)

In foreign words, however, an internal s frequently is pronounced as z.

universita	(university)	komunismus	(communism)
president	(president)	filosofie	(philosophy)

3) The fricatives articulated in the region of the hard palate are š, ž, and j. The acoustic effect of š and ž is just about the same as that of the symbol s in English "sure" and "pleasure", respectively; but the tongue position is slightly different. The best explanation of the difference involved here can be gained by reference to a diagram showing the position of the tongue during production of the Czech š and ž. Students acquainted with the pronunciation of the corresponding Russian sounds should note that in the Czech sounds the tongue is neither raised nor retroflexed as it is in the Russian sounds.



Examples:

škola	(school)	žena	(woman, wife)
šátek	(scarf)	požár	(fire)
široký	(wide)	život	(life)

The sound of the Czech j resembles closely that of the y in English "yet". The muscular tension in the speech organs is probably somewhat greater in the production of the Czech sound.

Examples:

jeden	(one)	máj	(May)
její	(her)	můj	(my)
jaro	(spring)	dej	(give)

It is very important to note that the same sound is generated by the symbol ě between itself and the directly preceding labials p, b, and labiodentals f, v. This means that the orthographic combinations pě, bě, fě, vě are pronounced pje, bje, fje, vje.

Examples:

dvě	(two)	obědvat	(to lunch)
svět	(world)	běžet	(to run)
zpěv	(singing)	oběra	(offering)
pěkný	(nice)	strofě	(stanza, dat/loc.sg.)

A j is also generated between the vowel i and an immediately following vowel. In such cases an orthographic sequence of vowels like ia actually belongs to two syllables and should be pronounced i-ja.

Examples:

pionýr	(pioneer)	Marie	(Mary)
rádio	(radio)	piáno	(piano)

4) The digraph ch in Czech represents the voiceless velar fricative which raises the back of the tongue in the same position as for Czech k, g but which does not quite effect contact with the soft palate. The sound can best be described as identical with the x of Russian and ch in German "Bach".

Examples:

ucho	(ear)	chudý	(poor)
duch	(spirit)	chápat	(to grasp)
moucha	(fly)	pochybovat	(to doubt)

5) The last fricative to be discussed is the glottal or laryngeal fricative, the sound symbolized in Czech orthography by h. This sound is nothing more than a voiced h; but, in spite of the fact that a voiceless h is prevalent in English, the sound presents some difficulties for English-speaking students. The h sound in the English word "ahead" is close to the Czech sound, but the latter is more strongly voiced.

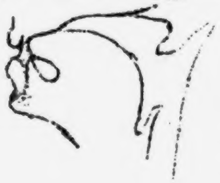
Examples:

noha	(leg, foot)	hlas	(voice)
hora	(mountain)	drahý	(dear)
hra	(play)	hudba	(music)

Affricates

Affricates are complex sounds that feature a rather weak closure followed by a narrow passage that produces a sibilant-like sound. There are two affricates in Czech symbolized by c and č.

1) The sound symbolized by c is exactly like the Russian ц and is very close to the ts combination in the English word "cats". Note in the diagram below that the tongue is placed farther forward than it is for the ts combination in English and actually rests against the lower front teeth.



Examples:

co	(what)	americký	(American)
cena	(price)	koncert	(concert)
cesta	(road)	cizí	(foreign)

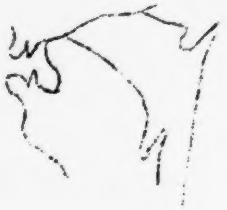
Note: There is a voiced variety of this sound that is symbolized by the digraph dz and found in a very few words.

Examples:

podzim	(autumn)
nadzvukový	(supersonic)
odzadu	(from behind)

2) The affricate written as č is acoustically very similar to the ch combination in English "church", but the difference in tongue position is of

the same order as that existing between English sh and Czech š. Note carefully the initial position assumed by the tongue for the articulation of č.



Examples:

čas	(time)	čokoláda	(chocolate)
proč	(why)	člověk	(human being)
černý	(black)	část	(part)

Note: There is a voiced corollary of this sound symbolized as dž practically exclusively in borrowed words.

Examples:

džbán	(jug)	džez	(jazz)
džíp	(jeep)	džungle	(jungle)

Laterals and Trills

Under this heading we consider the r and l sounds of Czech, which are somewhat unusual in that they may be syllabic because of their sonorous qualities.

1) The lateral l is similar to the l in the English word "let",but the tongue is positioned farther forward. In the articulation of the Czech sound the tongue makes contact with the alveolar ridge just behind the upper front teeth. Because of its sonority Czech uses l occasionally as the carrier of a syllable in the same capacity as a vowel. Such a syllabic l is to be found only in medial or final position, never in initial position, that is, the word "lže" (he lies) is to be pronounced as one syllable, not two.

Examples:

les	(forest)	vlna	(wave)
milý	(dear)	vlk	(wolf)
mluvil	(he spoke)	plný	(full)
lpět	(to cling)	nesl	(he carried)
lžíce	(spoon)	vedl	(he led)

2) The trill r is the typical trilled r found throughout the languages of the world. The tip of the tongue is held against the alveolar ridge and the right amount of tension must be maintained in the musculature of the tongue to cause the tip to return to its original position after the stream of air from the lungs has forced it away from the alveoli. Normally, one or two vibrations are produced in the articulation of the Czech r, but two or three may be heard when it is stressed. This r may also occasionally be syllabic, and again only in medial or final position.

Examples:

ruka	(hand)	vrba	(willow)
rok	(year)	krk	(neck)
dar	(gift)	bratr	(brother)
rty	(lips)	prst	(finger)
rtut'	(mercury)	skútr	(scooter)

3) The last individual sound to be described is a complex trilled r sound, symbolized as ř, that somewhat resembles a Czech r and somewhat resembles a Czech ž; but it is not a mere combination of these two sounds. It will require assiduous practice on the part of the student to acquire this Czech sound. The student will definitely benefit by noting the following features of ř.

a) the tip of the tongue is tenser than in the case of r.

b) the stream of air is more forceful than it is in the production of r.

c) the vibrations of the tip of the tongue are faster and more numerous than in the case of r.

d) the quality of the voice is closer to that of z than that for r.

e) the jaws are closer and the lower jaw is farther advanced than it is for r (particularly important).

f) the edges of the upper and lower front teeth are level with each other (particularly important).

g) the lips are extended lengthwise, much as they are for the articulation of z (particularly important).

The student should avoid substituting the combination rž for this sound.

Examples:

řád	(order)	říkám	(I say)
dveře	(door)	čtyři	(four)
řeka	(river)	měřit	(to measure)
doktoři	(doctors)	moře	(sea)
kouřím	(I smoke)	říše	(empire)

CONSONANTAL ASSIMILATION

A good Czech accent cannot be acquired by the student unless he observes the fact that consonantal clusters or single consonants, when they are found before a pause, as they occur within words, or as they turn up in the stream of speech, assimilate to the voiced or voiceless quality of the last consonant in the cluster or of the first consonant of the next word or to the voiceless quality of the immediately succeeding pause. This means that there is a strong tendency in Czech for occurring or developing consonantal clusters to become voiced or voiceless depending on the final consonant of the cluster. Since consonantal assimilation between words is less consistent and slightly different than within words, and since devoicing is much more frequent than voicing, the presentation of the facts has been broken down accordingly for greater explicitness.

Assimilation within Words

Devoicing

A very important part of the Czech phonetic process is the regular assimilation of voiced consonants to their voiceless counterparts under certain conditions within the confines of the word. The conditions are the following:

1) absolutely final position (where the voiced consonant assimilates to silence),

2) position immediately before a voiceless consonant.

The following inventory is exhaustive. Note that from the standpoint of stress and assimilation, most prepositions are to be pronounced with the immediately following word as one word. Note also that the glottal stop, which is a voiceless condition preceding an initial vowel, has the same effect as a voiceless consonant.

b → p

zub	(tooth)	obchod	(store)
dub	(oak)	obsah	(contents)

ob okno (every other window)

v → f

lev	(lion)	dívka	(girl)
zpěv	(singing)	všude	(everywhere)

v Americe (in America)

d → t

hrad	(castle)	předkrm	(appetizer)
oběd	(lunch)	odchod	(departure)

pod stolem	(under the table)
pod oknem	(under the window)

z → s

mráz	(frost)	zcela	(entirely)
vůz	(car)	hezký	(pretty, nice)

bez peněz	(without money)
rozohnit	(to fire up)

ž → š

muž	(man, husband)	těžký	(heavy)
nůž	(knife)	ponožka	(sock)

dž → č

poněvadž (because)

ř → ř̥(unvoiced)

tvář	(face)	mořský	(sea, adj.)
keř	(bush)	hořký	(bitter)
kovář	(blacksmith)		

d' → t'

zed'	(wall)	pojd'te!	(come!)
ted'	(now)	lod'ka	(small boat)

g → g̊

The sign g̊ used here is intended to indicate an unvoiced g or a weakly articulated k. Undoubtedly this mode of pronunciation reflects the foreign nature of the g sound in Czech. The student will also note that the vowel o just before this final g is somewhat lengthened, another indication that this sound is not a normal k sound, as heard elsewhere in Czech.

grog	(grog)	demagog	(demagogue)
filolog	(philologist)		

h → ch

Pay particular attention to this change. The Czech h in these circumstances does not become a voiceless h.

sníh	(snow)	nehty	(finger nails)
pluh	(plough)	lehký	(light)

př/tř/kř/chř

The above combinations must be emphasized as special enviroments in which the ř is devoiced by a preceding unvoiced consonant. The voiceless consonants p/t/k/ch cause devoicing of the immediately following ř

před	(before)	tři	(three)	kříž	(cross)
příroda	(nature)	bratři	(brothers)	křeslo	(armchair)
přízvuk	(accent)	třída	(class)	výkřik	(exclamation)
chřadnout	(to waste away)	chřest	(asparagus)		

sh → sch

This is another combination where devoicing occurs as a result of an immediately preceding voiceless consonant. All such groups are treated in this manner except in the words "shluk" (cluster), "shora" (from above) and words related to them.

shánět	(to look for)	shoda	(agreement)
shledat	(to gather together)	shořet	(to get burned)
shnít	(to rot)		

Voicing

This phenomenon is exactly the opposite of that discussed above. It has, however, a much more limited distribution. Within the confines of the Czech word the voicing of unvoiced consonants is statistically rather rare, and it is further confined to positions immediately before only voiced consonants that have unvoiced counterparts. This latter statement means, in effect, that voicing will occur before all voiced consonants except l, m, n, r and j. Note that ř constitutes an exception in that it is not paired and yet causes voicing. Study the following examples.

četba	(reading)	věštba	(prophecy)
kresba	(drawing)	léčba	(treatment)
prosba	(petition)	kdo	(who)
s babičkou	(with grandmother)	někdy	(sometimes)
leckdo	(many a person)	k řece	(to the river)
s humorem	(with humor)		

There is one important exception to the general rule that the voiced counterparts of paired consonants cause voicing of immediately preceding voiceless consonants. The consonant v, although paired with f, never causes voicing assimilation.

tvůj	(your)	květ	(flower)
chvála	(praise)	svaz	(union)
k vodě	(to the water)	tvořit	(to create)

Assimilation between Words

Within Czech sentences the same phenomena of assimilation occur regularly between words under generally the same conditions as above. In other words, word-final consonants are going to become voiced or devoiced depending on the initial consonant of the next word. The student can expect to find these assimilations except, of course, when there is a pause between words. In such a case, he will observe devoicing only. Study the pronunciation of the following phrases and note particularly that final voiced consonants are not prevented from devoicing by succeeding l, m, n, r or j.

když odcházel	(when he was leaving)
dub se svalil	(the oak fell)
vstup za dolar	(admittance for a dollar)
nač bych se namáhal!	(why should I work so hard!)
pozdrav na rozloučenou	(farewell)
už letos	(even this year)
med já nejím	(no, I do not eat honey)
sud vína	(barrel of wine)

The student must be reminded that there is no devoicing of final voiced consonants in prepositions directly before the unpaired consonants l, m, n, r or j because this environment is considered to be within the word in Czech.

před rokem	(a year ago)
pod mísou	(under the plate)
ob rok	(every other year)

CONSONANTAL ALTERNATION

Just as in the case of every other language in the world, the historical development of Czech has wrought some important changes in the sound system, with which the student will want to become familiar. The consonantal changes that must be brought to the student's attention may be termed "palatalization". Palatalization in Czech has occurred at several different times and under somewhat different circumstances in the history of the language and has therefore produced different results in the case of a few original non-palatalized consonants. Palatalization has been effected by front vowels preceding or following the consonants or by a following j (a y sound as in English "yet"). Since these sounds are formed in the front part of the mouth, their effect has been to produce consonants that are pronounced by means of contact or near contact between the tongue and the hard palate. In most cases palatalization is indicated in the orthography merely by use of special symbols such as t', d', ř, č, c, ž, z, š; but palatalization of labials p, b, f, v, m is indicated exclusively by the following symbol ě, and palatalization of the dentals d, t, n is indicated by following i, í, or ě. The student should study the table on the next page carefully and note the various instances where palatalization has created different forms of the same stem or root.

From inspection of the table the student should gain the information that changes in consonants can occur in the course of inflection, i.e., in different forms of the same word, e.g.,

hoch (Nom.sg.) / hoši (Nom.pl.)
noha (Nom.sg.) / noze (Dat. and loc.sg.)

and in the course of derivation, i.e., in the formation of different words, e.g.,

chlad (Noun) / chladit (Verb)
tichý (Adj.) / tiše (Adverb)
noc (Noun) / noční (Adj.)

It is imperative that the student become absolutely familiar with all changes in the shapes of roots occasioned by inflection, but it is also important that he be aware of derivational changes in roots. The latter process will be of inestimable value to the student in expanding his vocabulary.

The student will also have noted in this table that some dental and velar consonants may acquire two different shapes by virtue of palatalization. In all such cases the variants are either dentals or palatals. Throughout the lessons the presentation of the grammar will always indicate where palatalization will take place and whether, in ambiguous cases, the products will be dental or palatal.

The student's attention must also be drawn to the historical fact that palatalization, especially at the beginning of words, has affected all or practically all manifestations of a given root so that the student cannot find or is not going to be aware of consonantal alternations like the above. A few examples of this state of affairs can be seen in the following words.

město	(city)	číslo	(number)
svíce	(candle)	klíč	(key)
cena	(price)	duše	(soul)

	Original Consonant	Palatalized Variant	Examples
labials	p	pj	mapa / mapě (dat.sg.) (map)
	b	bj	slabý / slabě (adv.) (weak)
	f	fj	harfa / harfě (dat/loc.sg.) (harp)
	v	vj	káva / kávě (dat/loc.sg.) (coffee)
	m	mň	dáma / dámě (dat/loc.sg.) (lady)
dentals	n	ň	daný (given) / daň (tax) stěna / stěně (dat/loc.sg.)(wall)
	r	ř	modrý (blue) / modř (blue color) dobrý (good) / dobře (well)
	s	š	hlásit (announce)/ hlášení (announcing)
	z	ž	vozit (transport)/ vožení (transporting)
	c	č	noc (night) / noční (pert. to night)
	t	t'	student / studenti(pl.)(student)
		c	plat (payment) / placení (paying)
	d	d'	chlad (cold) / chladit (to cool)
		z	chlad (cold) / chlazený (chilled)
velars	k	c(dental)	matka (mother) / matce(dat/loc.sg.) (mother)
		č(palatal)	matka (mother) / matčin(adj) (mother's)
	*h	z(dental)	drahý (dear) / draze(adv.) (dearly)
		ž(palatal)	drahý (dear) / dražší (dearer)
	ch	š	tichý (quiet) / tiše(adv.) (quietly)
	g	z(dental)	Olga (proper name)/Olze(dat/loc.sg.) (proper name)
		ž(palatal)	Olga (proper name)/Olžin(adj.)(Olga's)

---

* It is convenient to classify the laryngeal fricative h as a velar because it originated in the voiced velar g.

We take practical advantage of the situation where the stem-final consonant is consistently palatalized and speak of "soft" declensions of nouns and adjectives versus "hard" declensions, where the stem-final consonant is not palatalized, e.g.,

růže	(rose)	vs.	žena	(wife)
muž	(husband)	vs.	student	(student)

In this connection it is worth noting that all the palatalized consonants listed above are followed by i, í, e, ě or zero. The same array of vowels is going to be indicative of "soft" declensions when palatalization effects no change or appears to effect no change, i.e., when the consonant involved is l, where the labials p, b, f, v, and m are followed by i, í, or ø, and where the student cannot detect the fact that a z has been produced from an original d or h or that a c has come from an original t or k. We shall refer to all three of these situations as technically soft consonants.

QUALITATIVE VOCALIC ALTERNATIONS

The student has been introduced to the notion of "hard" and "soft" consonants and to the fact that there are intrinsically hard consonants that may become softened in certain derivational and inflectional situations and to the fact that there are intrinsically soft consonants that at the modern stage of the language do not alternate with hard consonants. Now we can appreciate the fact that when these intrincically soft consonants occur at the ends of stems, they frequently can affect various original vowels constituting various inflectional and derivational endings. Since, then, soft consonants are pronounced towards the front of the mouth, their effect on following vowels is to front them, i.e., to produce either e or i/í. The net effect of these changes is to create two sets of endings for various grammatical categories, one for hard stems and another for soft stems. The student will gradually become familiar with the details of these two sets of endings as he proceeds through the textbook, but it is important here that he understand the concept of hard and soft stems. A few examples of vocalic alternations the student will encounter are given below.

Nouns:

	hard		soft	
Nom. sg. neuter	měst-o	(city)	moř-e	(sea)
Gen. sg. masc.	doktor-a	(doctor)	muž-e	(husband)
Acc. sg. fem.	žen-u	(wife)	růž-i	(rose)
Nom/Acc. pl. masc.	plán-y	(plans)	stroj-e	(machines)
Dat. pl. fem.	žen-ám	(wives)	růž-ím	(roses)
Instr. pl. fem.	žen-ami	(wives)	růž-emi	(roses)

Adjectives

	hard		soft	
Nom.sg. masculine	nov-ý	(new)	svěž-í	(fresh)
Gen.sg. masc./neut.	nov-ého	"	svěž-ího	"
Acc.sg. feminine	nov-ou	"	svěž-í	"
Instr.sg. masc./neut. and Dat.pl.	nov-ým	"	svěž-ím	"

QUANTITATIVE VOCALIC ALTERNATIONS

The student has already learned that the distinction between long and short vowels in the Czech language is a critical one. He has only to inspect the following pairs of words distinguished only by the opposition of long and short vowels to convince himself that this opposition is indeed significant:

pravá	(true, Nom.pl.neut.)	práva	(rights)
byt	(apartment)	být	(to be)
vy	(you)	ví	(he knows)
trvale	(lastingly)	trvalé	(lasting, Nom.sg.neut.)
domu	(house, Gen.sg.)	domů	(homewards)

He will not be surprised to discover then that this opposition, sometimes accompanied by a difference in vowel quality, e.g., "vůz" (car) vs. "vozy" (cars), manifests itself throughout the language in various inflectional and derivational words formed from the same root or stem. The reason for these alternations between short and long vowels are to be found primarily in the historical development of accent in Czech, but they are extremely complex and cannot be utilized as bases for explanations in a textbook. The student's attention will be constantly drawn to instances where certain case forms or certain derivatives consistently exhibit vowel length or shortness as a departure from the norm and where some reasonable generalization can be made, but in many other cases the student himself will have to be a close observer and recorder of these alternations of length. The following alternations of length will be found in Czech:

a/á	Gen.sg.masc:	mrazu	(cold)	/	Nom.sg.:	mráz
	Gen.pl.fem:	drah	(roads)	/	Nom.sg:	dráha
i/í	Diminutive:	miska	(small dish)	/	Noun:	mísa (dish)
	Infinitive:	přinést	(to bring)	/	Noun:	přínos (contribution)
ě/í	Adjective:	dětský	(of children)	/	Noun:	dítě (child)
	Imperative:	pospěš!	(hurry)	/	1st sg:	pospíším
y/ý	Imperative:	nemyl se!	(make no mistake)	/	1st sg:	mýlím se

o/ů	Gen.sg.fem:	soli	(salt)	/	Nom.sg.fem:	sůl (salt)
	Masc. Noun:	most	(bridge)	/	Diminutive:	můstek
u/ú/ů	Infinitive:	uvážit	(to consider)	/	Noun:	úvaha (consideration)
	Perfective Imperative:	rozpul!	(halve)	/	1st sg.impf:	půlím
u/ou	Gen.pl.fem:	much	(flies)	/	Nom.sg.fem:	moucha
	Perfect Participle:	minul	(he missed)	/	Infinitive:	minout

ACCENT

The student has already noted and learned that the Czech accent falls regularly on the initial syllable of every word. If he has a good ear, he has also observed that the Czech accent is not as strong as that in English or Russian; and he should strive to suppress the tendency to overstress words in Czech. He must learn to stress lightly all initial syllables and to pay strict attention to the proper pronunciation of long and short syllables. The above statements do not exhaust the general information about Czech accent. There are several details of general importance that may be profitably emphasized in this introduction. Like many languages Czech has both independent and dependent words. Dependent words are always subordinated to other structures; independent words may or may not be subordinated to other elements in a sentence. The roster of dependent words in Czech includes original prepositions, unstressed pronominal forms, and most forms of the verb "to be." Independent and dependent words affect the stress pattern of Czech sentences in the following ways:

1) If an independent word consists of one or two syllables, it may readily acquire a proclitic status in relationship to an immediately following, syntactically related word. That is, a monosyllabic proclitic will lose its accent while a disyllabic proclitic will acquire a secondary accent. The effect of this loss or reduction of accent will seem very subtle to the student because of the lightness of the Czech accent in general. Note that it is always the last words in any closely knit syntactic construction that receives the greater accent. In the examples below the vowel bearing the primary stress is underlined.

náš přítel	(our friend)
milý příteli!	(dear friend!)
čas k obědu	(time for dinner)
kousek chleba	(a piece of bread)
my víme	(we know)
někdo přišel	(someone came)
mám hlad	(I am hungry)
máme hlad	(we are hungry)
když přišel	(when he came)
ale odešel	(but he left)
skrz les	(through the forest)
kolem domu	(around the house)

2) Two things may happen to dependent words, which are all of one or two syllables.

a) Words that have functioned as prepositions since time immemorial attach themselves to immediately following words. Note that two unaccented monosyllabic words or one unaccented disyllabic word may follow the preposition before a main accent appears again within the prepositional phrase.

se psem	(with the dog)
u divadla	(at the theater)
nade vším	(above all)
beze změny	(without change)
do naší školy	(to our school)
ode všeho zlého	(from all evil)
se svým zlým psem	(with his vicious dog)

b) Other dependent words can never appear initially in sentences and are always enclitic to the first stressed word or phrase in a sentence.

dej mu to!	(give him that)
dnes bude pěkně	(it will be nice today)
já se tomu nedivím	(I am not surprised)
sestra byla nemocná	(sister was ill)

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Dobrý den.	Hello.
Jak se máte?	How are you?
Děkuji, mám se dobře.	I'm fine, thanks.
A jak se máte vy?	And how are you?
Špatně.	Miserable.
Mám moc práce.	I'm terribly busy.
Nemám čas.	I'm busy.
Dobré jitro.	Good morning.
Dobré odpoledne.	Good afternoon.
Dobrý večer.	Good evening.
Dobrou noc.	Good night.
Nashledanou.	See you later.
Sbohem.	Good-bye.
Děkuji.	Thanks.
Děkuji vám.	Thank you.
Prosím.	You're welcome.
Nemáte zač.	Don't mention it.

Opakujte po mně.	Repeat after me.
Opakujte to, prosím.	Repeat that, please.
Nahlas.	Aloud.
Mluvte pomalu.	Speak slowly.
Mluvte nahlas.	Speak out loud.
Ještě jednou.	Once more.
Mluvte zřetelně.	Speak clearly.
Všichni najednou.	All together.
Řekněte to ještě jednou.	Say that again.
Ano.	Yes.
Ne.	No.
Nerozumím vám.	I don't understand you.
Bohužel vám nerozumím.	I'm afraid I don't understand you.
Promiňte.	Excuse me.
Rozumíte mi?	Do you understand me?
Rozumím.	I understand.
Ano, rozumím vám.	Yes, I understand you.
Řekněte to anglicky.	Say that in English.
Řekněte to celou větou.	Please use a complete sentence.
Jak se říká česky "evening"?	How do you say "evening" in Czech?
Česky se to říká "večer".	In Czech it's "večer".
To se říká česky "večer".	It's "večer" in Czech.
Co to znamená "večer"?	What does "večer" mean?
"Evening" znamená česky "večer".	"Evening" means "večer" in Czech.
To není správné.	That's not correct.
Pozor na slovosled.	Pay attention to the word order.
Pozor na výslovnost.	Watch your pronunciation.
Takhle.	In this way.
Tak je to správné.	That's the correct way.
Ne tak.	Not that way.
Vyslovte to takhle.	Pronounce it this way.
Ne tak rychle.	Not so fast.
Tohle je o něco lepší.	That's somewhat better.
Tohle je lepší.	That's better.
Dobře.	Good.
Velmi dobře.	Very good.

The Czech Alphabet

To symbolize native Czech sounds the following letters are used in the Czech spelling system: a,á,b,c,č,d,d',e,é,ě,f,g,h,ch,i,í,j,k,l,m,n,ň,o, ó,p,r,ř,s,š,t,t',u,ú,ů,v,y,ý,z,ž.

The letters g,w, and x are also part of the alphabet, but are used exclusively in the symbolization of foreign words that contain these letters.

Collectively, small letters are called malá písmena (malé písmeno, sg.) and capitals velká písmena (velké písmeno, sg.). Each letter can be precisely defined according to the following examples: a = malé krátké á, A = velké krátké á, á = malé dlouhé á, Á = velké dlouhé á, b = malé bé, B = velké bé, etc.

Letter Name	Printed Form	Written Form	Specific Name of Vowel Letters
á	a A á Á	a A á Á	krátké á dlouhé á
bé	b B	b B	
cé	c C	c C	
čé	č Č	č Č	
dé	d D	d D	
d'é	d' D'[1]	d' D'	
é	e E é É ě	e E é E ě	krátké é dlouhé é é s háčkem
ef	f F	f F	
gé	g G	g G	
há	h H	h H	
chá	ch Ch	ch Ch	
í[2]	i I í Í	i I í Í	krátké í dlouhé í
jé	j J	j J	
ká	k K	k K	
el	l L	l L	
em	m M	m M	
en	n N	n N	

eň	ň Ň	n N	
ó	o O ó Ó	o O ó Ó	krátké ó dlouhé ó
pé	p P	p P	
kvé	q Q	q Q	
er	r R	r R	
eř	ř Ř	ř Ř	
es	s S	s S	
eš	š Š	š Š	
té	t T	t T	
t'é	t' Ť	ť Ť	
ú	u U ú Ú ů	u U ú Ú ů	krátké ú dlouhé ú ú s kroužkem
vé	v V	v V	
dvojité vé	w W	w W	
iks	x X	x X	
ypsilon[3]	y Y ý Ý	y Y ý Ý	krátké ypsilon dlouhé ypsilon
zet	z Z	z Z	
žet	ž Ž	ž Ž	

---

[1] Usage varies in the case of d' and t'; the "háček" may also be used to render these sounds: ď, Ď, ť, Ť.

[2] also called "měkké í"

[3] also called "tvrdé í"

LESSON I

VOCABULARY

a[1](conj.)	and
ale[1](conj.)	but
Amerika(f)	America
autobus(m)	bus
bohužel[2]	sorry, I'm afraid, unfortunately
bratr[3](m)	brother
brzo/brzy[3] (adv.)	early, soon
brzo ráno	early in the morning
co?	what?
často (adv.)	often
čekat (I)	to wait, expect
čekat na + Acc.	to wait for
Československo	Czechoslovakia
dávat (I)	to give
dávat na + Acc.	to put on top of
dělat (I)	to do, make, work
dělat pořádek	to put things in order, straighten up
dívat se[4](I)	to look
dívat se na + Acc.	to look at, watch.
dnes (adv.)	today
doma (adv.)	at home, at one's place
hlad(m)	hunger
hledat (I)	to look for, seek
hudba(f)	music
i[5](= a také)(conj. and adv.)	as well as, and also, even
ještě[6](adv.)	still
kam?[7]	where
kapesník(m)	handkerchief
kašel/kašl(m)	cough
kde?[7]	where?

kdo?	who?
Klára(f)	Klára (feminine name)
kniha(f)	book
matka(f)	mother
Milan(m)	Milan (masculine name)
mít[8](irreg.)	to have
na + Acc.	on, on top of; to (with verbs of motion)
nádraží(n)	railroad station
ne	no
někdy (adv.)	occasionally, sometimes
notýsek/notýsk(m)	pocket-sized book, address book
obědvat (I)	to have lunch
oblékat se (I)	to dress (oneself)
obyčejně (adv.)	usually
odpovídat (I)	to answer, reply
otec/otc(m)	father
pan[9] (m)	Mr.
pan Holan	Mr. Holan (masculine form of a family name)
paní[9] (f)	Mrs., lady
paní Krámská	Mrs. Krámská (feminine form of a family name)
pero/péro (n)	pen
pořád (adv.)	constantly, all the time, still
pořádek/pořádk(m)	order
poslouchat (I)	to listen, obey
pospíchat (I)	to be in a hurry
Praha(f)	Prague
profesor(m)	professor
přednáška(f)	lecture, class
ráno[10](n)	morning
rychle (adv.)	fast, quickly
sestra(f)	sister
slečna[9] (f)	Miss, young woman
slečna Krámská	Miss Krámská

snídat (I)	to have breakfast
strach(m)	fear
stůl(m)	desk, table
tady[11](adv.)	here
také[12](adv.)	also, too
teplota(f)	temperature
už[13](adv.)	already
už ne (adv.)	no longer
vlak(m)	train
volat (I)	to call, phone
vstávat (I)	to get up
vůbec ne (adv.)	not at all
vzpomínat si[14](I)	to remember
vzpomínat si na + Acc.	to recall, think of
vždycky (adv.)	always (on all occasions, at all times)
zítra (adv.)	tomorrow
znát[15](I)	to know (to be acquainted with)
žízeň/žízň(f)	thirst

1 Both a and ale are unstressed: /bratr/a‿sestra/, /vstává,/ ale‿nepospíchá/. Since they are unstressed, they cannot be followed by dependent words such as the enclitics se and si.

> Oblékám se, ale bratr se neobléká.
> Obědvá a vzpomíná si na sestru.

2 bohužel is used to suggest regret or polite refusal, "bohužel pospíchám" (sorry, but I'm in a hurry).

3 These two words contain syllabic r's and therefore are disyllabic.

4 The reflexive pronoun se is invariable and unstressed. It always closely follows the first stressed unit (word or phrase) in a clause. "Dívám se. Slečna Klára se nedívá."

5 i is an emphatic connective and should not be confused with a; "pero a kniha" means "the pen and the book," while "pero i kniha" has the meaning "the pen and also the book, the pen as well as the book." The word i also functions as an emphatic adverb as in: "I pan Holan je tady." with the meaning "Even Mr. Holan is here."

6 ještě, this adverb specifies a lack of change in a situation: "Milan má ještě otce." (Milan still has his father.); "Ještě obědvají." (They are still eating their lunch.). Note the contrast in the use of ještě and už. See note 13.

7 kam and kde both mean where. But kam implies motion, "place to which"; whereas kde implies rest, "place where": "Kam pospícháte?" (Where are you

going in such a hurry?); "Kde máte pero?" (Where is your pen?).

8 A number of idiomatic expressions are formed with mít. Some of them are: mám žízeň (I'm thirsty), mám hlad (I'm hungry), mám strach (I'm afraid), mám kašel (I have a cough), mám teplotu (I'm running a temperature).

9 The three Czech terms of polite address and reference are: pan (Mr.), paní (Mrs.), and slečna (Miss). Pan Holan, paní Krámská, slečna Krámská. All of them are used also with titles: pan profesor, pan doktor, pan profesor Holan, pan doktor Holan. Note that all elements of such phrases are declined, e.g., pana profesora Holana (Acc.).

10 Note that the greeting "Good morning" is "dobré jitro."

11 The word tady is usually unstressed.

12 Note the distinction in meaning: "Paní Krámská také zná pana profesora." (Mrs. Krámská, too knows the professor.), "Paní Krámská také zná pana profesora." (Mrs. Krámská also knows the professor--and not only his wife.). The unstressed také refers to a preceding stressed word or word unit.

13 už is one of the most frequently used idiomatic words and should be used with precision and care; it signifies change from a previous state of affairs: "Obléká se." (He is dressing.), "Už se obléká." (Now he's dressing--a while ago he was not.), "Snídáme." (We're eating breakfast.), "Už snídáme." (We're eating breakfast--finally, with an overtone of satisfaction, relief, irony, etc.). Už also adds emphasis: "Dnes." (Today.), "Už dnes." (This very day--this day, not another one.). In negative constructions už ne means "no longer." "Už nemám strach." (I'm no longer afraid.), "Už si nevzpomínám." (I no longer remember.).

14 si is the other Czech reflexive used with verbs. See note 4.

15 znát implies acquaintance or familiarity with persons, things, places, and phenomena rather than the knowledge of facts.

PRONUNCIATION

Read carefully. Observe the distinction between long and short vowels as well as the position of word stress. Be careful not to place stress on unaccented long vowels. Do not forget the glottal stop before initial vowels.

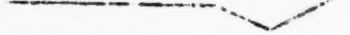
Matka, sestra, otec, pan Holan, autobus.
Klára, paní Krámská, slečna Krámská
Milan má pero.
Milan má hlad.
Milan má žízeň.
Mají strach.
Hledám kapesník.
Díváme se.
Posloucháme hudbu.
Bratr neodpovídá.
Pospíchají na nádraží.
Bohužel vám nerozumím.
Dobrou noc.
Česky se to říká "večer."

Někdy si vzpomínáme na Ameriku.
Otec obyčejně obědvá doma.

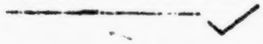
Questions

Questions which represent queries about that which is unknown to the person posing the question and which has not previously been mentioned can be of two kinds. The first is designed to elicit a "yes" or "no" answer, to find out whether something is or is not the case. In this type of question the verb is the first word in the sentence, and the question has a distinctly rising intonation. The last of the stressed syllables has the lowest tone, after which there follows a rise in tone.

Má Klára dnes přednášku?

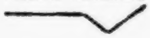


Obědvá Karel doma?



If the last stressed syllable is also the last syllable in the sentence, the rise from low to high tone takes place within this single syllable.

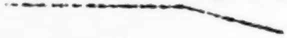
Máte hlad?



The second type of question is designed to find out missing facts or to consolidate sketchy information. It begins with an interrogative word (kde, kam, co, etc.), which is then followed by the most important element of the utterance (in an assertion this element is placed at the end of the sentence). This question has gradually falling intonation which is comparable to, but not as steep as, that of an assertion. Compare:

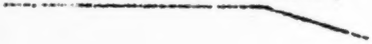
Co hledá Milan?

Milan hledá notýsek.



Jak se říká česky "evening?"

"Evening" se říká "večer."



GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Verbs

This lesson will introduce the student to the infinitive and the present tense forms of one of the several classes of Czech verbs. Not only are these two forms very basic to the verb system but they are also illustrative of a basic dichotomy in the verbal system between present and non-present forms. Because of this fact it will be convenient to speak of present and non-present stems for all classes of verbs. The first class of verbs to be studied has a non-present stem ending in -a and a present stem ending essentially in á. Actually, both present and non-present stems are identical, but historical change has lengthened the -a in all forms of the present with the exception of the third person plural.

Infinitive

The infinitival ending for the first class of verbs and for the great majority of Czech verbs is -t/-ti The non-syllabic variant is prevalent in print and in speech. The infinitive is a non-present form of the verb; therefore its ending is added to the non-present stem:

dáv - a - t	(to give)
odpovíd - a - t	(to answer)

The Czech infinitive has many syntactic usages; for the present it is sufficient to note that it corresponds to the "to" form of the verb in English.

Present Tense

This tense form in Czech is inflected for all three persons in both singular and plural. Like all European languages except English Czech has a second person singular familiar form that is used in addressing members of one's family, friends, intimates, children, inferiors, etc. This form of the verb has many subtle connotations and is best avoided in actual speech by the beginning student of Czech. The second person plural form has two functions: it is the plural form for the corresponding singular, and it is both singular and plural form of polite address. This is the form of the verb the student will ordinarily use in addressing others. These present tense forms of the Czech verb express only the notion of present. There are no Czech verbal forms corresponding to progressive and emphatic locutions in English such as "I am giving", "I do give", but the Czech present tense has to be used to convey the English progressive and emphatic in a rough way. The following table displays the person and number endings for the Czech verb and, at the same time, the division of the stem into root plus thematic element. The various personal pronouns do not appear in the table; they are habitually employed by Czechs for emphasis only.

Class I Verbs

	root		thematic element		personal ending		root		thematic element		personal ending
1sg.	dáv	-	á	-	m	1pl.	dáv	-	á	-	me
2sg.	dáv	-	á	-	š	2pl.	dáv	-	á	-	te
3sg.	dáv	-	á	-	0	3pl.	dáv	-	aj	-	í

N.B. As suggested above, at one time all forms of the present had the combination -aj-. Later this combination coalesced under certain conditions to produce the long -á-.

The Verb "to have"

One very important verb introduced in this lesson is conjugated in the present tense like a Class I verb but has quite a different form in the infinitive. This verb is the verb *mít* (to have) with the following forms in the present:

1sg.	m - á - m	1pl.	m - á - me
2sg.	m - á - š	2pl.	m - á - te
3sg.	m - á - ∅	3pl.	m - aj - í

Negation

To negate a sentence, the prefix *ne-* is used. This prefix is attached to the finite forms of the verbs.

Mají čas.	Nemají čas.
Bratr dnes .	Bratr dnes

Instead of a whole sentence, the adverb *ne* can be used.

Máte čas?	Ne. (Nemám čas.)
Rozumíte mi?	Ne. (Nerozumím vám.)

Note that in these negative expressions stress is shifted to the prefix.

Nemají čas.	Bratr dnes

Exercises

1) Conjugate in both positive and negative forms. Note that the reflexive pronoun (*se*, *si*) always follows the first independent element in the clause and remains invariable.

říkám
odpovídám
oblékám se
hledám knihu
vzpomínám si
pospíchám na autobus
čekám na vlak
poslouchám

2) Use the following verbs and phrases to make sentences on the model of "Čekám, ale Klára nečeká." The initial verb may be conjugated in all persons and both numbers.

vstávat, obědvat, mít strach, dělat pořádek, poslouchat

3) Negate these short sentences in the four indicated ways (i.e., *ne-*, *už ne-*, *už vůbec ne-*, *bohužel ne-*):

Milan odpovídá. Paní Krámská pospíchá. Sestra a Klára mají
žízeň. Ráno posloucháme hudbu. .ekáme na autobus.

4) Using the following nouns as objects of mít, create short sentences with all persons and both numbers, convert them all into questions and use correct intonation:

čas, pero, žízeň, kašel, kapesník, notýsek

Examples:

Mám čas.	Mám čas?
Máš čas.	Máš čas?
etc.	

5) Conjugate the verbs in the following pairs of questions and answers in all persons and both numbers, and pay strict attention to the intonational patterns:

Kam pospíchám?	Pospíchám na nádraží.
Co hledám?	Hledám kapesník.
Kde obědvám?	Obědvám doma.

Nouns

All Czech nouns can be analyzed in such a way that they consist of stems and endings. The stem contains the central meaning of the word, while the ending signals the grammatical features of gender, number, and case.

Gender: All Czech nouns fall into three groups according to whether they are masculine, feminine, or neuter. Some nouns reflect the actual sex of the referent, but the vast majority of nouns are arbitrarily distributed over the three groups.

Case: Nominal forms in Czech are inflected for six basic cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative, which are utilized to express a number of syntactic relationships.

Number: Just as in English Czech nouns display endings for both singular and plural.

In this lesson the student will learn the nominative and accusative singular forms for the main types of Czech nouns in all three genders. The nominative and accusative forms express the basic functional relationships of subject and object, respectively, and give the student the possibility of forming countless sentences through the use of transitive verbs. The presentation below is ordered according to gender, case, character of the stem-final consonant, and animateness.

Nominative Singular

1) MASCULINE nouns have no ending, usually termed "zero" ending:

člověk - ø	(man, human being)	muž - ø	(man, male, husband)
dopis - ø	(letter)	pokoj - ø	(room)

2) a. NEUTER nouns end in -o or -e. The -e is found after stem-final consonants that are palatalized of "soft," i.e., ň, ž, š, č, ř, c, j, and after l, which technically may be either hard or soft but practically cannot indicate either quality in pronunciation; the historical effects of palatalization have produced both the soft consonants and the -e from an original -o.

lét - o	(summer)	moř - e	(sea)
kol - o	(circle, wheel)	pol - e	(field)

b. NEUTER nouns also exhibit the ending -í; all stems here are soft:

náměst - í	(square, plaza)
psan - í	(letter, writing)

3) a. The majority of FEMININE nouns end in -a or -e. Again the -e is to be found after the stem-final palatalizaed consonants, ň, ž, š, č, ř, c, j; after b, p, v and m whose softening or palatalization is indicated by the sign -ě; and after l which technically may be either hard or soft without a difference in quality. In all these cases palatalized consonants effected a shift in quality of the following vowel from an original -a to -e:

žen - a	(woman, wife)	židl - e	(chair)
zem - ě	(land)	prác - e	(work)
sestr - a	(sister)	koup - ě	(buy)

b. A large class of FEMININE nouns has a zero ending. One subclass has a stem-final palatalized consonant or one of the consonants b, p, v, m, l, z that technically may be either hard or soft without a change in quality; the other subclass has the specific termination -st.

píseň - Ø	(song)	radost - Ø	(joy)
postel - Ø	(bed)	kost - Ø	(bone)
noc - Ø	(night)	rez - Ø	(rust)

Accusative Singular

1) ANIMATE MASCULINE nouns (nouns referring to living beings) end in -a or -e. This is a typical a/e alternation, the e after palatalized consonants or after l, which may be technically either hard or soft. After final -l the ending -e or -a will be indicated in the vocabularies.
INANIMATE MASCULINE nouns have zero ending and are therefore identical to the nominative:

člověk - a	(man, person)	muž - e	(husband, man)
učitel - e	(teacher)	pokoj - Ø	(room)
dopis - Ø	(letter)	kapesník - Ø	(handkerchief)

2) All NEUTER nouns are identical to the nominative forms:

lét - o	(summer)	moř - e	(sea)
náměst - í	(square, plaza)	pol - e	(field)

3) a. FEMININE nouns that exhibit a/e in the nominative have u or i, respectively, in the accusative. The i is therefore found in the accusative where the e is found in the nominative, and has been produced from an original u by a shift in quality after soft consonants:

žen - u	(wife, woman)	židl - i	(chair)
zem - i	(land)	sklenic - i	(glass)

b. FEMININE nouns with a zero ending in the nominative are identical in form in the accusative:

píseň - 0	(song)	kost - 0	(bone)
noc - 0	(night)	radost - 0	(joy)

The following table recapitulates the above information:

	MASCULINE				NEUTER			FEMININE		
	ANIMATE		INANIMATE		a)		b)	a)		b)
	hard	soft	hard	soft	hard	soft	soft	hard	soft	
Nom.	-0	-0	-0	-0	-o	-e	-í	-a	-e	-0
Acc.	-a	-e	"	"	"	"	"	-u	-i	"

Double Stems

From the discussion above the student has learned that the stem of a noun can be easily formed by removing any one of its case endings. The vast majority of nouns have only one stem form. Some nouns, however, display two stems, one found before "zero" endings and the other found before all other endings. The stem before zero ending differs consistently from the other stem in that the vowel e is found inserted in the stem-final cluster of consonants. Thus far, it is practicable to point out this phenomenon in the case of five nouns:

otec/otc	(father)	kašel/kašl	(cough)	žízeň/žízň	(thirst)
notýsek/notýsk	(address book)	pořádek/pořádk	(order)		

but in only one case can the distinction be seen at this point in the grammar:

otec (Nom.sg.) vs otce (Acc.sg.)

It may interest the student to know that this e is not really an inserted vowel but is a relic of an earlier period in the history of the language when every stem form of such nouns had a vowel in the position of the e. Whenever such words occur in the vocabulary, both stem forms will be entered and separated by a slash as above.

Exercise

Make a number of sentences from the following lists of subjects, verbal expressions, and objects:

Subjects

bratr
matka
otec
profesor
sestra
paní Krámská
a pan Holan
(Also use only the verb forms for all three persons in both numbers.)

Verbs

čekat na
dávat na (Use two objects)
dělat
dívat se na
hledat
mít
poslouchat
pospíchat
volat
vzpomínat si na

Objects

Amerika
autobus
otec
slečna
hlad
hudba
kapesník
kniha
notýsek
pero
pořádek
stůl
vlak
žízeň

Note: If the student uses two subjects such as "paní Krámská a pan Holan" and if these subjects precede the verb, the verb will naturally be plural. If, however, the subjects follow the verb and if the first subject is singular, then the verb itself is singular, e.g., "Na vlak čeká matka a bratr."

DIALOGUE

Mám žízeň.	I'm thirsty.
Nemám hlad.	I'm not hungry.
Už nemám strach.	I'm not afraid any more.
Mám kašel, ale nemám teplotu.	I have a cough, but I don't have a temperature.
Mám tady pero a knihu.	I have a pen and a book here.
Milan má ještě otce.	Milan still has his father.
Klára má zítra ráno přednášku.	Klára has a lecture tomorrow morning.
Milan tady dělá pořádek.	Milan is getting things in order here.
Čekáte tady na autobus?	Are you waiting for a bus here?
Kde dnes obědváte?	Where are you having lunch today?
Dnes obědvám doma.	Today I'm having lunch at home.
Dnes snídám i obědvám doma.	I'm having both breakfast and lunch at home today.
Kam pospícháte?	Where are you going in such a hurry?

Pospíchám na nádraží.	I'm in a hurry to get to the railroad station.
Paní Krámská také pořád pospíchá.	Mrs. Krámská also is constantly in a hurry.
Co hledáte?	What are you looking for?
Hledám kapesník.	I'm looking for a handkerchief.
Kdo volá?	Who's calling?
Milan neodpovídá a Klára také ne.	Milan doesn't answer, and neither does Klára.
Posloucháte také někdy hudbu?	Do you also listen to music sometimes?
Matka a sestra čekají na vlak.	Mother and sister are waiting for the train.
Dívám se na bratra.	I'm looking at my brother.
Dávám notýsek na stůl.	I'm putting the address book on the table.
Znáte pana Holana?	Do you know Mr. Holan?
Znáte profesora Holana?	Do you know Professor Holan?
Znáte pana profesora Holana?	Do you know Professor Holan? (More polite.)
Ne, neznám.	No, I don't.
Znám Československo, ale neznám bohužel Ameriku.	I'm acquainted with Czechoslovakia, but I'm afraid I don't know America.
Vzpomínám si často na Prahu.	I think of Prague often.
Na slečnu si vůbec nevzpomínám.	I don't remember Klára at all.
Obyčejně vstávám brzo.	I usually get up early.
Ráno se vždycky rychle oblékám.	I always dress quickly in the morning.

READING SELECTION

1. Matka dělá doma pořádek. 2. Volá paní Krámská. 3. Pospíchám, nemám čas. 4. Čekáme na vlak. 5. Hledám notýsek a pero. 6. Neposlouchám hudbu, vzpomínám si na Kláru. 7. Ráno vždycky vstávám brzo a rychle se oblékám. 8. Někdy snídám doma. 9. Někdy také doma obědvám. 10. Dnes doma neobědvám, pospíchám na přednášku. 11. Otec a bratr Kláru znají, ale matka Kláru nezná. 12. Profesor Holan má bohužel teplotu. 13. Mám pořád žízeň. 14. Čekáme tady na Milana. 15. Na otce si už nevzpomínáte? 16. Máte tady také notýsek? 17. Ne, hudbu už vůbec neposlouchám. 18. Kde obyčejně čekáte na autobus? 19. Máte ještě hlad? 20. Slečna Krámská se dívá na stůl a neodpovídá.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. He answers and gets up quickly. 2. Are you still afraid? 3. I sometimes have breakfast at home. 4. My brother is continually looking at Klára. 5. We're calling Prague. 6. I'm sorry, they're listening to a lecture and not to music. 7. Father and brother don't recall Klára (put the prepositional phrase before the verb) at all. 8. The young woman is listening but doesn't answer. 9. Yes, it's right that way. 10. Say that aloud. 11. Please speak Czech. 12. Where are we having lunch tomorrow? 13. I'm in a hurry, I've got a lot of work. 14. Isn't Klára waiting for her sister? 15. Often they don't get up at all. 16. Once more, and clearly. 17. Yes, tomorrow we're having lunch at home. 18. I don't have a cough, but I have a temperature. 19. Speak slowly, I don't understand you. 20. See you later. 21. We're tidying up at home. 22. Milan is acquainted with Czechoslovakia as well as America. 23. What are you looking for here? 24. Klára usually gets dressed quickly. 25. Are you hurrying to the bus? 26. I'm thirsty as well as hungry. 27. I'm also looking for an address book and a pen. 28. Unfortunately, my brother hasn't got time. 29. Where do have lecture tomorrow? 30. I'm already getting up. 31. Who's calling? 32. Yes, I recall now (Use už). 33. Mrs. Krámská and Milan are also in a hurry today. 34. No, thank you, today I'm having lunch at home. 35. I'm answering, but Klára is no longer looking my way (do not translate "my way"). 36. Are you listening?

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Construct short conversations in the classroom around the following verbal phrases:

čekat na vlak
dělat pořádek
vzpomínat si na matku a otce
poslouchat hudbu
dávat knihu na stůl
dívat se na Kláru
hledat pero
pospíchat na autobus
volat sestru
mít teplotu

LESSON II

VOCABULARY

anglicky[1](adv.)	English
ani (negative of i)	not even
ani...ani[2](conj.)	neither...nor
asi (adv.)	perhaps, about, I suppose
bavit se (II)	to have a good time
bolest(f)	pain
cítit (II)	to feel, smell
cítit se[3](II)	to feel
čaj(m)	tea
čepice(f)	cap
česky[1](adv.)	Czech
čtyři	four
denně (adv.)	daily
dobře (adv.)	well, fine
dokonce[4](adv.)	even
doktor(m)	doctor, physician
dole (adv.)	down, below, downstairs
dopis(m)	letter
dostávat (I)	to get, receive
hlásit se (II)	to respond, take a call
hovořit (II)	to talk, chat, converse
hudebník(m)	musician
jako (adv.)	like, as
Jarmila(f)	Jarmila (feminine name)
jasně (adv.)	brightly, clearly
jednání(n)	act, conduct, behavior, action
jen (adv.)	only
jindy (adv.)	at other times
Karel/Karl(m)	Karel (masculine name)
káva(f)	coffee
klobouk(m)	hat
koberec/koberc(m)	rug, carpet
mléko(n)	milk

mluvit (II)	to speak
mýlit se (II)	to be wrong, be mistaken
nahlas (adv.)	aloud
nahoře (adv.)	up, above, upstairs
najednou (adv.)	together, all at once (at the same time)
nalevo (adv.)	on the left, to the left
napravo (adv.)	on the right, to the right
nebo (conj.)	or
nejen...ale (conj.)	not only...but
nosit (II)	to wear
nyní[5] (adv.)	now
obraz(m)	picture, painting
okno(n)	window
opera(f)	opera
opravdu (adv.)	really, indeed
párek/párk(m)	wiener, frankfurter
postel(f)(Nom.pl. -e)	bed
pravda(f)	truth
proč?	why?
prosím[6]	please
radost(f)	joy
rusky[1] (adv.)	Russian
sklenice(f)	glass
skříň(f)(Nom.pl. skříně)	cabinet, closet, wardrobe
slunce(n)	sun
smích(m)	laughter
světlo(n)	light
svítit (II)	to shine, be on (light)
tak (adv.)	so, that way
tam (adv.)	there
tentokrát (adv.)	this time
trochu (adv.)	a little
tři	three
vařit (II)	to boil, make, cook
věc(f)(Nom.pl. -i)	thing
velmi (adv.)	very, much

venku (adv.)	outside
voda(f)	water
vypadat (I)	to look (like)
zase (adv.)	again
židle(f)	chair
život(m)	life

1 Czech does not capitalize adjectives or adverbs referring to nationalities.

2 The connective i is negated as ne-...ani. "Má teplotu i kašel." is negated as "Nemá teplotu ani kašel." The emphatic counterpart i...i (both...and) is negated as ne-...ani...ani (not...either...or). "Má i teplotu i kašel." is negated as "Nemá ani teplotu ani kašel."

3 Cítit is a transitive verb and is used with direct objects as follows: "Cítím bolest." (I feel pain.), "Cítím kávu." (I smell coffee.). In the reflexive usage "Cítím se dobře." (I feel well.) the action of the verb is directed toward the subject symbolized as "se" (myself).

4 Note that dokonce is synonymous with i when the latter is used adverbially. On occasion they may even reinforce one another: "Dokonce i pan profesor je tady."

5 The adverb nyní must not be confused with není (3rd person singular negative of the verb "to be").

6 When prosím is used in a polite request for something without a verb, the object of the request appears in the accusative, thus: "Sklenici, prosím." (A glass, please.).

PRONUNCIATION

Both the introduction and the preceding lesson contain information on Czech stress and its distribution. The following four statements sum up the major points made on this subject:

1) All Czech words have initial stress in isolation, that is, outside a sentence.

2) Czech prepositions are intimately linked with their objects, and most of them (exceptions will be noted later) are stressed; while the word they govern is not.

3) Since the negative prefix ne- forms an integral part of the word to which it is added, it receives the stress.

4) Independent words of one or two syllables are not stressed when they acquire proclitic status; this happens when such words precede a stressed word with which they form a word unit or a short sentence.

Using the above information, find the place of stress in these words, word units, or short sentences:

cítím bolest
dostávat
nedostávat
brzo ráno
nemám klobouk
jednání
pan profesor Holan
paní Krámská
mluvím česky
dobrý večer

na nádraží
čtyři věci
nejasně
nenosím čepici
slunce svítí
neznají pana profesora
tam nahoře
vaříme čaj
jen skříň
na stůl

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Word Order

Czech word order is regulated mainly by two factors. On the one hand, it is organized by specific syntactic rules, such as those concerning the position of modifiers vis-à-vis their governing words, the position of unstressed words, the position of conjunctions, etc. These rules involve rather complex relationships, and their discussion will have to wait for a later occasion. On the other hand, it is also determined by the intent of the speaker, more specifically by the speaker's effort to direct the listener's attention to the words with particular information value. It is this aspect of Czech word order that will be commented upon in this introductory note.

Two prosodic features mark off the normal (that is, stylistically neutral) Czech declarative sentence: falling intonation and stronger final stress. For instance, in the sentence "Postel je nahoře." (The bed is upstairs.) the stress on "nahoře" is stronger than that on "postel"; and the intonation of "nahoře" displays a clear lowering of the tone of voice in comparison with that of the word unit "postel je." Let us examine briefly these two prosodic features. In the first place, it is natural to expect a falling intonation in a normal declarative sentence as the tone of voice falls off toward zero at the end of such sentences. In the second place, we expect a greater stress on final element of such sentences because the vast majority of sentences are embedded in a larger context, and, what is most important, all new material introduced into a given linguistic context is placed at the end of the sentence in which it occurs.

To take again our sentence "Postel je nahoře," obviously "nahoře" represents the end field of this sentence and thus represents its newsworthy, its semantically most important element. From this, one can further conclude that this particular sentence would most likely form a part of a conversation involving the discussion of the location of an already mentioned object--the bed--and that one of the participants in the conversation, ignorant of all the facts, would appreciate being told of the whereabouts of the object. Should, however, this imaginary conversation center around the description of furniture in a room on the upper floor, it is conceivable that the same sentence might be recast to read "Nahoře je postel." Its point could then be, for instance, that an inspection of the room upstairs would establish that there is indeed a bed there or that there is a bed there and not a sofa. In any case, "postel" would always refer to a new or central fact that is being brought into the focus of attention.

It can be noted here that Czech sentences are often constructed in such a way that they are answers to questions that would have to be asked if one expected to hear that specific reply. So for example:

Kde je postel?	Postel je nahoře.
Co je nahoře?	Nahoře je postel.

Finally, it may be of some interest to make one additional observation. While the end field of the Czech declarative sentence is a territory reserved for new or attention-worthy elements, its beginning--which we will term the front field--is the part of the construction that contains information which is either peripheral to the kernel of the message or is already known to the listener or can be readily inferred or reconstructed from the given situation or from experience in general. A few examples:

FRONT FIELD		END FIELD
Vzpomínám si	/	na Kláru.
Tady je jen	/	postel
Ani matka ani sestra se	/	nehlásí.

Together, the front field and the end field form, as it were, the foreground of the sentence. Between them are frequently located words of lesser semantic importance which, in addition, are often, but not necessarily, unstressed. These elements, which are relegated to the background of the sentence, will be treated elsewhere in the text. For the time being, the student will have to be satisfied with developing the skill of arranging Czech sentences according to the basic and simple word-order pattern explained in the preceding paragraphs.

Exercise

Analyze the declarative sentences of the dialogue in this lesson from the point of view of word order. In each case try to justify the particular arrangement of words in both the end field and the front field. Whenever possible, formulate the question that could be answered by the sentence under consideration.

Class II Verbs

In this lesson the student will learn the basic forms for another class of Czech verbs. In this case, too, there is a non-present stem and a present stem. The non-present stem ends in -i, and the present stem ends in -í. A historical change has caused the difference in length between the two thematic elements. The infinitive is formed very simply by adding the -t suffix to the non-present stem:

pros-i-t	(to beg)
mluv-i-t	(to speak)

The present tense forms arise merely by addition of the personal endings to the present stem. The third person plural of this class also requires special attention. Note that the identity of the theme and the third plural ending deletes the theme and causes the third plural form to look exactly like the third singular.

Class II Verbs

	root		theme		personal ending		root		theme		personal ending
1sg.	pros	-	í	-	m	1pl.	pros	-	í	-	me
2sg.	pros	-	í	-	š	2pl.	pros	-	í	-	te
3sg.	pros	-	í	-	0	3pl.	pros	-	(í)	-	í

Present Tense of "být"

It is hardly surprising that Czech, like most other Indo-European languages, uses two quite different stems for the verb "to be." The infinitive and the present tense exemplify the use and distribution of these stems over the non-present and the present. The infinitive is formed simply by adding the usual ending -t to the stem bý: bý - t. The present tense forms are quite irregular, and in some cases the present stem has been obscured. They can only be listed and learned. The j- element preceding the -s- of the stem is sounded only in the spoken form of the literary language.

1sg.	jsem	1pl.	jsme
2sg.	jsi	2pl.	jste
3sg.	je	3pl.	jsou

In the negative forms of the present tense, however, the *-j-* must be pronounced. Pay particular attention to the unusual form of the third person singular.

1sg.	nejsem	1pl.	nejsme
2sg.	nejsi	2pl.	nejste
3sg.	není	3pl.	nejsou

Exercise

Conjugate the verbs in the following short sentences.

Opravdu (bavit se).
(Cítit) bolest.
(Mluvit) nahlas.
Nyní (být) nahoře.
(Nosit) klobouk.
Tentokrát (mýlit se).
(Vypadat) dobře.
(Dostávat) tři dopisy denně.
Proč tam ne- (být)?

Nouns

Nominative Plural

1) ANIMATE MASCULINE nouns have the ending *-i*. When *-i* is affixed to a stem-final hard consonant it causes palatalization, i.e., t > t', d > d', r > ř, n > ň, h > z, k > c, ch > š. INANIMATE MASCULINE nouns display the endings *-y* or *-e*; as usual, the *-e* is employed after stem-final palatalized consonants. Note that the *-y/-e* difference is a specific alternation for case endings and does not occur elsewhere;

doktoř-i	(doctors)	muž-i	(husbands)
ptác-i	(birds)	soudruz-i	(comrades)
dopis-y	(letters)	pokoj-e	(rooms)
stol-y	(tables)	klíč-e	(keys)
notýsk-y	(address books)		

Note the vocalic alternation in the stem of *stoly*. The *ů* occurs only with a zero ending (stůl).

2) a. NEUTER nouns displaying -o/-e in the singular end in -a or -e. The -e is found after palatalized consonants and after -l, which may be technically either hard or soft:

lét-a	(summers)	moř-e	(seas)	pol-e	(fields)

b. NEUTER nouns with -í in the singular have the same ending in the plural:

náměst-í	(squares)
nádraž-í	(railroad stations)

3) a. FEMININE nouns whose singular has -a/-e end in -y or -e with the -e occurring after palatalized consonants, after b, p, v, and m whose softness is indicated by the sign -ě-, and after technically soft l and z:

žen-y	(women)	židl-e	(chairs)
zem-ě	(lands)	koup-ě	(buys)

b. FEMININE nouns with a zero ending in the singular have -e or -i. Stems ending in -st consistently show -i; stems ending in palatalized consonants or in technically soft b, p, m, l, s, or z may have -e or -i and cannot be predicted (the ending -i will be considered regular; only the ending -e will be noted in the vocabularies):

kost-i	(bones)	postel-e	(beds)	věc-i	(things)
radost-i	(joys)	věž-e	(towers)	step-i	(steppes)

Accusative Plural

1) All MASCULINE nouns display the endings -y or -e; the latter is used after palatalized consonants and after a technically soft -l:

soudruh-y	(comrades)	pokoj-e	(rooms)
doktor-y	(doctors)	učitel-e	(teachers)
dopis-y	(letters)	muž-e	(husbands)

2) All NEUTER nouns have endings identical to the nominative endings:

lét-a	(summers)	nádraž-í	(railroad stations)
moř-e	(seas)	jednán-í	(acts)

3) All FEMININE nouns have endings identical to those in the nominative plural:

žen-y	(women)	židl-e	(chairs)
kost-i	(bones)	věž-e	(towers)
věc-i	(things)		

The following table recapitulates the data on plural forms:

	MASCULINE				NEUTER			FEMININE			
	animate		inanimate		a)		b)	a)		b)	
	hard	soft	hard	soft	hard	soft	soft	hard	soft		
Nom.	-i	-i	-y	-e	-a	-e	-í	-y	-e	-i	-e
Acc.	-y	-e	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"

Exercise

From the two columns of nouns on the right select appropriate plural nouns for the sentences on the left.

Čekám na tři ________.

Dnes hledáme čtyři ________.

Jsou tady venku ________.

______ mají ______.

______ nejsou nahoře.

bratr
matka
profesor
sestra
doktor
hudebník
kapesník
kniha
notýsek
pero
přednáška
stůl

vlak
dopis
klobouk
koberec
obraz
párek
postel
sklenice
skříň
světlo
židle

DIALOGUE

Vaří už Jarmila kávu?	Is Jarmila making coffee already?
Vaříte čaj nebo kávu?	Are you making tea or coffee?
Cítím tady kávu.	I smell coffee here.
Cítím bolest.	I feel pain.
Vypadáte dnes velmi dobře.	You look very well today.
Děkuji, cítím se zase dobře.	I feel well again, thank you.
Jarmila se opravdu baví.	Jarmila is really having a good time.
Tentokrát se mýlíte, Jarmila se vůbec nebaví.	This time you're wrong; Jarmila isn't having a good time at all.
Tentokrát se opravdu mýlíte.	This time you are indeed wrong.
Venku svítí slunce.	The sun is shining out.
Dnes slunce zase jasně svítí.	The sun is shining bright again today.

Světlo nesvítí ani dole ani nahoře.	The light isn't on either downstairs or upstairs.
Je tady Karel.	Karel is here.
Je tady voda i sklenice[1].	There's water and also a glass here.
Není tady ani voda ani sklenice.	There's neither water nor a glass here.
Jsou tady věci jako židle, skříně a koberce.	There are things here like chairs, cabinets, and rugs.
Karel tady má také obrazy a knihy.	Karel has also got pictures and books here.
Okno je nalevo, stůl a postel jsou napravo.	The window is to the left; the table and the bed are to the right.
Tady je jen postel[1].	There is only a bed here.
Postel je tady nahoře, není dole.	The bed is upstairs here; it isn't downstairs.
Mluvíte česky?	Do you speak Czech?
Česky bohužel mluvím jen trochu, ale anglicky mluvím dobře, dokonce velmi dobře.	Unfortunately, I speak Czech only a little; but I speak English well, even very well.
Nemluvím ani anglicky ani rusky, mluvím jen česky.	I don't speak either English or Russian; I speak only Czech.
Proč hovoříte tak nahlas a najednou?	Why are you talking so loudly and at the same time?
Někdy nosím klobouk, jindy čepici.	Sometimes I wear a hat, at other times a cap.
Nosím nejen klobouky, ale také čepice.	I don't only wear hats but also caps.
Nosím jen klobouk.	I only wear a hat.
Volám Karla, ale Karel se nehlásí.	I'm calling Karel, but he doesn't respond.
Kdo se tam hlásí?	Who is on the line there?
Ani matka ani sestra se nehlásí.	Neither mother nor sister responds.
Dostáváme denně asi čtyři dopisy.	We get about four letters every day.
Opery mají obyčejně tři jednání.	Operas usually have three acts.
Doktoři jsou často hudebníci.	Doctors are frequently musicians.
Život není jen radost a smích.	Life is not just joy and laughter.
Bratr je nyní nahoře.	Brother is upstairs now.
Bratr není nahoře, je tady dole.	Brother is not upstairs, he is down here.
Mléko, prosím.	Milk, please.
Sklenici, prosím.	A glass, please.

Tři kávy a tři párky, prosím.	Three coffees and three wieners, please.
Jen vodu, prosím.	Just water, please.
Světlo.	Light.
Pravdu, jen pravdu.	The truth, just the truth.

1 In this type of sentence the forms of the verb "být" ("je" and "jsou") may appear in either first or second position with absolutely no difference in meaning. Note that the corresponding English sentences require the expletive "there" when the subject is indefinite.

READING SELECTION

1. Klára má nahoře jen knihy. 2. Pan profesor jindy nemá čas, ale dnes nepospíchá. 3. Je tady nejen paní Krámská, ale také slečna Krámská. 4. Proč dole nesvítí světlo? 5. Jarmila se zase nehlásí. 6. Cítíte tady čaj? 7. Už nenosím ani klobouky ani čepice. 8. Jen kávu, prosím. 9. Někdy se opravdu nebavím. 10. Karel mluví velmi dobře anglicky. 11. Proč nemluvíte česky? 12. Milan mluví jako hudebník. 13. Mám tady také párky a mléko. 14. Dnes venku slunce nesvítí. 15. Sestra nyní zase vypadá dobře. 16. Dostáváte také často dopisy? 17. Nalevo jsou jen okna, napravo jen skříně. 18. Kde je slečna Krámská? 19.Sestra dobře vaří. 20. Ne, mýlíte se, pan Holan už tady není.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Doctor Holan is a musician. 2. Mrs. Krámská has three brothers. 3. Jarmila is mistaken; there is neither a chair nor a table here. 4. I call my sister every day. 5. The sun is shining again now (už). 6. Four lights are burning upstairs. 7. Father feels well today. 8. There is a cabinet downstairs. 9. I have only three letters here now. 10. Karel doesn't speak Russian, but he speaks English. 11. I already speak Czech well. 12. I even wear a cap now. 13. There are beds and cabinets to the right upstairs. 14. Unfortunately, life is not an opera. 15. Are the rugs upstairs or downstairs? 16. Mrs. Krámská always speaks in a loud voice (nahlas). 17. Coffee and a wiener, please. 18. I smell here not only coffee, but also tea. 19. Klára is only acquainted with musicians. 20. Why so often? 21. Milan and his sister are looking at pictures. 22. No, Jarmila doesn't talk that way. 23. Where is Karel? 24. Karel is always at home. 25. Sometimes he takes the call, but sometimes he doesn't take the call either (také). 26. Brother isn't cleaning up upstairs. 27. Do you also frequently receive books? 28. I always speak the truth.

29. We have only three things here: milk, coffee, and tea. 30. Klára is putting four glasses on the table. 31. Life is neither joy nor pain. 32. Now I remember, but not clearly. 33. Is Karel really a doctor? 34. Brother doesn't look well again. 35. Why aren't you having a good time? 36. Not all at once, please. 37. This time I don't feel any pain. 38. Very frequently we chat outside, not in the house (doma). 39. I also make things like tables and beds. 40. Today operas usually don't have four acts. 41. Is life really only joy and laughter?

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Kdo mluví?
Kdo co vaří?
Kdo se hlásí a kdo se nehlásí?
Kdo a co je nahoře a kdo a co je dole?
Kdo co má?
Kdo je tady?
Kdo co dostává?
Kdo co nosí?
Kdo se nemýlí?

LESSON III

VOCABULARY

auto(n)	car
bydlet (III)/bydlit (II)	to live, reside
byt(m)	apartment
cigareta(f)	cigarette
cizí	foreign, somebody else's
cvičení(n)	exercise
čas(m)	time
čerstvý	fresh
další[1]	next, another, further, the following
dlouho (adv.)	for a long time
dobrý	good
domů (adv.)	homeward, home
drahý	dear, expensive
dům/dom[2](m)	house
hoch(m)	boy
chut'(f)(Nom.pl. -e)	appetite, taste
mít chut' na + Acc.	to feel like having
ještě ne (adv.)	not yet
jinde (adv.)	elsewhere
Jiří(m)	Jiří (masculine name)
keř(m)	shrub, bush
kouřit (II)	to smoke
laciný	cheap
lehký	light, easy
letos (adv.)	this year
malý	small
maminka[3](f)	mother, mom
mladý	young
moderní	modern
Mráz (Acc.sg. -e)	family name
muset[4](III)/musit (II)	to have to, must
nemocný	sick, ill
nový	new

odcházet[5] (III)	to leave, go away
ovšem (adv.)	of course
pohodlný	comfortable
pokoj(m)	room, living room, peace
pozdě (adv.)	late
první	first
pryč (adv.)	away, gone
přicházet[5] (III)	to arrive, come
řídit (II)	to operate, direct
řídit auto	to drive a car
sázet (III)	to plant
silný	strong
smět[4] (III)	to be allowed, may
starý	old
strom(m)	tree
student(m)	student
špatný	bad, poor
tak...jako	as...as, (not) so...as
takový	such
takový...jako	such...as
tatínek/tatínk[3] (m)	father, dad
tichý	quiet, silent
uklízet (III)	to tidy up, clean up
umět[4] (III)	to know how to, can
velký/veliký	big, large, great
zahrádka(f)	yard
zdravý	healthy, healthful

[1] When další means "next," it refers to "next in a series," not "next in a temporal sense."

[2] This is the second example we have of the vocalic alternation ů/o (see the discussion in the Introduction). The ů form appears only when the ending is "zero."

[3] Both maminka and tatínek are affectionate terms used freely by children and adolescents. They are also used by grown-ups as an informal but respectful form of address and reference.

[4] Note that muset, smět, and umět are usually modified by an infinitive: "Nesmím kouřit." (I am not allowed to smoke.), "Musejí uklízet." (They have to tidy up.), etc.

5 Note the contrast caused by the prefixes "od-" and "při-" in the verbs odcházet and přicházet; odcházet means "to leave, to go away (tam)," přicházet, on the other hand, means "to arrive, to come here (sem)."

PRONUNCIATION

1) Read the following sentences and observe with particular care the length of the diphthong ou. Pay attention also to word stress, syntactic stress in the end field, and intonation.

> Čekám už dlouho. Mám pohodlnou židli. Co kouříte? Dobrou chut'. Kouříte dlouho? Mají velkou žízeň. Nenosím klobouk. Jiří dlouho hovoří. Máte také takovou knihu?

2) Make sure that you palatalize properly the groups di, ti, ni, and dě, tě, ně in the following sentences.

> Dělám denně pořádek. Karel není nemocný. Nyní už slunce nesvítí. Jarmila není ještě tak stará. Někdy se dívám na hudebníky. První jednání není ani dobré ani špatné. Kdo tě ještě zná? Vzpomínají si na ně často. Oni nyní bydlejí jinde. Tatínek tě ještě nezná.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Class III Verbs

The student will find that class III verbs are quite similar to class II verbs. The only differences lie in the non-present stem and in the third person plural form of the present. The present stem regularly ends in -í, while the non-present stem ends in -e, which causes palatalization of preceding consonants and, therefore, must be written as ě after labials and dentals. As usual, the infinitive is formed by suffixing -t to the non-present stem:

um-ě-t	(to know how)
sáz-e-t	(to plant)

The present tense is arrived at by adding the personal endings to the present stem. The difficulty caused by the third person plural lies in the fact that its theme is the combination -ej-. Note that the -e- of this combination causes palatalization and will be written as -ě- after labials and dentals. This irregular theme -ej- survives from an earlier period in the language before it coalesced to produce -í-, the vowel observed elsewhere in the present tense.

Class III Verbs

	root		theme		personal ending		root		theme		personal ending
1sg.	um	-	í	-	m	1pl.	um	-	í	-	me
2sg.	um	-	í	-	š	2pl.	um	-	í	-	te
3sg.	um	-	í	-	∅	3pl.	um	-	ěj	-	í

Exercises

1) Conjugate each of the three Class III verbs below with the infinitival expressions on the right. Remember that the reflexive pronoun se is an enclitic and appears after the first stressed element of the sentence.

muset		řídit auto
smět	+	dělat pořádek
umět		oblékat se

2) In the following sentences substitute the proper form of the verb for the infinitive.

Nahoře (bydlet) tři hoši.
Karel (sázet) stromy.
(Přicházet) na nádraží. (1sg.)
Dnes zase (uklízet) byt. (1pl.)
Jarmila pořád (kouřit).
(Odcházet) brzo ráno? (2pl.)
Ani maminka ani tatínek (řídit) auto.
(Poslouchat) ještě operu. (1sg.)
(Mýlit se) ani Karel ani Milan.
Klára (nevypadat) vůbec špatně.
Bratr ovšem (volat) otce.
Proč (nesnídat), (pospíchat) na vlak? (2sg.)

Personal and Interrogative Pronouns

Now that the student has learned the nominative and accusative forms of the basic noun patterns, he can turn logically to the corresponding forms for the personal and interrogative pronouns. The former are, on the one hand, the words that denote the participants in the speech event, the pronouns for the first and second persons corresponding to the English I/me, we/us, and you; and, on the other hand, the words that refer to objects that are not participants in the speech act, the so-called third person pronouns represented in English by he/him, she/her, it, and they/them. The student has already seen that the nominative forms of the personal pronouns are used only for varying degrees of emphasis although the third person pronouns will necessarily be encountered more frequently for clarity of reference because of the arbitrary assignment of gender among Czech nouns. The student must note the gender distinctions among the third person pronouns and must learn to apply them accurately to their referents. Some pronouns have both independent and dependent forms for the accusative. The dependent forms, as already explained, are enclitic in nature and can never appear in the first position in a sentence. Where there is only one form in the accusative, it may function either as an independent word or as a dependent word. The forms for the interrogative pronouns are self-explanatory. Study the following tables of interrogative and personal pronouns and learn all the forms.

Interrogative

	who	what
Nom.	kdo	co
Acc.	koho	co

Personal

		1 sg.	2 sg.	1 pl.	2 pl.	3sg. masc.		3sg. neut.	3sg. fem.	3pl. masc. anim.	3pl. masc. inan.	3pl. neut.	3pl. fem.
independent	nom.	já	ty	my	vy	on		ono	ona	oni	ony	ona	ony
	acc.	mne	tebe	nás	vás	jeho anim.	jej inan.	je	ji	je	je	je	je
dependent		mě	tě			ho anim.							

The independent stressed forms of personal pronouns in the accusative are used either for emphasis or to point out a contrast. They are also employed after prepositions though in this case their stress is shifted over to the preposition.

1) Emphatic use.
Note that in these emphatic sentences the word with the strongest stress appears in initial position.

Mne Klára nezná.
Tebe znám.
Jeho ovšem znáte.
Vás znají dobře.
Ji už nevolám.

2) Contrastive use.
Note that two different persons or a person and an inanimate object can be contrasted but two inanimate objects are not contrasted in this way.

Odpovídám, ale on neposlouchá. (Note this example!)
Neznám tebe, ale znám jeho.
Or also: Tebe neznám, ale jeho znám.
Ji neznáme, ale tebe známe.

3) Use with prepositions.
Note that the initial j of the third person pronoun changes to palatal ň after prepositions.

Ovšem, vzpomínám si na něj (stůl).
Vždycky si na něho vzpomínáme.
Na něho si vždycky vzpomínáme. (Emphasis.)
Nevzpomíná si ani na ně ani na tebe.
Na něho si vzpomínáme, ale na ni si nevzpomínáme. (Contrast.)

Exercise

1) Substitute the proper accusative form, dependent or independent, for the nominative. Read the resulting sentences and observe the order of words.

On (já) dobře zná.
Neznám (ona).
Na (ty) si už bohužel nevzpomínám.
Dnes na (vy) nečekáme.
Na (já) vůbec nečekáte?
Ani sestra ani bratr si na (on) nevzpomínají.
Nosíte klobouky? Ne, nenosím (ony).
Znáte Kláru? Ne, neznám (ona).
Vaříte čaj? Ne, nevařím (on).
Máte chut' na mléko? Ano, mám na (ono) chut'.
Máte někdy chut' na dobrou vodu? Ano, někdy na (ona) mám chut'.
Na (ty) se nedívám, dívám se na (on).
Kouříte ještě cigarety? Ne, už (ony) nekouřím.
Uklízíte dnes byt? Ano, dnes (on) musím uklízet.
Jiří nezná (my) ani (vy).
(Kdo) tady neznáte?

Adjectives

The student can readily appreciate the fact that there is a close syntactic connection between adjectives and the nouns to which they refer whether the adjectives are used predicatively after the verb "to be" or attributively just before the nouns. The Czech language records this connection in its morphology by requiring that adjectives have special endings for agreement with their nouns in number, case, and gender. In this lesson the student will become acquainted with the declensional forms of both hard and soft adjectives for nominative and accusative singular and plural in all three genders. This material will enable the student to combine adjectives with all the nominal forms he has studied thus far. The category of soft adjectives will hardly increase the inventory of items to be learned. Note the prevalence of the ending -í among the soft adjectives, and that this front vowel will soften, if possible, all immediately preceding consonants.

Singular

Nominative

Hard adjectives have -ý in the masculine, -é in the neuter and -á in the feminine. Soft adjectives exhibit -í in all three genders.

Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
dobr-ý	(good)	dobr-é	dobr-á
lehk-ý	(light)	lehk-é	lehk-á
ciz-í	(foreign)	ciz-í	ciz-í
prvn-í	(first)	prvn-í	prvn-í

Accusative

Just as among the nouns, the MASCULINE ANIMATE forms differ from the inanimate. The former end in -ého for hard adjectives and -ího for soft. MASCULINE INANIMATE forms and NEUTER forms are identical to the nominative forms, i.e., -ý (hard) and -í (soft) and -é (hard) and -í (soft). The FEMININE forms have -ou- for hard stems and the usual -í for soft stems.

	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
inanimate	dobr-ý	(good)	dobr-é	dobr-ou
animate	lehk-ého	(light)	lehk-é	lehk-ou
inanimate	ciz-í	(foreign)	ciz-í	ciz-í
animate	prvn-ího	(first)	prvn-í	prvn-í

Plural

Nominative

The distinction already observed between animate and inanimate masculine nouns in this case form is carried through among the hard adjectives. The MASCULINE INANIMATE ending is -é, the MASCULINE ANIMATE ending is -í. Note carefully that the latter ending will soften all possible preceding consonants. The hard endings for the neuter and feminine are -á and -é, respectively. As expected, the soft endings are everywhere -í.

	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
inanimate	dobr-é	(good)	dobr-á	dobr-é
	lehk-é	(light)	lehk-á	lehk-é
	drah-é	(dear)	drah-á	drah-é
	tich-é	(quiet)	tich-á	tich-é
animate	dobř-í			
	lehc-í			
	draz-í			
	tiš-í			
inan./anim.	ciz-í	(foreign)	ciz-í	ciz-í
	prvn-í	(first)	prvn-í	prvn-í

Accusative

The category of animateness is not expressed in the accusative plural. All endings here coincide exactly with the nominative plural forms, the masculine endings with the inanimate forms of the nominative.

Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
dobr-é	(good)	dobr-á	dobr-é
lehk-é	(light)	lehk-á	lehk-é
ciz-í	(foreign)	ciz-í	ciz-í
prvn-í	(first)	prvn-í	prvn-í

Study the following table that summarizes the above information on adjectival forms:

	MASCULINE				NEUTER		FEMININE	
	animate		inanimate					
	hard	soft	hard	soft	hard	soft	hard	soft
Singular								
Nom.	-ý	-í	-ý	-í	-é	-í	-á	-í
Acc.	-ého	-ího	-ý	-í	-é	-í	-ou	-í
Plural								
Nom.	-í	-í	-é	-í	-á	-í	-é	-í
Acc.	-é	-í	-é	-í	-á	-í	-é	-í

Exercises

1) Combine the following nouns and adjectives into noun phrases in nominative and accusative and in both numbers. Be selective; do only a reasonable number.

kapesník
profesor
sklenice
cvičení
hudebník
pokoj
hoch
zahrádka
sestra
byt
okno
skříň

cizí
malý
první
špatný
další
velký
dobrý

2) Conjugate the verbs in the following sentences, using the predicate adjectives or the direct objects in the same number as the subjects.

Jsem tak velký jako bratr.
Nejsem tak starý jako sestra.
Nemám takové pero jako ty.
Vařím tak dobrou kávu jako on.
Nemám tak pohodlný pokoj.
Tak drahou židli jako ty nemám.

DIALOGUE

Mám chuť na párky.	I feel like having wieners.
Mám chuť na čerstvé mléko.	I feel like having fresh milk.
Máte také chuť na dobrou vodu?	Do you also feel like having some good water?
Dobrou chuť.[1]	Bon appétit!

Káva je dnes velmi dobrá.	The coffee is very good today.
Čaj není vůbec špatný.	The tea isn't bad at all.
Co dělám? Uklízím byt.	What am I doing? I am cleaning up the apartment.
Nemám čas, dnes musím uklízet.	I haven't any time; I have to clean up the place today.
Dnes už musím zase uklízet.	I must tidy up the place again now today.
Dole bydlí tři cizí studenti, tři tiší hoši.	Downstairs there live three foreign students, three quiet boys.
Kde bydlíte?	Where do you live?
Bydlíte tady?	Do you live here?
Ne, tady nebydlím, bydlím jinde.	No, I don't live here; I live elsewhere.
Tady nejsou ani moderní domy ani pohodlné byty.	There are neither modern houses nor comfortable apartments here.
Moderní byty jsou obyčejně pohodlné.	Modern apartments are usually comfortable.
Moderní židle nejsou tak pohodlné jako moderní postele.	Modern chairs are not as comfortable as modern beds.
Karel je tak starý jako Milan a Jiří.	Karel is as old as Milan and Jiří.
Takový zdravý hoch jako Milan musí být opravdu silný.	Such a healthy boy as Milan must be really strong.
Československo není tak velké jako Amerika.	Czechoslovakia isn't as large as America.
Mají dům a zahrádku a sázejí tam keře a stromy.	They have a house and yard, and they are planting shrubs and trees there.
Klára je malá, ale Jiří je velký.	Klára is small, but Jiří is big.
Jiří má nové auto.	Jiří has a new car.
Umíte řídit auto?	Do you know how to drive a car?
Ovšem, umím.	Of course, I do.
Oni se bohužel neumějí bavit.[2]	I'm afraid they don't know how to have a good time.
Karel a Milan se umějí bavit.	Karel and Milan know how to have a good time.
Máte také tak velký hlad jako já?	Are you also as hungry as I am?
Maminka už není mladá.	Mother is no longer young.
Maminka ještě není stará.	Mother is still not old.
Klára je ještě malá, ale Jiří je už velký.	Klára is still small, but Jiří is already big.

Pokoje nahoře jsou malé, ale tiché.	The rooms upstairs are small, but quiet.
Proč jsou letos cigarety tak drahé?	Why are cigarettes so expensive this year?
Nekouřím ani drahé ani laciné cigarety, já vůbec nekouřím.	I don't smoke either expensive or cheap cigarettes; I don't smoke at all.
Nesmíte tady hovořit tak nahlas, tatínek je nemocný.	You mustn't talk so loud here; father is ill.
Smíte už zase kouřit?	Are you allowed to smoke again now?
Smějí tady být?	Are they allowed to be here?
První cvičení je vždycky lehké, ale další cvičení už lehká nejsou.	The first exercise is always easy, but the following exercises are not easy any more.
Kam odcházejí?	Where are they going?
Odcházejí domů.	They are going home.
Proč odcházejí tak brzo?	Why are they leaving so soon?
Proč tam odcházíte tak brzo, máte ještě čas.	Why are you going there so soon? You still have time.
Přicházíte pozdě, Karel už je pryč.	You are late; Karel is already gone.
Přichází sem Jarmila často?	Does Jarmila come here often?
Jste pan Mráz?	Are you Mr. Mráz?
Ne, já jsem profesor Holan.	No, I'm Professor Holan.
Tak vy nejste pan Mráz?	So you're not Mr. Mráz?
Znáte tatínka?	Do you know my father?
On tě nezná.[3]	He doesn't know you.
Já ho znám, ale ty ho neznáš.	I know him, but you don't know him.
Mne také nezná.	He doesn't know me either.
Zná ovšem tebe a pana Holana.	Of course, he knows you and Mr. Holan.
Paní Krámská zná nejen mne, ale také tebe.	Mrs. Krámská not only knows me, but also you.
Ji znám dlouho, ale neznám vůbec jeho.	I have known her for a long time, but I don't know him at all.
Jarmila a Klára bydlí nahoře, znáš je?	Jarmila and Klára live upstairs; do you know them?
Já jsem Karel Mráz, vzpomínáte si na mne?	I am Karel Mráz; do you remember me?

Ovšem, vzpomínám si na vás.	Of course, I remember you.
A na Karla a na Milana si také vzpomínáte?	And do you also remember Karel and Milan?
Ne, na ně si už nevzpomínám.	No, I don't remember them any more.

1 This is an example of another use of the accusative. This case form is used not only in requests (see Lesson 2, note 5) but also in greetings and wishes.

2 Personal pronouns are normally not used as subjects, but they are required for emphasis. In this case the pronoun oni may suggest some sort of personal attitude or feeling, perhaps indignation, resignation, or the like. See also the grammar section of this lesson.

3 In addressing people, ty (instead of vy) should be used with discretion. Ty expresses intimacy and is therefore out of place where personal and social considerations--not to speak of formality--are of importance. It is best to restrict the use of ty to speaking with children (perhaps up to the age of fourteen), with one's family, and with one's close friends. Never use ty with titles (such as doktor, profesor) or with pan, paní, and slečna.

READING SELECTION

Read carefully and translate into English.

1. Čekáme na ni už dlouho. 2. Na ně musíme vždycky čekat dlouho. 3. Oni
čekají na ně, ne na nás. 4. Oni na vás už bohužel nečekají. 5. Znáš ho tak
dobře jako Jarmilu? 6. My ji neznáme tak dobře jako tebe. 7. Ne, mne Milan
nezná. 8. A je asi také nezná. 9. Je Jiří doma nebo je pryč? 10. Musí být
venku, tady není. 11. Tady nahoře Jiří není, je dole. 12. Kde je Jiří?
13. Má tady Jiří pokoj? 14. Nemám takový pokoj jako má Jiří. 15. Karel sem
přichází vždycky pozdě. 16. Odchází bohužel brzo. 17. On obyčejně doma není.
18. Jak velká je Jarmila? 19. Je tak velká jako Karel. 20. Ne, ani Karel
ani Milan nejsou tak velcí. 21. Moderní byty jsou pohodlné, ale nejsou laciné.
22. Musí být drahý dům opravdu dobrý? 23. Smím tady kouřit? 24. Proč ne-
kouříte cizí cigarety, jsou drahé? 25. I doktoři jsou někdy nemocní. 26. Umí
vařit jen vodu. 27. Pan profesor se ovšem zase nebaví. 28. Proč pořád
uklízíte? 29. Mám chut' na čerstvý párek. 20. Ani první ani další cvičení
tady nejsou; kde jsou?

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

Translate from English into Czech.

1. May I drive the car today? 2. There is only an old bus and three new cars
here. 3. We have a quiet little yard. 4. Young Mrs. Kràmská is straightening
up upstairs. 5. Do you still feel like some fresh coffee? 6. She is sick,
but she doesn't feel any pain. 7. Jiří is looking at the modern rugs. 8, Karel
sometimes comes home early (Use už) in the morning. 9. I've got an

address book just like yours (use takový). 10. Why does Klára wear only cheap hats now? 11. Father is listening to light music upstairs. 12. Both Jarmila and Klára are ill. 13. Do you already know how to make coffee? 14. Don't you really know us? 15. He is not only a poor student but also a poor musician. 16. Why do you listen only to modern operas? 17. The first act isn't at all good. 18. There is another student here; he is looking for a room. 19. Do you have to smoke all the time? 20. Good night. 21. We don't have as comfortable a room as you. 22. I don't get up as late as you do. 23. Are you looking for them again? (Use už.) 24. Mother has her things elsewhere. 25. Jarmila is getting dressed and is going out. 26. Do they always leave that late? 27. Why is he still away? 28. The boys are always thinking about you. (Use singular.) 29. Have you got another new picture here? 30. You're wrong; new houses are not always expensive. 31. Such things as cigarettes and coffee are not really healthful. 32. Have you been waiting for her a long time? 33. We must plant only trees this year. 34. Unfortunately, my brother hasn't got an apartment yet. 35. Is Klára as old as Jarmila? 36. Do doctors smoke at all? 37. I do know him (ovšem), but not well. 38. Who knows how to make really good coffee? 39. I'm waiting here for our little Karel. 40. Are you having a very good time? 41. We live downstairs here, but they have an apartment upstairs.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Kouříte?
Na co máte chuť?
Proč odcházíte?
Co umíte?
Co nesmíte?
Vzpomínáte si na mne?
Kdo bydlí nahoře a kdo bydlí dole?
Kdo je tak velký jako kdo?
Co je moderní a co je staré?
Kdo je velký a kdo je malý?
Kdo je zdravý a kdo je nemocný?
Kdo volá doktora?
Kdo pořád uklízí?
Co dostáváte?
Už zase máte čas?

LESSON IV

VOCABULARY

bát se (IV)	to be afraid (of)
bezděčně (adv.)	involuntarily, unconsciously, unintentionally
blondýnka(f)	blonde
celý	whole, entire, all of
člověk(m)	man (human being), person
dálka(f)	distance, long way
dětský	children's, childish
dívka(f)	girl, young girl
držet (IV)	to hold, keep
hezký[1]	nice, fine, pretty, handsome
hlas(m)	voice
hluchý	deaf
hora(f)	mountain
horko(n)	heat
je horko	it's hot
chvála(f)	praise
chystat (I)	to prepare, make ready
jak (adv.)	how, as
jaký[2]	what (kind of, sort of)
jaro(n)(loc.sg. -u)	spring
jeden, jedna, jedno[3]	one
jediný	single, only
jíst (irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)	to eat
kdykoli (adv.)	whenever
kopec/kopc(m)	hill
krajina(f)	landscape, scenery
křičet (IV)	to shout, cry
který[2]	which, what
kupodivu (adv.)	surprisingly (enough), oddly (enough)
květina(f)	flower
lavička(f)	bench
lampa(f)	lamp
letní	summer (adj.)

léto(n)	summer
ležet (IV)	to lie
lidé[4]	people, human beings
lingvistika(f)	linguistics
město(n)	city, town
Milena	Milena (feminine name)
modrý	blue
možná	perhaps, possibly, maybe
možná, že	it is possible that
myslet (IV)/myslit (II)	to think
na + Loc.	on, in, at
naproti (adv.)	opposite, across the street
návštěvník(m)	visitor
návštěva(f)	call, visit, company
nebe[5](n) (Loc. sg. -i)	sky
nějaký[6]	some (kind of)
nerad (See rád)	
nízký	low
o + Loc.	about, of
odpoledne[5](n) (Loc. sg. -i)	afternoon
otevřený	open
park(m)	park
patrně (adv.)	apparently
pěkný[1]	fine, pretty
plán(m) (Loc. sg. -u)	plan
po + Loc.	after, along, up and down, all over
podzim(m) (Loc. sg. -u)	autumn, fall
poloha(f)	situation, position, location
posílat (I)	to send
pošta(f)	post office
potkávat (I)	to meet (a person) (by chance)
pravda(f)	truth
mít pravdu	to be right
procházka(f)	walk
proto (adv.)	that is why, therefore
protože (conj.)	because

pršet (IV)	to rain
při + Loc.[7]	near (also expresses various accompanying circumstances)
příjemný[1]	pleasant, agreeable
příroda(f)	nature
přítel[8](m)(Acc.sg. -e)	friend
přitom (adv.)	at the same time
rád[9]	glad, happy
rád + Verb[9]	to like (to), love (to)
mít rád + Noun[9]	to like
roh(m)	corner
rok(m)(Loc.sg. roce/roku)	year
ruka[10](f)	hand
rýma(f)	cold (illness)
řada(f)	row, series, sequence, line
říkat (I)	to say, tell
sedět (IV)	to sit, be sitting
slyšet (IV)	to hear
spát (irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)	to sleep, be asleep
stát (IV)	to stand, cost
stěna(f)	wall
studentka(f)	student (female)
svátek/svátk(m)	holiday
tamhle[11](adv.)	over there, right there
telegram(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	telegram, wire
teplý	warm
ticho(n)	silence, quiet
totiž[12](adv.)	that is to say, it's just that, just, exactly
universita(f)	university
v + Loc.	in, at
vážně (adv.)	seriously
večeře(f)	supper
vědět[11](irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)	to know
vidět (IV)	to see
viset (III)	to hang, be suspended
vlhký	damp, moist

voňavý	fragrant, perfumed
všude (adv.)	everywhere
vysoký	high, tall
zdání	
nemít zdání	to have no idea
zelený	green
zima(f)	winter
znít[14]	to sound, resound
zřejmě (adv.)	obviously, evidently
zvlášť' (adv.)	in particular, especially
že (conjunction introducing noun clauses)	that
živý	alive, lively, vivid

1 There are three adjectives in Czech that may correspond in meaning to the English adjective "nice": hezký, pěkný, and příjemný, but they do have important semantic differences. Strictly speaking, hezký refers to outward appearances; pěkný refers to intrinsic qualities; and příjemný refers to an effect on someone. These semantic differences are observed in careful usage, but hezký and pěkný are frequently interchangeable in more casual usage. Note carefully the following examples:

hezký dům	a pretty house
pěkný dům	a nice house (well built, well planned, well furnished)
příjemný dům	a pleasant house (atmosphere)

2 See the Grammar Analysis section for an explanation of these pronominal adjectives.

3 This Czech word corresponds to the English word "one." It is naturally used in counting, but it is also used to refer to a particular object among a number of similar objects. The full declension of this pronoun will be given in Lesson VII. Study the following examples:

Jsme v parku; na jedné lavičce sedí mladá dívka.
(We are in the park; on one of the benches there sits a young girl.)

Mladá dívka sedí na lavičce.
(A young girl is sitting on a bench (not on the grass)).

4 This is the plural of člověk; it is masculine in gender. Except for the nominative case it is declined like the plural of kost; therefore the accusative is lidi, and the locative is lidech.

5 These neuter nouns have soft stems, but the ending -e does not palatalize the stem-final consonant, as one would expect. The plural of nebe is irregular; it has the stem nebes- and takes the hard endings: Nom./Acc. nebesa, Loc. nebesech.

6 This word may be termed an indefinite qualitative pronominal adjective. The qualification "indefinite" means that the speaker either does not know or does not care what kind of object he is referring to. Observe its use in the following sentences:

Naproti v okně vidím nějaké květiny.
Je tady nějaký pán a hledá Karla.

7 The following sentences will illustrate some of the accompanying circumstances referred to in the definition:

při hudbě	while listening to music
při cvičení	during the exercise
při přednášce	at the lecture
při kávě	over coffee

8 The irregular plural of this noun will be given in Lesson X.

9 See the Grammar Analysis section for an explanation of the various uses of this important adjective.

10 The plural forms of this noun are usually irregular because they have been influenced by old dual forms: Nom./Acc. ruce, Loc. rukou/rukách.

11 This adverb of place must be used whenever some location can be pointed out; in this respect it must be distinguished from tam. Thus: Karel bydlí v domě naproti; bydlí tam také Milena. Bydlí tady Milena? Ne, Milena bydlí tamhle naproti.

12 This adverb introduces and accompanies some explanation, justification, or reason which appears parenthetically in a given sentence. Consider carefully how you would translate the following sentences into English.

Karel, totiž bratr, tady ještě není.
Nemám nyní čas, pospíchám totiž na nádraží.
Tatínek bohužel nespí, on má totiž teplotu.
V domě naproti ještě svítí světlo, mají tam
totiž návštěvu.

13 Be careful to distinguish between vědět and znát, both of which may be translated by the English verb "know." The verb vědět means "to be aware of a fact, to have information about a fact." On the other hand, the verb znát carries the sense of "being acquainted with." See the exercises in the Grammar Analysis and the sentences in the Dialogue.

14 Even though this verb appears to belong to Class II, the student will eventually learn that it is a Class IV verb. He must note, however, that the infinitive znít is irregular.

PRONUNCIATION

Referring back to the Introduction for information concerning their pronunciation, try to articulate adequately the two difficult Czech consonants h and ch. In particular, concentrate on h. Remember that repeated exercise is required if you are to emulate the native speaker in his rendering of these two fricatives.

> Dlouhá a pohodlná procházka. Je horko. Už nemám chuť. (Contrast with *huť* "iron works."). Máte hlad? (Contrast with *chlad* "coolness."). Hluchý hoch. Tamhle je Jiří. Nashledanou. Ticho, prosím. Bohužel už odcházím. Hledají nějaký byt. Nahoře jsou vlhké stěny. Velká chvála. Posloucháme Prahu. Proč nemluvíš nahlas? V rohu stojí postel. Drahé, ale rychlé auto.

Note that *ch* is considered as one letter and that in the Czech alphabet it follows *h*. In this regard, it may be added that in Czech dictionaries d:ď, n:ň, t:ť are not treated as two separate letters but as one. Thus, to select a few examples from Ivan Poldauf's *Czech-English Dictionary*, (3rd ed., Prague, 1968), "ďábel" is listed under *d* (p.82), "ňouma" under *n* (p.451), and "ťuknout" under *t* (p.936). On the other hand, c:č, s:š, and z:ž are regarded as two different letters and entries beginning with these letters will be found listed separately.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Locative Singular (Nouns)

The concept of the locative case will be a very useful one for the student to operate with in the Czech language. It is aptly named, for it places the action or state expressed by the verb in point of time, place, or object. The locative case is always used after certain prepositions in Czech. These prepositions are *v(ve)* "*in*," *na* "on," *o* "about, concerning," *po* "after," *při* "near, by"; and their specific meanings correspond to the general sense of the locative case.

There are a number of irregularities found in the formation of the locative singular, but most of these occur with inanimate masculine nouns ending in hard consonants and can be best solved by supplying the locative form for these words when they occur in the vocabularies. The general morphological picture here is fairly simple: inanimate masculine nouns, neuter nouns, and feminine nouns have *-e* after hard stems and *-i* after soft. The vowel *-e* will cause palatalization of all possible stem-final hard consonants and will therefore be written *-ě* after p, b, m, f, v, t, d, n.

Masculine:

dopis > dopise
hlad > hladě
dům > domě

kašel > kašli
pokoj > pokoji

Neuter:

léto > létě
kolo > kole
okno > okně

moře > moři
pole > poli
nádraží > nádraží

Feminine:

žena > ženě
kniha > knize
matka > matce

píseň > písni
postel > posteli
noc > noci

země > zemi
židle > židli
práce > práci

radost > radosti
kost > kosti
rez > rzi

The first complication is caused by animate masculine nouns, where soft stems take -i, as expected; but hard stems display -u. In addition, both hard and soft stems may have an laternate ending -ovi. When one noun appears alone in the locative singular, the student is advised to use -ovi. When, however, two or more nouns are employed together as titles such as Mr. Holan or Dr. Novák, then the last noun in the series will have -ovi; and all other nouns will have -u/-i.

člověk > člověku/člověkovi
učitel > učiteli/učitelovi
pan Holan > panu Holanovi

muž > muži/mužovi
lékař > lékaři/lékařovi
doktor Novák > doktoru Novákovi

The second complication is represented by inanimate masculine nouns and some neuter nouns whose final consonant is hard. A number of such nouns may take the ending -u instead of the expected -e. The nouns that most consistently use -u are those masculine and neuter stems ending in the consonants -g/-k/-ch/-h. Such nouns will be considered regular and will not be marked in the vocabularies. Masculine nouns ending in the labials -p/-b/-f/-v/-m and the trill -r frequently have -u in the locative singular, as well as various types of abstract nouns and foreign words ending in any consonant. All these latter nouns will be marked for the student as he meets them in the vocabularies.

park > parku
vlak > vlaku
strach > strachu
roh > rohu
dialog > dialogu
mír > míru
sever > severu

příkaz > příkazu
počet > počtu
smysl > smyslu
mléko > mléku
horizont > horizontu
text > textu
družstvo > družstvu

(Note also that the vocabulary word pero has Loc.sg. peru.)

Locative Plural

The locative plural also exhibits some complexities, but these are not nearly so difficult to deal with as the idiosyncracies of the singular. Among masculine and neuter nouns hard stems take -ech and soft stems take -ích. Among feminine nouns hard stems acquire the ending -ách and soft stems the ending -ích. Note, however, that most feminine nouns with a zero ending in the nominative and accusative singular have the ending -ech. Because this is not a universal rule, the locative plural forms in -ích for such feminine nouns will be indicated in the vocabularies.

Masculine:

dopis	>	dopisech		muž	>	mužích
dům	>	domech		pokoj	>	pokojích
plán	>	plánech		lékař	>	lékařích
doktor	>	doktorech				

Neuter:

léto	>	létech		moře	>	mořích
kolo	>	kolech		pole	>	polích
pero	>	perech		nádraží	>	nádražích

Feminine:

žena	>	ženách		země	>	zemích
kniha	>	knihách		židle	>	židlích
matka	>	matkách		růže	>	růžích
věc	>	věcech		píseň	>	písních
kost	>	kostech	but	noc	>	nocích
radost	>	radostech				

A certain complication is introduced in the locative plural formation by the fact that all masculine nouns ending in the consonants -k, -g, -ch, -h consistently take the termination -ích, wherein the -í- of the ending causes softening of the preceding consonant.

Čech	>	Češích	dialog	>	dialozích
park	>	parcích	kolega	>	kolezích
voják	>	vojácích	dluh	>	dluzích

It also appears that Czech speakers try to avoid the sequence -eC + ech (where C= any consonant) in the locative plural of masculine nouns. They give preference to the ending -ích. Note the following examples:

hotel	>	hotelích	sklep	>	sklepích
kostel	>	kostelích	les	>	lesích

Below are listed the unpredictable locative plural forms for feminine nouns used in previous lessons. The locative case forms, both singular and plural, for all other nouns from the first three lessons can be supplied by the student.

chut'	>	chutích	skříň	>	skříních
postel	>	postelích			

Locative Case (Pronouns)

Learn the locative case forms for the personal and interrogative pronouns from the following tables. Since the locative case is used exclusively with prepositions, the n-, which is prefixed to the third person pronouns when they are used after prepositions, appears with these pronouns.

Personal

		Singular	Plural
1		mně	nás
2		tobě	vás
3	M/N	něm	nich
	F	ní	

Interrogative

who	what
kom	čem

Locative Case (Adjectives)

The adjectival endings for the locative case are straightforward. In the singular hard stems display the ending -ém for masculine and neuter, -é for feminine. Soft stems have -ím for masculine and neuter, -í for feminine.

Masc./Neut.		Fem.
dobr-ém	(good)	dobr-é
lehk-ém	(light)	lehk-é
ciz-ím	(foreign)	ciz-í
prvn-ím	(first)	prvn-í

In the plural number all genders share one ending which appears orthograficnlly as -ých for hard stems and as -ích for soft stems.

dobr-ých	ciz-ích
lehk-ých	prvn-ích

Adjectival inflection for the locative may be summarized as follows:

	Singular		Plural
	M/N	F	
Hard	-ém	-é	-ých
Soft	-ím	-í	-ích

Exercise

1) Place each noun in the locative case in both singular and plural numbers; then substitute the appropriate pronoun for each noun. Pronounce carefully each preposition with its accompanying noun or pronoun.

v + příroda, auto, kapesník
na + klobouk, lavička, okno
po + návštěva, nádraží, pokoj
o + svátek, skříň, jaro
při + židle, světlo, tatínek

2) Convert the following noun phrases into their locative case forms in both numbers.

voňavá květina
první město
živý hudebník
příjemná blondýnka
otevřené okno
zdravý student
tichý park
velká hora
modré pero
nějaký strom
pěkná zahrádka
celé odpoledne

3) From the list of nouns on the right select all appropriate nouns for each sentence on the left. Put each noun selected in both locative singular and plural, if possible.

Na ______ leží jen dopisy.
Lidé odcházejí po ______.
Kouříme při ________.
Co máte v _______?
Mýlíte se, bratři mluví totiž o ______.

kniha
doktor
notýsek
přednáška
stůl
koberec
opera
postel
sklenice
byt
cvičení
hoch
keř
roh
stěna
večeře
návštěva
plán
procházka
kopec
telegram
dům
obraz

Class IV Verbs

It is convenient to introduce Class IV verbs at this point because they are very closely related to Class III verbs. The only formal distinction between the two is embodied in the fact that Class IV verbs lack the complication in the third person plural. This means that the present stem has the vowel -í, and the non-present stem has the vowel -e (which may be ě!). The infinitive, therefore, has the following form:

slyš-e-t (to hear)
vid-ě-t (to see)

Again the finite forms of the present are produced by adding the personal endings to the present stem. In the third person the -í- of the stem is deleted by the presence of the identical personal ending.

	root	theme	personal ending		root	theme	personal ending
1sg.	slyš -	í -	m	1pl.	slyš -	í -	me
2sg.	slyš -	í -	š	2pl.	slyš -	í -	te
3sg.	slyš -	í -	ø	3pl.	slyš -	(í) -	í

N.B. Two verbs appearing in this lesson are class IV verbs even though their outward form seems to belie the fact. These verbs are "bát se" and "stát." The present tense forms are regular:

boj-í-m se	stoj-í-m
boj-í-š se	stoj-í-š
boj-í-ø se	stoj-í-ø
boj-í-me se	stoj-í-me
boj-í-te se	stoj-í-te
boj-(í)-í se	stoj-(í)-í

The infinitives of these verbs at one time corresponded perfectly to those for Class IV verbs: boj-e-t se and stoj-e-t. Subsequent changes produced boj-a-t se and stoj-a-t and then bát se, stát.

Some Irregular Verbs

Because of close outward similarities to Class IV verbs, it is convenient at this point to include three irregular, but highly useful verbs: vědět (to know), jíst (to eat), and spát (to sleep). In all three verbs there is no familiar relationship between the infinitival stem and the present stem. In the first two verbs two stems are used in the present tense.

ví-m	jí-m	sp-í-m
ví-š	jí-š	sp-í-š
ví-ø	jí-ø	sp-í-ø
ví-me	jí-me	sp-í-me
ví-te	jí-te	sp-í-te
věd-í	jed-í	sp-(í)-í

Exercises:

1) Conjugate all verbs in parentheses in all appropriate forms.

(Vím), že rád (jí) nahoře.
(Stojí) naproti v rohu a (kouří).
(Neslyším), protože (křičíte).
(Myslíš), že zase (prší)?
(Jsem) ještě nemocný, (bojím se) jíst.
(Sedí) při kávě a (hovoří) o universitě.
(Ležíme) v zahrádce a (díváme se) na nebe.
Ne, (nevidím), který obraz (držíš) v ruce.

2) Translate carefully the following sentences from English into Czech:

I know that he's in America now.
I know Karel, but I don't know where he lives.
Do you know where they are going?
I know only one park in Prague.
Do you (2 sg.) know that it's raining?
I'm afraid they don't know either music or linguistics.

Pronominal Adjectives

There are two important pronominal adjectives in Czech that have great currency in the language. The first of these is jaký, which consistently translates the English expression "what kind of."

Jaký klobouk nosíte?	What kind of hat do you wear?
Jakou hudbu posloucháte?	What kind of music are you listening to?

The second is který. This adjective has two uses; it is employed both as an interrogative pronominal adjective and as a relative pronominal adjective. As an interrogative, it makes a selection from a number of choices and therefore translates the English words "what" or "which."

Na který vlak čekáte?	What train are you waiting for?
O které knize mluvíte?	Which book are you talking about?

As a relative, it corresponds to the English pronouns "who," "which," or "that." In this latter usage který agrees in gender and number with the noun it replaces, but its case is determined by its use in the relative clause.

Dívka, kterou vidím, odchází.	The girl whom I see is leaving.
Vidím dívku, která odchází.	I see the girl that is leaving.

Exercise:

Insert the proper pronominal adjective in its proper grammatical form in the blanks of the sentences below. If there seems to be no clear choice, be prepared to explain your answer.

_________ cigarety kouříte?

Mám rád pera, _________ jsou nová.

Na _________ lavičce vždycky sedíte?

_________ student je na řadě?

Tamhle visí čtyři obrazy, _________ nerad vidím.

Přítel Jiří, _________ neznáte, snídá dole.

Na _________ kávu máš chuť?

_________ je dnes nebe?

Sedím v pokoji, __________ je velmi malý.

Naproti mají zahrádku, v __________ nejsou stromy.

_______ operu posloucháte?

_______ parky jsou v Praze?

Nebydlím v domě, v _______ bydlí Karel.

Kniha, o _______ mluvím, není zvlášť' dobrá.

V ________ domě bydlí pan Holan?

Jsou vůbec města, v ________ nejsou parky?

_______ auto máte?

_______ profesora ještě znají?

The Predicate Adjective "rád" and "nerad"

This adjective with the meaning "glad, happy" in its positive form and the meaning "unhappy" in its negative form is one of the few adjectives used only in the predicate and displays a special set of endings (Note the short vowel in the negative forms.).

	Singular		Plural	
	Positive	Negative	Positive	Negative
Masc.	rád	nerad	rádi	neradi
Fem.	ráda	nerada	rády	nerady
Neut.	rádo	nerado	ráda	nerada

Sentences containing the positive form of this adjective may be negated in the usual way by attaching the negative prefix to the forms of the verb být: nejsem rád, nejsi ráda, nejsou rádi, etc. The difference between the Czech expressions nejsem rád (sentence negation) and jsem nerad (word negation) is, therefore, the same as between their English counterparts "I am not glad" and "I am unhappy." The third example below illustrates the fact that, when the polite form of address is used and the addressee is a single individual, the predicate adjective appears in the singular.

Jsem rád.	I am glad.
Nejsem rád, že je dnes horko.	I'm not happy that it's hot today.
Jste opravdu ráda?	Are you really happy?
Jsme rádi, že tady jste.	We are glad that you are here.
Jsi nerada, že musíš uklízet?	Are you unhappy that you have to clean up?

There are two additional, more complex, syntactic usages involving rád. In the first instance, the appropriate forms of rád are used with the personal forms of verbs. The resulting constructions always have the meaning "to like to," "to love to," "to do something with pleasure, delight, enthusiasm." The student must note that in this construction negation proceeds somewhat differently. Either the form *rád* may be negated as *nerad*, that carries the meaning "I don't like to do something," or the verb is negated and the formula *rád ne + Verb* with the specialized meaning "I like not doing something" is obtained. Study the following sentences:

Rád dlouho spím	I love to sleep late.
Nerad brzo vstávám.	I don't like to get up early.
Někdy rád brzo nevstávám.	Sometimes I like not getting up early.
Sestra ráda nosí klobouky.	Sister likes to wear hats.

In the second instance, the proper forms of *rád* are used with the corresponding personal forms of *mít* and with an object in the accusative case. This construction has the meaning "to like someone or something." Just as in the first usage of *nejsem rád* and *jsem nerad*, sentence negation is obtained by the expression *nemám rád* = "I don't like" and word negation by means of *mám nerad* = "I dislike."

Mám rád moderní obrazy.	I like modern pictures.
Oni mají rádi jen bratra.	They only like my brother.
Nemám rád staré domy.	I don't like old houses.
Proč máte nerad velká města?	Why do you dislike big cities?

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. Mother is happy that I am allowed to eat again.
2. Karel and Jiří like to sleep in the room upstairs.
3. In summer we like to sit by the open window.
4. People don't like to hear the truth.
5. Who else is glad that today is a holiday?
6. Klára and Milena love to cook.
7. Do you (2sg.) really love her?
8. I like to look at the blue sky.
9. How do you (2sg.) know that he doesn't like to be wrong?
10. Do you like such pens?

DIALOGUE

Sedím v pokoji na jediné židli, která tady je.	I am sitting in the room in the only chair (that) there is (here).
V rohu stojí nízká moderní lampa.	In the corner there stands a low modern lamp.
Milan leží v posteli, protože má rýmu.	Milan is lying in bed because he has a cold.
Na stěně visí obraz.	There is a picture hanging on the wall.
Vidím na něm nějakou krajinu.	I see some kind of landscape in it.
Venku trochu prší.	It's raining a bit outside.
Milan se dívá na vlhké okno a říká: "V létě obyčejně spím při otevřeném okně, ale dnes nevím, dnes se trochu bojím."	Milan looks at the damp window and says: "I usually sleep with the window open in summer, but today I don't know, today I'm a little afraid."

Co rád jíš?	What do you like to eat?
Ty ještě nevíš, co rád jím?	You still don't know what I like to eat?
Ne, vážně, já dělám dnes zvlášt' dobrou večeři.	No, seriously, I'm making an especially good supper today.
Opravdu, a proč?	Really? And why?
Protože je tady maminka na návštěvě.	Because mother is visiting here.
Tak proto, já totiž dobře vím, že nerad vaříš.	So that's why, I know just too well that you don't like to cook.

Víte, kdo tady je?	Do you know who's here?
Nemám zdání.	I have no idea.
Profesor Holan. Já vím, že ho neznáte, ale on je velmi příjemný člověk.	Professor Holan. I know that you don't know him, but he is a very pleasant man.
Ne, já ho trochu znám. Co dělá? Jaké má plány?	No, I do know him a little. What is he doing? What is he thinking of doing?
Myslím, že chystá další knihu o lingvistice.	I think he's preparing another book on linguistics.
Co ještě[1] o něm víte?	What else do you know about him?
Jen dobré věci; slyším o něm jen chválu.	Only good things; I only hear praise about him.
Možná, že ji slyšíte vy, ale on ji asi neslyší.	It's possible that you hear it, but perhaps he does not hear it.
Máte pravdu, je tak hluchý, že kdykoli o něm mluvím, bezděčně křičím.	You're right. He's so deaf that whenever I talk about him, I am compelled to shout (I involuntarily shout).

Dnes je svátek, proto dlouho spím.	Today is a holiday; therefore I am sleeping late.
Protože je dnes svátek, nemusím brzo vstávat.	Since today is a holiday, I don't have to get up early.
Proč nejedí? Protože nemají hlad.	Why don't they eat? Because they're not hungry.
Nemají hlad, proto nejedí.	They're not hungry; that's why they're not eating.
Lidé často nevědí, co dělají.	People often don't know what they're doing.

Lidé také často nevědí co dělat.	People also frequently don't know what to do.
V létě je horko i na horách.	In summer it is even hot in the mountains.
Po profesoru Holanovi odchází nyní také profesor Mráz.	Professor Mráz also is leaving now after Professor Holan.
Kdo je na řadě? Po Karlovi je na řadě Jiří.	Whose turn is it? Jiří comes after Karel.
Jsme na poště a posíláme domů telegram.	We're at the post office and are sending a telegram home.
Kde jste? Jste ve městě nebo na universitě?	Where are you? Are you downtown or at the university?
Ne, jsme na nádraží.	No, we're at the railroad station.

Jsme na procházce v parku.	We are taking a walk in the park.
Všude jsou vysoké stromy, zelené keře a voňavé květiny.	Everywhere there are tall trees, green bushes, and fragrant flowers.
Na jedné lavičce sedí mladá dívka.	On one of the benches sits a young girl.
Je blondýnka a patrně studentka.	She's a blond and apparently a student.
Drží v ruce knihu a poslouchá, jak[2] v dálce zní dětské hlasy.	She's holding a book in her hand and is listening to children's voices (sounding) in the distance.
Je teplé letní odpoledne.	It's a warm summer afternoon.
Nebe je modré, slunce jasně svítí.	The sky is blue; the sun is shining brightly.
Přítel Jiří najednou říká: "V Praze jsou jen hezké parky. Mají pěknou polohu--jsou na kopcích--je v nich vždycky ticho, a přitom jsou celý rok kupodivu živé. Nejen na jaře a v létě, ale také na podzim a v zimě v nich potkáváte návštěvníky.[3] Nejsem zřejmě jediný člověk, který má rád přírodu. Že nemám pravdu? Tamhle vidím Milenu a Jarmilu, které bydlejí v domě naproti."	My friend Jiří all of a sudden says: "There are only nice parks in Prague. They have attractive locations--they are on top of hills--it's always quiet in them; and what's more, they are surprisingly lively throughout the year. Not only in spring and summer but also in fall and winter you meet visitors in them. Obviously, I'm not the only person who likes nature. Am I not right? Over there I see Milena and Jarmila, who live in the house across the street."

1 When the adverb ještě appears in sentences with interrogative words, it is usually translated by the English word "else." Note its position in the sentence.

Proč ještě čekáš?	Why else are you waiting?
Kdo ještě tady není?	Who else isn't here?
Co ještě je nahoře?	What else is upstairs?

2 When verbs of perception are used to record the direct perception of an event, they are followed by a subordinate clause introduced by jak. Such constructions will be discussed in Lesson VI.

3 Note carefully the different ways of rendering time expressions involving the seasons of the year: na jaře, v létě, na podzim (Note accusative case), v zimě.

READING SELECTION

Co je tady v pokoji? Vidím tady jen židli, lampu, postel a obraz. Židle a lampa jsou nové. Ale jediná věc, která je tady opravdu moderní, je malý obraz. Visí v rohu při okně a je na něm zelená krajina. Venku je modré nebe a pěkné letní odpoledne. Slunce jasně svítí a celá příroda je voňavá. V parku na kopci jsou lidé na procházce. Celý park je živý, zní dětské hlasy, návštěvníci poslouchají hudbu. Mám také chut' na procházku, ale přítel Jiří je nemocný, má rýmu. Proto musíme sedět doma. Jiří má dnes velké plány. Má tady maminku na návštěvě a zřejmě chystá nějakou dobrou večeři. Jsem rád, protože Jiří umí opravdu dobře vařit. Možná, že je jediný člověk v domě, který vaří a přitom vaří dobře. Jen Milena je ještě asi tak dobrá jako on. Přitom je Jiří také velmi dobrý student. Zvlášt' dobře zná lingvistiku. Slyším o něm všude jen chválu. Profesor Holan říká, že Jiří ví, co dělá.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. As you say, linguistics is usually not easy. 2. There's an expensive lamp (standing) on the table. 3. Do you have a cold again now? 4. It's quiet in the room where I'm sitting. 5. My sister is ill; that's why she doesn't sleep with the window open. 6. I have no idea why they are leaving. 7. Seriously, I don't know what to do today. 8. Why must you get up so early (2sg.)? 9. Karel and Jiří are visiting in the house opposite. 10. She's like an open book. 11. How long have you known her (present tense)? 12. Apparently, Jarmila still doesn't know that you (2sg.) have a lecture tomorrow. 13. The only visitor that's here is sitting on the bench and is smoking. 14. There's a girl looking for Karel (some girl). 15. What else is upstairs, only books? 16. What kind of music do you (2sg.) like to listen to? 17. You needn't shout; I'm not deaf. 18. Which park is open even in winter? 19. She may have a nice voice, but I don't like her. 20. Some stranger (cizí člověk) is lying on the bed downstairs and is looking at the pictures on the walls. 21. Neither Klára nor Milena has time today; it's just that (totiž) they are preparing a big supper. 22. I see that you're a little afraid. 23. You're right; people in modern cities don't know what nature is. 24. It's raining again today. 25. I don't have any idea where my father has his cigarettes. 26. Don't you feel like a little walk? 27. I hear that you know how to cook some (not: nějaký) very good things. 28. I think that you are mistaken; tomorrow must be a holiday. 29. Who says that there is not (Use ani) a single modern railroad station in Prague? 30. Milan can (Use umět) talk only about cars. 31. What are you (2sg.) doing after the lecture? 32. The little blonde sitting on the rug gets up involuntarily and goes out quickly. 33. We live over there

on the hill in the first house on the right. 34. We are on a high mountain; in the distance there lies an open green landscape. 35. It's been raining constantly; even the walls in the apartment are damp now (už). 36. This (letos) fall it's been surprisingly hot. 37. How long have you been waiting here? 38. Whenever we are downtown or at the university, it has to rain. 39. Why do I like him? Because he is a good musician and a good man. 40. We don't often hear praise like that. 41. Doctor Mráz isn't especially pleasant; what do you say (2sg.)? 42. Not only the first act, but the whole opera is bad. 43. Don't you (2sg.) think that Jarmila is still a little childish? 44. Yes, that's why I'm not afraid. 45. Where are you sending such a fine telegram?

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Návštěva v parku.
Nemocný přítel.
Příjemné léto.
Mít rýmu.
Co víte o mamince?
Návštěva v bytě.
Hezká blondýnka.
Dnes je svátek.
Lidé a příroda.
Návštěva na universitě.
Procházka.
Co rád jíte?
Venku prší.
Květiny a stromy.
Cizí hlasy v dálce.
Návštěva na poště.
Co rád posloucháte?
Kdo chystá večeři?
Venku svítí slunce.
Kde rád sedíte?

LESSON V

VOCABULARY

až[1](conj.)	when, until, not until
brát (Vc,i)(See vzít)	to take
cesta(f)	road, way, trip
cítit	
nemoci + Acc. + ani cítit	not to be able to stand
co nevidět	any minute, any time now
číst(Va,i)(See přečíst)	to read
divit se (II,i)	to be surprised, amazed at, marvel at
docela (adv.)	quite, completely
domýšlivý	arrogant, conceited
dost (adv.)	enough, fairly, rather, quite a bit
hlava(f)	head
hned (adv.)	immediately, at once
hodina(f)	hour
chvíle(f)	while, moment
ještě chvíli	a while longer, a while yet
chystat se (I,i)	to prepare, make ready, intend
inteligentní	intelligent
jet (Va,i)	to go (not on foot)
jih[2] (m)	south
jít (Va,i)	to go (on foot)
kdy?	when
když[1](conj.)	when, since
kolem (adv.)	around, past, by
konečně (adv.)	finally
krátký	short
mít + inf.[3]	to be to, to be supposed to
moci(Va,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	can, to be able
muž(m)	husband, man (male)
nechat (I,p)(See nechávat)	to let, leave
nechávat (I,i)(See nechat)	to let, leave
nejdřív(e) (adv.)	first
nést (Va,i)	to carry (on foot)
nutně (adv.)	necessarily, urgently

odjet (Va,p)	to leave, go away (not on foot)
odejít (Va,p)	to leave, go away (on foot)
odpovědět (III,p)	to answer
plést se (Va,i)	to be confused, mistaken
pobýt(Va,p)(See pobývat)	to stay a while
pobývat (I,i)(See pobýt)	to stay a while
počkat (I,p)	to wait a while
pojet^4(Va,i)	
pojít^4(Va,i)	
pokud (adv.)	as far as
poobědvat (I,p)	to have lunch
potom (adv.)	then, afterwards
poznat (I,p)(See poznávat)	to recognize, get acquainted with
poznávat (I,i)(See poznat)	to recognize, get acquainted with
práce(f)(Loc.pl. pracích)	work
prázdný	empty
prosím tě	oh, come on! please!
prostě (adv.)	simply
protivný	detestable
provoz(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	traffic
přečíst(Va,p)(See číst)	to read
přehánět (III,i)	to exaggerate
přijet (Va,p)	to arrive (not on foot)
přijít (Va,p)	to arrive (on foot)
ptát se (I,i)(See zeptat se)	to ask (a question)
ptát se na + Acc.(See Lesson VIII)	to ask about
ranní	morning (adj.)
rozpačitě (adv.)	with hesitation, without knowing what to do
rozumný	sensible, reasonable
různý	various, different
sem (adv.)	here (with verbs of motion)
s sebou (adv.)	along, with
snést (Va,p)	to be able to bear, stand, tolerate
škoda(f)	damage, loss; shame, pity
to je škoda	it's a shame, it's too bad
ujednáno	agreed

ulice (f)	street
unavený	tired
určitě (adv.)	certainly, surely, for sure
uvařit (II,p)	to boil, make, cook
uvidět (IV,p)	to see, catch sight of
večer (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	evening
vracet se (III,i)(See vrátit se)	to return
vrátit se (II,p) (See vracet se)	to return
vzít (Vb,p)(See brát)	to take
zajímavý	interesting
zajímat (I,i)	to interest
zasadit (II,p)(See sázet)	to plant
zavolat (I,p)	to call, give a call
zeptat se (I,p) (See ptát se)	to ask (a question)
zpátky (adv.)	back (adv.)
žaludek/žaludk- (m)	stomach
žena (f)	wife, woman

1 Both of these Czech subordinating conjunctions may be translated by the English word "when." The word až is used in this meaning with the perfective or imperfective types of future whereas the word když is used elsewhere, i.e., with the present and past forms of verbs.

> Zavolám ho, až přijdu domů.
> (I'll call him when I get home.)
>
> Voláme je vždycky, když snídáme v městě.
> (We always call them up when we have breakfast in town.)
>
> Až bude maminka pryč, musíme udělat nahoře pořádek.
> (When mother is away, we must straighten up upstairs.)
>
> Slyším vás dobře, jen když mluvíte nahlas.
> (I hear you well only when you speak in a loud voice.)

2 The notion of direction when applied to the points of the compass is expressed by the preposition na + Accusative.

> Na podzim pojedeme na jih.
> (In the fall we are going south.)

3 Bear in mind that this phrase expresses expectation, while similar phrases containing muset imply necessity.

> Mají zítra přijít.
> (They're supposed to come tomorrow.)

4 As the student would expect, some forms of the verb pojít may mean "to go on foot" and some forms of the verb pojet "to go (not on foot)." The infinitives of these verbs, however, either do not exist or

have an entirely different meaning; there is no such form as pojet, and the single form pojít means "to die (of animals)." The present tense forms of these two verbs read as follows:

půjdu	pojedu
půjdeš	pojedeš
půjde	pojede
půjdeme	pojedeme
půjdete	pojedete
půjdou	pojedou

And, moreover, it is extremely important for the student to observe that the above present tense forms bear the meaning of the imperfective future.

(See the Grammar Analysis for this lesson.)

PRONUNCIATION

Read the following selection of sentences and concentrate on the pronunciation of the vibrant sibilant ř. (For detailed instruction on its articulation see the Introduction.) Remember that there are two varieties of ř, a voiced and a voiceless one. Also pay attention to the pronunciation of the groups bě, pě, vě and mě in the second paragraph.

> Dobře víš, že přeháníš. Kouří Jiří? Nejdřív půjdeme na přednášku; bude zřejmě zajímavá. Přijdeme patrně až po večeři. Nemám nahoře ve skříni pořádek. Příroda není vždycky dobrý přítel. Je pokoj naproti otevřený? Karel říká, že sem dnes přijde. Sestra kupodivu dobře vaří. On není zvlášť' inteligentní, ale přitom není nepříjemný. Přijedou co nevidět, musíme přichystat sklenice.
>
> Nemůže zřejmě vědět, že nepřijdeme. O hudbě mluvit nebudu, já nejsem totiž hudebník. Jaké věci nesete? Praha je velmi pěkné město. Musíme jít pryč, nesmějí nás tady vidět. V domě naproti pořád svítí světlo. Tamhle na stromě visí nějaký klobouk. Stromy mám také rád, ale květiny mám zvlášť' rád. Proč čtete při takové špatné lampě? Zítra zase obědváme ve městě.

It has already been noted that adjectives and adverbs referring to nationalities are not capitalized in Czech. (See Lesson II, p.16.) Capital letters are used, however, in personal names, place names, names of states and institutions, in literary titles, etc., and, of course, also at the beginning of all sentences. See for instance:

> Karel Mráz, Milena Krámská, Praha, Karlovy Vary (city in Bohemia), Československo, Amerika, Zbabělci (novel by Josef Škvorecký), Přijedou co nevidět, etc.

In proper names consisting of more than one word, only the first is capitalized. Note that personal names and names of towns and villages are excepted from this rule. Thus:

Spojené státy (United States), Československá socialistická republika (Czechoslovak Socialist Republic), Václavské náměstí (main square in Prague), Červený kříž (Red Cross), Karel Hynek Mácha (19th century Czech poet), Časopis pro moderní filologii (a Czech linguistic journal), Mariánské Lázně, Vojna a mír (novel by Tolstoy), etc.

Finally, capitals are used in letter-writing for the various forms of the personal pronouns ty and vy and of the possessive tvůj and váš: Ty, Vy, Vás, Tvůj, Tvá, Váš, Tebe, etc.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Verbs

Perfective and Imperfective Aspects

Like all other Slavic verbal systems, the Czech verbal system is characterized by an all-pervasive grammatical category called aspect. All Czech verbs possess this grammatical feature; and, consequently, all Czech verbs are classified as verbs either of "perfective" or of "imperfective" aspect. The category of aspect in language always characterizes actions in a non-temporal way. In Czech the perfective aspect points specifically to the completion of a single instance of the action (this definition also includes cases where a group of actions are considered a single action), whereas the imperfective aspect does not carry this specific indication.

In this lesson we shall discuss the practical application of the above definition of aspect in Czech to the present tense forms of the verbs, forms with which the student is already familiar. Since the use of such forms is very similar in English, it will be no revelation to the student to learn that the present-tense forms in Czech can express actions occurring

1) at the moment of utterance:

Dívám se na hezký obraz.
(I am looking at a pretty picture.)

2) in the future:

Zítra jdu na nádraží.
(Tomorrow I am going to the station.)

3) in the past (historical present):

Včera tady sedím, jde kolem Karel, a říká...
(Yesterday I am sitting here, Karel comes by and says...)

4) at any time whatsoever (repeated or habitual action):

Dostávám tři dopisy denně.
(I get three letters every day.)

The student should already be familiar with the preceding verbs, and he may be surprised to learn that in the first four lessons of this text he has acquired the ability to operate with imperfective verbs. As matter of fact, all verbs in the first four lessons are imperfective, and the student will note in the above examples and will recall from the Czech sentences he has seen so far that not one single usage of any verb has referred to completion of that action. Perfective present verbs, which stress the completion of a single instance of an action, are used in the following ways in reference to the moment of utterance:

1) in the future:

Zavolám ho zítra.
(I'll give him a call tomorrow.)

2) in the past (historical present):

Dnes ráno, docela brzo, sem najednou přijde Holan,
podívá se na mne a říká jen tak: Jedu pryč.
(This morning, quite early, Holan suddenly comes here,
takes a look at me and says casually: I'm going away.)

3) at any time whatsoever (a generalized action):

Vykouří denně jen čtyři cigarety.
(He smokes only four cigarettes a day.)

For present practical purposes the student may disregard usages 2) and 3) above. The use of the perfective aspect in these cases is somewhat limited and specialized; we shall return to them later in the textbook. What we must stress, however, as a fact of paramount importance, is that the perfective present with its emphasis on completion of the action cannot be utilized to denote an action in progress at the moment of utterance. These features of the perfective present leave the future as the primary area of use of such verbal forms. If the Czech speaker refers to the completion of a single action of the verb in the future, the perfective present is the form he must use. The dialogue and the exercises will contain ample exemplification of this usage. Now that we have seen how the perfective present functions within the Czech verbal system, we are in a position to ask the question: "How are perfective and imperfective verbs formed?" Three general rules can help significantly in understanding these processes. Under each rule below we shall list the pertinent verbs the student has already had. Any omissions detected by the student are due to the fact that the omitted verbs represent conjugational types as yet not introduced.

The first rule states that the backbone of the system consists of non-prefixed, non-suffixed stems, which, with very few exceptions, are all imperfective. In time the student will become familiar with the total inventory of Czech prefixes and suffixes. The following is a complete list of basic imperfective verbs introduced in the first five lessons:

bát se
bavit se
brát
bydlet
cítit
čekat
číst
dělat
dívat se
divit se
držet
hlásit se
hledat
hovořit
chystat
jet
jíst
jít
kouřit
křičet
ležet
mít
mluvit
moci
muset
mýlit se
myslet
nést
nosit
obědvat
plést se
pršet
ptát se
řídit
sázet
sedět
slyšet
smět
snídat
spát
stát
svítit
umět
vařit
vědět
vidět
viset
volat
vracet se
znát
znít

There is only one basic verb introduced so far that is perfective:

dát: dám, dáš, dá, dáme, dáte, dají

The second general rule concerning aspect states that suffixation always produces aspectual derivatives, i.e., if the original verb is perfective, suffixation will yield an imperfective verb; if the original verb is imperfective, suffixation will create a perfective verb. The student should note carefully that it is this process, practically alone, that gives us bona fide perfective-imperfective pairs in the Czech verbal system. These processes produce thousands of aspectual derivatives in Czech. At this time we can only illustrate the formation of derived imperfectives, the vast majority of which come from underlying prefixed perfectives. We can now adduce the following perfective-imperfective pairs. Note that the vowel -a- is the suffix universally employed in the formation of derived imperfectives and is frequently accompanied by lengthening of the root vowel.

dát (I) - dávat (I)
nechat (I) - nechávat (I)
odpovědět (like vědět) - odpovídat
pobýt (V) - pobývat (I)
potkat (I) - potkávat (I)
poznat (I) - poznávat (I)
uklidit (II) - uklízet (IV)(the z in this verb was historically soft and caused the a > e change)

The third general rule states that prefixation always yields lexical derivatives, i.e., each prefix adds its increment of meaning to the original verb so that in each case a new verb is formed. A curious thing happens upon prefixation, however -- this process effects simultaneous perfectivization. This secondary phenomenon can best be rationalized in the following way. Each action can theoretically be accomplished in a number of different ways; and each prefix selects one of these ways, uniquely determining the meaning of the verb, completing that phase of the action, as it were, and producing perfectivization. This derivational process can be seen most clearly in the following instances:

vědět	od-po-vědět (note the presence of two prefixes!)
jít	ode-jít
jít	při-jít

While the preceding three verbs are clearly lexical derivatives, the majority of the perfectives introduced in this lesson are not so obviously lexical derivatives because they may easily be associated with their unprefixed counterparts as corresponding perfectives. This possibility of confusion necessitates some discussion. The following is a list of this type of derivatives to be learned by the student:

bavit se	po-bavit se (to have a good time)
cítit	u-cítit (to detect -- smell, taste)
čekat	po-čkat (to wait a while)
číst	pře-číst (to read through)
dělat	u-dělat (to accomplish)
dívat se	po-dívat se (to take a look)
držet	po-držet (to hold a while)
hlásit se	o-hlásit se (to take a call)
hledat	vy-hledat (to search out)
hovořit	po-hovořit (to talk a bit)
chystat	při-chystat (to get ready)
jíst	s-níst (to eat up)
kouřit	vy-kouřit (to smoke up)
mýlit se	z-mýlit se (to be mistaken)
obědvat	po-obědvat (to have dinner)
sázet	zasadit (to plant in)
slyšet	u-slyšet (to detect -- sound)
vařit	u-vařit (to cook up)
vidět	u-vidět (to catch sight of)
volat	za-volat (to give a call)
znít	za-znít (to resound)

Even though the meanings of the prefixed perfectives above are very close to those of the basic verbs, the former do not constitute aspectual pairs with the latter. As we have said before, only suffixation can produce aspectual pairs; prefixation *always* creates lexical derivatives. What we want you to observe in the above verbs is that even the English equivalents of most of these verbs suggest that the meaning of the perfective is not absolutely equivalent to that of the basic imperfective verb. And, as you will eventually learn, even when the meanings of the two verbs seem to be identical, as in the verbs *zmýlit se*, *zasadit*, and *přichystat*, the meaning of the prefix harmonizes so well with the meaning of the stem that the perfective verbs only appear to be the aspectual counterparts of the base verbs.

The Periphrastic "*budu* + infinitive" Construction

The student has already seen that the perfective present expresses primarily the completion of a simple action in the future and that the imperfective present may express a future action. The latter usage is only a marginal expression of an action projected into the future beyond the moment of utterance and is confined to the more or less immediate future. The usual expression of the imperfective future is attained by way of a periphrastic construction consisting of the present tense forms of *být* plus the imperfective infinitive of any verb except *být* itself. The present tense forms of *být* are the following:

bud-u	bud-e-me
bud-e-š	bud-e-te
bud-e	bud-ou

These present tense forms are perfective (*být* itself is imperfective); therefore they throw the entire expression into the future and they bear the meaning "to attain a state of being or to get to be." Once this state of being is achieved, it is relatively easy to appreciate the fact that the following verb in the infinitive must be imperfective since its completion cannot be envisaged. Note the following examples:

Budu se na tebe dívat. (Note the word order!)
(I'll be watching you.)

Budou na nás čekat na nádraží.
(They will be waiting for us at the station.)

Kde budete zítra?
(Where will you be tomorrow?)

A purely imperfective situation obtains in the last sentence above. Even though *budete* can only be perfective, we can understand the imperfective notion here if we consider that *být* is theoretically present but has been deleted because of its semantic identity with *budete*.

Class V Verbs

Verbs belonging to this class as a rule have no thematic vowels for either the present or nonpresent stems. Unfortunately, the two stems invariably differ. The nonpresent stem, particularly the infinitive, appears divergent because the stem-final consonant was juxtaposed to the -*t*- of the infinitive and the combination frequently underwent various historical changes. You are advised in most cases merely to commit the nonpresent forms of these verbs to memory. In order that you may see the relationship between present and nonpresent stems as clearly as possible, this class will be subdivided into three groups depending on a) the absence of a theme vowel in the nonpresent stem; b) the presence of a false theme vowel in the nonpresent stem caused by historical change; and c) the presence of an actual theme vowel in the nonpresent stem. In the displays below note the frequent long vowels in the infinitives, the fact that -*t* in the present stem becomes -*s* before the -*t* ending of the infinitive, and the fact that some final consonants in the present stem are totally missing in the nonpresent stem.

	Infinitive	Present Stem
Class Va		
	číst (to read)	čt-
	jet (to go in a vehicle)	jed-
	jít (to go on foot)	jd-
	moci (to be able)	moh-
	nést (to carry)	nes-
	plést se (to be confused)	plet- se
	pobýt (to stay a while)	pobud-
Class Vb		
	vzít (to take)	vezm-
Class Vc		
	brát (to take)	ber-

The present forms of Class V verbs are quite straightforward. The -*e*- that appears here is not a theme vowel; its only function is to separate the verbal stem from the consonantal personal endings. Note that in this class of verbs the sign of the first person singular is -*u* and the sign of the third person plural is -*ou*.

	root				personal ending		root				personal ending
1sg.	nes		-		u	1pl.	nes	-	e	-	me
2sg.	nes	-	e	-	š	2pl.	nes	-	e	-	te
3sg.	nes	-	e	-	ø	3pl.	nes		-		ou

One important Class V verb, moci (to be able), has several irregularities. The basic stem is moh-. The final consonant -h (originally the velar -g) is palatalized to -c- in the infinitive and to -ž- in the present tense. Note also the vocalic alternation o/ů in the present.

mohu	můžeme
můžeš	můžete
může	mohou

Exercises

1. Convert the following imperfective forms into their closely corresponding perfective counterparts.

1. Potkáváme je na nádraží.
2. Hlásím se hned.
3. Budou tam moci být jen chvíli.
4. Ptám se a bratr nahlas odpovídá.
5. Zítra vaříme dobrou večeři.
6. Neuklízejí, protože nemají čas.
7. Dělám tady pořádek.
8. Znáš jeho tatínka a maminku?
9. Chystá ještě jednu přednášku.
10. Kdy dáváte na stůl květiny?

2. Choose the appropriate aspect, perfective or imperfective, for the following sentences. If both are possible, defend your choice.

1. Můžeme dnes udělat/dělat jedno cvičení.
2. Čekáte/počkáte tady pořád ješte na autobus?
3. Proč s sebou nevezmeš/nebereš také Karla?
4. Nerad se vrátím/vracím, ale já nevím co mám dělat.
5. Myslím, že vás zítra neuvidím/nevidím.

6. Nejdřív vaříme/uvaříme a potom odcházíme/odejdeme.
7. Určitě se spletete/pletete, Milena nahoře nebydlí.
8. Musíme ještě chvíli počkat/čekat, možná, že přicházejí/přijdou pozdě.

3. Explain the use of the particular aspect of the underlined verbs in each of the following sentences.

1. Necháš je opravdu tak dlouho čekat?
2. Vím, že se ještě často zmýlím.
3. Budete letos sázet nějaké keře?
4. Poobědváme nahoře, a potom budeme poslouchat dole hudbu.
5. Co ještě můžeš dnes přečíst?

4. Translate the following sentences into Czech paying close attention to the aspect. If you think that some sentences are aspectually ambiguous, produce two versions of such sentences.

1. I don't like to hurry when I'm dressing.
2. Do you think you'll have a good time this evening (dnes večer)?
3. Can't you stay here a while longer?
4. When it rains, people like to be at home.
5. I know that we'll be having lunch when he arrives.
6. Why are you carrying a handkerchief in your hand?
7. They will speak only Czech here.
8. You exaggerate; I'm returning home tomorrow morning.
9. When I see you again, I'll have another (emphatic) book here.
10. Will you meet her tomorrow in the park?
11. He always calls me when he's visiting here.
12. We'll plant three more bushes and then have lunch.
13. Why don't you ask about them tomorrow?
14. Where do you intend going?
15. When they see him, they'll recognize him.
16. I can't stand her; she's arrogant and childish.
17. Why won't you take some cigarettes along?
18. We know that such things will interest you.
19. Who will be asking about them?
20. You'll see that I'm right when you have called him.

DIALOGUE

Jsem na přednášce, která mě nezajímá.	I'm at a lecture that doesn't interest me.
Myslím na různá věci, jen na přednášku ne.[1]	I'm thinking of various things, only not about the lecture.
Po přednášce půjdu hned domů.	After the lecture I'll go home right away.
Protože u[illegible]zdě, na ulici nebude provoz a cesta zpátky bude příjemná.	Since it's already late, there won't be any traffic on the street; and the way back will be pleasant.

* * *

Kam se chystáte v létě?	Where are you planning to go in the summer?
Ještě nevím, jam pojedeme. Žena říká, že musíme jet na jih, ona má ráda	I still don't know where we'll go. My wife says that we ought to go south;

slunce.	she likes the sun.
Kdy se vrátíte?	When will you come back?
Bohužel asi brzo. Mám nějakou práci, a proto nemohu být dlouho pryč.	Maybe soon, unfortunately. I have some work to do and, therefore, I can't be gone long.

* * *

Sedíme doma při kávě.	We are sitting at home over coffee.
Karel se dívá kolem, bere knihu, která leží na stole, drží ji chvíli rozpačitě v ruce a potom ji zase vrací zpátky na stůl.	Karel looks around, picks up the book lying on the table, holds it in his hand for a moment without knowing what to do with it (indecisively), and then puts it back again on the table.
Dnes už zřejmě nebude číst.	He obviously won't be reading any more today.
Je asi unavený.	He's probably tired.

* * *

Myslíš, že poznáš Milenu, až sem přijde?	Do you think you'll recognize Milena when she comes?
Ovšem, Milena je taková[2] malá blondýnka a pořád kouří. Znám ji dost dobře.	Of course, Milena is a rather small blonde, and she smokes all the time. I know her quite well.
Asi se pleteš. Milena není ani malá ani blondýnka a pokud vím nekouří.	Maybe you're confused. Milena is neither small nor is she a blonde; and, as far as I know, she doesn't smoke.

* * *

Kam jdete?	Where are you going?
Jdu na krátkou procházku.	I'm going for a short walk.
Vezmete mě s sebou?	Will you take me along?
Prosím[3], rád. Ale musíte jít hned.	Yes, gladly. But you'll have to go right away.

* * *

Víte co? Nejdřív poobědváme a potom uvidíme; potom ho možná zavoláme.	Do you know what? First we'll have lunch and then we'll see; then we may give him a call.
Ještě nevím.	I still don't know.
Prázdný žaludek dělá prázdnou hlavu.	An empty stomach makes an empty head.
Nemohu dobře myslet, když mám hlad.	I can't think well when I'm hungry.

* * *

Konečně! Čekám na tebe už asi hodinu. Neseš kávu?	Finally! I've been waiting for you about an hour now. Are you bringing the coffee?

Nenesu, káva už bohužel není, bude až zítra.	No, I'm not, I'm afraid they're out of coffee. They won't have any until tomorrow.
Opravdu? Co mám nyní dělat?	Really? What am I supposed to do now?
Tak[4] uvaříme čaj. Čaj je také dobrý.	In that case we'll make tea. Tea is also good.

* * *

Kdy přijede tatínek?	When will Dad arrive?
Má přijet zítra ráno.	He's supposed to come tomorrow morning.
Jak dlouho tady bude?	How long will he be here?
Jen chvíli. Večer musí zase odjet.	Just a while. He has to leave again in the evening.
Škoda, velká škoda; nemohu totiž zítra přijít a tak ho neuvidím.	Too bad, that's really too bad. I just can't come tomorrow, and so I won't see him.

* * *

Už odcházíte? Proč tak brzo? Dnes vás nenechám odejít.	Are you leaving already? Why so soon? I won't let you go today.
Musíte tady ještě chvíli pobýt.	You must stay here a little while yet.
Počkáme na bratra, který už musí co nevidět přijít, a potom vás vezmu na universitu.	We'll wait for brother, who should arrive any minute, and then I'll take you to the university.
Ujednáno?	Agreed?

* * *

Divím se, že sneseš Karla Holana.	I am surprised that you can stand Karel Holan.
Proč, smím se zeptat?	Why, may I ask?
Nemohu Holana ani cítit. Je domýšlivý a přitom není vůbec inteligentní.	I can't even bear Holan. He's arrogant and besides he's not at all intelligent.
Ale prosím tě. Nemyslíš, že trochu přeháníš? Holan je docela rozumný muž.	Oh, come on, now. Don't you think that you are exaggerating a little? Holan is quite a sensible man.
Jak dobře víš, rozumní lidé nejsou nutně inteligentní ani zajímaví. Holan je prostě protivný rozumný člověk.	As you well know, sensible people are not necessarily intelligent or interesting. Holan is simply a detestable sensible guy.

* * *

Co říkáte?	What are you saying?
Já se vás ptám na první ranní autobus. Kdy má přijet?	I'm asking you about the first bus in the morning. When is it supposed to come?
Bohužel nevím, ale až přijede, přijede určitě pozdě.	I'm sorry, I don't know; but when it comes, it'll certainly be late.

* * *

Až se vrátíme, musíme hned zavolat Jarmilu.	When we return, we have to call Jarmila immediately.
Možná, že na nás bude ještě čekat.	It's possible that she will still be waiting for us.
Jak ji znám, bude určitě sedět doma.	I know what she's like, she'll certainly be sitting at home.

1 The negative particle stands alone here at the end of the sentence because it is elliptical for nemyslím.

2 In this particular usage the adjective takový carries the connotation of "rather."

3 The word prosím may express politeness when used in answers.

4 Note that tak, which means "in that way or manner," may be translated by the expression "in that case" in an initial position.

READING SELECTION

Milena pojede zítra na jih. Vím, že má ráda přírodu a jih ji bude zřejmě zajímat. Cesta tam bude ovšem dlouhá a Milena je už nyní unavená. Musí tady nejdřív udělat různé věci. Jen potom může odjet. Já bohužel nemohu jet s sebou. Mám zase na universitě práci; musím se přichystat na přednášky. A tak prostě budu doma. Škoda, protože já mám také rád léto, slunce a jih.

Jsem na návštěvě v bytě naproti. Kouříme a hovoříme o různých knihách. Je tady také Mráz; má malou, inteligentní ženu, která se někdy rozpačitě ptá na různé lidi. Obyčejně nerada mluví o obrazech, ale dnes už o nich mluví kupodivu celou hodinu. Nenechá hovořit ani profesora Holana ani mne. A Holan ovšem moderní obrazy velmi dobře zná.

Bude venku pršet? Bohužel asi ano. Nebe je nízké, park i ulice jsou prázdné, lidé pospíchají domů. Myslím, že dnes na přednášku nepůjdu. Budu ještě chvíli číst a potom budu poslouchat hudbu. Jsem už trochu unavený.

Sestra má dnes přijet na návštěvu. Tentokrát na ni musím počkat, protože bude mít s sebou knihy, které už dlouho hledám. Nemohu ji prostě nechat odjet a nevidět ji. Mám ji ovšem také rád. Vím totiž, že nemá prázdnou hlavu, že umí myslet a že je příjemná. Přitom není ani trochu domýšlivá. Tatínek říká, že sestra přečte denně jednu knihu. Škoda, že sestra musí jet zase brzo pryč. Vždycky jsem nerad, když ji vidím odcházet.

Mám dnes chuť' na práci, ale nevím co dělat nejdřív. Přečíst další cvičení nebo uklidit pokoj nahoře? Vzpomínám si, že odpoledne musím také vzít na poštu nějaké dopisy. Nesmím ale na ulici potkat Milana. Jak ho znám, když Milan hovoří o nějaké zajímavé věci, mluví celé hodiny. Dívám se, že má vůbec někdy čas na práci.

Dnes večer jsou ulici živé. Já jsem na procházce a dívám se na život ve velkém městě a docela se přitom bavím. Město je totiž tak zajímavé jako příroda. Musíte je ovšem nejdřív poznat, tak jako musíte nejdřív poznat člověka, kterého máte rád. Když nějaké město dobře znáte, nemůžete je mít nerad.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Where will you go for the autumn? 2. It's a shame they won't be able to wait a while longer. 3. I won't be away long; I'll return immediately. 4. Are you also taking your wife along? 5. The first morning train will arrive any minute. 6. I'll call him for sure yet today. 7. Do you think that Jarmila will make as good coffee again as she always makes? 8. When is Karel supposed to go there? 9. You'll (Use 2sg. present tense) have to put things in order here; Milan and Jiří will arrive soon now. 10. I smoke only four cigarettes a day. 11. I may be confused; I am not well enough acquainted with linguistics. 12. Why do they always return so late? 13. As far as we know, they'll go to the post office first. 14. It's too bad that I won't see you tomorrow (specific occasion.) 15. When I meet him, I must ask him about mother. 16. Does any opera at all interest her? 17. Milena has a detestable brother who likes to talk about various unpleasant things. 18. I read here that cars are surprisingly cheap this year. 19. They can smoke here and also downstairs, but not upstairs. 20. Do you also like to sit at home when it rains? 21. You're the first visitor I am asking about. 22. Are we going to leave the light burning upstairs? 23. Such a nice apartment and completely empty! 24. First we'll put the lamp on the table and then we wait a while. 25. I perhaps won't recognize Karel now (Use už). 26. Are you really getting ready to go south? 27. You surely won't have a good time there. 28. As always, he's exaggerating a bit. 29. My husband must necessarily leave yet today. 30. Such an intelligent girl as Jarmila should be sensible, and simply shouldn't drive a car when she is ill. 31. I can't really remain here long; there's work waiting for me at home. 32. It's possible that I'll catch a glimpse of them when I go by there (kolem) tomorrow. 33. When will they finally go now (in a vehicle)? 34. What do you say, are we to eat our lunch first or take the professor back to the university? 35. The road there will be short and pleasant because there will no longer be any (do not translate "any") heavy (velký) traffic. 36. I don't think that Jiří is arrogant; he has a good head; but, of course, he is sometimes childish. 37. He is so tired that he won't be able to come here. 38. We'll plant the first bushes yet this evening (use perfective). 39. You'll (2sg.) certainly be able to put up with brother; he's not like Holan. 40. Too bad you've got a bad stomach; we are just going to make some good strong tea. 41. I am taking (Use nést)

three books home, but I don't know what's in them. 42. We've been waiting here on the street for a whole hour now. 43. Klára looks at him for a while in hesitation and then quickly walks away. 44. All right, agreed, we'll clean up immediately. 45. This year I am meeting only interesting people everywhere.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Cesta domů po přednášce.
Chystáme se na jih.
Jsme po práci zase doma.
Poznám ji ještě, až ji uvidím?
Jdu na procházku.
Dnes přijede tatínek a maminka.
Co dnes nesu domů.
Proč už musím odejít.
Musíme opravdu zavolat Jarmilu?
První ranní autobus nebo vlak.
Jak dlouho už na mne čekáte?
Co uvaříme nejdřív?
Domýšlivá mladá dívka.
Jsou inteligentní lidé zajímaví?
Kdo často přehání?

LESSON VI

VOCABULARY

ačkoli (conj.)	although, though
dlužit (II,i)	to owe, be indebted to
dnes večer (adv.)	this evening
doba (f)	time, period of time
dolar (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	dollar
doufat (I,i)	to hope
dovolená[1] (f)	vacation, leave, furlough
hodně (adv.)	much, a lot, a great deal
hrozný	awful, terrible
jít/jet na + Acc.[2]	to go to
jít pro + Acc.	to go and fetch, go after something
k + Dat. (alternate form ke; see Lesson VII)	to, toward
kancelář (f)(Gen.sg./Nom.pl./Acc.pl.-e; Loc.pl. -ích, Dat.pl. -ím)	office
každý	every, each, everyone
krásný	beautiful, lovely
lék (m)	medicine, remedy
les (m)(Loc.pl. -ích)	woods, forest
levý	left
loni (adv.)	last year
louka (f)	meadow
málo (adv. and quantifier)	little, a few (not enough)
měsíc (m)	month, moon
mít volno	to be free (not busy, not working)
moře (n)	sea, seashore
nacházet (III,i)(See najít)	to find
najít (Va,p) (See nacházet)	to find
naproti + Dat.	opposite
noc (f)(Nom./Acc.pl. -i/-e; Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím)	night
občas (adv.)	from time to time
oběd (m)	lunch, midday meal

odpověd'(f)(Loc.pl.-ích; Dat.pl.-ím)	answer
odpovídat/odpovědět + na + Acc.	to answer (something)
odtud (adv.)	from there, from here
otázka (f)	question
pán[3] (m)	gentleman
papír (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	paper
patřit (II,i)	to belong to
platit (II,i) (See zaplatit)	to pay
pochopit[4] (II,p)	to comprehend
poledne[5] (n)	noon
pomáhat (I,i) (See pomoci)	to help, assist, aid
pomoci (Va,p)(Conjugates like moci) (See pomáhat)	to help, assist, aid
porozumět (III,p) (See rozumět)	to understand
poslat[6] (See posílat, Lesson IV)	to send
poslední	last, latest
pozdrav (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	greeting
právě (adv.)	just (this very moment), just now
pravý	right, genuine
pro + Acc.	for, in favor of
procházet se (III,i)(See projít se)	to take a walk
projít se (Va,p)(See procházet se)	to take a walk
proti + Dat.	opposite, facing, against, compared with
prý[7] (adv.)	they say, I understand
přednášet (III,i) (o něčem)	to lecture on
přesvědčit[4](II,p)	to convince, persuade
příliš (adv.)	too
přirozeně (adv.)	naturally, of course
rozumět (III,i)(See porozumět)	to understand
sice...ale	it is true...but
skoro (adv.)	almost, nearly
slabý	weak, slight
slovo (n)	word
slunce	
na slunci	in the sun

snažit se(II,i)	to try, endeavor, make an effort
spokojený	satisfied, content
srdce(n)	heart
špatně(adv.)	badly, poorly, wrongly
uvěřit(II,p)(See věřit)	to believe, trust
včas(adv.)	on time, in time
včera(adv.)	yesterday
včera ráno (adv.)	yesterday morning
věřit(II,i)(See uvěřit)	to believe, trust
vlastně(adv.)	as a matter of fact, in fact, actually
vracet(III,i)(See vrátit)	to return, give back
vrátit(II,p)(See vracet)	to return, give back
vůle(f)	will
zaplatit(II,p)(See platit)	to pay
zásuvka(f)	drawer
zato(adv.)	on the other hand, in return, back
zdržet se[4](IV,p)	to be detained, be held up
zlý	bad, wicked, evil, vicious
zubař(m)	dentist

1 Note that this noun is an adjective in its grammatical form, i.e., it is declined throughout as an adjective.

2 The expression jít/jet + na + Acc. is a special case of a general syntactic situation where a verb of motion is followed by its destination. The prepositional phrase na + Acc. is used when the destination is considered either an actual or figurative occasion. The following verb phrases will illustrate this point:

jít/jet	na	autobus
"	"	dovolenou
"	"	kávu
"	"	nádraží
"	"	oběd
"	"	operu
"	"	poštu
"	"	přednášku
"	"	procházku

3 The student has already observed that the stem vowel of this noun is shortened whenever it is used in juxtaposition with personal names or titles.

4 The imperfective counterpart of this verb will be introduced later. It belongs to a class of verbs not yet studied.

5 As the ending indicates, this is a soft neuter noun, but the stem-final consonant does not soften or palatalize before the specific ending -e.

6 The present tense of this verb will be given later. It belongs to a class of verbs not yet studied.

7 The word prý is an adverbial form signaling that the speaker is introducing someone else's opinions or views, usually unverified.

> Ona prý mu nevěří.
> (They say she doesn't trust him.)
>
> Zase prý tam nebylí.
> (They say that they didn't come there again.)

Note that prý is an enclitic word and precedes all other enclitic forms.

PRONUNCIATION

1) Make a special effort to eliminate aspiration of k, p, t, in the following selection of sentences.

> Park na kopci má pěknou polohu. Je tady tatínek? Tentokrát byla káva kupodivu dobrá. Půjdeme tady kolem. Každá kancelář není ovšem tichá. Pokud vím, odpovídá vždycky pozdě. Patrně vás nepoznal. Potom mu poslali také pero a papír. Tam v pokoji nahoře bydlí jen jediný pán. Konečně pochopila, že sem nepatří. Bude také zítra tak nízká teplota jako dnes? Jiři asi nepřijde, má totiž pořád bolesti. Pobudou tam jen chvíli a potom se hned vrátí.

2) Be careful to differentiate the various affricate and sibilant sounds, such as c-s, č-s, c-č, and z-ž, when they are juxtaposed within the confines of individual words or word units. In particular, preserve the complex quality of the initial c (i.e., the ts combination).

> Umíte už česky? Měsíc svítil celou noc. O svátcích vždycky jedli doma. Celou cestu jsem měl žízeň. Občas jsme se docela bavili. Co jsou vlastně lidé? Nosí často čepice. V zásuvce ležely čerstvé květiny. Můžeš mi dát další sklenici? Nemocný hoch seděl na slunci. Přesvědčil jsi mě sice, ale já pořád ještě nevím, na co se mám dívat. Držela cizí cvičení v ruce a četla je. Na kopci jsem viděl návštěvníky, kteří se vraceli.

3) In casual speech the groups ts, ds, tc, dc, are simplified to a single consonant c, and the groups tš, dš, tč, dč, to č. This happens both in internal positions as well as between words. It should be added that this simplification is usually avoided in careful pronunciation and is missing in stage pronunciation.

Musíte uklízet často? Pořád špatně spí. Tentokrát šla domů hned po večeři. Rád se dobře baví. Má ještě dětský hlas. Pomáhám otci na zahrádce. Nemohl ho vůbec přesvědčit.

4) The majority of Czech speakers pronounce double consonants as one, except when they want to prevent ambiguity. This latter qualification should be kept in mind in order to avoid possible misunderstanding in cases like raci (Nom.pl., crawfish) and racci (Nom.pl., gulls). Simplify the double consonants in the following phrases or words:

Ranní cvičení. Volá denně. Vezmeme ho s sebou. Měkký (soft), oddaný (devoted), rozzlobený (furious), leccos (all sorts of things).

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

The Dative Case

The function of the dative case is best described in the traditional way. It expresses the indirect object, the person or object, for whom or which an action is performed. As the student knows, the indirect object in English may be clearly marked by the presence of the preposition "to" or "for." Note the underlined indirect objects in the following English sentences:

He is buying a book for me.
The teacher told a story to the children.
Do you owe any money to anybody?
I cannot give anything to that organization.

But the student also knows that interchanging the order of direct and indirect objects in the above sentences can produce good English sentences where the indirect objects are not marked by "to" or "for." For this reason and for the reason that some Czech verbs take their only object in the dative case, it is imperative that the student make careful mental note of each verb that may govern an object in the dative case. The following is an exhaustive list of verbs from the first six lessons that may govern an indirect object:

dávat(i)	/	dát(p)	(to give)
dlužit(i)			(to owe)
nechávat(i)	/	nechat(p)	(to leave)
platit(i)	/	zaplatit(p)	(to pay)
posílat(i)	/	poslat(p)	(to send)
přednášet(i)			(to lecture)
říkat (i)			(to say, tell)
vracet (i)	/	vrátit (p)	(to return)

Study the following sentences that contain indirect objects used with the above verbs.

Zítra mi dá jen nějaké knihy.
(Tomorrow he'll only give me some books.)

Bratr ještě dluží tatínkovi čtyři dolary.
(Brother still owes father four dollars.)

Myslíš, že nám zaplatí dobře?
(Do you think that they will pay us well?)

Czech verbs that take their only object in the dative case include the following verbs introduced in the first six lessons of the text:

divit se			(to marvel at.
odpovídat(i)	/	odpovědět(p)	(to answer)
patřit(i)			(to belong)
pomáhat(i)	/	pomoci(p)	(to help)
rozumět(i)	/	porozumět(p)	(to understand)
věřit(i)	/	uvěřit(p)	(to believe)

Study the following sentences incorporating the above verbs and pay particular attention to the objects of these verbs in the dative case.

Až sem přijdou, hned jim odpovím.
(When they get here, I'll answer them immediately.)

Tamhle na kopci je dům, který patří mamince.
(Over there on the hill is the house that belongs to mother.)

Proč pomáhá jemu, a ne mně?
(Why does he help him, and not me?)

Nerozumím doktoru Holanovi, když mluví česky.
(I don't understand Dr. Holan when he speaks Czech.)

Vždycky mu věřím
(I always trust him.)

The dative is used in an interesting way to express an intimate kind of possession often with emotional or expressive overtones. The student should use this construction cautiously and should continually observe its future occurrences.

Sedíš mi na židli!
(You're sitting in my chair!)

Proč mi kouří v pokoji?
(Why is he smoking in my room?)

Přijel nám tatínek.
(Our father is here.)

The dative case is also used with certain prepositions such as the following:

k	(to, toward)
naproti	(opposite, across the street)
proti	(against)

found in the vocabulary of this lesson. Any nouns used as the object of these prepositions must appear in the dative case. Examine closely the prepositional phrases in the following Czech sentences:

Jde k lavičce a bere knihu, která na ní leží.
(He goes to the bench and picks up the book lying on it.)

Naproti nám bydlejí jen studenti.
(Only students live across from us.)

Otec vždycky mluví proti moderní hudbě.
(Father always speaks against modern music.)

Dative Singular (Nouns)

Even though the dative case and the locative case are quite distinct in their usage, the near similarity of the dative and locative endings in the singular number should be exploited by the student in acquiring the dative case forms. The only complication in the morphology of the dative singular is encountered in animate masculine nouns where the speaker is given a free choice of two endings. Inanimate masculine nouns and neuter nouns exhibit the same endings: -u after hard stems and -i after soft stems.

Inanimate Masculine:

dopis > dopisu
hlad > hladu
dům > domu

kašel > kašli
pokoj > pokoji
stroj > stroji

Neuter:

léto > létu
kolo > kolu
okno > oknu

moře > moři
pole > poli
nádraží > nádraží

Animate masculine nouns offer a choice of the endings -u/-ovi, if the stem is hard, and a choice of the endings -i/-ovi, if the stem is soft. The student must note that Czech speakers tend to favor -ovi for hard stems and -i for soft stems. Just as in the case of the locative singular, however, two or more nouns juxtaposed in titles or names distribute these endings in such a way that the last noun in the series acquires the ending -ovi and the other nouns either -u or -i.

hoch > hochovi / hochu
člověk > člověkovi / člověku
kapitán > kapitánovi / kapitánu
doktor Holan > doktoru Holanovi

muž > muži / mužovi
učitel > učiteli / učitelovi
zubař > zubaři / zubařovi
Tomáš Topič > Tomáši Topičovi

Feminine nouns in the dative singular are identical to the locative singular. This means that they have -e after hard stems and -i after soft. The ending -e causes palatalization of all possible stem-final hard consonants and is therefore written -ě after p, b, m, f, v, t, d, and n.

žena : ženě
kniha > knize
matka > matce
píseň > písni
postel > posteli
noc > noci

země > zemi
židle > židli
práce > práci
radost > radosti
kost > kosti
rez > rzi

Dative Plural

The dative plural endings are quite different from those for the locative plural. Note too that masculine and neuter nouns are not exactly alike in their formal properties. Masculine nouns, both hard and soft, take -ům; whereas hard neuter nouns add -ům, but soft neuter nouns add -ím. Feminine nouns with -a/-e in the nominative singular use -ám, if the stem is hard, but -ím, if the stem is soft. Most feminine nouns with a zero ending in the nominative and accusative singular have the ending -em in the dative plural, but a few such nouns, which must be marked in the vocabularies, have -ím.

Masculine:

dopis > dopisům
dům > domům
doktor > doktorům

muž > mužům
pokoj > pokojům
lékař > lékařům

Neuter:

léto > létům
kolo > kolům
pero > perům

moře > mořím
pole > polím
nádraží > nádražím

Feminine:

žena > ženám
kniha > knihám
matka > matkám

země > zemím
židle > židlím
práce > pracím (Short stem vowel!)

věc > věcem
kost > kostem
radost > radostem
lidé > lidem

Note the dative plural forms in -ím for the following words introduced so far in the vocabularies:

skříň > skříním
chuť > chutím
noc > nocím
odpověď > odpovědím

Dative Case (Pronouns)

Learn the dative case forms for the personal and interrogative pronouns from the following tables. Note particularly the dependent enclitic forms of the pronouns that behave syntactically like other dependent forms previously presented and the third person forms with a prefixed n- that are used after prepositions.

Personal

	1 sg.	2 sg.	1 pl.	2 pl.	3sg. masc. neut.	3sg. fem.	3 pl.
independent	mně	tobě	nám	vám	jemu (němu)	jí (ní)	jim (nim)
dependent	mi	ti			mu		

Interrogative

who	what
komu	čemu

Dative Case (Adjectives)

The adjectival endings for the dative case should present no problem to the learner. There is a clearly defined set of endings for hard stems and a similar set for soft stems. In the singular hard stems exhibit -ému for masculine and neuter genders and -é for feminine. Soft stems have -ímu for masculine and neuter, -í for feminine.

Masc./Neut.		Fem.
dobr-ému	(good)	dobr-é
lehk-ému	(light)	lehk-é
ciz-ímu	(foreign)	ciz-í
prvn-ímu	(first)	prvn-í

In the plural all genders share one ending that it written -ým after hard stems and -ím after soft stems.

dobr-ým	ciz-ím
lehk-ým	prvn-ím

Adjectival inflection for the dative case may be summarized as follows:

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine Neuter	Feminine	All Genders
Hard	dobr-ému	dobr-é	dobr-ým
Soft	ciz-ímu	ciz-í	ciz-ím

EXERCISES

Use the following list of nouns and adjectives in the exercises below:

Nouns (Animate)

doktor
hudebník
hoch
blondýnka
člověk
dívka
návštěvník
muž
žena

Nouns (Inanimate)

nádraží
stůl
vlak
okno
postel
skříň
židle
byt
auto
dům
strom
zahrádka
hora
pošta

Adjectives

prázdný
jediný
vysoký
starý
inteligentní
tichý
[illegible]
protivný
cizí
moderní

1) Use appropriate nouns from the above lists in the blanks of the following sentences. In addition, use all possible personal pronouns in each sentence, changing the word order, if necessary.

Bude přednášet __________ o lingvistice.
Ještě _________dlužím dopis.
Vidím, že zase jdete k __________.
Musíme dnes zaplatit _________, protože zítra (odjet).
Občas posíláme ___________ telegram nebo dopis.
Obyčejně tady __________ nechávám jen papír.
Můžete už __________ vrátit pero?
Nevěřím _________, ačkoli _________ určitě (odpovědět).
Každá kniha tady ovšem _______ nepatří.
Dnes __________ nesmíme pomáhat.

2) Construct appropriate adjective-noun phrases from the above lists and insert in the blanks of the following sentences.

Jste proti _________?
Myslíte, že _________ opravdu rozumějí?
Jediná věc, kterou ________ rádi dávají, jsou květiny.
Procházejí se v parku naproti ________.
Vidím ho, jak jde rychle k ______.

Expression of the Past Tense in Czech

Czech does not have one single form of the verb for the expression of the past tense. Instead, it utilizes a periphrastic construction consisting of the various forms of the verb "to be" plus a kind of "perfect" participle that agrees with the subject in gender and number. Thus, Czech expresses the past tense by a stative form which conveys merely the information that such and such an action is over and done with at the time of the speech act (the moment of utterance). This perfect participle is formed by addition of the morpheme -l- to the non-present stem of the verb, e.g., vidě- + -l- > viděl-; then to this form are added the following various vocalic endings expressing gender and number relationships:

	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV	Class V
M.sg.	dával	prosil	uměl	slyšel	nesl
F.sg.	dávala	prosila	uměla	slyšela	nesla
N.sg.	dávalo	prosilo	umělo	slyšelo	neslo
M.pl. anim.	dávali	prosili	uměli	slyšeli	nesli
M.pl. inan. F.pl.	dávaly	prosily	uměly	slyšely	nesly
N.pl.	dávala	prosila	uměla	slyšela	nesla

As the student has observed, the formation of the perfect participle is a fairly simple process when the stem of the verb consists of at least two syllables and ends in a vowel. When, however, the stem consists of only one syllable, ending in either a vowel or a consonant, the process is complicated by the fact that the two non-present forms studied so far, the infinitive and the perfect participle, do not agree in their root vocalism. There are two principal types of differences here. In the first type the infinitive exhibits a long vowel and the perfect participle a short vowel. In this instance early intonational and quantitative features of the roots plus later adjustments in length have combined to create a fairly regular opposition of long vowel in the infinitive versus short vowel in the other forms of the verb. Actually, it is best to regard the stem form in the perfect participle as the basic form and that of the infinitive as the innovating form. Learn the following participial forms:

brát: bral, brala, bralo, brali, braly, brala
být: byl, byla, bylo, byli, byly, byla
dát: dal, dala, dalo, dali, daly, dala
nést: nesl, nesla, neslo, nesli, nesly, nesla
plést se: pletl se, pletla se, pletlo se, pletli se, pletly se, pletla se
ptát se: ptal se, ptala se, ptalo se, ptali se, ptaly se, ptala se
spát: spal, spala, spalo, spali, spaly, spala
znát: znal, znala, znalo, znali, znaly, znala

The second type of difference for the most part shows the same feature of length in the infinitive, but this feature is accompanied by a change in vowel quality. Study carefully the following juxtapositions of infinitive and perfect participle:

číst: četl, četla, četlo, četli, četly, četla
jíst: jedl, jedla, jedlo, jedli, jedly, jedla
mít: měl, měla, mělo, měli, měly, měla
vzít: vzal, vzala, vzalo, vzali, vzaly, vzala
znít: zněl, zněla, znělo, zněli, zněly, zněla

Three more apparently irregular perfect participles remain to be cited. They are the following:

jet: jel, jela, jelo, jeli, jely, jela
jít: šel, šla, šlo, šli, šly, šla
moci: mohl, mohla, mohlo, mohli, mohly, mohla

Note that there is no *-d* in *jel*, *jela*, etc., that *jít* has an entirely different stem in the participle, and that the true stem reappears in the forms *mohl*, *mohla*, etc. Note also that the perfect participle of the verb *jít* exhibits the "double-stem" phenomenon and has an inserted *-e-* in the stem form preceding a zero ending.

The two verbs *bát se* and *stát* were not discussed above because they do not show an alternation of length. Their perfect participles read as follows:

bát se: bál se, bála se, bálo se, etc.
stát: stál, stála, stálo, etc.

No shortening of the stem vowel takes place here because, as the student will recall, the length in these forms results from an earlier contraction of two syllables.

The student may consider all these participles as adjectival forms used only in the nominative case, i.e., only in the forms listed above; but he should pay strict attention to how these endings differ from regular adjectival endings.

The Perfect Participle Plus Forms of "být"

As indicated above, the various forms of the perfect participle are combined usually in the following manner with the present tense forms of the verb "být" to obtain the complete past tense construction.

	Singular	Plural
1 pers.	viděl/viděla jsem	viděli/viděly jsme
2 pers.	viděl/viděla jsi/jste	viděli/viděly jste
3 pers.	viděl/viděla/vidělo	viděli/viděly/viděla

Note that the third person forms do not use their corresponding forms of the verb "být." Note also that, as the perfect participles and all other adjectival forms reveal, the polite form of the second person plural may be either singular or plural. From the position of the forms of "být" in the above phrases, the student can deduce that they are dependent or enclitic forms in this construction and will always appear after the first independent or stressed word in the sentence.

The student must also note that there exist some contracted forms of the auxiliary verb "jsi" in the second person singular form. This contracted form is s when it is not used with the reflexive pronouns, but it combines in an idiosyncratic way with "se" and "si" to produce "ses" and "sis" respectively. When neither se or si is present, the s will attach itself to the preceding stressed word. The student may use the contracted or uncontracted forms in the second person singular. Study the following sentences containing the contracted forms of "jsi."

Viděli jsi/Vidělas sestru v městě?
(Did you see your sister in town?)

Kde jsi/Kdes ho viděl?
(Where did you see him?)

Proč jsi se/ses včera ptal na Milenu?
(Why were you asking about Milena yesterday?)

Vzpomínal jsi si/sis na mne?
(Were you thinking of me?)

Hierarchy of Enclitics

The preceding discussion and demonstration lead naturally to a detailed consideration of the relative placement of dependent or enclitic items that can appear with the periphrastic expression for the past tense, which is one of the most complex syntactic constructions in this respect. As is to be expected, the string of enclitics will line up after the first independent word or phrase in the sentence; in this particular case this word is frequently but not necessarily the perfect participle. The following order is to be observed among the enclitics:

1) Auxiliary Verb (Present Form of být) + Indirect Object + Direct Object

2) Auxiliary Verb (Present Form of být) + Reflexive Pronoun + Secondary Object (object in oblique case)

Formula 1) above is exemplified by the following sentences:

Vrátil jsi mu včera další knihu?
(Did you return another book to him yesterday?)

Já jsem mu ji už vrátil.
(I have already returned it to him.)

Už jim zaplatil i poslední dolary?
(Has he already paid them the last dollars?)

Ano, zaplatil jim je v parku.
(Yes, he paid them to them in the park.)

Formula 2) above can be found in the following sentences:

Podíval jsem se na něho, když přišel.
(I took a look at him when he arrived.)

Bála se ho, když tak mluvil.
(She was afraid of him when he spoke that way.)

In the last sentence the pronoun "ho" is actually in the genitive case. The verb "bát se" as well as such reflexive verbs as "ptát se" and "divit se" can take a secondary object.

The negative particle is always attached to the perfect participle:

Nepoznala ho v novém klobouku.
(She didn't recognize him in a new hat.)

Já jsem dnes ráno neposlouchal hudbu.
(I wasn't listening to music this morning.)

The Uses of the Past Tense Forms

As in most languages, the past-tense forms in Czech are semantically marked in a very direct and simple way; they always refer to an action that has taken place prior to the moment of utterance. The only complication is introduced by the aspects. From the above examples the student has deduced that perfect participles can be formed from both perfective and imperfective verbs. In the past, just as in the expressions for the future, the student's problem will lie in making the choice between the perfective and imperfective aspects. In making this critical choice the student must always be guided by the general definition already given for the two aspects: if the verb expresses the completion of a single instance of the action in the past, he will select the perfective aspect; otherwise he will select the imperfective aspect. The decision will not always be obvious. Future lessons will discuss situations where the Czechs make not readily predictable selections of one aspect or the other. For the time being it will suffice to call the student's attention to the confrontation between Czech and English expressions for past actions. The Czech past tense construction may be equivalent to the English simple past, progressive past, present perfect, or past perfect. This array of English tenses offers little help in choosing the proper aspect in Czech; we can say only that the English progressive form is always translated by the imperfective aspect, and English perfect forms are frequently rendered by the perfective aspect. Study the selection of Czech sentences below and their English equivalents.

Našli jste ho na nádraží?
(Did you find him at the station?)

Potkal jsem ho včera.
(I met him yesterday.)

Tatínek vzal lampu, dal ji na stůl, a odešel.
(Father took the lamp, put it on the table, and went out.)

Bratr četl každý večer nějakou knihu.
(Brother was reading some book every evening.)

Pršelo, když jsem odcházel.
(It was raining when I departed.)

Na podzim jsme se vraceli domů.
(In autumn we were returning home.)

Dělal jsem pořádek, když zavolal.
(I was cleaning up when he called.)

Už jsme zasadili tři stromy.
(We have planted three trees now.)

Ještě nám nepomáhali.
(They have not helped us yet.)

Sestra uklidila a čeká na nás na zahrádce.
(Sister has tidied up and is waiting for us in the yard.)

Právě jsem se odtud vrátil, když přišel telegram.
(I had just returned from there when the telegram arrived.)

The student should be careful not to use the past tense forms in sentences where English uses the present perfect continuous forms, as in a sentence like "We have been living in Prague for two years." In such situations we are dealing with actions that begin in the past or before the moment of utterance and are still in progress in the present or at the time of the speech act. Czech uses the imperfective present in such situations. Observe that Czech frequently places už before the time expression.

Znám ji už dlouho.
(I have known her for a long time.)

Čekáme na tebe už hodinu.
(We have been waiting for you an hour now.)

Jsou tady patrně jen chvíli.
(They've apparently been here only a while.)

Exercises

1) Convert the infinitives in the following Czech sentences to all possible present and past forms, selecting the proper aspect when necessary.

(Moci) se procházet.
(Neodpovídat/neodpovědět) sestře na dopis.
(Číst/přečíst) při hudbě knihu?
(Jíst), když (přicházet/přijít).
(Nespat), protože (mít) hlad.
Zřejmě (plést se), profesor Holan (přednášet) jindy.
(Dávat/dát) mu jej zase.
(Bát se), že bude pršet.
(Jít) k němu nerad.
(Brát/vzít) dopis na poštu.

2) Translate the following sentences into Czech paying close attention to the form, use and aspect of the Czech formula for the past tense.

1. I hope that she has already answered you.
2. Did you understand her or did you have to ask once again?
3. From time to time the professor used to lecture to them on trees.
4. At first I lived in town, and then I left there (omit "there").
5. Did they see you as you were returning home?
6. I was mistaken; I didn't know that you would be here.
7. Father used to come here for supper.
8. Who made the coffee this morning?
9. He was telling me that she had left some books on the table.
10. How did mother look last night?
11. We were waiting for him at the railroad station.
12. When we arrived, they were planting flowers in the yard.
13. I heard that old people frequently took walks there.
14. Were you getting ready to leave when he made the call?
15. I called them the whole evening, but neither mother nor father answered.
16. We gave it (fem.) to him as he left.
17. I understand (Use prý) that you tried to call him yesterday but that he was no longer there.
18. At first I couldn't stand him, but my friend, Karel, convinced me that I was wrong.
19. Who was asking where I was this morning?
20. Whenever he spoke about the lectures, he used to exaggerate terribly.
21. Often when we spoke about Prague, he remembered you too.
22. It hasn't rained yet today.
23. He only knew how to drive a small car.
24. Although she had terrible pains, she didn't cry out.
25. You have obviously convinced him that he should help us.

Tense Sequence in Subordinate Noun Clauses

The student is certainly familiar with the rules for tense sequence in English subordinate noun clauses. These rules come into play when the main verb is in the past tense and require: 1) that the verb in the subordinate clause be in the past tense when its action is simultaneous with that of the main verb, e.g., "He said he was fixing the car."; 2) that the verb in the subordinate clause be in the conditional or "future in the past" when its action is subsequent to that of the main verb., e.g., "He promised he would come on time."; and may require that the verb in the subordinate clause be in the past perfect form when its action precedes that of the main verb, e.g., "He believed he had done a good job." Fortunately no such complication is found in Czech, and the use of the tenses in subordinate noun clauses is very straightforward. The various tense forms of the verb in Czech are employed in the same way in relationship to the verb of the main clause as verbs in all main clauses are employed in relationship to the moment of utterance. This means that the imperfective present is used to express simultaneity of action, the perfect participles are used to express preceding actions, and both the perfective present and the periphrastic future construction are used to express subsequent actions. These relationships hold true no matter what tense the main verb is in. When there is more than one subordinate noun clause, the tense of the verb in the last clause stands in the same relationship to the immediately preceding verb. Study the examples in the sentences below.

Simultaneous Action

Ví, že mám práci.
(He knows that I am busy.)

Bude myslit, že to děláte.
(He will think that you are doing that.)

Myslil jsem, že na mne čeká na nádraží.
(I thought that he was waiting for me at the station.)

Věděli jsme, že bydlí v Praze už tři roky.
(We knew that she had been living in Prague for three years.)

Preceding Action

Víme, že jste měl volno.
(We know that you were free.)

Řeknu jim, že jste nás viděl.
(I'll tell them that you saw us.)

Doufal jsem, že ji našla.
(I hoped that she had found her.)

Říkal, že byl včera v parku.
(He said that he was in the park yesterday.)

Subsequent Action

Bojíme se, že se zmýlíme.
(We are afraid that we will be mistaken.)

Uvidíte, že bude ještě ležet v posteli.
(You will see that he will still be lying in bed.)

Řekl mi, že mi bude posílat dopis každý měsíc.
(He told me that he would send me a letter every month.)

Bál jsem se, že se tatínek vrátí příliš brzo.
(I feared that father would return too soon.)

Two Subordinate Clauses

Doufal jsem, že pochopí, že maminka přišla včas.
(I hoped that he would understand that mother
had come on time.)

Myslili jsme, že řekne, že čeká na nás.
(We thought that he would say that he was waiting for us.)

Říkal, že četl, že se lidé na něho ptají.
(He said that he had read that people were asking about him.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. I feared that he would leave too early.
2. Do you think you (2pl.) will be detained there tomorrow?
3. He was saying that big cities didn't interest him.
4. We heard that he had asked about her.
5. I know that you're (2pl.) right, but I won't let you go.
6. She wasn't at all surprised that the light wasn't on downstairs.
7. She will answer that she can't stand them any longer.
8. Mother thinks she heard that father would say (Use řekne) he was wrong.
9. We hope that the doctors will attempt to return tomorrow (Use one se only).
10. Did I understand correctly (Use dobře) that he said he would arrive tomorrow morning?
11. She convinced me that I must send him tea and not coffee.
12. He also believed that I hadn't yet helped Klára put things in order.

Direct Perception

As was mentioned briefly in Note 1 to the dialogue of Lesson IV, when appropriate verbs are used to express the direct perception of an action in progress or brought to completion, as in the English sentences "I saw him smoking" or "I saw him smoke," Czech uses two syntactic devices: 1) the conjunction jak plus a subordinate clause (since jak usually means "how," the subject of the subordinate clause will sometimes be used as the direct object of the main verb in order to avoid ambiguity. For more information see below.) or 2) a direct object plus an infinitive. The verb of the main clause must be a verb of perception such as vidět, slyšet, cítit, or vzpomínat si. If these verbs of perception are transitive, such as vidět, slyšet, and cítit, they can be used with both of the above subordinate constructions:

Viděl jsem, jak bratr kouří.
Viděl jsem bratra, jak kouří.
Viděl jsem bratra kouřit.

The relationship between the tense of the main verb of perception and the verb in the subordinate clause after jak requires some explanation. If the main verb is present tense, the subordinate verb is usually imperfective present;

but, if an action that used to take place in the past is viewed in the mind's eye in the present, then the imperfective or perfective past is used. This occurs especially in the case of a verb like vzpomínat si. If the main verb is past, the subordinate verb may be either imperfective present or imperfective past, with preferences usually given to the present tense, to express an action in progress or may be perfective past to express an action brought to completion. If the main verb expresses a future action, the subordinate verb can be imperfective present to denote an action in progress or perfective present to refer to an action brought to completion. When the construction involving a direct object and an infinitive is used, the infinitive can be either imperfective or perfective. Study the following examples carefully.

Cítím, jak se bolest vrací.
(I feel the pain returning.)

Slyšela, jak Karel křičí nahoře v pokoji.
(She heard Karel shouting upstairs in his room.)

Vzpomínáme si, jak jsme se tam loni procházeli.
(We recall walking there last year.)

Slyšeli jsme, jak maminka přišla domů.
(We heard mother come home.)

Uvidíš ji, jak čeká na rohu.
(You will see her waiting on the corner.)

Uslyšíte, jak ráno odejde.
(You will hear him leave in the morning.)

Ještě slyším, jak jí rozpačitě odpověděl.
(I can still hear him give her a hesitant answer.)

Vidíte ji odcházet?
(Do you see her leaving?)

The student should note that, when the manner of the action is emphasized, Czech also uses the adverb jak plus a subordinate clause. Some of these sentences may be identical to those expressing direct perception.

Uvidíš, jak rychle vstává.
(You will see how quickly he gets up.)
or
(You will see him getting up quickly.)

As mentioned above, this ambiguity may be resolved by making the subject of the subordinate clause the direct object of the main verb.

Uvidíš ho, jak rychle vstává.
(You will see him getting up quickly.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. I recall our listening to modern music.
2. We heard her answer his (Use dative of the pronoun) question.

3. Have you (2sg.) heard the professor (prefix the noun with pan) lecture?
4. She saw me paying him.
5. You will always see him helping her clean up the apartment.
6. I hear her asking about them right now.
7. You can see him come and call her every evening.
8. Who saw Karel standing downstairs in the apartment?
9. He listened to us speaking Czech.
10. Do you (2sg.) recall preparing to go out?
11. I watched him plant a tree.
12. I almost feel him looking at me.

DIALOGUE

Doufám, že ti už Karel zaplatil. Dluží ti hodně?	I hope that Karel has already paid you. Does he owe you a lot?
Ne, ještě mi nezaplatil. Ale dluží mi málo, jen tři dolary. Ovšem dluží mi také odpověď' na poslední dopis.	No, he hasn't paid me yet. But he doesn't owe me very much, only three dollars. Of course, he also owes me an answer to my last letter.

* * *

Rozuměl jste jí?	Did you understand her?
Rozuměl jsem každému slovu.	I understood every word.
Co vlastně říkala?	What did she actually say?
Ptala se, kam půjdeme na oběd.	She was asking where we'd go for lunch.
Divím se, že ji takové věci mohou zajímat. Proč nám nepomohla, když jsme měli práci?	I am surprised that such things can interest her. Why didn't she help us when we were busy?

Měl jste včera volno? Viděl jsem vás ráno v parku.	Were you free yesterday? I saw you in the park in the morning.
Volno jsem měl a v parku jsem také byl, ale nebyl jsem tam na procházce. Když jste mě viděl, šel jsem právě k zubaři; on totiž bydlí v domě naproti parku.	I was free, and I too was in the park; but I wasn't taking a walk there. When you saw me, I was just on my way to the dentist; he just lives in the house across from the park.
Měl jste bolesti?	Did you have any pains?
Hrozné! Celou noc jsem nespal.	Terrible! I didn't sleep the whole night.
Doufám, že vám dal nějaké léky proti bolestem.	I hope that he gave you some remedies for the pains.
Dal a pomohly mi, dnes se už zase cítím docela dobře.	He did, and they helped me; today I feel quite well again now.

* * *

Co dělá Milan? Už jsem ho dlouho neviděl.	What is Milan doing? I haven't seen him for a long time now.
Já nevím. Potkávám ho sice občas na universitě, ale on obyčejně pospíchá a někdy mi ani neodpoví na pozdrav.[1]	I don't know. It's true I meet him from time to time at the university; but he's usually in a hurry, and sometimes he doesn't even acknowledge my greeting.
Byl prý v poslední době nemocný.	They say he's been ill recently.
Opravdu? Pokud vím, měl vždycky slabé srdce.	Really? As far as I know, he's always had a weak heart.
Slabé srdce, ale silnou vůli. Milan je jediný člověk, kterému věřím, když říká, že se nerad baví, když nemusí.	A weak heart, but a strong will. Milan is the only person whom I believe when he says he doesn't like to have a good time when he shouldn't.

* * *

Která kniha patří panu Holanovi? Musíme mu ji ještě dnes večer poslat.	Which book belongs to Mr. Holan? We should send it to him yet this evening.
Měli jsme mu ji vrátit už včera ráno.	We were supposed to return it to him yesterday morning.
Kdo je vlastně pan Holan?	Just who is Mr. Holan?
Ty nevíš? Loni jsme mu občas pomáhali při práci na zahrádce. Zítra k nám asi přijde na návštěvu.[2]	You don't know? Last year we used to help him with his work in his yard. He may come to our place tomorrow for a visit.
Ano ovšem. Holan je takový příjemný starý pán, který rád hodně mluví, a který bydlí naproti Kláře.	Yes, of course. Holan is a rather pleasant old man, who likes to talk a lot and who lives across from Klára's place.

Ačkoli ráno pršelo, nyní k poledni už zase svítí slunce.	Although it rained in the morning, now toward noon the sun is shining again.
Nebe je skoro celé modré a někdy k večeru už zřejmě budu moci jít na procházku.	The sky is almost all blue and sometime toward evening I'll obviously be able to go for a walk.
Možná, že také půjdu na universitu pro knihy, které jsem tam včera asi nechal.	It is possible that I'll also go to the university to get the books that I may have left there yesterday.

* * *

Je Jiří spokojený v práci?	Is Jiří happy in his work?
Na otázku, která vás zajímá, vám bohužel mohu odpovědět. Myslím, že ne. Platí mu totiž jen občas a přitom špatně.	Unfortunately, I am able to give you an answer to the question that interests you. I don't think he is. They only pay him from time to time, and poorly at that.

* * *

Pan profesor neodpovídá na každý dopis.	The professor doesn't answer every letter.
Nemá prý čas.	They say he's busy.
Zato rád každému dlouho přednáší o zlých lidech, kteří neodpovídají na dopisy.	On the other hand, he likes to lecture everyone at length about wicked people who don't answer letters.

* * *

Nemohu pochopit, proč Milena a Jarmila tak brzo odjely.	I can't comprehend why Milena and Jarmila left so soon.
Věděly vůbec, že přijdu pozdě?	Did they at all know that I would arrive late?
Zdržel jsem se bohužel v kanceláři a potom jsem ještě musel jít na poštu, a tak jsem přirozeně nemohl přijít včas.	I was unfortunately detained in the office, and afterwards I still had to go to the post office, and so naturally I coudn't come on time.

* * *

Máte pravdu.	You are right.
Já každému hned neuvěřím.	I won't trust everyone right from the start.
Lidé se mě totiž příliš často snaží přesvědčit, že jim mám věřit a nebát se.	Just too often people try to convince me that I should trust them and not be afraid.

* * *

Loni jsme měli zvlášt' pěknou dovolenou.	Last year we had an especially nice vacation.
Jeli jsme k moři a byli jsme tam celý měsíc.	We went to the seashore and spent a whole month there.

Malé město, kde jsme bydleli, bylo skoro prázdné.	The small town where we stayed was almost empty.
Všude kolem byly krásné lesy a louky a my jsme celý měsíc jen leželi na slunci, procházeli se, jedli a spali.	All around there were beautiful forests and meadows, and we just lay in the sun the whole month, went for walks, ate and slept.
Jak žena ráda říkala: přírodě přirozeně porozumíte jen když v ní jste.	As my wife liked to say: you will naturally understand nature only when you are in it.

* * *

Kam dáváte papír?	Where do you keep paper?
Mám jej obyčejně v levé zásuvce nahoře. Určitě jej tam najdete. Už jej vidíte? Někdy sice nechávám nějaký papír také v pravé zásuvce, ale tam se dívat nemusíte, tam není, protože jsem jej odtud včera večer vzal.	I usually keep it in the upper left-hand drawer. I'm sure you'll find it there. Do you see it now? It's true I sometimes leave some paper also in the right-hand drawer, but you needn't look there; it's not there because I took it out of there last night.

1 Note the perfective aspect of "neodpoví." Even though repetition of an action is involved here, the perfective aspect is used to emphasize each discrete instance of this action appearing against the background of the imperfective action, "pospíchá."

2 Note that personal pronouns, names of persons, or nouns designating persons, when used with the preposition *k* and verbs of motion, may mean motion not only toward that person but also toward his place of residence or work.

READING EXERCISE

Včera ráno jsem seděl na lavičce v parku. Ty jsi šel kolem, ale neviděl jsi mě. Vypadal jsi unavený a díval jsi se, jak se na louce procházejí nějací lidé. Myslel jsem, že musíš být nemocný. Chvíli jsem tě vlastně nemohl ani poznat. Kam jsi šel? Cítíš se dobře? Vím, že jsi měl rýmu, proto se ptám. A kdy budeš mít zase volno? Já jsem neměl volno tak dlouho, že už nevím, co dovolená je.

Říkám vám, že práce může být často, vlastně vždycky, příjemná. Jen ji musíte mít rád a musíte být přitom také zdravý. Já jsem v kanceláři denně a obyčejně dlouho. Mám pořád nějakou práci a někdy se tam zdržím ještě po práci. Domů potom přijdu pozdě večer. Já ovšem nemusím pospíchat. Nemám totiž ženu ani otce nebo bratra a návštěvníci ke mně přicházejí jen občas. Proč potom pospíchat? Jak vidíte, já se v práci opravdu bavím.

Už jste jedl? Karel říkal, že prý dnes na oběd nepůjde, protože musí zavolat matku. Tak jsem myslel, že počkám na vás. Budete moci jít? Neznám vás sice dost dobře, ale potkávam vás někdy na ulici. Často o vás také mluví přítel Jiří. Který klobouk vám patří? Myslím totiž, že budete muset mít s sebou klobouk, venku trochu prší. Doufal jsem, že k poledni bude už svítit slunce, ale zmýlil jsem se. Nebe je pořád velmi nízké a teplota také. Dnes prostě nebudeme dlouho venku.

Loni v létě, při poslední cestě na jih, jsem potkal v malém městě, kde jsem bydlel, Milana. Měl jsem velkou radost, protože Milan je velmi příjemný člověk. Takového přítele jako on všude nenajdete. Nesnaží se vás přesvědčit o různých pravdách, které vás nutně nezajímají. Zato se rád prochází v přírodě a dělá různé věci, které lidé obyčejně dělají, když jsou na dovolené: rád pozdě vstává, čte, vaří a jen tak prostě hovoří a dívá se na letní přírodu. A my jsme přirozeně byli takoví lidé na dovolené. Měli jsme čas, a tak jsme leželi v lese nebo na slunci a snažili jsme se být spokojení. Denně jsme posílali lidem, které známe dlouhé dopisy. Celé hodiny jsme seděli při kávě a četli. Škoda, že jsme odtud museli brzo odjet. Krásné dovolené jsou zřejmě vždycky krátké. Ještě jsem nenašel člověka, který někdy měl příliš dlouho volno.

Když jsem přicházel domů, zněly v otevřeném okně nějaké hlasy. Nevěděl jsem, kdo tam nahoře může být. Mohl tam být ovšem Milan a Karel. Říkali totiž, že ke mně brzo přijdou. Ale kdo ještě? Snažil jsem se porozumět každému slovu, ale slyšel jsem jen smích a provoz na ulici. Protože jsem věděl, že k nám přicházejí jen návštěvníci, které dobře známe, nebál jsem se, že v bytě budou cizí lidé. Když jsem konečně stál nahoře v pokoji, viděl jsem, že jsem se nemýlil. Hlasy opravdu patřily Milanovi a Karlovi, kteří seděli na židlích naproti oknu a hovořili. Brzo jsem pochopil, že mluví o mně. Ptali se, proč prý jdu tak pozdě. Ale jak jsem mohl vědět, že jdu pozdě, když jsem ani nevěděl, že mám přijít.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. It's true that we left there late, but we came home in time. 2. We can't be there such a long time; we have to return yet this evening. 3. I hope that you'll have a pleasant vacation. 4. Last winter we were in the mountains (Use loni). 5. Of course, he couldn't know why they always paid (Use present tense) him so poorly. 6. She replied to each question rather hesitantly. 7. He doesn't trust even a good friend. 8. Although I went to the dentist immediately, I still had a lot of (Use velký with the plural) pain for a long time afterwards. 9. When did they actually leave for lunch? 10. From time to time he also takes along some books about nature. 11. She has eaten very little for a whole month; that's why she's so weak now. 12. Have you found Mr. Holan (emphatic)? 13. Do we have any cough medicine (Use a prepositional phrase) here? 14. As I know him, he is arrogant and obviously won't help you. 15. Is Milena still here? No, she has just left. 16. When I'm free, I lie in the sun almost the whole day. 17. He spoke so rapidly that I didn't understand even a single word. 18. I recall that I've been owing (Use present tense)

you an answer to your letter for a month now. 19. He was very surprised when I convinced him that we had really paid him. 20. In which drawer did you find the address-book that I left there? 21. Until yesterday (Use ještě) a tall, old tree stood on the road to the woods. 22. Seriously, do you understand such things well? 23. I knew that he was (Use present tense) intelligent, but I couldn't comprehend why he believed (Use present tense) strangers (Use "strange people"). 24. I still owe some dollars to him, but I gave to her the last dollar I was supposed to return to her. 25. Milena had a bad night; she couldn't sleep at all because she had terrible pains in her hand. 26. It's true we won't be able to go to their place tomorrow morning, but we'll give them a call soon after the holidays. 27. They read a lot; on the other hand they rarely (Use málo) listened to music. 28. Did you say that she went to get glasses? 29. I'm not especially glad when visitors come to my place immediately after work. 30. She was sitting opposite him, and she saw that he was (Use present tense) tired. 31. Neither Karel nor I will be in the office tommorrow; we have colds again. 32. She'll go there apparently toward noon; she has to put things in order at home first. 33. I'll help you (2sg.), but not him. 34. Although they pay me poorly at work, I try to be satisfied. 35. Has the first morning train already arrived? 36. Why didn't you go to the seashore (Use "sea") this year, when you love it so? 37. I have no idea where they are; perhaps they were detained downtown. 38. You were right; Professor Holan lectured elsewhere last year. 39. I am not too surprised that he was ill so long; he has a very weak heart. 40. What else belongs to sister? 41. Which gentleman's turn is it now? 42. He sends her greetings every day, but they say she hasn't replied to him yet. 43. Do you feel pain in the right or left hand? 44. Do you have some paper here? 45. Last year there was a beautiful meadow over there, through which (Use po) we used to walk from time to time. 46. I don't exaggerate when I say that my brother is the only person who believed and also understood them?

CONVERSATION TOPICS

Zubař a bolesti.
Někdo prý je doma nemocný.
Takové věci mě málo zajímají.
Odpovídáte rád na dopisy?
Kde jste byl včera?
Proč musíme věřit lidem?
Našel jste někdy nějaké věci v parku?
Co děláte na universitě?
Proč jste se dnes zdržel?
Chystáte se na dovolenou?
Snaží se vás lidé často přesvědčit?
Půjdete večer na procházku?
Jak vám platí v práci?
Co rád děláte, když máte volno?
Jaké knihy s sebou máte?
Na jaké otázky nerad odpovídáte?
Pomáháte lidem, když máte práci?
Kdy jste obyčejně spokojený?
Kdo bydlí naproti vám?
Ležet na slunci.

LESSON VII

VOCABULARY

americký	American
a tak dále, atd.	and so on, etc.
brejle(f)(Plural only)	glasses (spectacles)
četba(f)	reading
divadlo(n)	theater
dlouhý	long
dostat(Va,p)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)(See dostávat)	to get, receive
druhý	second, another, other
důležitý	important
hra(f)	play, game
hubený	thin, lean, slim
hubnout (VI,i)(See zhubnout)	to grow slim, lose weight
chodba (f)	corridor, hall
chválit (II,i)(See pochválit)	to praise
chybět (III,i)	to be missing
jeden, jedna, jedno (See Grammar Analysis)	one, a/an
jednou (adv.)	once, once upon a time, one day
jestli	whether, if
jinam (adv.)	elsewhere, to a different place
jiný	other, different
končit (II,i)(See skončit)	to end, finish, be over
křiknout (VI,p)(See křičet)	to shout, cry
kultura(f)	culture
mezitím (adv.)	in the meantime
míjet (III,i)(See minout)	to pass, go by
minout (VI,p)(See míjet)	to pass, go by
mizet (III,i)(See zmizet)	to disappear, vanish, be gone
nedávno (adv.)	recently, not long ago
neděle(f)	Sunday
nos(m)	nose
obléknout se[1](VI,p)(See oblékat se)	to put on, dress
obrázek/obrázk(m)	illustration, picture

podobný (+ Dat.)	similar, resembling
pochválit (II,p)(See chválit)	to praise
potrvat (I,p)(See trvat)	to last, take (time)
pozdravit (II,p)(See zdravit)	to greet
pozítří (adv.)	the day after tomorrow
poznámka (f)	note, remark
promíjet (III,i)(někomu něco) (See prominout)	to excuse, forgive, pardon
prominout (VI,p)(někomu něco) (See promíjet)	to excuse, forgive, pardon
přestat (Va,p)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)(See přestávat)	to cease, stop doing
přestávat (I,i)(See přestat)	to cease, stop doing
přijde na to	it depends
případ (m)	case
příští[2]	following, next, future
rozhovor (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	conversation, talk, dialogue
rozmyslet si (IV,p)/rozmyslit si(II,p) (See rozmýšlet si)	to make up one's mind, reflect, think over
rozmýšlet si (III,i)(See rozmyslet si)	to make up one's mind, reflect, think over
říci[3] (Va,p)(See říkat)	to say, tell
sedat si (I,i)(See sednout si)	to sit down, take a seat
sednout si (VI,p)(See sedat si)	to sit down, take a seat
skončit (II,p)(See končit)	to end, finish, be over
smůla (f)	bad luck
smysl (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	sense, import
snad (adv.)	perhaps, possibly, I think
starost (f)	care, concern, worry
dělat starosti (+ Dat.)	to cause concern (to someone)
strana (f)	side, direction, party, page
tak dobře (adv.)	all right
takhle (adv.)	in this way, like this
tamten, tamta, tamto (See Grammar Analysis)	that (over there), that one (over there)
tedy (adv.)	then, so
ten, ta, to, etc.	this, that, this one, that one
ten samý, ta samá, to samé, etc.[4]	the (very) same
tenhle, tahle, tohle[5](See Grammar Analysis	this (right here), this one (right here)

tisknout (VI,i)	to print, press, hold tight
tloustnout (VI,i)(See ztloustnout)	to get fat, put on weight
tlustý	thick, fat
trapný	painful, awkward, uncomfortable
trvat (I,i)(See potrvat)	to last, take (time)
tuhle (adv.)	the other day
tužka(f)	pencil
upřímnost(f)	sincerity, frankness
uvědomit si[6](II,p)	to realize
vděčný	grateful, thankful
vědět	
dávat/dát vědět	to let know
věta(f)	sentence, clause
vstát (Va,p)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)(See vstávat)	to get up
vysvětlit[6] (II,p)	to explain
za + Acc.	in, after, for
začínat (I,i)(See začít)	to begin, start
začít (Vb,p)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)(See začínat)	to begin, start
zdravit (II,i)(See pozdravit)	to greet
zhubnout (VI,p)(See hubnout)	to grow slim, lose weight
zmizet (III,p)(See mizet)	to disappear, vanish, be gone
znamenat (I,i)	to mean, stand for
známý (adj. or noun)	well-known, acquaintance
ztloustnout (VI,p)(See tloustnout)	to get fat, put on weight
zůstat (Va,p)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)(See zůstávat)	to remain, stay
zůstávat (I,i)(See zůstat)	to remain, stay

1 Another but less frequent perfective for this verb is obléci se (V) with the following present tense and perfect participial forms:

obleku se, oblečeš se, obleče se, etc., oblekou se
oblekl se, oblekla se, obleklo se, etc.

2 Příští means "next" in a temporal sense. Refer to note No.1 in Lesson III on page 26.

3 Since the present tense of this verb is conjugated as follows: řeknu, řekneš, řekne, řekneme, řeknete, řeknou, and its past tense has the forms: řekl, řekla, řekli, etc.; it is best to consider this a Class VI verb. The infinitive is therefore irregular; the expected form řeknout does not exist.

4 Strictly speaking, the SČ equivalents for "the same" are tentýž, tatáž, totéž, etc. These forms, however, will not be used in this textbook because the OČ counterparts ten samý, ta samá, etc., have gained currency in Modern Czech.

5 In SČ the forms tento, tato, toto, etc., are frequently used as the equivalents for the English pronoun "this." The forms tenhle, tahle and tohle are current both in SČ and in OČ and are therefore preferred in this text.

6 The imperfective counterpart of this verb will be introduced later. It belongs to a class of verbs not yet studied.

PRONUNCIATION

1) As has previously been stated (See the Introduction), the Czech sounds r and l become syllabic when they stand between two consonants or when they stand at the end of a word and a consonant precedes them. Read the following excerpts distinguishing carefully between syllabic and nonsyllabic r and l. Keep in mind that no additional vowel accompanies the pronunciation of syllabic r or l.

> Spolkl jen hlt. Může srst srůst? Zhltl celé jablko. Bratr se hrbí. Lpěla mu na rtech. Vítr rval listí se stromů. Stiskl jí nevrle ruku. Rezavá lžíce. Je to horší, když to hoří? Byl mdlý, ale jedl. Netrvalo to dlouho. Bouře na burze. Rychlý jako rtuť. Prostrčila ruku dovnitř. Nevěděl, jestli jsem jí to poslal. Prchavá, ale prudká bolest. Patrně ti nelhal. Vstal, ale zase si hned lehl. Tohle je opravdu dobrý skútr. Kde je Brno? Nemá to smysl. Hrdý horník. Hrnek na cukr. Nejdříve pršelo, potom byla mlha. Hladká plst. Zrzavé vlasy. Strč prst skrz krk.

2) It is useful to remember that the nonsyllabic prepositions k, s, v, and z are syllabified and assume the forms ke, se, ve, ze in the following situations:

a) before a word beginning with a consonant identical to the preposition:

> ke kanceláři, ke Kláře, se stromu, se srdcem
> ve vlaku, ve vodě, ze zahrádky

b) before a word beginning with a consonant that is the voiced or voiceless counterpart of the preposition:

> ke garáži, se známým, ve formě, ze strachu, ze smyslu

c) before a word beginning with a cluster of three or more consonants:

> ke skříni, se vztaženou rukou, ve světě
> ve středu, ve směru, ze vzduchu

d) before a word beginning with two consonants with which the preposition would form a cluster difficult to pronounce:

> ke mně, ke rtům, se ctí, ve chvíli, ze tmy

In some cases, the actual usage varies. One can, for instance, hear both ve městě and v městě (ve městě being the more frequent form); and the adverbial phrase s sebou occurs only in this particular form and never with extended preposition se. On the whole, however, the above rules provide a fairly reliable guide to the solution of problems involving the non-syllabic prepositions,

3) It may be of some help to the student to be reminded again of the peculiarities in the spelling and pronunciation of loan-words. In words of foreign origin, the "hard" consonants are sometimes followed by i instead of y or ý. (Occasionally, the reverse occurs, a "soft" consonant is followed by y.) Moreover, the combinations di, ti, ni, when not in stem-final position, are pronounced in loan-words dy, ty, ny, and not d'i, t'i, n'i. Note and pronounce properly:

> historie, universita, cyklus, lingvistika, kolektivní, inteligentní, encyklopedie, Amerika, nikotin, kritika, individuální, femininum miniatura, mystika.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

The Demonstrative Pronouns

Like English and all other languages Czech has a set of forms used to indicate usually the spatial or temporal relationship of an object or person to the speaker. These forms are termed demonstrative pronouns or adjectives and correspond to the English "this," "that," and "that over there" or "yonder." In a formal sense the Czech words that usually correspond to "that" are basic. The particle hle is suffixed to the basic form to create the "this" series, and the word tam is prefixed to the basic form to produce the "yonder" series. Learn the forms of these pronouns located in the table on the following page.

The Use of the Demonstrative Pronouns

Even though Czech has exact equivalents for the three-part distinction in English among this, that, and that over there (yonder), i.e., tenhle, ten, and tamten; there are significant differences between their uses in Czech and in English. As the morphological structure of the Czech demonstratives clearly indicates, the ten, ta, to forms are the basic ones; and they enjoy the widest application in the language. This situation is due to the fact that the antithetic force of the various demonstratives is greatly weakened in Czech. There are only two kinds of contexts in which the contrasts among the demonstratives are preserved.

1) All three series of demonstratives are used where a contrast in a spatial sense must be made. In this case, just as in English, objects near the speaker receive tenhle, tahle, tohle, objects near the hearer ten, ta, to, and objects remote from both speaker and hearer tamten, tamta, tamto.

		Singular				Plural			
		Masculine		Neuter	Feminine	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine
		Anim.	Inan.			Anim.	Inan.		
Nom.	That	ten		to	ta	ti	tv	ta	ty
	This	tenhle		tohle	tahle	tihle	tyhle	tahle	tyhle
	Yonder	tamten		tamto	tamta	tamti	tamty	tamta	tamty
Dat.	That	tomu		tomu	té	těm		těm	těm
	This	tomuhle		tomuhle	téhle	těmhle		těmhle	těmhle
	Yonder	tamtomu		tamtomu	tamté	tamtěm		tamtěm	tamtěm
Acc.	That	toho	ten	to	tu	ty		ta	ty
	This	tohohle	tenhle	tohle	tuhle	tyhle		tahle	tyhle
	Yonder	tamtoho	tamten	tamto	tamtu	tamty		tamta	tamty
Loc.	That	tom		tom	té	těch		těch	těch
	This	tomhle		tomhle	téhle	těchhle		těchhle	těchhle
	Yonder	tamtom		tamtom	tamté	tamtěch		tamtěch	tamtěch

Tenhle hoch je zdravý, ten hoch je nemocný, ale
o tamtom hochovi nic nevím.
(This boy is healthy, that boy is ill, but I don't know anything about that boy over there.)

Já sedím na téhle židli, vy sedíte na té židli a
tatínek sedí na tamté židli.
(I am sitting on this chair, you are sitting on that chair, and father is sitting on that chair over there.)

Tohle je stůl, to je židle a tamto je lavička.
(This is a table, that is a chair, and that over there is a bench.)

2) All three series of demonstratives are also used for emphasis when there is no hint of contrast among several objects. Emphasis here means that the tenhle series is used to convey immediacy, perhaps including interest, surprise, etc., that the ten series is employed to register impatience or annoyance, and that the tamten series is used to underscore remoteness in space.

Co je tohle?
(What is this?)

Kde jsi koupil tuhle židli?
(Where did you buy this chair?)

V tenhle čas obyčejně prší.
(At this time it usually rains.)

Kde zase je ta dívka?
(Where is that girl now?)

Kdy jsi potkala tamtoho člověka?
(When did you meet that man over there?)

In all other cases where the demonstrative pronouns are used in English, cases where neither contrast nor emphasis need to be expressed, the ten, ta, to series alone suffices in Czech.

Je tady v bytě lampa, skříň a postel. Ty věci
patří mně.
(There are a lamp, a cupboard, and a bed here in the apartment. These things belong to me.)

Říkáš, že jsi mu zaplatil ty peníze? To je dobré.
(Do you say that you have paid him the money? That is good.)

Bratr vždycky přeháněl, ale ten fakt nezajímal
jiné lidi.
(My brother always exaggerated, but that fact didn't
interest other people.)

Má velké bolesti v levé noze. Ty bolesti jí nedají spát.
(She has severe pains in her left leg. These pains do
not permit her to sleep.)

The student has already observed that the contrastive force among the Czech demonstratives is greatly restricted. As a result, the ten, ta, to series may correspond to some uses of the English definite article and third person pronouns in the following circumstances.

1) This series of demonstratives is used when a definite noun is followed by a relative clause. It is also used when the clause contains the relative pronoun co, which must be preceded by the neuter demonstrative to (the combination corresponding to "that, which" in English).

Četl jen to, co musel.
(He read only what he had to.)

Je to to, na co čekáte?
(Is that what you are waiting for?)

Znáte to nádraží, o kterém mluvím?
(Do you know the railroad station I'm talking about?)

Posloucháte tu hudbu, kterou máme rádi?
(Are you listening to the music we like?)

2) Ten, ta, to also accompany definite nouns referring to objects previously mentioned.

Tatínek a maminka mu dali nové auto. To auto
je nyní naproti na ulici.
(Father and mother gave him a new car. The
car is parked across the street now.)

Vzpomínáš si, že jsi mi dal jednu českou knihu
včera? Mám tu knihu nyní v ruce.
(Do you recall that you gave me a Czech book
yesterday? I have the book in my hand now.)

Včera večer jsme viděli nový byt. V tom bytě byly
čtyři pokoje.
(Last night we saw a new apartment. There were
four rooms in the apartment.)

Bear in mind that the ten, ta, to series is not used when the definite article is employed in English to refer to an assumed or generalized object.

Zavolali jsme hned doktora.
(We called the doctor [it is assumed that every-one has a family doctor] immediately.)

Bohatí musejí pomáhat chudým.
(The rich must help the poor.)

3) The ten, ta, to series may replace the third person pronouns when there is reference to previously mentioned objects and when there is emphasis on the pronouns.

Vidíte tamtoho člověka? Ten mě přesvědčil, že mám zítra odjet.
(Do you see that man over there? He convinced me that I should leave tomorrow.)

Je to zajímavá kniha. Četl jste ji? Tu jsem ještě nečetl.
(That's an interesting book. Have you read it? I haven't read it yet.)

Exercises

1) Place all three series of demonstrative pronouns, if possible, before the following noun phrases and decline the resulting combinations in all four cases, nominative, dative, accusative and locative, and in both numbers.

prázdná kancelář
příští plán
důležité cvičeni
drahý koberec
protivný člověk
moderní skříň
spokojená dívka
teplé odpoledne

2) Translate the following sentences into Czech paying particular attention to the possible use of the demonstrative pronouns.

1. Do you recall that old musician who used to live in Prague?
2. You have convinced me that that road is too long.
3. What do you do at the office?
4. Have you already finished the exercise?
5. We are sitting in the same room where we were smoking yesterday.
6. And when did you receive this letter here?
7. I hope you will be able to help these people.
8. Do you know that man over there? I can't comprehend why he always tries to speak Czech.
9. I met that man in the park last evening.
10. May we smoke in this room?
11. Did you realize that the sun was shining at that time.
12. I like this apartment, and she likes that one.

13. Did you recognize the man who was walking in the park yesterday afternoon?
14. I explained to him why the word was missing.
15. Do you know how long the lecture will last?
16. Why did you leave the books on the table?
17. That man in the corridor has been asking about you.
18. I became confused when I heard that laughter in the hall.
19. Do you believe what the professor said yesterday at the lecture?
20. Who can give me the answer to this question?

The Particularizing Pronoun "jeden"

The forms jeden, jedna, jedno constitute the Czech counterparts of the numeral "one," but the other uses of these forms show clearly that they function also as a kind of specifier closely akin to the pronouns. It is natural to find, therefore, that they are declined like the ten, ta, to series of demonstrative pronouns.

	Singular				Plural			
	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine
	Anim.	Inan.			Anim	Inan.		
Nom.	jeden		jedno	jedna	jedni	jedny	jedna	jedny
Dat.	jednomu		jednomu	jedné	jedněm		jedněm	jedněm
Acc.	jednoho	jeden	jedno	jednu	jedny	jedny	jedna	jedny
Loc.	jednom		jednom	jedné	jedněch		jedněch	jedněch

When jeden is used as a pronoun rather than as a numeral, the student will have to learn to distinguish the cases where Czechs employ jeden because English contains no signal to alert him. In brief, Czech speakers use jeden, jedna, jedno to particularize a newly introduced object about which there will usually be some further discussion. But when an object is newly introduced into a Czech sentence and it represents a member of a class of objects as opposed to all other classes of objects, then no pronoun of any type is used. In both of these cases English uses the indefinite article "a/an," and the native speaker of English is apt to be unaware of these connotations of the indefinite article. Study the use or non-use of jeden in the following Czech sentences and the particularizing or generalizing use of the indefinite article in their English counterparts.

Potkal jsem včera na ulici cizího člověka.
(I met a stranger on the street yesterday.)

Potkal jsem včera na ulici jednoho cizího člověka.
(I met a stranger on the street yesterday.)

The first sentence above would be used by a Czech speaker to emphasize the fact that he actually met a person unknown to him on the street. The second sentence calls attention to a particular stranger, about whom more information can be expected in what follows.

Říkal mi to opravdový znalec.
(A real expert was telling me that.)

Jeden opravdový znalec mi to říkal.
(A real expert was telling me that.)

In the first sentence above "a real expert" is opposed to anyone else who might have made the statement. In the second sentence one particular member of the class of real experts is selected as the subject.

Včera večer jsme viděli opravdu velký byt.
(Last night we saw a really big apartment.)

Včera večer jsme viděli jeden velký byt, který nebyl drahý.
(Last night we saw a big apartment that wasn't expensive.)

In the first sentence above the phrase "velký byt" emphasizes this kind of apartment as opposed to all other apartments. The second sentence particularizes the phrase "velký byt" and adds the expected additional information.

Když jsem byl mladý, bydleli jsme v malém městě.
(When I was young, we lived in a small town.)

Když jsem byl mladý, bydleli jsme v jednom malém městě blízko Prahy.
(When I was young, we lived in a small town near Prague.)

The first sentence above calls attention to the fact that we lived in a small town as opposed to anywhere else. The second sentence selects one particular small town and extends the definition by the phrase "near Prague."

The plural forms of jeden are restricted in usage to two situations. First, they are used with "pluralia tantum" nouns, those that occur only in the plural, as in "jedny brejle" (one pair of glasses or a particular pair of glasses). Second, they are used in parallel with the plural forms of druhý, where the former mean "some" and the latter "others."

Jedni sedí doma, druzí se procházejí v parku.
(Some are sitting at home; others are walking in the park.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech using the pronoun jeden, jedna, jedno, if possible. If this pronoun may or may not be used in a given sentence, explain the difference in meaning conveyed by each variant of the sentence.

1. I only owed him one dollar.
2. My brother works in an office where he can listen to music all the time.
3. I see that he has a new car now.
4. Can you explain an answer like that?
5. The professor made a remark I simply couldn't believe.
6. Yesterday we went for a walk, and we saw a beautiful park.
7. A cigarette lay on the table.
8. They were saying that a man disappeared from there yesterday.
9. There's a word missing in this sentence.
10. Such people have strong wills (Use singular).
11. A lecture usually lasts an hour.
12. There was neither paper nor pen in one of the drawers (Use Loc.sg.).
13. I got it at a post office, but I don't know which one.
14. One good act still doesn't make a good opera.
15. There were large parks there; in one of them we saw beautiful blue flowers.
16. I met Karel and Milena on a vacation in the south.

Class VI Verbs

All verbs belonging to this class are characterized by the presence of a suffix -n-, placed directly after the root. The resulting stem without a thematic vowel constitutes the present stem of these verbs, while the same stem plus a thematic vowel serves as the non-present stem. Two qualitative variants of this theme vowel appear in the non-present forms the student has had thus far: -ou for the infinitive and -u for the perfect participle. Note that this particular qualitative alternation is quite frequent in Czech. The -n- suffix intimately associated with all these verbs performs two functions. In the first place, it creates primary verbs, imperfective verbs that denote more or less clearly a change in state. Verbs like tloustnout (to grow fat) or vadnout (to wither, fade) convey this notion clearly, while verbs like tonout (to sink) or tisknout (to press, squeeze) are not so clear in this respect. In the second place this suffix produces secondary verbs, perfective verbs that are associated with imperfective verbs and refer to a single action of the verb usually with the connotation of momentariness. This latter circumstance bears out the former assertion that suffixation results in aspectual derivatives, in this case corresponding perfectives for underlying imperfectives. The fact that these perfective verbs denote a single, abrupt action of the verb is not a function of the -n- suffix, but is due to the semantic nature of the root that usually denotes a process that can easily be considered to consist of individual discrete actions. Verbs like minout (to pass), padnout (to fall) and bodnout (to stab) are good examples of such perfective verbs.

From the standpoint of form there are two types of verbs in -n-; both types are distributed among imperfective and perfective verbs. This classification depends on the presence or absence of a root-final consonant before the suffix -n- and has an effect only on the form of the perfect participle. If a consonant precedes the -n-, the -nu termination is generally lost in the formation of the perfect participle. Thus, the verb minout (to pass) preserves the full form of the stem:

minu - l, minu - la, minu - lo, etc.

while the verb tisknout (to press,squeeze) truncates the -nu of the non-present stem:

tisk - l, tisk - la, tisk - lo, etc.

If the -nu is not dropped in the perfect participle, the fact will be noted in the vocabularies.

The present tense forms of these verbs are alike. Note the similarity to Class V verbs in the present. Here too the -e- vowel is used merely to effect a separation between the stem and the personal endings.

	Stem	Personal ending		Stem	Personal ending
1 sg.	min	- u	1 pl.	min	- e - me
2 sg.	min	- e - š	2 pl.	min	- e - te
3 sg.	min	- e - ø	3 pl.	min	- ou

	Stem	Personal ending		Stem	Personal ending
1 sg.	tiskn	- u	1 pl.	tiskn	- e - me
2 sg.	tiskn	- e - š	2 pl.	tiskn	- e - te
3 sg.	tiskn	- e - ø	3 pl.	tiskn	- ou

Some Irregular Class V Verbs

The vocabulary of this lesson contains five verbs that exemplify two more instances among Class V verbs where present and non-present stems do not agree. These verbs are začít (to begin), on one hand, and dostat (to get), přestat (to cease), vstát (to get up), and zůstat (to remain), on the other.

The verb začít has the following forms:

Present tense	Perfect participle
začnu, začneš, začne, začneme, etc.	začal, začala, začalo, etc.

In this verb at one time both present and non-present stems exhibited -n as the stem-final consonant; but subsequent developments obliterated the -n in the non-present forms, and vocalic changes created the difference between začít and začal.

Dostat, přestat, vstát, and zůstat have the following forms:

present tense	Perfect participle
dostanu, dostaneš, dostane, etc.	dostal, dostala, dostalo, etc.
přestanu, přestaneš, přestane, etc.	přestal, přestala, přestalo, etc.
vstanu, vstaneš, vstane, etc.	vstal, vstala, vstalo, etc.
zůstanu, zůstaneš, zůstane, etc.	zůstal, zůstala, zůstalo, etc.

In these cases the present-tense stem has a final -n that does not appear at all in the non-present stem. The verb zůstat has two prefixes z- + o-, which developed into the combination zů-.

Finally, it is convenient here to point out that three of these verbs, přestávat/přestat, začínat/začít, and zůstávat/zůstat, are frequently used with following infinitives and that these infinitives must always be in the imperfective aspect. One should expect this development in view of the semantic content of these verbs. Note the following examples.

Přestala uklízet.
(She stopped cleaning up.)

Kdy začnou jíst?
(When will they start to eat?)

Zůstali sedět, když jsme přišli.
(They remained sitting when we came.)

Exercise

In the sentences below select the appropriate verb, if necessary, and conjugate the verb or verbs in all persons and both tenses. Pay attention to possible changes in word order and to changes in the verbs of the other clauses.

1. (Zhubnout) rychle, a jsem pořád tlustý.
2. (Přestat/přestávat) kouřit, protože jsou cigarety drahé.
3. (Minout/míjet) lavičku, na které visí malý modrý klobouk.
4. (Sednout si) na židli v rohu.
5. (Prominout) mu to, ačkoli vím, že se mýlí.
6. (Říci), že se hned vrátí.
7. Nerad tam (zůstat/zůstávat).
8. (Začít/začínat) ho zdravit, když řekne, že se mýlil.

DIALOGUE

Přišli ke mně na návštěvu tři malí hoši. Sedli si na židle--každý tiskne v ruce dětskou knihu--a čekají. Neumějí totiž ještě číst a proto rádi poslouchají, když čtu jim. Měl jsem vlastně říci "čtou s sebou" a ne "poslouchají," protože každou větu, která je zajímá, jim musím ještě jednou přečíst a vysvětlit, a na každý obrázek, který ještě neviděli, se musejí ještě jednou podívat. Přitom ovšem nechybějí ani otázky ani poznámky. Není to tedy ani tak četba jako to jsou dlouhé rozhovory. Takový rozhovor zní asi takhle:

Co je to?
To je strom.
A co je tohle?
Tohle jsou čtyři různé stromy.
Co je tamto?
Tamto je nějaká studentka.
Tamta dívka je studentka?
Ano, je asi studentka, protože má knihu a čte.
Ale ona nečte.
Já myslím, že čte; jak vidíš, má na nose brejle a drží také v ruce tužku a papír.

To není tužka, to je pero.
Ta dlouhá věc, že není tužka? Opravdu, vypadá to trochu jako pero, jako to pero, které jsi mi včera dal. Nebo jsi mi je nedal? Musím ti je zase vrátit?

Three small boys came to my house on a visit. They sat down in chairs--each clutches a children's book in his hand--and they wait. They just don't know how to read yet and therefore like to listen when I read to them. I should have actually said "they are reading along with me" and not "they are listening," because I have to re-read and re-explain to them each sentence that interests them and they have to take another look at each picture that they haven't seen yet. And all the while, of course, there is no lack of questions and remarks. So it is not so much reading as it is long conversations. Such a conversation may sound like this:
What is that?
That's a tree.
And what's this?
These are four different trees.
And what's that over there?
That's some student.
That girl over there is a student?
Yes, she's probably a student because she has a book and is reading.
But she's not reading.
I think she is; as you see, she's got her glasses on her nose and is holding a pencil and paper in her hand.
That's not a pencil; that's a pen.
That long thing; isn't it a pencil? Really it looks a little like a pen, like the pen you gave me yesterday. Or didn't you give it to me? Do I have to give it back to you again?

Proč?	Why?
Protože nevím, jestli jsi mi to pero dal opravdu nebo jen tak.	Because I don't know whether you really gave it to me or just for fun.
Opravdu; ne, jen tak; já vlastně nevím.	Really; no,for fun; I actually don't know.
A tak dále. Jak vidíte, otázky takový rozhovor začínají a někdy jej také končí.	And so on. As you see, questions start such a conversation and sometimes end it too.

Byl jsi včera v divadle?	Did you go to the theater yesterday?
Ano, včera jsem se zase po dlouhé době šel podívat, co dávají. Znáš mě, jednou za rok si uvědomím, že kultura je důležitá.	Yes, yesterday after a long time I again went to see what was showing. You know me, once a year I realize that culture is important.
A co jsi tedy viděl letos?	And what have you seen then this year?
Tu samou hru jako loni.	The same play as last year.
Co to znamená? Znamená to, že příští rok budeš muset jít jinam nebo že ta hra je velmi dobrá?	What does that mean? Does it mean that next year you'll have to go elsewhere or that the play is very good?

Mám nemocný žaludek a musím jíst málo, ale zato často, každou hodinu.	I have an upset stomach and I'm not supposed to eat much, but yet frequently, every hour.
Každou hodinu nebo jen jednou za hodinu?	Every hour or just once an hour?
Přijde na to, jak tomu rozumíte.	It depends on how you understand it.
Rozumím tomu v tom smyslu, že brzo zhubnete. A to je dobré, protože jste byl příliš tlustý; snad vám to mohu nyní říci.	I understand it in the sense that you will soon lose weight. And that's good because you've been too fat; I hope I can say that to you now.
Ovšem, můžete. Jsem vám vděčný za upřímnost. Jen se divím, jak jsem mohl ztloustnout za tak krátkou dobu. Ztloustl jsem takhle snad za měsíc. Jak si vzpomínáte, ještě nedávno jsem byl hubený.	Of course, you can. I am grateful to you for your frankness. I am just surprised that I could gain weight in such a short time. I gained weight like this in a month, I think. As you recall, just recently I was thin.
To vám nemusí dělat starosti. Co včas skončí, dobře skončí; a kdo včas začne, dobře začne. Proto nevím, co mám nejdřív chválit: to, že jste včas začal nebo to, že včas skončíte.	That shouldn't cause you any concern. What ends on time, ends well; and who begins on time, begins well. That's why I don't know what I should praise first: the fact that you have started on time or the fact that you will finish on time.

Četl jste tuhle knihu? Je docela zajímavá.	Have you read this book? It's quite interesting.
Ne, tu jsem ještě nečetl, ale tuhle jsem četl jinou, dost podobnou, a ta zajímavá nebyla.	No, I haven't read it yet, but the other day I read another one, quite similar, and that one was not interesting.
Jaký je ten čaj?	What's that tea like?
Co mi za to dáš, jestli ti odpovím?	What will you give me if I tell you?
Přestanu se ptát.	I'll stop asking questions.
V tom případě ti řeknu, že to je americký čaj.	In that case I'll tell you it's American tea.
Špatně jsi slyšel. Neptal jsem se "jaký je to čaj," ale "jaký je ten čaj."[1]	You didn't hear correctly. I wasn't asking "what kind of tea that is," but "what is that tea like."
V tom případě ti zase mohu říci, že nevím, protože já nemám čaj rád a tahle sklenice patří Milanovi a ne mně.	In that case I can repeat that I don't know because I dislike tea and this glass belongs to Milan and not to me.
Musíte mi prominout, že jsem vás tuhle na ulici minul a ani jsem vás nepozdravil. Pospíchal jsem totiž a nejdřív jsem vás vůbec nepoznal. Uvědomil jsem si, že jste to vy, až když jste byl na druhé straně. Bylo mi to ovšem trapné, ale co jsem mohl dělat? Vy už jste byl pryč; zmizel jste mezitím za roh. Byla to prostě smůla. Doufám, že to pochopíte. Už asi jiný nebudu.	You must excuse me for passing you on the street the other day without even greeting you. I was just in a hurry and at first I didn't recognize you at all. I didn't realize it was you until you were on the other side of the street. It was awkward for me, but what could I do? You were already gone; in the meantime you disappeared around the corner. It was simply bad luck. I hope that you'll understand. I guess I'll never change.
Kdo je ten pán na chodbě?	Who is the gentleman in the hall?
To je jeden známý.	That's an acquaintance.
Proč ho tedy necháváš čekat?	Why do you let him wait then?
On nečeká na mne, on čeká až přestane venku pršet.	He isn't waiting for me ; he's waiting until it stops raining outside.
Volá Karel, máme prý k němu přijít na večeři a on se ptá, jestli budeme mít čas v neděli večer. Co mu mám říci? Budeme moci přijít?	Karel is calling. He says we're supposed to come to his place for supper and he's asking whether we'll be free on Sunday evening. What should I tell him? Will we be able to come?

Ještě nevím. Musím si to nejdřív rozmyslet, protože mám nějakou práci a nevím, jestli ji budu moci včas skončit. Je to taková věc, která dlouho trvá. Víš co, dáme mu vědět zítra nebo pozítří.	I don't know yet. I must think about it first because I have some work to do and I don't know whether I'll be able to finish it on time. It's a thing that takes a lot of time. You know what, we'll let him know tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.
Tak dobře, já mu to řeknu. A myslíš, že tam budeme moci zůstat celý večer?	All right, I'll tell him. And do you think that we'll be able to stay there the whole evening?
Asi ano. Ale nezůstaneme tam ovšem příliš dlouho. Já ráno brzo vstávám.	Most likely. But, of course, we won't stay there too long. I'm getting up early in the morning.

1 The content of this sentence dramatizes the specific function of the demonstrative pronoun to. This pronoun is generally used to call attention to a classification and not to an evaluation. In this particular instance, therefore, it implies "what brand of tea."

READING SELECTION

Jestli ke mně zítra přijdete, uvidíte, že budu mít návštěvu. Čekám totiž na tři malé hochy, které někdy potkávám na ulici. Jsou mi velmi vděční za to, že jim čtu dětské knihy. A já to rád dělám, protože každá taková četba je pro mne zajímavá. Vždycky si totiž uvědomím, jak se takoví malí lidé umějí bavit a jak jsou opravdu inteligentní. Nepřestávám se divit tomu, že mají tak dobrý smysl pro tak důležité věci jako je četba. Ovšem já jim nejen čtu, ale také jim musím vysvětlit to, čemu nerozumějí. Díváme se i na obrázky a mluvíme o různých otázkách. Dělá nám obyčejně velké starosti, jestli četba dobře skončí a jestli ta příští bude také tak pěkná jako ta poslední. Někdy, když je nějaká kniha zvlášť' dobrá, ji musím ještě jednou číst celou. Taková četba proto často trvá celé odpoledne.

Právě tady byl Karel a říkal, že si rozmýšlí, jestli má jet letos v létě k moři nebo zůstat v Praze. Řekl jsem mu, že má jet. Jestli tady totiž zůstane, tak zase hrozně ztloustne, jako loni. V poslední době seděl jen doma a to není dobré. Já myslím, že mu chybí příroda. Karel je rozumný, proto jsem mu to mohl říci. Doufám, že tedy pojede.

Nebyli jsme tady v divadle snad už rok. Musel k nám přijít jeden známý a vzít nás s sebou. Jen potom jsme šli. Viděli jsme jednu operu, kterou tady v městě už dlouho dávají a byli jsme docela spokojení. Ta opera byla sice podobná jiné, kterou jsme slyšeli nedávno v Praze, ale nebyla nezajímavá. Vždycky jsme měli opery rádi a tahle patřila k těm opravdu dobrým.

Nevím , co tomu mám říci. Je sice jiný rok, ale já mám pořád ty samé starosti jako loni. Nejdřív ztloustnu, potom musím zhubnout. Někdy spím špatně, ale občas také spím dobře. Mám vždycky nějakou práci, kterou nemohu včas skončit a jsou pořád věci, kterým nerozumím, ačkoli se mi je lidé snaží vysvětlit. Čemu se tedy mám ještě divit?

Procházel jsem se tuhle po nádraží, když jsem uviděl jednoho přítele. Seděl na lavičce a právě zdravil nějakou mladou ženu. Sedl jsem si k němu a zeptal jsem se na koho čeká. Řekl, že tam sedí jen tak, že má čas a neví, co má dělat. A nádraží prý ho zajímají. Měl pravdu. Nádraží jsou opravdu zajímavá, ačkoli nejsou nutně příjemná. Zůstali jsme na té lavičce asi hodinu a za tu hodinu jsme neviděli ani jednu nezajímavou věc. Vlaky míjely, všude zněly hlasy, lidé přicházeli a odcházeli--čas prostě nestál. Vypadalo to jako nějaký živý obraz.

Dnes jsem neměl zůstávat doma, ačkoli prší. Měl jsem se jít projít. K večeru začalo trochu pršet a já jsem si rozmýšlel, jestli mám nebo nemám jít na procházku. Bohužel jsem se bál, že pršet brzo nepřestane, a tak jsem nešel. Ale nyní jsem si uvědomil, že na mne zítra večer čeká nějaká práce a že tedy nebudu moci jít na procházku ani zítra. Škoda, budu jistě unavený. Co je na tom protivné? Že vždycky prší v tu špatnou dobu. Možná také, že práce obyčejně nezačíná ani nekončí v tu pravou dobu.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Some slender man was standing in the hall and was smoking a cigarette. 2. What do you have on your nose? 3. I haven't yet seen such beautiful pictures as these. 4. Some say that they are still trying to lose weight, others that they are no longer trying to gain weight. 5. She remained standing there and was watching the cars go by (introduce the clause after "watching" with jak). 6. Isn't that room upstairs a little small for you? 7. This is the sentence that at first I didn't understand at all. 8. The whole conversation lasted only about an hour. 9. We arrived at their place rather late; they had already begun to eat supper. 10. You ought to sit on another chair; this one is damp. 11. Has Karel already let us know whether he'll be free tomorrow? 12. I hope you will tell him why you were not satisfied. 13. That was really bad luck, but who could have known they were going to print it so soon? 14. I don't think he went about it seriously (Use dělat to vážně), but just in fun. 15. If we don't make up our minds right away, we'll have to pay three more (Use ještě) dollars. 16. What else is missing? Just one glass? 17. It depends on whether we can explain it to them at all. 18. That's the professor who lectured to us the other day on the American theater. 19. One

day I'll praise that, but at the present moment I don't feel like it. 20. What will be showing (Use third plural) the day after tomorrow? 21. If that play lasts a long time, I'll have to go home; I'm terribly tired. 22. What are you doing next Sunday? 23. One more awkward conversation like this, and I'll stop taking him seriously. 24. Can you explain to me what that means? 25. She finally realized that he was grateful to her for every letter, even a short one. 26. An acquaintance remained in Prague and recently sent us greetings from there. 27. I know one such case, but I am considering (Use rozmýšlet si) whether I should lecture about similar things. 28. The time has passed when (Use kdy) people could take walks in parks at night. 29. He makes childish remarks, and he thinks that we like that. 30. They can't forgive us that we went someplace else and not to their place. 31. The rain is stopping; we'll be able to go for a walk then. 32. Have you found your glasses yet? I think I've seen them here. 33. Are you acquainted with that young lady over there who is sitting down on the bench? That is an acquaintance who is visiting here just now. 34. What culture are you actually talking about? 35. I won't praise her too much, but I can tell you that she's intelligent. 36. These things are important, it's true, but they usually don't end well. 37. I think that's the second street and not the first one. 38. Where has Karel disappeared to? 39. Since you've been frank with me, I'll be frank with you (Translate by the phrase "frankness for frankness"); I can't stand her either. 40. We are beginning too late; this is going to be a long hour. 41. Why do you have to lose weight? You're not fat at all. 42. I told him that, but I haven't yet told her. 43. In the meantime time was passing. 44. When will you finish the reading? 45. Does that make any sense (Use mít)? 46. We can't do that this way. 47. I greeted him, but he didn't see me. 48. Was that the same side or am I confused? 49. What causes you concern (Use dělat starosti)? 50. We'll find the pencil, I think; it must surely be here.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Čtete někdy knihy malým hochům a dívkám?
2. Nosíte brejle?
3. Kde máte známé?
4. Zůstanete dnes na večeři doma nebo půjdete jinam?

5. Rozhovor o četbě.
6. Je to příjemné hubnout?
7. Upřímnost a lidé.
8. Co právě dávají tady v divadle?
9. Jak často mají lidé vlastně jíst?
10. Ženy, které si rozmýšlejí věci dlouho.
11. Co jste si právě uvědomil?
12. Co tady chybí?
13. Minul jste někdy přítele na ulici a nepozdravil ho?
14. Můžete prominout lidem, kteří vždycky přicházejí pozdě?
15. Proč jste přestal kouřit?
16. Dnes musíme zůstat doma.
17. Komu jste dal vědět, že máte volno?
18. Co děláte v neděli?
19. Co znamená ten smích na chodbě?
20. Procházíte se někdy jen tak?
21. Skončit cvičení včas.
22. Obrázky v knihách.
23. Různé poznámky o tom, jak poslouchat hudbu.
24. Čas rychle míjí.
25. Měl jste v poslední době smůlu?

LESSON VIII

VOCABULARY

báseň/básn(f)(Gen.sg.-ě; Nom.pl.-ě; Loc.pl.-ích; Dat.pl.-ím)	poem
blízko + Gen.	near, close
bud'...nebo (conj.)	either...or
čí? (See Grammar Analysis)	whose?(interrogative only, not relative)
čistírna(f)(Gen.pl. čistíren)	cleaner's, dry cleaner's
čtvrt(f) (Dat.pl. -ím; Loc.pl. -ích)	quarter
do + Gen.	into, to, up to, until, within (time)
dojem/dojm(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	impression
důvod(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	reason, grounds
dveře(f)(Plural only)(Loc.pl.-ích; Dat.pl.-ím)	door
chytrý	clever
jednoduchý	simple
jeho	his, its
její (See Grammar Analysis)	her, hers, its
jejich	their, theirs
jídlo(n)(Gen.pl. jídel)	meal, dish, food
klíč(m)	key
kočka(f)(Gen.pl. koček)	cat
kolik? (quantifier)	how much? how many?
kolo(n)	wheel, circle, bicycle
krk(m)	throat, neck
krok(m)	step
literatura(f)	literature
Marie[1]	Mary
minulý	past, last (in temporal sense)
minuta(f)	minute
mnoho (quantifier)	many, much
můj, má, mé, etc. (See Grammar Analysis)	my, mine
nakonec (adv.)	in the end
nápad(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	idea, notion, whim
například, např.	for example, e.g.

náš, naše, naše, etc. (See Grammar Analysis)	our, ours
něco[2]	something, anything
něco zajímavého	something interesting
někam	somewhere, anywhere, (implies motion)
někde	somewhere, anywhere
někdo[2]	somebody, anybody
několik (quantifier)	several, some, a few
nikdo[2](See Grammar Analysis)	nobody
nikdy (See Grammar Analysis)	never
oblek(m)	suit, wearing apparel
od + Gen.[3]	from, away from
odkud?	from where?
pár(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	couple, pair, a few
peníze(m.pl.)(Gen.pl. peněz; Dat.pl. penězům; Loc.pl. penězích)	money
pes/ps(m)[4](Loc.sg.-u)	dog
plný (+ Gen.)	full (of)
pomalu (adv.)	slowly
přesně (adv.)	accurately, exactly, precisely
příbuzný(m)(adj.and noun)	related, relation, relative
půl (quantifier)	half
rozdíl(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	difference
rychlý	fast, quick
schopný (+ Gen.)	capable (of)
schůze(f)	meeting
situace(f)	situation
složitý	complex, complicated
snadný	easy, light, not involved
svůj, svá, své, etc. (See Grammar Analysis)	one's own
šaty(m.pl.)	clothes
tělo(n)	body
tolik (quantifier)	so much, so many
tvůj, tvá, tvé, etc.	your (sg.), yours (sg.)
u + Gen.	at, by, near, with (persons)

blízko u + Gen.	close by
účastnit se (II,i)(+ Gen.) (See zúčastnit se)	to take part in
váš, vaše, vaše, etc. (See Grammar Analysis)	your (pl.), yours (pl.)
vážit si (II,i)(+ Gen.)	to respect, appreciate, think highly of
všímat si (I,i)(+ Gen.)(See všimnout si)	to notice, take notice of, observe
všimnout si (VI,p)(+ Gen.)(See všímat si)	to notice, take notice of, observe
vteřina(f)	second
vypadávat (I,i)(See vypadnout)	to fall out
vypadnout (VI,p)(See vypadávat)	to fall out
vzpomenout si[5](VI,p)(na + Acc.) (See vzpomínat si)	to recall, think of
z + Gen.	out of, from, of
jeden z + Gen.	one of
zapomenout[5](VI,p)(See zapomínat)	to forget
zapomínat (I,i)(See zapomenout)	to forget
zavřený	closed, shut, locked
zúčastnit se (II,p)(+ Gen.)(See účastnit se)	to take part in
zvláštní	special, particular, peculiar

---

1 This type of soft feminine noun has not been encountered yet. The case forms read as follows: N.sg. Marie, G.sg. Marie, D.sg. Marii, A.sg. Marii, L.sg. Marii, N.pl. Marie, G.pl. Marií, D.pl. Mariím, A.pl. Marie, L.pl. Mariích.

2 The *co* and *kdo* elements of these pronouns are declined exactly like the interrogative pronouns *kdo* and *co*: něčem, někomu, nikoho, etc.

3 A few syllabic prepositions, among them od, are extended by the vowel e (ode) in a very limited number of cases. This phenomenon is encountered especially before the oblique case forms of já (ode mne) and also in a very few special expressions where the following word begins with the cluster d plus a consonant.

4 This is the first animal word of masculine gender the student has had. Note that its genitive and accusative end in -a, as befits masculine animate nouns. The dative and locative singular may also be -ovi.

5 These two verbs have irregular perfect participles, i.e., vzpomněl, vzpomněla,etc. and zapomněl, zapomněla, etc.

PRONUNCIATION

1) It should be noted that the non-syllabic prepositions v and z

a) remain voiced when followed by voiced consonants:

v básni, z vody, v zásuvce, z divadla

b) become voiceless when followed by a glottal stop:

v Americe, z auta, v obleku, z university, zúčastnit se

c) become voiceless when followed by a voiceless consonant:

v čistírně, z práce, v Praze, z kanceláře

2) A reminder concerning the pronunciation of groups of two vowels, one of which is i or í. In such groups, when they occur within words, the glide j is inserted between i and the following vowel. (See Introduction, p. X)

Marie [Marije], lilií (gen.pl. of lilie) [lilijí], rádio [rádijo], ion [ijón]; but i on (glottal stop + i + glottal stop + on)

3) The Czech fricatives š and ž, and the affricate č should be distinguished from their English counterparts. Remember that the tongue is kept up near or in contact with the alveolar ridge (the tip of the tongue does not hang down as in English) during the production of these Czech sounds. Refer to the two diagrams on pp. X and XII in the Introduction.

Všiml si, že prší. Čí cvičení čtete? Židle a lavička. Křičí, že neslyší. Zdržel se na přednášce. Snažím se začít. Čerstvý čaj. Každý muž je občas vděčný. Přišli z nádraží. Naše kočka.

4) Special care should be given to the pronunciation of words containing the lateral l. This sound requires that the tongue make contact with the alveolar ridge behind the upper front teeth. Do not front it unnecessarily. See the Introduction, p. XII.

Židle a sklenice. Několik lidí. Malý oblek. Stůl plný klíčů. Docela pomalu. Zvláštní jídlo. Blízko lesa. Zaplatili, ale neodešli. Teplé letní odpoledne. Jarmila měla minulé léto kašel.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Genitive Case (Nouns)

Genitive Singular

The genitive case resembles the dative case in having a fairly broad spectrum of uses, which will be discussed later in this lesson. For the moment the student need know only that its primary use is to express the important concept of possession. The morphology of the genitive singular is not difficult; but here, as in the locative singular, a complication is caused by inanimate masculine nouns ending in hard consonants. Animate masculine nouns terminating in a hard consonant have the ending -a, and all masculine nouns terminating in a soft consonant have the expected corresponding ending -e. The student should not ignore the observation that these endings are identical to those displayed by animate masculine nouns in the accusative singular. In general, neuter nouns have the same endings, -a for hard stems, -e for soft stems. Neuter nouns in -í constitute the only exception; these have -í, the same ending as in the other cases studied thus far.

Hard Animate Masculine:

hoch > hocha
člověk > člověka
kapitán > kapitána
pán > pána
hudebník > hudebníka
tatínek > tatínka

All Soft Masculine:

muž > muže
učitel > učitele
zubař > zubaře
kašel > kašle
pokoj > pokoje
keř > keře

Neuter:

léto > léta
kolo > kola
okno > okna

moře > moře
pole > pole
srdce > srdce

nádraží > nádraží
jednání > jednání

Inanimate masculine nouns whose stems end in hard consonants have the ending -u in the vast majority of cases.

dopis > dopisu
hlad > hladu
dům > domu

smích > smíchu
párek > párku
roh > rohu

The other ending used with this category of nouns is -a. It will be noted as exceptional whenever it occurs with vocabulary items. The following is an exhaustive list of such nouns that have appeared in the vocabularies up to this point:

večer > večera   les > lesa   oběd > oběda

Feminine nouns with -a/-e in the nominative singular have -y/-e, respectively, in the genitive singular. Feminine nouns with a zero ending in the nominative singular have the endings -i or -e. The distribution of these two endings is identical to that of the nominative and accusative plural; in other words, nouns taking -e will be marked in the vocabularies.

žena > ženy	země > země
kniha > knihy	židle > židle
matka > matky	růže > růže
věc > věci	skříň > skříně
radost > radosti	báseň > básně

Genitive Plural

Of all the case forms in Czech the genitive plural offers the most varied patterns and the most exceptions. As usual, all deviant forms will be duly noted in the vocabularies, but the student must pay close attention to the regular patterns as well. All masculine nouns, whether hard or soft, use the ending -ů. Neuter and feminine nouns have two different endings distributed over hard and soft stems. Hard neuter and feminine nouns employ a zero ending, while soft nouns of these genders have the ending -í. This latter ending is also utilized by neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in -í and by feminine nouns whose nominative singular has a zero ending. Among soft feminine nouns there are a few generalized exceptions that the student will want to remember; feminine nouns in -ice, -ile, and -íle, all of which take a zero ending rather than the ending -í, belong in this category. The zero ending for hard neuter and feminine nouns carries with it some morphological problems. When such stems exhibit a final cluster of consonants, the vowel -e- may be inserted between the consonants of the cluster. This is the same situation as obtains in the nominative singular of masculine nouns like notýsek/notýsk- and koberec/koberc-, where there is also a zero ending. Study the examples in the display below. Both neuter and feminine nouns may shorten the stem vowel in the genitive plural; such deviations from the norm will be noted in the vocabularies.

Masculine:

dopis > dopisů	muž > mužů
dům > domů	pokoj > pokojů
doktor > doktorů	lékař > lékařů

Neuter:

léto > lét	moře > moří
slovo > slov	srdce > srdcí
auto > aut	odpoledne > odpolední

nádraží > nádraží
jednání > jednání

The hard neuter nouns with final consonantal clusters and inserted -e- that have appeared in the vocabularies thus far are the following:

okno > oken
světlo > světel
divadlo > divadel

The only neuter noun encountered so far in the lessons that exhibits a change in the quantity of the stem vowel is the word léto, but this change is accompanied by a change in meaning to "years."

léto > let (years)
léto > lét (summers)

Feminine:

žena > žen
kniha > knih
pravda > pravd

země > zemí
židle > židlí
růže > růží

věc > věcí
radost > radostí
skříň > skříní
kancelář > kanceláří

As mentioned above, feminine nouns in -ice, -ile, and -íle invariably take a zero ending. Since this is a regular process, it will not be noted in the vocabularies. Four such nouns have occurred in the vocabularies:

sklenice > sklenic
ulice > ulic
čepice > čepic
chvíle > chvil

Take careful note of the following hard feminine nouns with final consonantal clusters and inserted -e- that have been met with so far. From this point on such formation will be listed in the vocabularies:

blondýnka > blondýnek
dálka > dálek
dívka > dívek
hra > her
chodba > chodeb
lavička > laviček
maminka > maminek
matka > matek
otázka > otázek

poznámka > poznámek
procházka > procházek
přednáška > přednášek
sestra > sester
slečna > slečen
studentka > studentek
tužka > tužek
zahrádka > zahrádek
zásuvka > zásuvek

The quantity of the stem vowel is affected in the following feminine nouns. This phenomenon is fairly frequent among hard-stem nouns, but may also be observed in soft-stem nouns. Shortening of the stem vowel in this way is not predictable and will have to be noted in the vocabularies:

chvála > chval
chvíle > chvil

práce > prací
louka > luk

One feminine noun already encountered has a completely irregular termination in the genitive plural.

ruka > rukou

This deviation is due to the establishment of a former dual form as the genitive plural.

Genitive Case (Pronouns)

Learn the genitive case forms for the various types of pronouns studied from the following tables. Remember that the forms of the pronouns with a prefixed n- are used after prepositions.

Personal Pronouns

	1 sg.	2 sg.	1 pl.	2 pl.	3 sg. masc. neut.	3 sg. fem.	3 pl.
indep.	mne	tebe	nás	vás	jeho (něho)	jí (ní)	jich (nich)
dep.	mě	tě			ho		

Interrogative Pronouns

who	what
koho	čeho

Determiners

	Masc./Neut.	Feminine	Plural
That	toho	té	těch
This	tohohle	téhle	těchhle
Yonder	tamtoho	tamté	tamtěch
One/A	jednoho	jedné	jedněch

Genitive Case (Adjectives)

Learn the genitive case forms for the adjectives from the following table. Note that the masculine and neuter singular forms are identical to those used in the accusative with masculine animate nouns.

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine Neuter	Feminine	All Genders
Hard	dobr - ého	dobr - é	dobr - ých
Soft	ciz - ího	ciz - í	ciz - ích

Genitive Case (Usage)

The genitive case enjoys wide application in the construction of Czech sentences. Its most typical function is to link two nouns whose semantic concepts may be related in a variety of ways. These relationships differ only slightly in Czech and English, and they may be considered identical for present purposes. The following nominal phrases illustrate these semantic relationships. The student should note that the same relationships can be expressed in English by corresponding syntactic devices.

Possession

kapesník toho studenta
(the student's handkerchief)

pokoj té dívky
(the girl's room)

telegramy návštěvníků
(the visitors' telegrams)

Origin

teplota slunce
(the temperature of the sun)

obraz maminky
(the picture of mother)

pravda slov
(the truth of the words)

Subjective

jednání hocha
(a boy's behavior)

poznámky doktora
(a doctor's remarks)

otázky studentů
(the students' questions)

Objective

cvičení vojáků
(the training of soldiers)

chvála studentů
(the praising of the students)

Measure

sklenice vody
(a glass of water)

balíček cigaret
(a pack of cigarettes)

Classification

měsíc dovolených
(a vacation month)

doba odpovědí
(a time for answers)

The genitive case is also used with a fairly extensive series of prepositions. Undoubtedly the most important prepositions in this classification are those introduced in this lesson.

blízko (near)
od (from)
do (to, into, until)
u (near, by, at)
z (out of, from)

Já jsem bydlel blízko velkého parku.
(I used to live near a big park.)

Jdeme do lesa na procházku.
(We are going for a walk in the woods.)

Když byla malá, četla knihy od rána do večera.
(When she was little, she read books from morning until night.)

Stůl stojí v rohu u okna.
(The table stands in the corner by the window.)

Její profesor odešel za měsíc z Prahy.
(Her professor left Prague in a month.)

Nouns following the class of words called quantifiers must always appear in the genitive case. As the student can see, this usage of the genitive is a special extension of the genitive of measure. Note the following examples of this phenomenon.

Proč kouříte tak málo cigaret?
(Why do you smoke so few cigarettes?)

K obědu mám vždycky trochu mléka.
(I always have a little milk for lunch.)

Kde jste dostal tolik tužek?
(Where did you get so many pencils?)

Mám pro tebe hodně otázek.
(I have a lot of questions for you.)

Můžete mi dát pár kapesníků?
(Can you give me a couple of handkerchiefs?)

A few adjectives, particularly when used in the predicate, may govern the genitive case. Two such adjectives, schopný (capable) and plný (full), have been introduced in this lesson. Note the following illustrative sentences and how the English equivalents reflect the genitive case.

Život není plný radostí.
(Life is not full of joys.)

Na stole stála sklenice plná vody.
(A glass full of water stood on the table.)

Ten člověk není schopný takové práce.
(That man is not capable of such work.)

Byl tak unavený, že nebyl schopný odpovědi.
(He was so tired that he wasn't capable of answering.)

Verbs too may take their objects in the genitive case. This situation is particularly true of reflexive verbs in se, which cannot take an object in the accusative case. Take careful note of the following verbs governing the genitive case and of the accompanying sentences.

bát se	(to be afraid of)
ptát se/zeptat se	(to ask)
účastnit se/zúčastnit se	(to take part in)
vážit si	(to appreciate, esteem)
všímat si/všimnout si	(to take notice of)

Víte, proč se jí bojí?
(Do you know why he is afraid of her?)

Ptal jsem se bratra, jak mám jet na universitu.
(I asked my brother how to go to the university.)

Účastnil se té práce na knize.
(He took part in that work on the book.)

Vážím si ho, protože mi vždycky pomáhá.
(I appreciate him because he always helps me.)

Všiml si květin, které jeho žena dala na stůl.
(He noticed the flowers his wife had put on the table.)

Possessive Pronouns

The possessive pronouns in Czech provide the counterparts for the English "my," "your," "his," "her," "its," "their," "one's own," and "whose." When they are used alone without a following noun they correspond to the English "mine," "yours," "his," "hers," "ours," and "theirs." The first important point to make is that the Czech third person possessive pronouns, jeho (his/its), and jejich (their) are invariable in form, i.e., they are not declined and behave, therefore, just like their English equivalents. The remaining possessive pronouns are declined in all cases, and genders and in both numbers. The declensional forms were produced in the same way as those for the adjectives, but historical changes have effected some differences, especially in the pronouns náš (our) and váš (your). Learn all the forms of the various possessive pronouns from the tables on the following pages. The student has observed that some nominative and accusative forms of the possessive pronouns have both monosyllabic and disyllabic variants, thus mé vs. moje, tvou vs. tvoji, and mí vs. moji. The shorter forms all represent historical contractions of the longer forms. These variants may be used interchangeably, but the longer forms are always more emphatic and are invariably used when there is no accompanying noun.

To je mé/moje pero.

To pero je moje.

Vidím tvoji kávu, ale nevidím svoji.

The student must pay close attention to the critical distinction in meaning conveyed by the reflexive possessive pronoun svůj, svá, své, etc. Even though all forms of the pronoun have been given in the following tables, it is not used in the nominative case. The pronoun may be found in any oblique case, and it must refer back strictly to the subject of a sentence or clause. This means that the reflexive possessive pronoun will frequently translate the English terms "my," "your," "our," etc. Study the following sentences.

Kde máš svůj pokoj?
(Where do you have your room?)

Zůstal jsem na své židli.
(I remained in my chair.)

Skončili jsme svou práci včas.
(We finished our work on time.)

Máte své věci v pořádku?
(Do you have your things in order?)

Singular

	"my"				"your"				"one's own"			
	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
	Inan	Anim			Inan	Anim			Inan	Anim		
N	můj		mé/moje	má/moje	tvůj		tvé/tvoje	tvá/tvoje	svůj		své/svoje	svá/svoje
G	mého			mé	tvého			tvé	svého			své
D	mému			mé	tvému			tvé	svému			své
A	můj	mého	mé/moje	mou/moji	tvůj	tvého	tvé/tvoje	tvou/tvoji	svůj	svého	své/svoje	svou/svoji
L	mém			mé	tvém			tvé	svém			své

Plural

N	mé/ moje	mí/ moji	má/ moje	mé/ moje	tvé/ tvoje	tví/ tvoji	tvá/ tvoje	tvé/ tvoje	své/ svoje	sví/ svoji	svá/ svoje	své/ svoje
G	mých				tvých				svých			
D	mým				tvým				svým			
A	mé/ moje		má/ moje	mé/ moje	tvé/ tvoje		tvá/ tvoje	tvé/ tvoje	své/ svoje		svá/ svoje	své/ svoje
L	mých				tvých				svých			

Singular

	"our"				"your"				"whose"				"her"			
	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
	Inan	Anim			Inan	Anim			Inan	Anim			Inan	Anim		
N	náš		naše	naše	váš		vaše	vaše	čí			čí	její			její
G	našeho			naší	vašeho			vaší	čího			čí	jejího			její
D	našemu			naší	vašemu			vaší	čímu			čí	jejím			její
A	náš	našeho	naše	naši	váš	vašeho	vaše	vaši	čí	čího	čí	čí	její	jejího	její	její
L	našem			naší	vašem			vaší	čím			čí	jejím			její

Plural

N	naše	naši	naše	naše	vaše	vaši	vaše	vaše	čí				její			
G	našich				vašich				čích				jejích			
D	našim				vašim				čím				jejím			
A	naše				vaše				čí				jejích			
L	našich				vašich				čích				jejích			

Maminka řekla sestře, že musí vzít s sebou její klobouk.
(Mother told sister that she must take along her
(mother's) hat.)

The reflexive possessive cannot be used if the noun which it modifies is not the exclusive property of the subject.

Máme rádi naše české písně.
(We like our Czech songs.)

Snažili jsme se mu vysvětlit naše přesvědčení.
(We tried to explain to him our convictions.)

The reflexive possessive cannot be used either if the nominal phrase in which it is embedded represents an action performed by some person other than the subject.

Zaplatili jsme za opravu našeho rádia.
(We paid for the repair of our radio.)

Zúčastnili jsme se rozhovoru našich návštěvníků.
(We took part in the conversation of our visitors.)

Exercises:

1) Decline the following nouns in all cases and in both numbers.

klíč
srdce
bolest
schůze

dálka
pes
koberec
okno

jednání
poloha
návštěvník
lék

2) Put the nouns in the right-hand column in the genitive case singular and plural. Try to attach them to the nouns in the left-hand column to form meaningful phrases, and make an attempt at classifying the resultant phrases according to the various uses of the genitive case.

doba
odpověď
obrázek
poznámka
hodina
schůze
nápad
pár
dojem
strach
práce
radost
profesor
chvála

otázka
hlad
studentka
cvičení
hudebník
čistírna
literatura
dovolená
rozhovor
situace
přednáška
cesta
noc
pozdrav

3) Translate the following sentences into Czech. Pay particular attention to the various functions of the genitive case.

1. He recalled that the room was full of musicians.
2. Have you ever taken part in their meetings?
3. I hope these things won't fall out of the cupboard.
4. Didn't I tell you that the lecture would last until noon?
5. I walked away from the table and sat down by the lamp.
6. When we are on vacation, we like to live close to the sea.
7. He just wasn't capable of anything like that (Use takový).
8. He was standing by the window and was watching people pass.
9. He realized that he was afraid of her questions.
10. How can you esteem arrogant people?
11. When my brother came back, I asked him whether he knew that girl.
12. Does anyone have as few cares as you have?
13. That young man knows how to drive a lot of different cars.
14. When we arrived at the office, he was sitting and reading by one of the open windows.
15. We usually take note of such situations, but recently (Use poslední doba in the locative) we just haven't had the time.
16. Last night he told me that he had too much work.
17. May I leave these things here in the room for a couple of minutes (Use na with accusative)?
18. A life full of such worries isn't at all easy.
19. He said he could send me a little money.
20. Why do we always have to take along so many clothes?

4) Translate into Czech the following sentences that concentrate on the uses of the possessive pronouns.

1. Whose book is it that you put into that cupboard?
2. I forgot where you left my things in the room upstairs.
3. Have you remembered now whose turn it is?
4. We appreciate our literature.
5. Are you going to go in your car?
6. Do you participate in his lectures?
7. He told us that we were supposed to go to a meeting of our students.
8. Those students who are standing near the door are our students.
9. Do you think she can still answer our letter?
10. The plan of our city lay on the table in the corner.
11. We helped her brother find the telegram.
12. What are you doing here in my room?
13. We asked him why he was standing there by his bicycle.
14. She said she would give me her keys tomorrow.
15. We saw that his window was open.
16. He appreciates his son.
17. How long do we have to wait for an answer to our letter?

18. They didn't understand his remark about their actions (Use *jednání* in the sg.).
19. Do you only like your modern music?
20. He reads some book to his wife every evening.

Negation

Both Czech and English exhibit the two types of negation observed in languages: sentence negation and word negation. Sentence negation is always associated with the verb, while word negation may be attached to any word in a sentence. Note the following examples and their English equivalents.

Přichází sem, ale ne často.
(He comes here, but not frequently.)

Ne každá kniha na tomhle stole je moje.
(Not every book on this table is mine.)

It is very important to note that, when word negation in Czech occurs with indefinite pronouns and adverbs, the main verb is also negated. Thus:

Nikdo se nedivil.
(No one was surprised.)

Nikdy tam nepůjdu.
(I'll never go there.)

Nikdo nikdy nepřišel včas.
(No one ever came on time.)

Another important difference between Czech and English in the use of the negative appears when two sentences are conjoined by the conjunction *že* (that) and the first sentence contains verbs of perception or feeling such as *myslit* (to think), *věřit* (to believe). In most instances of this type it is the second sentence that is actually negated while the verbs of perception of the first sentence are negated only for special emphasis. Czech leaves the negation where it is logically expected; but in English, when the second sentence is negated and when is no special emphasis on the verb of perception, the negative particle is regularly transferred to the first sentence. Study carefully the following sentences.

Myslím, že Milan nepřijde.
(I don't think that Milan will come.)

Nemyslím, že Milan přijde.
(I don't *think* that Milan will come.)

Já myslím, že Milan nepřijde.
(*I* think that Milan won't come.)

DIALOGUE

Jak to vlastně bylo? Přesně jsem tomu nerozuměl. Bylo to trochu složité. A všiml jsem si toho, že Karel také nerozuměl.	What was it actually like? I didn't exactly understand it. It was a bit complicated. And I noticed that Karel didn't understand either.
Milena se měla zúčastnit nějaké schůze na universitě, ale neměla kolo, protože jí je její příbuzná nevrátila. Milena tedy nejdřív šla pro své kolo k té příbuzné, protože bydlí blízko ní. Ale ta příbuzná mezitím na jejím kole odjela na universitu, protože věděla, že tam Milena bude. Myslela, že jí tam to kolo bude moci vrátit. Přitom ovšem nechala své kolo doma. A tak, když k ní Milena přijela, nenašla své kolo, ale její. A nakonec musela jet na jejím kole pro své kolo na universitu.	Milena was supposed to take part in some meeting at the university, but she didn't have a bicycle because her relative hadn't returned it to her. So Milena went first to her relative's to get her bike because she lives near her. But in the meantime this relative had gone to the university on her bike because she knew that Milena would be there. She thought she would be able to return the bike to her there. At the same time, of course, she left her own bike at home. And so, when Milena arrived at her place, she didn't find her own bike but the other one. And in the end she had to ride to the university to get her own bike on the other bike.
Má to tedy opravdu smysl. Ačkoli její příbuzná má také kolo, Milena má své kolo, a to kolo je přirozeně její. Vždycky si vážím jednoduché odpovědi.	It really makes sense then. Although her relative has a bike too, Milena has her own bike; and that bike is naturally hers. I always appreciate a simple answer.

* * *

Z nějakého důvodu mám už od rána smůlu. Nejdřív jsem přišel pozdě do práce a nyní jsem si právě uvědomil, že jsem zapomněl v kanceláři klíče. Stojím tady u zavřených dveří a nevím co mám dělat. Do kanceláře se ovšem vrátit nemohu. Snad zavolám Milana. To je dobrý nápad. Když u nás tuhle byl, říkal, že v jejich domě bydlí nějaký chytrý mladý muž, který prý obyčejně umí v takových situacích pomoci. Nyní přijde na to,	For some reason I've been having bad luck ever since morning. First I was late to work, and now I have just realized that I forgot my keys in the office. I am standing here by the locked door, and I don't know what to do. I can't go back to the office, of course. Perhaps I'll call Milan. That's a good idea. When he was with us the other day, he said that in their house there lives a clever young man who, I understand, usually can help

jestli Milan i ten mladý muž budou doma. Uvidíme.	in such situations. Now it depends on whether Milan and that young man will be at home. We'll see.

* * *

Čí je to tužka?	Whose pencil is that?
O které tužce mluvíš?	What pencil are you talking about?
O téhle. Ležela tady už včera.	About this one. It was lying here yesterday.
Opravdu, čí je ta tužka? Já jsem myslel, že je tvoje, právě proto, že tady tak dlouho leží.	Really, whose is that pencil? I thought it was yours just because it's been lying here so long.
Moje není. Já svou tužku nemohu najít. Měl jsem nedávno stůl plný tužek, ale neviděl jsem ani jednu z nich od minulého večera. Mé tužky se mě zřejmě bojí. Bud' je někde zapomenu, a nevzpomenu si kde, nebo mi je někdo zapomene vrátit, a já si nevzpomenu kdo.	It's not mine. I can't find my own pencil. I recently had a desk full of pencils, but I haven't seen a single one of them since last evening. Evidently my pencils are afraid of me. Either I forget them somewhere and don't remember where; or someone forgets to return them to me, and I don't remember who.
Jestli to není tvá tužka, čí tedy je? Někoho jiného. Ale koho?	If it isn't your pencil, whose is it then? Someone else's. But whose?

* * *

Odkud přicházíte?	Where are you coming from?
Jdu z čistírny, ale musím se tam zase vrátit. Neměl jsem s sebou dost peněz. Mám tam několik obleků a žena tam má nějaké šaty. Neuvědomil jsem si, že budu muset tolik platit.	I'm coming from the cleaner's, but I have to go back there again. I didn't have enough money with me. I have several suits there, and my wife has some clothes there. I didn't realize that I'd have to pay so much.
Když mluvíte o penězích, já jich mám s sebou pořád trochu málo. Ještě nikdy jsem jich neměl příliš mnoho.	Since you're talking about money, I never have quite enough money with me. I have never yet had enough.

* * *

Mohu vám přečíst něco zajímavého?	Can I read something interesting to you?
Co například?	What, for instance?
Například nějakou opravdu dobrou báseň.	For example, a really good poem.
Doufám, že to nebude ta báseň o té dívce z Prahy?	I hope it won't be that poem about the girl from Prague?

Ne, tentokrát to není ode mne, tentokrát je to od někoho jiného.	No, this time it's not by me; this time it's by someone else.
Prosím, můžete začít. Já jsem, jak víte, přítel literatury a udělám pro ni co mohu.	Please, go ahead. I am, as you know, a friend of literature, and I'll do what I can for it.

* * *

Marie, má známá, má malého psa. Je to zvláštní pes. Má dlouhý krk, krátké tělo, od rána do večera spí a má rád kočky. Kde je nějaká kočka, tam najdete také jeho. Obyčejně vypadá tak unavený, že máte dojem, že není schopný kroku. Když jde kolem, jde tak pomalu a vážně, že se lidé Marie ptají, jestli není nemocný. Marii to ale nedělá starosti. Zná svého psa a ví, že je chytrý a živý, ačkoli tomu nikdo z jejích známých nevěří. Když minulou neděli ten pes dokonce vypadl z okna na ulici, říkala, že k tomu musel mít své důvody. Takový inteligentní pes,který umí vypadnout z okna a vrátit se domů zdravý, prý nedělá věci jen tak.	Mary, my friend, has a small dog. It's a peculiar dog. It has a long neck, short body, it sleeps from morning to night, and it likes cats. Where there is a cat, there you will also find it. It usually looks so exhausted that you have the impression that it's unable to take a step. When it goes by, it walks so slowly and gravely, that people ask Mary whether it isn't sick. But that doesn't cause Mary any concern. She knows her dog, and she knows that it is clever and lively although no one among her acquaintances believes that. When the dog even fell out of the window into the street last Sunday, she said that it must have had its own reasons for that. Such an intelligent dog that knows how to fall out of a window, and return home sound doesn't do things just for fun, she says.

* * *

Kolik minut to mám ještě vařit?	How many more minutes am I supposed to cook it?
Nevím přesně, ale myslím, že ještě asi čtvrt nebo půl hodiny.	I don't know exactly, but I think about a quarter or a half hour more.
Čtvrt nebo půl hodiny? Tak dlouho? Včera jsi mi říkala, že uvařit tohle jídlo trvá jen chvíli.	A quarter or a half an hour? So long? You told me yesterday that it takes only a moment to cook this dish.
Ovšem, ale to neznamená, že to trvá jen pár vteřin.	Sure I did, but that doesn't mean that it takes only a couple of seconds.
Pár vteřin a půl hodiny--to je dost velký rozdíl, nemyslíš? Měla jsem opravdu dojem, že to je rychlé a snadné jídlo. Dobře, že dnes večer nejdeme do divadla nebo někam jinam.	A couple of seconds and a half hour--that's quite a big difference, don't you think? I really had the impression that it's a quick and easy dish. It's a good thing that we are not going to the theater or someplace else tonight.

READING SELECTION

Proč se mě ptáte, jestli jsem v poslední době četl něco zajímavého? Odpověd' je jednoduchá a krátká: bohužel ne. Čtu sice hodně—mohu říci, že čtu od rána do večera—ale čtu jen knihy, které číst musím a ty jsou zajímavé jen někdy. Musím se tomu pořád divit. Kde vlastně jsou ty knihy, které člověku dělají radost? Na můj stůl přicházejí z nějakého důvodu jen knihy, v kterých chybí radost a smích. I básně jsou dnes plné starostí, strachu a nepříjemných dojmů.

Kdykoli jste u mne, mluvíme jen o penězích. Je to proto, že je máme nebo, že je nemáme? Nebo je to proto, že prostě nemáme jiné nápady? Neříkám ovšem, že musíme nutně mluvit o něčem jiném, protože peníze jsou přirozeně důležité. Říkám jen, že naše rozhovory nemají zůstávat u jedné a té samé otázky. Jiné věci mají také smysl.

Hledám už celé odpoledne své brejle. Měl jsem je s sebou, když jsem byl v poledne na obědě. Za tři hodiny potom jsem je ještě měl na návštěvě u Karla. Četl jsem tam totiž pár vět v jedné knize o divadle. Protože musím mít brejle, když čtu, musel jsem je přirozeně také mít u Karla. Potom jsem je pořád ještě měl,když jsem se vrátil domů. Našel jsem totiž doma nějaké dopisy, které mezitím přišly. Začal jsem ty dopisy číst, ale někdo mě v tu chvíli zavolal, a tak jsem poslední dopis nepřečetl celý. Myslel jsem, že se k němu vrátím, až zase budu mít čas. Mé brejle bohužel mezitím zmizely a zřejmě je hned nenajdu. Kde asi mohou být?

Zapomněl jsem, že mám v čistírně svůj nový oblek. Je neděle ráno a já musím jít večer na návštěvu k jednomu známému hudebníkovi. Budeme poslouchat jeho nové věci. Myslel jsem, že si proto obléknu něco jiného a ne oblek, který už každý zná. Bohužel jsem si včas neuvědomil, že jsem byl nedávno v čistírně. A to byla smůla, protože jsem jim tam také nechal ten důležitý oblek. Budu tedy muset večer jít v jednom ze starých obleků, které mi zůstaly ve skříni.

Můj známý má kašel a rýmu. Nyní v létě! Mysleli jsme, že v neděli pojedeme na kole do parku, ale nyní budeme muset nějaký čas počkat. Ten známý zřejmě do neděle nebude zdravý. Jeho rýmy z nějakého důvodu vždycky dlouho trvají. Ale čí rýmy netrvají dlouho? Každá rýma je nepříjemná. Nikdo nemá z rýmy radost. Rýma v létě ovšem není tak hrozná jako je protivná. To, že má můj známý rýmu, znamená, že do parku pojedeme někdy jindy. A možná, že mezitím někdo z nás bude mít nějaký nový nápad. Tahle rýma nedělá prostě starosti ani mně ani jemu.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. The key fell out of her (Use dative of the pronoun) hand and remained lying by the door. 2. He was so weak that he was incapable of saying a single word. 3. Do you still have some further ideas? 4. Only one of her relatives really respected her. 5. Someone, he says, told him that the next meeting would be in a month. 6. What else are you afraid of?

7. Such a simple step can't be that important. 8. Whose poem is that? 9. Was Mary telling you that she was locked in her apartment the whole afternoon? 10. We never had so many acquaintances as now. 11. Where do these poeple come from? 12. You needn't be concerned; it'll only take a few minutes. 13. If I know her (Use "as" for "if"), she won't even notice it. 14. I've had this suit for exactly a quarter of a year (Use present tense of mít). 15. Is this really your dog? 16. In the end Karel forgot that we were supposed to go to their place for supper on Sunday. 17. His sister is pretty although she has too long a neck. 18. I left my glasses somewhere, but I don't know where. 19. Either we will call them or they will call us (Omit the second verb). 20. When will you actually ask them again? 21. It was a peculiar situation; she thought she had been saying something especially clever, but at the same time no one took her seriously. 22. The whole corridor was full of visitors. 23. To what dry cleaner's are you carrying these clothes? To this one or to that one over there? 24. Next fall I'll be glad to take part in your discussions; but this year, unfortunately, I can't. 25. He was back in perhaps a second. 26. The deaf lady from the house opposite us gives her cat only fresh milk. 27. What kind of literature interests you (2 sg.), for example? 28. Is this the reason why you don't believe either me or him? 29. We'll go someplace tonight for sure; I feel like a good meal. 30. Were you also free last year for half a month? 31. Her brother sometimes causes her a little concern. 32. In a couple of minutes you won't have any pain at all. 33. How many drawers do they have in that table? 34. I have the impression that that isn't as complex as we first thought. 35. My relatives aren't like yours; they always let me know when they're going to come. 36. Is that really such a big difference? 37. We won't get much money from them. 38. Are we supposed to take along our or their bicycle? 39. He stood near them and heard them talking about the various worries they had. 40. We soon realized that an answer wouldn't be easy. 41. She felt pains in her whole body. 42. When he was telling me that, he spoke slowly and hesitantly; obviously he was thinking over what he was supposed to say. 43. One more quick comment and then I'll finish (Use už). 44. The table was full of her books and other things. 45. Those pictures of yours are really nice.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Proč čtete básně?
2. Váš pes nebo vaše kočka.
3. Příbuzní a známí.
4. Co děláte, když máte smůlu?
5. Věci na vašem stole.
6. Nové a staré obleky.
7. Vaše poslední dobré nápady.
8. Hra, kterou právě dávají v divadle.
9. Co jste dělal minulou neděli?
10. Jak důležité jsou vlastně peníze?
11. Mít starosti.
12. Někdy něco zapomenu doma.
13. Účastníte se často schůzí?
14. Dojmy z přírody.
15. Něco vypadlo z okna.
16. Americká literatura.
17. Hrozná situace.
18. Kolo nebo auto?
19. O čem často mluvíte?
20. Má to smysl jít do práce?

LESSON IX

VOCABULARY

aspoň (adv.)	at least
běhat (I,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to run
běžet (IV,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to run
část(f)	part
dcera(f)(Dat.sg. dceři)	daughter
děkovat (VII,i)(+ Dat)(See poděkovat)	to thank
děkovat někomu za + Acc.	to thank someone for
dělat	
dělat někomu dobře	to be good for someone
dolů (adv.)	down, downstairs (motion)
hlavní	main, major, principal
hodinky(f)(plural only)(Gen.pl. hodinek)	watch
chladno (neuter noun and short adjective[1])	cool, coolness
chodit (II,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to walk, go (on foot)
chtít[2](irreg.verb)	to want, wish
jezdit (II,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to ride, go (by conveyance)
jmenovat se (VII,i)	to be called, be named
konec/konc(m)	end
koupit(si) (II,p)(See kupovat)	to buy (for one's self)
kromě + Gen.	besides, except, in addition to, but
kupovat(si) (VII,i)(See koupit si)	to buy (for one's self)
létat (I,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to fly, go by plane
letět (IV,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to fly, go by plane
místo(n)	place, position, room (space)
mít	
mít na sobě	to be wearing, to have on
most(m)	bridge
možný	possible
mrznout (VI,i)(See zmrznout)	to freeze
nahoru (adv.)	up, upstairs (motion)
naopak (adv.)	on the contrary

některý	some (of a series, of a number)
nic[3]	nothing
noviny(f)(plural only)	newspaper
opakovat (VII,i)(+ Ind.Obj.) (See zopakovat)	to repeat, review, recapitulate
ošklivý	ugly, nasty, bad
plášt'(m)	overcoat, topcoat
počasí(n)	weather
poděkovat (VII,p)(+ Dat.)(See děkovat)	to thank
pohyb(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	motion, movement, exercise
potřebovat (VII,i)	to need
prostudovat (VII,p)(See studovat)	to study
přes + Acc. (See Pronunciation section)	over, across, in spite of
přinášet (III,i)(+ Ind.Obj.) (See přinést)	to bring (on foot)
přinést (Va,p)(+ Ind.Obj.)(See přinášet)	to bring (on foot)
pták(m)	bird
půjčit (II,p)(+ Ind.Obj.)(See půjčovat)	to lend, loan, let have
půjčovat (VII,i)(+ Ind.Obj.)(See půjčit)	to lend, loan, let have
restaurace(f)	restaurant
řeka(f)	river
s + Gen. (See Pronunciation section)	from, off (down off the surface of something)
schod(m)	step (pl. = stairs, stairway)
sněžit (II,i)	to snow
spíš (adv.)	rather
studovat (VII,i)(See prostudovat)	to study
sucho (neuter noun and short adjective[1])	dry (weather), drought
syn(m)[4]	son
škola(f)	school
št'astný	happy
teplo (neuter noun and short adjective[1])	warm, warmth, heat
těžký	heavy, difficult
ukazovat[5] (VII,i)(+ Ind.Obj.)	to show, display, demonstrate
úplně (adv.)	entirely, completely
vadit (II,i)(+ Dat. of person)	to hamper

to nevadí	it doesn't matter
to mi nevadí	I don't mind
ven (adv.)	out, outside (motion)
vést (Va,i)(vedu, vedeš; vedl, vedla) (See Grammar Analysis)	to lead, guide, direct
vézt (Va,i)(vezu, vezeš; vezl, vezla) (See Grammar Analysis)	to carry, take (by conveyance)
vlhko (neuter noun and short adjective[1])	damp, humid, dampness, moisture
vodit (II,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to lead, guide, direct
vozit (II,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to carry, take (by conveyance)
všechen, všechna, všechno, etc. (See Grammar Analysis)	all, all of
výborný	excellent
vypravovat[6] (VII,i)(+ Ind. Obj.)	to relate, give an account of, tell about
začátek/začátk- (m)	beginning
zkouška (f)(Gen.pl. zkoušek)	examination, trial
změna (f)	change
zmrznout (VI,p)(See mrznout)	to freeze
zopakovat (VI,p)(VII,p)(+ Ind. Obj.) (See opakovat)	to repeat, review, recapitulate
zvyklý (I infinitive or na + Acc.)	used (to), accustomed (to)
žádný (the negative counterpart of jaký and který)	no, none, not one, not any

[1] The limited category of short adjectives will be discussed in a later lesson.

[2] This irregular imperfective verb has the following forms:

Pres. Tense: chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí
Perf. Part.: chtěl, chtěla, chtělo, chtěli, etc.

[3] This pronoun is declined like co; Gen. ničeho, Dat. ničemu, Acc. nic, Loc. ničem.

[4] Since the nominative plural is irregular, this word will be used only in the singular for the time being.

[5] The perfective counterpart of this verb will be introduced later. It belongs to a class of verbs not yet studied.

[6] There is no morphologically related perfective for this verb. Czech speakers use instead both říci and povědět (the latter verb will be introduced later).

PRONUNCIATION

1) It should once again be pointed out that Czech vowels are pronounced clearly; that the sound is never slurred or shaded off into another vowel as it sometimes happens in English. The student should resist the temptation to diphthongize them or to reduce them in unstressed positions.

> Určitě to neumí. Do večera je ještě dlouho. To nevadí, že občas přijdete pozdě. Nemáme už žádné mléko. Pokud si vzpomínám, jmenovala se Marie. Udělal jen jednu jedinou poznámku, a ta nebyla důležitá. Co vám všechno chybí? Zůstalo to bohužel jen na papíře.

2) There is a slight distinction between Czech diphthongs with j (aj, ej, ij, oj, uj, áj, íj, ůj) and their English counterparts that merits some attention. Greater muscular tension in the speech organs is needed to produce the glide element in the Czech diphthongs. Care should be taken, however, not to extend the glide into a full-fledged i vowel. Note also that in initial or medial position the Czech j is even more tense than when it occurs finally.

> Vidíte jej? Stojí v pokoji. Tenhle čaj není tvůj ani můj. Nechtějí odejít. Znáte Marii nebo jen Mariinu sestru? Jak se jmenuje? Nevšimli jsme si jej. Její dcera jí ještě půjčuje kolo.

3) An attempt should be made to differentiate the Czech dentals (t,d,n) from the corresponding English consonants. The Czech sounds are, on the whole, tenser and are articulated with the tip of the tongue reaching farther out in the direction of the upper front teeth. See the Introduction for a more detailed explanation.

> Budu tam celé odpoledne. Letos jsem z dovolené nic neměl. Do té doby to neuděláme. Dopisy odtud přestaly chodit. Nebyl zvyklý studovat. Neměla nikdy žádné nápady. Tatínek ztloustl. Odpovídáte na takové otázky?

4) Note that the prepositions s (se) + Gen. and přes (přese) + Acc. are pronounced [z] [ze] and [přez] [přeze]:

> s místa [z místa], se skříně [ze skříně], s lavičky [z lavičky], se strany [ze strany], přes léto [přez léto], přese všechno [přeze všechno], přes vodu [přez vodu]

5) One additional reminder concerning the pronunciation of words of foreign—mostly Latin and Greek—origin. In such words:

> a) s is sometimes pronounced as z: filosofie [filozofije], president [prezident], universita [univerzita], anarchismus [anarchizmus], etc.
>
> b) short vowels are occasionally pronounced as long: kolektivní [kolektývní], literatura [literatúra], Asie [Ázije], etc.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Determinate and Indeterminate Verbs

The student has already been introduced to the grammatical feature of aspect, and he is aware that all verbs in Czech are subject to the aspectual opposition, perfective--imperfective, i.e., that every Czech verb must be either perfective or imperfective in terms of aspect. There are in Czech, however, other categories that characterize action in several general ways and may therefore be termed aspectual in nature. Since these other categories are found among either perfective or imperfective verbs they are called subsidiary aspectual categories; and since they involve the presence versus the absence of certain semantic features, they are usually termed subsidiary aspectual oppositions. This lesson will treat a small but very important subsidiary aspectual opposition found exclusively among imperfective verbs and containing what are usually called determinate and indeterminate verbs, most of the basic motion verbs of the language. Determinateness implies unity of time and place and characterizes the motion as taking place in one particular direction at one particular time. Indeterminateness does not express this unity of time and direction. The practical implications of this general definition will be clarified below.

The language today contains but nine pairs of determinate and indeterminate verbs. The student must bear in mind that this aspectual opposition holds true only for these particular non-prefixed verbs; it does not extend to prefixed derivatives of these verbs, which are only perfective and imperfective in nature. Seven of these pairs have been included in this lesson; all are listed below. The student will recognize several of these verbs from earlier lessons.

Determinate	Indeterminate	
jít (V,i)	chodit (II,i)	to go (on foot)
jet (V,i)	jezdit (II,i)	to go (by conveyance)
nést (V,i)	nosit (II,i)	to carry (on foot)
vézt (V,i)	vozit (II,i)	to carry (by conveyance)
běžet (IV,i)	běhat (I,i)	to run
letět (IV,i)	létat (I,i)	to fly
vést (V,i)	vodit (II,i)	to lead, conduct

Uses of Indeterminate Verbs

We now want to demonstrate why we can make the statement that indeterminate verbs are not characterized by a unity of time and direction. There are two general applications of indeterminate verbs, and neither use of such verbs is characterized by the co-occurrence of the features of one time and one direction. The first use involves random motion which may occur at one particular time but which excludes the notion of one direction. The second use is to express repeated action which may include one particular direction but which excludes the idea of one particular time. Study the following examples of random and repeated motion.

Random Motion:

Tatínek něco říkal a *chodil* po pokoji.
(Father was saying something and was walking about the room.)

Můj bratr ještě neumí *chodit*.
(My brother doesn't know how to walk yet.)

V létě jsme *jezdili* z města do města.
(In summer we were traveling from city to city.)

Autobusy *jezdí* po celé Praze.
(Buses go all over Prague.)

Vždycky *nosila* kapesník v ruce.
(She always carried a handkerchief in her hand.)

Proč *nosíte* klobouk doma?
(Why do you wear a hat in the house?)

Kdo nás bude *vozit* po městě.
(Who will drive us around town?)

Děti křičely a *běhaly* po parku.
(The children were shouting and running about the park.)

Nějací ptáci *létali* od stromu ke stromu.
(Some birds were flying from tree to tree.)

Musíme ho všude *vodit* za ruku.
(We have to lead him everywhere by the hand.)

Repeated Motion:

Často k nim *chodím* na návštěvu.
(I frequently go visit them.)

Jezdím na universitu ve svém autě.
(I drive to the university in my own car.)

Odtud vlaky *jezdí* do Prahy každé tři hodiny.
(From there trains go to Prague every three hours.)

Karel *nosí* té dívce květiny každý den.
(Karel takes flowers to that girl every day.)

Vozíte s sebou knihy na dovolenou?
(Do you take books with you on a vacation?)

Sestra *běhá* pro všechno k mamince.
(Sister runs to mother for everything.)

Létáme do Prahy každý měsíc.
(We fly to Prague every month.)

Otec nás tam často *vodil*.
(Father used to take us there often.)

Uses of Determinate Verbs

The circumstances for the use of determinate verbs are statistically more frequent in the language, and the student should expect them to present a more complex picture than their indeterminate counterparts. The following paragraphs will define the kinds of stylistic and semantic developments these verbs have undergone.

1) The following sentences illustrate the basic function of these verbs--the expression of unity of time and direction.

Skončil jsem dopis a nyní jdu na poštu.
(I finished the letter and now I'm on my way to the post office.)

Už je pozdě, musím jet domů.
(It's already late, I must go home.)

Proč to auto jede tak rychle?
(Why is that car going so fast?)

Kam nesete ty květiny?
(Where are you taking those flowers?)

Vezu bratra k zubaři.
(I am driving brother to the dentist's.)

Musím už letět; žena na mne čeká.
(I must run; my wife is waiting for me.)

Vedete mne do toho parku, který znám?
(Are you taking me to the park I know?)

2) Just as in English the various basic verbs of motion may be used figuratively. It is the determinate verbs that assume this function in the vast majority of cases. In most of these cases, too, it is easy to observe that a unity of time and direction is maintained. Study the following sentences carefully and learn these specific idiomatic applications of the motion verbs.

Hodinky mi bohužel nešly.
(Unfortunately my watch wasn't working.)

Jeho ruka jela dolů po sklenici.
(His hand traveled down over the glass.)

Ten strom nenesl ovoce.
(That tree didn't bear fruit.)

Můžete nám říci, jak ta práce běží?
(Can you tell us how that work is going?)

Když máme práci, čas letí.
(When we are busy, time flies.)

Ty rozhovory nás vedly k české literatuře.
(Those conversations led us to Czech literature.)

3) Determinate verbs may occasionally be used affectively in sentences where the mere lexical context would seem to demand indeterminate verbs. Close examination of such sentences reveals, however, that the action is modified by emotional overtones of unexpectedness, irregularity, surprise, even annoyance on the part of the speaker, and this affective usage with special emphasis on the action permits the speaker to employ the determinate verb in its own right with its expression of unity of time and direction. In other words, through use of the determinate verb the speaker instances each occurrence of the action in an iterated sequence of actions. Study the following examples, but use them cautiously.

> Kdykoli má čas, jde v neděli do drahé restaurace.
> (Whenever he has the time, there he goes on Sunday off to an expensive restaurant.)
>
> Každý večer jí nesl jiné květiny.
> (Every evening there he would be taking her different flowers.)

In both of the above sentences the speaker is emphasizing the action under the influence of some emotional bias.

4) In the Czech expression of the past tense and only in these verbal forms the determinate verbs in an appropriate context appear to play the role of perfective verbs formed by means of the verbal prefix od signifying in these cases "motion away from a given point." The past tense forms here do not actually become perfective; but the context, which must clearly suggest that the subject of the verb has departed from a given place, creates the atmosphere of perfectivity. The notion of perfectivity here is reinforced by the exclusive use of the past forms referring to action performed before the moment of utterance. Examine the following sentences closely.

> Kde je Karel? Šel na nádraží.
> (Where is Karel? He has gone to the station.)
>
> Bratr není doma. Jel zase do Prahy.
> (Brother isn't home. He's gone to Prague again.)
>
> Vrátila už všechny knihy do knihovny? Kdy je tam nesla?
> (Has she already returned all the books to the library? When did she take them there?)
>
> Nevrátila se ještě, protože vezla jednu naši známou do divadla.
> (She hasn't returned yet because she took one of our acquaintances to the theater.)
>
> Musíte počkat. Žena běžela na chvíli do zahrádky.
> (You should wait. My wife has run out in the yard for a moment.)

Nemusí vám to dělat starosti. Letěl tam včas.
(That shouldn't cause you concern. He took off on time.)

Vrátí se za minutu. Vedla někoho do domu naproti.
(She'll be back in a minute. She took someone to the house across the way.)

5) The expression of the future for determinate verbs by means of the verb budu is not very much in use in Czech. As a matter of fact, budu jít and budu jet do not exist at all. Rather, Czech speakers prefer to use the present tense forms of the corresponding perfective verbs with the prefix po-. We arrive at the following relationships:

půjdu, etc. = budu jít, etc.
pojedu, etc. = budu jet, etc.
ponesu, etc. = budu nést, etc.
povezu, etc. = budu vézt, etc.
poběžím, etc. = budu běžet, etc.
poletím, etc. = budu letět, etc.
povedu, etc. = budu vést, etc.

Explanation for this development in the language probably lies in a complex syntactic derivation. It suffices for the student to know that, while the forms půjdu, pojedu, etc. are essentially perfective in nature, their net result in this construction is imperfective. Study the following examples;

Půjdeme tam zase dnes večer.
(We shall go there again this evening.)

Zítra pojedeme někam jinam.
(Tomorrow we'll be going someplace else.)

Jestli chcete, ponesu to, ale ponesu to nerad.
(If you want, I'll carry it; but I'll carry it unwillingly.)

Vím, že se bojíte; povezu vás pomalu.
(I know that you are afraid; I'll drive you slowly.)

Poběžím nahoru, a řeknu mu to.
(I'll run upstairs and tell him that.)

Příští měsíc poletíme na dovolenou do Ameriky.
(Next month we'll fly to America on our vacation.)

Tu cestu znám dobře; povedu vás tam.
(I know this road well; I'll take you there.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. The boys are on their way to school now.
2. Does this bus go to Brno?
3. Brother already knows how to ride a bike (Use na kole).

4. Do you know where this road leads to?
5. Do you see that dog running by?
6. Mr. Holan, one of my acquaintances, leads a peculiar life.
7. Mother told him that he ran too much today.
8. One of my friends has been flying for three years now.
9. I'll give you a ride whenever you want (Use future).
10. Just what are you going to wear in winter in such a region. (Use krajina)?
11. How will we carry that?
12. We'll go to town tomorrow morning.
13. I'm afraid I can't take (Use vzít) you along; I'm going to give a ride to someone else.
14. I hope that your sister will lead a comfortable life there.
15. Do you often go to the theater?
16. In whose car will you drive there?
17. His relatives live in Brno; he flies there every month.
18. Don't you really know where Karel is? He has taken his sister to the dentist.
19. Mary led me along the hall and showed me the rooms.
20. I am not allowed to go there.
21. Where did she go for such a short while?
22. Why are you carrying it down the stairs (Use se schodů dolů)?
23. Where is the Czech newspaper? I saw her take it into the room over there.
24. Can you tell me where that door leads?
25. When did father want to go on a vacation?
26. I feel like flying to California.
27. Holan was waiting for his train; in the meantime his son and daughter were running around and shouting.
28. Mother should be back soon. She ran over to see her sick relative across the street.
29. I wasn't walking but running because I had to be there in a few minutes.
30. I've been going to the doctor for a month now.
31. Jiří has been carrying that book around for a long time.
32. I saw him yesterday when I was taking some things in my car to Karel's.
33. Did you know that I used to fly for TWA?
34. He wants to fly because it is fast and cheap.
35. Do you like to walk your dog?

Class VII Verbs

Verbs belonging to this class constitute an extremely important set of verbs in the language. Not only do they form primary verbs, especially verbs with borrowed, non-Slavic roots, but also they form secondary verbs, imperfective verbs derived from underlying prefixed perfective verbs. All these verbs display a suffix directly after the root. This suffix has one shape -ov- , in the non-present forms of the verb, and has another shape, -uj-, in the present forms of the verb. Both forms of the suffix can be shown to be related historically. In addition, the non-present stem of the verb has a thematic vowel -a; so all non-present forms end in -ov-a-. There is no thematic vowel for the present forms.

The class can be exemplified by the primary verb děkovat (to thank). The non-present forms of the infinitive and the perfect participle display the suffix plus theme vowel complex:

děk-ov-a-t; děk-ov-a-l; děk-ov-a-la; děk-ov-a-li; etc.

The present tense forms utilize the suffix in its -uj- shape. There is no thematic vowel here; the -e- that appears in some of the forms serves, as elsewhere, to separate the -j- of the stem from the consonant of the personal endings. The personal endings of the first person singular and the third person plural, -i and -í, are to be compared with the endings, -u and -ou, of Classes V and VI. Historical changes wrought upon the endings by the preceding soft consonant -j- have effected the differences.

	root	suffix	personal ending		root	suffix	personal ending
1 sg.	děk	- uj -	i	1 pl.	děk	- uj - e -	me
2 sg.	děk	- uj - e -	š	2 pl.	děk	- uj - e -	te
3 sg.	děk	- uj - e -	∅	3 pl.	děk	- uj -	í

As mentioned above, the suffixes of Class VII verbs are an important device for the formation of so-called derived imperfectives, imperfective verbs obviously derived by suffixation from simpler perfective verbs, all of the latter prefixed with one or two exceptions. The suffixes of Class VII verbs are not the only such imperfectivizing device, however. The student should observe that addition of the suffixes -ov-/-uj- occasions loss of any thematic vowel associated with the basic perfective verb. For the convenience of the student all imperfective verbs belonging to Class VII are summarized below along with their corresponding perfectives. Learn those Class VII verbs corresponding to verbs introduced in previous lessons.

kupovat (si)	/	koupit (si)	(to buy)
přesvědčovat	/	přesvědčit	(to convince, persuade)
půjčovat	/	půjčit	(to lend, loan)
uvědomovat si	/	uvědomit si	(to realize)
vysvětlovat	/	vysvětlit	(to explain)
zdržovat se (to stay, linger)	/	zdržet se	(to be detained, be held up)

Exercise

Use the infinitives in the sentences below in all persons and in both tenses.

1. Co (potřebovat)?
2. (Studovat) českou literaturu na universitě.
3. (Opakovat) po něm všechno, co (slyšet).
4. (Ukazovat) návštěvníkům zajímavou část města.
5. (Vypravovat) o všem, co se stalo.

Denominal Possessive Adjectives

Czech uses two sets of possessive adjectives formed from underlying nouns (including proper names) by means of suffixes. These adjectives must be used instead of their corresponding nouns in the genitive case if the following series of conditions all obtain:

1) The noun from which the adjective is formed refers to the singular number in the given sentence.

2) The noun to which the adjective refers is definite.

3) The underlying noun must be animate and personal and must be either masculine or feminine.

4) The underlying noun cannot be modified by an adjective or pronoun.

5) If the underlying noun expresses some relationship, this relationship is always to be understood as connected with the speaker.

The formation of the stems for these possessive adjectives is quite clear. Two suffixes are employed, one for masculine nouns and the other for feminine nouns; in both cases the suffix is added directly to the stem of the noun. The suffix for masculine nouns is -ov- (-ův- before a zero ending).

bratr- > bratr-ov- / bratr-ův
otc- > otc-ov- / otc-ův
zubař- > zubař-ov- / zubař-ův
Karl- > Karl-ov- / Karl-ův
Holan- > Holan-ov- / Holan-ův

The suffix for feminine nouns is uniformly -in-. Note that this suffix with its front vowel -i- will automatically produce palatal stops from preceding n/t/d, ř from r, and č/ž/š from k/h/ch, respectively.

sestr- > sestř-in-
matk- > matč-in-
žen- > žen-in-
Milen- > Milen-in-
Mari- > Mari-in-

In their declensional patterns denominal possessive adjectives present a curious mixture of nominal and adjectival endings. All endings are nominal except those of the genitive, dative, and locative plural forms which are adjectival. Learn the following tables of endings.

Singular

	brother's				sister's			
	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
	Inan.	Anim.			Inan.	Anim.		
N	bratrův		bratrovo	bratrova	sestřin		sestřino	sestřina
G	bratrova			bratrovy	sestřina			sestřiny
D	bratrovu			bratrově	sestřinu			sestřině
A	bratrův	bratrova	bratrovo	bratrovu	sestřin	sestřina	sestřino	sestřinu
L	bratrově			bratrově	sestřině			sestřině

Plural

N	bratrovy	bratrovi	bratrova	bratrovy	sestřiny	sestřini	sestřina	sestřiny
G	bratrových				sestřiných			
D	bratrovým				sestřiným			
A	bratrovy		bratrova	bratrovy	sestřiny		sestřina	sestřiny
L	bratrových				sestřiných			

Like any adjectives, these possessive adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. They must also be used in strict accord with the five conditions outlined above. Study the following examples carefully.

Přijelo už doktorovo auto?
(Has the doctor's car arrived already?)

Kouřím nyní tatínkovy cigarety.
(I'm smoking Dad's cigarettes now.)

Bydlíme naproti Mariinu domu.
(We live opposite Mary's house.)

Víte, kde je Jarmilino kolo?
(Do you know where Jarmila's bike is?)

Milan říkal, že ženina poznámka je rozumná.
(Milan was saying that my wife's remark was sensible.)

Celý večer vypravoval jen o Klářiných šatech.
(He spent the whole evening talking about Klára's clothes.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. My wife's relatives come to see us (Use na návštěvu) every Sunday.
2. The car that is tanding across the way is Holan's.
3. I have been looking everywhere for my daughter's things.
4. Who took Milan's coat out of the closet?
5. We'll see our friend's house from there.
6. Mother's heart is not strong.
7. I went and sat down on my son's bench.
8. Jiří was also lecturing to Mary's students.
9. The girl's flowers were lying in the street.
10. I just can't cook for every one of my husband's acquaintances.
11. Do you know where we left father's suits?
12. Some students simply didn't understand the professor's questions.
13. No one believed the blonde's answer.
14. He showed the student's (fem.) examination to his friend.
15. We need Milena's excellent voice.

The Determiner "všechen"

There is another very useful and statistically frequent determiner in Czech that demands some special attention because of certain formal and semantic problems. This is the pronominal adjective that translates into English as "all" or "all of." The neuter singular form is especially frequent because it means "everything," and the nominative plural masculine form may be translated as "everyone." The student should make a distinction between "whole" and "all" in both English and Czech in the singular. "Whole" is usually translated by celý and "all" by všechen, but the student should be alert to analyze deviations. In general, it can be stated that "all" in English and všechen in Czech modify nouns used in the abstract sense and in the collective sense. Study these examples, learn all the forms in the table following them, and note that all the nominative and almost all the accusative forms are distinguished by a -chn- complex between the root and the case ending.

Kde je všechno to pivo?
(Where is all that beer?)

Vypil celé pivo najednou.
(He drank the whole beer at once.)

V té těžké chvíli jsem si vzpomněl na všechnu její upřímnost.
(At that difficult moment, I recalled all her sincerity.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. All his sentences are complex.
2. He always wants everything that he sees. (The relative pronoun following "everything" must be translated by co.)
3. That's all he wants.
4. I hope that all who (Use kdo, but plural verb) leave there are satisfied.
5. When I visited Prague, I marveled at everything.
6. Did the students understand everything when the professor explained the exercise?
7. All roads are different.
8. Everybody is here already.
9. Sister thinks that all cats are detestable.
10. The sun was shining, and the sky was all blue.
11. The flowers from our yard were all fresh.
12. I read the whole newpaper in a few minutes.
13. I can't stand all this joy.
14. How can you listen to all that modern music all the time?
15. The whole address-book was full of notes.
16. I had the impression that everyone had forgotten me (Use na mne).
17. Do I have to repeat all the questions for you?
18. Jiří completed the whole picture last Sunday.
19. We must respect all our students.
20. When he saw it, all his fear returned.
21. What do you have in all these drawers?
22. I am surprised that you can stand all that pain.
23. Mother said that all the food was on the table.
24. What does all that laughter in the hall mean?
25. We haven't studied all of Czech literature.

	Singular				Plural			
	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
	Inan.	Anim.			Inan.	Anim.		
N	všechen		všechno	všechna	všechny	všichni	všechna	všechny
G	všeho			vší	všech			
D	všemu			vší	všem			
A	všechen	všeho	všechno	všechnu	všechny		všechna	všechny
L	všem			vší	všech			

DIALOGUE

Když jsem šel včera z práce, potkal jsem na Karlově mostě Marii, sestřinu známou. Měla s sebou svou malou dceru, která se také jmenuje Marie. Ta malá Marie není tak úplně malá. Začala právě chodit do školy, je blondýnka a vypadá přesně jako její otec. Je také tak živá jako on. Marie, totiž její matka, a já jsme chvíli o něčem mluvili a celou tu dobu ta malá blondýnka něco dělala. Nezůstala ani vteřinu stát. Pořád běhala: buď' kolem[1] nás nebo kolem jiných lidí na mostě. Velmi ji také zajímali ptáci, kteří létali přes most. Nepřeháním, když říkám, že byla trochu příliš živá. Bál jsem se o ni, protože kolem jezdila auta, ale její matce to nedělalo starosti. Vodí prý často malou Marii po ulicích nebo ji vozí s sebou, když má auto, a malá Marie prý je tedy zvyklá na provoz i na lidi. Ještě prý nikdy neměla důvod k starostem. Naopak, pohyb prý malé Marii dělá dobře a možná, že jí proto brzo koupí kolo. Doufám, že má pravdu.

When I was on my way home from work yesterday, I met Mary, my sister's acquaintance, on Charles Bridge. She had her small daughter along, who is also named Mary. This little Mary isn't all that small. She has just started to go to school; she's a blonde and looks exactly like her father. She's also as lively as he is. Mary, that is, her mother, and I were talking about something for a while, and the whole time that little blonde was busy doing something. She wasn't still one second. She was constantly running around, either around us or around other people on the bridge. The birds that were flying about over the bridge also interested her very much. I am not exaggerating when I say that she was a little too lively. I was afraid for her because cars were passing by, but that didn't bother her mother. She says that she frequently walks little Mary along the streets, or takes her along when she has the car, and she says that little Mary is therefore used to traffic as well as to people. She says that she has never had reason for concern. On the contrary, she says that exercise is good for little Mary, that she'll soon buy her a bike for that reason. I hope that she is right.

* * *

Nejdou vám[2] hodinky? To je smůla. Ale nemusíte si hned kupovat nové. Jestli chcete, půjčím vám své staré. Jdou pořád ještě dobře a nevypadají špatně. Koupil jsem si sice nedávno nové hodinky, ale ne proto, že jsem je nutně potřeboval. Koupil jsem si je spíš proto, že nerad nosím věci příliš dlouho. Potřebuji změnu. Jak říkám, jestli chcete, přinesu vám své staré hodinky. Můžete je nosit tak dlouho, jak dlouho budete chtít.

Isn't your watch running? That's too bad. But you don't have to get a new one right away. If you want, I'll lend you my old one. It still runs well all the time, and doesn't look bad. It's true I bought a new watch, but not because I needed it badly. I bought it rather for the reason that I don't like to carry things around too long. I need a change. As I say, if you want, I'll bring you my old watch. You can wear

Můžete je mít i měsíc. To nevadí. A nemusíte mi děkovat. Můj syn mi o vás často vypravuje, a tak vím, že jste dobří známí. Jsem proto rád, že vám mohu pomoci.	it as long as you wish. You can keep it for a month even. It doesn't matter. And you needn't thank me. My son often tells me about you, and so I know that you are close acquaintances. I am glad, therefore, that I can help you.

* * *

Jaké je dnes počasí? Ještě jsem nebyl venku. Včera bylo tak pěkné počasí, že ani nebudu nešťastný, jestli dnes bude počasí ošklivé.	What's the weather like today? I haven't been out yet. The weather was so beautiful yesterday that I won't even be unhappy if the weather is bad today.
Myslím, že dnes ještě bude teplo a sucho.	I think that it'll still be warm and dry today.
Ani nevíte, jak jsem rád. Jsem vždycky nespokojený, když prší nebo sněží.	You don't even know how glad I am. I'm always unhappy when it rains or snows.
Opravdu? To mi vůbec nevadí. Mně vadí, když je horko nebo zima, nebo když dokonce mrzne.	Really? That doesn't bother me at all. I do mind when it's hot or cold or, what's more, when it freezes.
A co když je jen chladno?	And what about when it's just cool?
Chladno může být. Ale musí přitom svítit slunce.	That doesn't bother me. But the sun must be shining.
Ovšem. Škoda, že jsme v poslední době slunce tak málo viděli. Ale jestli se nemýlím, vidím v okně modré nebe.	I see. It's a shame that we've had so little sun lately. But if I'm not mistaken, I see blue sky through the window.
Ano, co vidíte, to je modré letní nebe. Dnes zřejmě bude počasí jaké chcete. Ani vlhko ani horko. Můžete být spokojený a šťastný.	Yes, what you see is a blue summer sky. Obviously, the weather will be the way you want it today. Neither humid nor hot. You can be relaxed and happy.

* * *

Proč dnes všichni zase studujete? Máte snad zítra zkoušku?	Why are you all studying again today? Maybe you have an exam tomorrow?
Ne jednu, ale tři.	Not one, but three.
Jak je to možné? Myslel jsem, že jste měli včera poslední. Já už jsem všechny své zkoušky udělal.	How is that possible? I thought you had your last one yesterday. I've already taken all my examinations.

V tom případě asi znáš to, co my ještě neznáme.	In that case you probably know what we don't know yet.
Neříkám, že všechno znám od začátku do konce, ale myslím, že znám aspoň ty hlavní věci. Přečetl jsem všechny své i Milanovy poznámky a také několik knih. Nemohu ovšem říci, že jsem všemu rozuměl. Některé ty věci byly složité a těžké a kromě toho jsem neměl dost času to všechno ještě jednou zopakovat.	I'm not saying that I know everything from beginning to end, but I think I know at least the main things. I have read all of my and Milan's notes and also several books. I can't say, of course, that I understood everything. Some of these things were complex and difficult; and, besides, I didn't have enough time to review everything again.
My sice nějaký čas máme, ale nevíme také jestli všechno prostudujeme. Jak vidíš, musíme ještě hodně číst a čas letí. Nebo jde? Nebo běží? Jak se to vlastně říká? V každém případě čas bohužel nestojí. A zkoušky čekají.	It's true we have some time left, but we don't know either whether we'll cover everything. As you see, we have to read a lot yet, and time is flying. Or is going? Or is passing quickly? How does one really say that? In any case, I'm afraid that time doesn't stand still. And the exams are waiting.

* * *

Viděl jste dnes odpoledne Jarmilu?	Have you seen Jarmila this afternoon?
Viděl, ale jen krátkou chvíli. Běžela se schodů dolů, nesla v ruce noviny - něco mi v nich ukazovala. Bohužel s sebou také vedla psa a ten chtěl ven, tak se nemohla zdržet. Říkala, že mi všechno řekne, až se vrátí.	I have, but only for a short while. She was running down the stairs, she was carrying a newspaper in her hand and she was showing me something in it. The trouble was that she was taking the dog along, and it wanted to go outside; so she couldn't stop long. She said she would tell me everything when she returned.
Víte kam šla?	Do you know where she went?
To nevím, ale myslím, že je v parku, protože když bere psa ven, obyčejně ho vozí do parku. Určitě ho tam také vezla dnes. Kromě toho měla na sobě plášť a to znamená, že se chystala na nějakou dlouhou procházku.	I don't know that, but I think she's in the park because when she takes the dog out, she usually drives him to the park. She must have taken him there today. Besides, she had her coat on, and that means that she was ready for a long walk.

* * *

Všichni mí známí chodí do jedné malé restaurace blízko Karlova mostu. Každý z nich ji velmi chválí. Je prý to tiché místo a mají prý tam výborné večeře. Kromě toho je to u řeky a když	All of my acquaintances go to a small restaurant near Charles Bridge. Each of them praises it highly. They say it's a quiet place and that they serve excellent suppers there. Besides, it's

jdete nahoru,můžete vidět z oken starou část města. Někteří ze známých dokonce říkají, že žádná jiná restaurace tady ve městě není tak laciná. Musím se tam tady jednou podívat. Takových restaurací asi není mnoho.	near the river; and, when you go upstairs, you can see from its windows the old part of the city. Some of my acquaintances even say that no other restaurant here in the city is so inexpensive. I just must go there and take a look some day. There can't be many restaurants like that.

1 The student already knows that kolem is an adverb. This sentence illustrates that kolem can also function as a preposition followed by the genitive case.

2 In this particular expression Czech speakers always use the dative case to indicate possession.

READING SELECTION

Chodím občas přes Karlův most do jedné restaurace na druhé straně řeky. Někdy s sebou také beru některé své známé. Ta restaurace je totiž laciná a je přitom ve velmi pěkné poloze. Je na kopci blízko parku. Když není ošklivě počasí, můžete odtud vidět nejen velkou část města, ale také krajinu v dálce. A v noci se můžete dívat na moře světel, které vidíte všude kolem. Slyším o té restauraci jen chválu. Všichni z mých známých, kteří tam jednou byli, říkají, že se tam určitě vrátí. Tak dobrý dojem prý na ně udělala.

Milan koupil Marii nové šaty. Chtěl jí udělat radost, ale měl přitom smulu. Marie nebyla příliš spokojená. Šaty byly velké a přitom byly podobné jedněm šatům, které jí Milan koupil minulý rok. Byl jsem právě u nich v bytě, když Milan ty šaty přinesl domů. Marie se na ně podívala, rozpačitě poděkovala a já jsem hned věděl, že není šťastná. Druhá věta, kterou řekla, byla, že žádné šaty už letos nepotřebuje. Milan ovšem také pochopil, co to znamenalo. Proto řekl, že Marii kupuje jen takové šaty, které Marie ráda vrací. Za čtvrt hodiny jsme přirozeně všichni šli ty šaty vrátit.

Vypravoval jsem ti o tom, jak jsem tuhle vezl Jarmilu do parku a jak to skončilo? Bude tě to zajímat. Jarmila, jak víš, je sestřina malá dcera. Sestra neměla minulou neděli odpoledne čas,a tak mě zavolala a ptala se, jestli nechci jít na procházku. A jestli prý nechci vzít Jarmilu s sebou. Měl jsem chuť' na trochu pohybu a řekl jsem tedy, že ano. Přijel jsem k nim, vzal malou Jarmilu a ješi jsme. Jarmila ovšem chtěla jet do toho velkého parku ve staré části města, kam také někdy chodíš. Nejdřív jsem se rozmýšlel, jestli tam opravdu máme jet, ale Jarmila mě nakonec přesvědčila. Auto jsme nechali v jedné ulici blízko parku, protože v parku auta jezdit nesmí. Potom jsme asi hodinu chodili od jednoho konce parku k druhému. Já jsem ale mezitím zapomněl, kde jsme přesně auto nechali, a tak když jsme se chtěli vrátit domů, nemohli jsme je najít. Hledali jsme je snad další hodinu, ale nenašli jsme je. Protože Jarmila byla už unavená, musel jsem nakonec zavolat sestru. Ta přijela ve svém autě, vzala nás a vozila nás po ulicích kolem parku. Brzo jsme ovšem mé auto zase našli. Když jsem se večer vrátil domů, uvědomil jsem si, jak lehké je zapomenout, že člověk rychle zapomíná.

Karel a Jiří seděli u svých knih a poznámek a snažili se studovat. Čekala totiž na ně těžká zkouška. Bylo dost pozdě večer, hodiny letěly a oni už byli unavení. Přitom měli ještě hodně práce. Venku mrzlo a trochu sněžilo. Jiří najednou vstal, šel k oknu a díval se ven. Za chvíli stál u něho i Karel a také se díval do tiché prázdné ulice, v které sněžilo. Brzo začal Karel i Jiří o něčem mluvit. Zapomněli na všechnu práci, na starosti i na čas, který míjel, a hovořili. A o čem hovořili? Hovořili o počasí. Proč právě o počasí a ne o něčem jiném? Asi proto, že počasí má zvláštní místo v našich rozhovorech. Počasí tady prostě vždycky je a každý o něm vždycky aspoň něco ví. Proto se k němu vracíme, když nechceme nebo když nemůžeme mluvit o něčem jiném. A někdy o něm mluvíme prostě proto, že nás přestaly všechny jiné věci zajímat.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Various interesting birds were flying around the park (Use *po*). 2. It's been snowing out since morning. 3. What did he want again? 4. I'm used to all that. 5. Do you mind my smoking (Translate: that I smoke)? 6. This time he had on a coat and a hat. 7. She's been tired all the time lately (Use present tense); I think she needs a little exercise. 8. He always likes to tell everybody about his impressions. 9. Her daughter is Milena's student. 10. Why is that dog running around here in the apartment; can't you leave him outside? 11. Just (Use *vlastně*) what bridge do you walk over? 12. What was Jiří showing you? 13. It doesn't matter that it's raining; we'll stay home and tidy up. 14. Why don't you buy some other clothes? These are no longer fashionable (Use moderní). 15. Except for her I don't know anyone here. 16. It's possible that it will freeze at night. 17. What was the name of the boy who used to deliver (Use "to carry") newspapers to our house every Sunday? 18. A part of sister's notes didn't interest them at all. 19. The weather wasn't bad, but it was still (Use *přitom*) rather cool. 20. I don't believe that that doesn't matter to you. 21. Are you taking all those rugs to him or to someone else? 22. They will stay with them at least until the beginning of next month. 23. There's a light in Mother's room. 24. I don't lend my books to anyone. 25. Are you going out? 26. I thank you for your frankness. 27. They were running down the street and were shouting something. 28. He was an excellent father but a bad son. 29. All that time she was taking (on foot) us around the city. 30. Why didn't you bring a little water too? 31. He let me have all

the books I needed.32. First we'll go downstairs; I want to thank Milena for the supper. 33. Do you drive here frequently? 34. On the contrary, the end of the examination was particularly difficult. 35. Can you repeat that once more? 36. I've studied everything from beginning to end, but I still don't completely understand that. 37. Do you still have room in the car for me? 38. No change is easy. 39. It's damp, but warm. 40. I couldn't buy it; it was too expensive. 41. I forgot what his main reason was. 42. She was walking down the stairs and was looking at her watch. 43. He is happy only when he can study. 44. Do you ever go to a restaurant? 45. I saw her the other day when she was taking (on foot) her son to school. 46. In the end we didn't have the time, and so we flew there. 47. No, it didn't take the whole year, rather only several months. 48. When she had money, she often bought even what she didn't need. 49. Last year there was a terrible drought. 50. On the other side of the river we saw meadows and forests.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Jaké máte hodinky?
2. Mosty v našem městě.
3. Počasí v poslední době.
4. Chodíte někdy do restaurace?
5. Zajímají vás ptáci?
6. Vadí vám, když je zima?
7. Čas, který vždycky letí.
8. Půjčujete své knihy?
9. Těžká zkouška.
10. Čtete noviny každý večer?
11. Vozíte známé v autě?
12. Kam obyčejně vodíte svého psa?
13. Co vidíte z okna?
14. Co jste si nedávno koupil?
15. Je vaše ulice tichá?
16. Jezdíte na kole?
17. Kdy nosíte plášt'?
18. Poděkovat někomu za něco.
19. Kam chodíte večer?
20. Proč lidé běhají?
21. Jste šťastný?
22. Přinést něco domů.
23. Co rád studujete, když máte volno?
24. Do jakých škol jste chodil?
25. Co myslíte, co vám dělá dobře?

LESSON X

VOCABULARY

adresa(f)	address
během + Gen.	during, in the course of
bít (VIII,i)(+ Acc. of animate nouns) (+ do + Gen. of inanimate nouns)	to beat to beat on
Čech(m)	Czech
Češka(f)(Gen.pl. Češek)	Czech (feminine)
čím je to, že...?	what is the reason for...?
čistý	clean, pure
den(m)(irreg.)(See Grammar Analysis)	day
děti[1](f.pl.)	children
dít se (VIII,i)(See stát se)(See Grammar Analysis)	to happen, be going
dopoledne(n)(Like poledne and odpoledne)	forenoon, morning
hluk(m)	noise
hnout (VI,p)(See hýbat)	to move, stir
hrozně (adv.)	awfully, terribly
hýbat (I,i)(See hnout)	to move, stir
Jan	John
koupelna(f)(Gen.pl. koupelen)	bathroom
krýt (VIII,i)	to cover, shelter
lékař(m)	physician, doctor
loučit se (II,i)(+ s + Instr.)(See rozloučit se)	to part with, say good-bye to
malovat (VII,i)(See namalovat)	to paint
marný	futile, vain
mezi + Instr. or Acc. (See Grammar Analysis)	between, among
milovat (VII,i)	to love, be fond of
milý	dear, affable, nice
mimochodem (adv.)	incidentally, by the way
mý[illegible]en.pl. mýdel)	soap
mýt (se)(VIII,i)(See umýt)	to wash (oneself)
nad + Instr. or Acc. (See Grammar Analysis)	above, over

namalovat(VII,p)(See malovat)	to paint
narodit se(II,p)(See rodit se)	to be born
naučit(II,p)(+ Acc. of persons and Dat. of things)(See učit)	to teach (something to someone)
naučit se(II,p)(+ Dat.)(See učit se)	to learn
Němec/Němc(m)	German, (also a family name)
Němka(f)(Gen.pl. Němek)	German (feminine)
nemoc(f)	illness, sickness
noha(f)(Gen.pl. nohou, Instr.pl. nohama, Loc.pl. nohou/nohách)	leg, foot
normální	normal
opravdový	true, real, genuine
pamatovat si(VII,i)(See zapamatovat si)	to remember, retain in memory
pamět'(f)	memory, (plural = memoirs)
pít(VIII,i)(See vypít)	to drink
pod + Instr. or Acc. (See Grammar Analysis)	below, beneath, under
postarat se(I,p)(+ o + Acc.)(See starat se)	to take care of, look after
považovat(VII,i)(+ Acc. + za + Acc.)	to regard, consider someone/something as someone/something
pracovat(VII,i)	to work
problém(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	problem
před + Instr. or Acc. (See Grammar Analysis)	before, ahead of, in front of
předmět(m)	object, subject (in school)
překvapit(II,p)(See překvapovat)	to surprise, astonish
překvapovat(VII,i)(See překvapit)	to surprise, astonish
přibíjet(III,i)(See přibít)	to fasten, nail
přibít(VIII,p)(See přibíjet)	to fasten, nail
přikrýt(VIII,p)(See přikrývat)	to cover (up)
přikrývat(I,i)(See přikrýt)	to cover (up)
rodič^{2}(m)(Nom.pl.rodiče or rodiči/rodičové)	parent
rodina(f)	family
rodit se(II,i)(See narodit se)	to be born
rozloučit se(II,p)(+ s + Instr.)(See loučit se)	to part with, say good-bye to

rozpaky(m.pl)	puzzlement, bewilderment
být na rozpacích	to be perplexed, be uneasy, be hesitant
s (se) + Instr. (See Grammar Analysis)	with, along with, together with
síla(f)(Instr.sg. silou, Gen.pl. sil, Dat.pl. silám, Instr.pl. silami, Loc.pl. silách)	power, force, strength
sotva(adv.)	hardly, scarcely, barely
spolu(adv.)	together
starat se(I,i)(+ o + Acc.)(See postarat se)	to take care of, look after
stát se^3(Va,p)(See dít se)	to happen, become
stávat se^4(I,i)(See stát se and dít se)	to happen, become
stejný	like, identical, same
strpět(IV,p)(See trpět)	to suffer, bear
svět(m)(Gen.sg. -a)	world
špinavý	dirty, filthy
telefon(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	telephone
trpět(IV,i)(See strpět)	to suffer, bear
týden(m)(irreg., See Grammar Analysis)	week
učit(II,i)(+ Acc. of persons and Dat. of things)(See naučit)	to teach (something to someone)
učit se(II,i)(+ Dat.)(See naučit se)	to learn
učitel(m)(Gen.sg. -e, Nom.pl. učitelé)	teacher
učitelka(f)(Gen.pl učitelek)	teacher (feminine)
umýt (se)(VIII,p)(See mýt)	to wash (one's self)
úspěšný	successful
válka(f)(Gen.pl. válek)	war
Valouch	family name
vážný	serious, important
vhodný	suitable, fitting
vypít(VIII,p)(See pít)	to drink
za + Instr. or Acc. (See Grammar Analysis)	behind, beyond, over
zabývat se(I,i)(+ Instr.)	to occupy oneself (with), be busy (with)
zájem/zájm(m)(Loc.sg.-u)	interest
mít zájem (+ o + Acc.)	to have an interest (in)

záliba(f)	liking, preference, hobby
zapamatovat si (VII,p)(See pamatovat si)	to remember, retain in memory
zdraví(n)	health
žák(m)	pupil, disciple
žít (VIII,i)	to live, be alive
živě (adv.)	in a lively manner, animatedly, spiritedly

1 The singular form of this noun (which is neuter in gender) belongs to a declensional subclass that will be introduced later. The plural follows the pattern of kost: Gen. dětí, Dat. dětem, Acc. děti, Instr. dětmi, Loc. dětech.

2 The plural form rodiče refers to a person's mother and father. The forms rodiči/rodičové refer to parents in general, whether mothers or fathers.

3 This verb is another instance where the present and non-present forms do not agree. Note how the vowel quantity of other forms differs from that of the infinitive.

Pres. Tense: stanu se, staneš se, stane se, etc.
Perf. Part: stal se, stala se, stalo se, etc.

4 Note that dít se and stát se are aspectually related as imperfective to perfective in the meaning of "to happen, occur," while stávat se and stát se are aspectually related as imperfective to perfective in the meaning of "to become." In addition, stávat se is related aspectually to both dít se and stát se in that it functions as an iterative in the meaning "to happen, occur." Iteratives will be discussed in a future lesson.

PRONUNCIATION

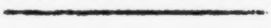
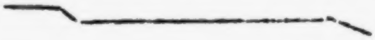
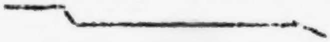
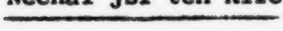
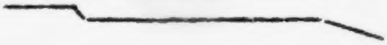
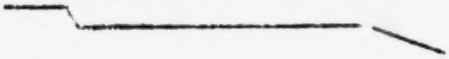
Two additional types of Czech questions remain to be discussed. Both of them can be termed verification questions. They are usually used in situations where a participant in the discourse either did not understand the reply to his original question or was puzzled by it. He attempts, therefore, to verify whether his understanding of the reply is correct and adequate.

Two kinds of verification are involved here. The first represents an attempted confirmation of whether something is or is not the case, whether a given fact is true or false. The word order in this type of verification question does not differ from that of assertions. Its intonation pattern, however, is that of a question, i.e.,the last stressed syllable in the sentence has the lowest tone and in all the following syllables, if any, a distinct rise in tone is heard. If the last stressed syllable is also the absolutely final syllable, the rise in tone from low to high takes place within this single syllable.

Karel je na̍hoře? 	(The simple yes-or-no question would take the form: Je Karel nahoře? See Lesson I,p.4)
Tuhle knihu jste če̍tl? 	(Yes-or-no question: Četl jste tuhle knihu?)

The second type of verification question is designed to verify some specific item that needs to be confirmed to make the meaning of the information complete and sound. The word order in this type of question is again the same as in assertions, except for one deviation. The word or the sentence member which needs to be verified is replaced by a corresponding interrogative and the interrogative is placed at the beginning of the question. This question type has the intonation of an assertion although the tone of its introductory part is usually higher than the tone one normally hears in assertions.

It should be added that often the particle __že__ is inserted in questions of this type to reinforce the verification intent of the construction. Semantically, it adds a touch of explicitness and is always placed right after the initial interrogative. Occasionally, __že__ is substituted by __jen__ or __že jen__. (__Že__ alone may also be found in the first type of verification question mentioned above.)

Assertion	Verification question	Simple question
Karel nosí klo̍bouky. 	Co že Karel no̍sí? 	Co nosí Karel?
	Co Karel no̍sí? 	
Její dcera už chodí 	Kam že už její dcera cho̍dí? 	Kam chodí její dcera?
do̍ školy. 	Kam už její dcera cho̍dí? 	
Nechal jsi ten klíč 	Kde jen jsi ten klíč ne̍chal? 	Kde jsi nechal ten klíč?
v ka̍nceláři. 	Kde že jen jsi ten klíč ne̍chal? 	

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Instrumental Case (Nouns)

Instrumental Singular

The formation of the instrumental singular is relatively simple. Masculine and neuter nouns, both hard and soft, add the ending __-em__ with the single exception of neuter nouns in __-í__, which take the ending __-ím__. Among feminine nouns hard stems utilize __-ou__; and soft stems, including nouns with a zero ending in the nominative singular, use the ending __-í__.

Masculine

dopis > dopisem
kapitán > kapitánem
hoch > hochem
dům > domem

muž > mužem
učitel > učitelem
zubař > zubařem
pokoj > pokojem

Neuter

léto > létem
kolo > kolem
okno > oknem

moře > mořem
srdce > srdcem
nádraží > nádražím

Feminine

žena > ženou
kniha > knihou
matka > matkou

země > zemí
židle > židlí
růže > růží

věc > věcí
skříň > skříní
radost > radostí

Those feminine nouns whose nominative singular terminates in -a or -e, whose root vowel is long, and whose root vowel shortens in the dative and locative plural forms also display a short root vowel in the instrumental singular. This change is not predictable and like others will have to be indicated in the vocabularies. Only two words from the vocabularies behave in this manner.

práce > prací
síla > silou

See the instrumental plural for a further manifestation of this development.

Instrumental Plural

The instrumental plural in Czech utilizes a number of endings, but their distribution is clear and there are very few exceptions. With the exception of neuter nouns ending in -í there is a fairly clear-cut dichotomy between feminine nouns, on one hand, and masculine and neuter nouns, on the other hand. Neuter nouns ending in -í have the ending -ími, but all other masculine and neuter nouns use the ending -y/-i, -y after hard stems and -i after soft, as expected. Feminine nouns with their nominative singulars ending in -a/-e use -ami and -emi, respectively. Feminine nouns with a zero ending in the nominative singular add the termination -mi with certain important exceptions to be noted below.

Masculine

dopis > dopisy
dům > domy
doktor > doktory

muž > muži
pokoj > pokoji
lékař > lékaři

Neuter

léto > léty
slovo > slovy
auto > auty

moře > moři
srdce > srdci
pole > poli

nádraží > nádražími
jednání > jednáními

The three related nouns *poledne*, *dopoledne*, and *odpoledne* all have an irregular instrumental plural in -*ny*.

Feminine

žena > ženami
kniha > knihami
pravda > pravdami

země > zeměmi
židle > židlemi
Marie > Mariemi

věc > věcmi
radost > radostmi
lidé > lidmi

Some feminine nouns with a zero ending in the nominative singular take the ending -*emi* in the instrumental plural. Most nouns of this type have -*e*/-*ě* in the genitive singular and nominative plural; but like this latter ending, -*emi* will be listed as an exception in the vocabularies. Nouns like this encountered so far are the following:

báseň > básněmi
chuť > chutěmi

kancelář > kancelářemi
skříň > skříněmi

noc > nocemi

The pluralia tantum noun *dveře* has the instrumental form *dveřmi*.

Feminine nouns in -*a*/-*e* whose long root vowel shortens irregularly in the dative and locative plural and instrumental singular also undergo this shortening in the instrumental plural. Only two such nouns have been encountered thus far:

práce > pracemi

síla > silami

Two feminine nouns encountered so far have irregular instrumental plural forms that represent former dual endings:

noha > nohama

ruka > rukama

The student must learn that special endings -*ýma*, -*ema* are to be used with all adjectives and pronominal adjectives associated with such old dual forms in the instrumental plural.

těma dlouhýma rukama

všema prázdnýma rukama

Instrumental Case (Pronouns)

Learn all the instrumental case forms from the tables displaying the various types of pronouns.

Personal Pronouns

1 sg.	2 sg.	1 pl.	2 pl.	3sg. masc. neut.	3sg. fem.	3 pl.
mnou	tebou	námi	vámi	jím (ním)	jí ní)	jimi (nimi)

Interrogative Pronouns

who	what
kým	čím

Determiners

	Masc./Neut.	Feminine	Plural
That	tím	tou	těmi
This	tímhle	touhle	těmihle
Yonder	tamtím	tamtou	tamtěmi
One/A	jedním	jednou	jedněmi
All	vším	vší	všemi

Possessive Pronouns

	Masc./Neut.	Feminine	Plural
my	mým	mou	mými
your(sg)	tvým	tvou	tvými
one's own	svým	svou	svými
our	naším	naší	našimi
your(pl)	vaším	vaší	vašimi
whose	čím	čí	čími
her	jejím	její	jejími

Instrumental Case (Adjectives)

Learn the instrumental case forms for the adjectives from the following table.

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine Neuter	Feminine	All Genders
Hard	dobr-ým	dobr-ou	dobr-ými
Soft	ciz-ím	ciz-í	ciz-ími
Possessive	bratrov-ým sestřin-ým	bratrov-ou sestřin-ou	bratrov-ými sestřin-ými

Exercise

Decline the following noun phrases in all cases and both numbers.

naše tichá zahrádka
její zvláštní jednání (singular only)
ten voňavý keř
jedna trapná situace
žádná jiná skříň
všechno to silné světlo

Instrumental Case (Usage)

The last case to be studied that plays a role in the syntax of Czech sentences is the instrumental case. This case is aptly named, for in all instances of its use it designates the thing, concept, person, place, or time that functions as an instrument or vehicle by means of which the action or state, as expressed in the verb, is realized. The student will readily observe that this generalized feature of instrumentality is characteristic of all the examples of the instrumental case in the sentences below. Even though this general semantic feature can be easily traced through all uses of the instrumental, it is pedagogically convenient to present to the student a subclassification of these uses. The student should heed a few words of caution about these subclasses. While their specific semantic content may seem very clear to the student in the examples and may seem capable of broad generalization throughout the language, the student should use great caution in extemporizing their usage. For the time being, the student is best advised to learn to use the instrumental exactly as it is used in the individual sentences below and expect in the future to add gradually additional specific uses of the instrumental as his linguistic horizons grow.

Manner

This category is somewhat restricted and, in most cases, requires the presence of a qualitative adjective.

Viděl jsem, jak šel po ulici rychlým krokem.
(I saw him walking down the street at a fast pace.)

Poděkovala mi tichým hlasem.
(She thanked me in a quiet voice.)

Křičel na nás svým protivným hlasem.
(He shouted at us in his disagreeable voice.)

Valouch žije jednoduchým, ale šťastným životem.
(Valouch lives simple, but happy life.)

Means

As the student might expect, this is the most typical subcategory for the instrumental. Note particularly how a verb like hýbat is used with parts of the body in the instrumental.

Zavolal mě telefonem včera večer.
(He called me by telephone last night.)

Udělal jsem to svýma rukama.
(I did that with my own hands.)

Poslali jsme všechny své knihy domů poštou.
(We sent all our books home by mail.)

Bratr odjel odtud vlakem.
(Brother left there by train.)

Odpověděl jsem jí pohybem hlavy.
(I answered her by moving my head.)

Můžete jim pomoci penězi?
(Can you help them with money?)

Učitel skončil přednášku slovy chvály.
(The teacher ended the lecture with words of praise.)

Maminka mu naplnila sklenici mlékem.
(Mother filled his glass with milk.)

Jeho otec ho tím přesvědčil.
(His father convinced him with that.)

Nemohl hýbat ani rukama ani nohama.
(He couldn't move either his arms or legs.)

Cause

This category, in particular, is severely restricted to certain verbs and certain nouns.

Všichni ti lidé trpěli hladem.
(All these people were suffering from hunger.)

Nemohl spát starostmi.
(He wasn't able to sleep because of his worries.)

Nemocná dívka křičela bolestí.
(The sick girl cried out in pain.)

Všechno jsem strachem zapomněl.
(I forgot everything in my fear.)

Čím je to, že je pořád tak slabá?
(What is the reason that she is always so weak?)

Place

The concept of place here denotes an area through which the action of the verb occurs.

Proč jste přišel těmi dveřmi?
(Why did you come through that door?)

Ten starý pán sedí a dívá se oknem.
(That old gentleman sits and looks out the window.)

Chcete se projít městem?
(Do you want to go for a walk through town?)

Nechci jít ulicemi toho města.
(I don't want to walk through the streets of this city.)

Šli jsme ke kopci parkem.
(We were walking toward the hill through the park.)

Kterou cestou jel?
(By what road did he go?)

Místy pršelo.
(It was raining here and there.)

Time

This category is extremely restricted. The student should expect to learn these time expressions as if they were idioms. There are accusative and locative expressions (ve dne v noci, v tu dobu, v té době, na začátku roku) which seem to correspond exactly to the instrumental expressions; but, in keeping with the notion of the instrumental referring to a period of time through which the action occurs, Czech speakers tend to favor the use of the instrumental whenever duration of the action is emphasized.

Jejich dcera četla dnem i nocí.
(Their daughter read day and night.)

Tou dobou je obyčejně doma.
(He is usually home at that time.)

Chvílemi prší.
(It rains every once in a while.)

Přijedeme tam začátkem roku.
(We'll arrive there at the beginning of the year.)

State

This category describes a state or condition that the subject is in or reaches as a result of the action of the verb.

Zůstal studentem celý život.
(He remained a student all his life.)

Čím je váš otec?
(What is your father?)

Stal se doktorem minulý rok.
(He became a doctor last year.)

Je mým přítelem už dlouho.
(He has been my friend for a long time.)

Jmenovali ho profesorem.
(They appointed him a professor.)

When the state or condition is represented by a predicate adjective, the latter is usually used in the nominative case. In literary texts, however, the student may encounter the instrumental case.

Cítil se tam nešťastný.
(He felt unhappy there.)

Ačkoli jsme jí pomáhali, zůstala nespokojená.
(Although we helped her, she remained dissatisfied.)

Proč se stal tak protivný?
(Why did he become so disagreeable?)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the various semantic nuances of the instrumental.

1. I don't know what happened; I can't move my right hand.
2. The children go to school by way of the park.
3. Milan never answers the teacher in a complete sentence.
4. Jiří drove here in Holan's car.
5. My old friend was a musician before the war.
6. At times he would busy himself with his books on linguistics.
7. He greeted him with a slight (Use lehký) movement of his hand.
8. Do you feel satisfied now?
9. Our children listen to this kind of (Use tuhle) music day and night.
10. When I called, he responded in his disagreeable voice.
11. Do you feel like a walk through the woods?
12. He came walking toward me at his own peculiar fast pace.

13. Their son never sends letters; he always calls his family by telephone.
14. We were amusing ourselves with various answers to that question.
15. I received the picture by mail just recently.
16. Usually at that time she was preparing exercises for her students.
17. I'm afraid that some people in the world are suffering from hunger.
18. He covered the object with a handkerchief.
19. Our whole family likes to travel by train.
20. He looks terribly tired.

The Instrumental with Adjectives

A few adjectives are said to govern the instrumental case. Here too the basic concept of this case is readily perceptible. The student has encountered one such adjective.

Mohu říci, že váš přítel není známý silnou vůlí.
(I can say that your friend is not known for his strong will.)

Naše město je známé svým divadlem.
(Our town is known for its theater.)

The Instrumental with Prepositions

In Czech there is a total of six prepositions that may be used with the instrumental case. All of these will be introduced in this lesson. These prepositions fall nicely into two groups. In the first group there is only the preposition s/se, which translates into English in the vast majority of cases as "with." This is a non-syllabic preposition; therefore its alternative forms are distributed according to the rules set down in the Pronunciation section of Lesson VII. Do not confuse this preposition with the graphically identical preposition used with the genitive case and pronounced as a voiced sound. The Czech counterpart of "with" clearly represents the basic meaning of the instrumental case in that it expresses, as it were, an additional means for accomplishing the action of the verb.

Přišli jsme se synem.
(We arrived with our son.)

Dívka se hned vrátila s knihou.
(The girl returned immediately with the book.)

Vysvětlím vám to s radostí.
(I will gladly explain that to you.)

The remaining five prepositions all designate the spatial relationship between the site of the action and some object; in one case (the preposition před) the corresponding temporal relationship is also expressed. Thus, the use of these prepositions corresponds in a way to the regular spatial designation of the instrumental. The prepositions involved here are the following:

mezi = between, among
nad = above, over
pod = below, underneath
před = before, in front of (spatial)
before, ago (temporal)
za = behind, in back of

There is, however, a complication in the use of these prepositions. When they are used in the strictly spatial sense with verbs of motion designating motion into a particular spatial relationship with an object, then the accusative case must be used with these prepositions. The examples below will illustrate situations where both instrumental and accusative are called for.

mezi

Je rád mezi přáteli.
(He likes to be among his friends.)

Mezi dveřmi a oknem visí obrazy.
(There are pictures hanging between the door and the window.)

Ten dopis jsem dal někam mezi své věci.
(I put that letter somewhere among my things.)

nad

Měsíc svítí nad řekou.
(The moon is shining over the river.)

Ta cesta vede kopci nad městem.
(This road runs through the hills above the city.)

Sestra ukazovala nad okno.
(Sister was pointing above the window.)

pod

Seděli jsme pod stromem.
(We were sitting under a tree.)

Mám bolest pod srdcem.
(I have a pain under my heart.)

Pes si sedl pod stůl.
(The dog sat down under the table.)

před

Přede dveřmi jsem viděl nějakého hocha.
(I saw some boy in front of the door.)

Před dům přijelo auto.
(A car drove up in front of the house.)

Vykouřil jsem před obědem jednu cigaretu.
(I smoked a cigarette before lunch.)

Odejel před týdnem.
(He left a week ago.)

Před hodinou jsem tu práci skončil.
(I finished that work an hour ago.)

za

Za domem je zahrádka.
(There is a yard behind the house.)

Jarmila bydlí za rohem.
(Jarmila lives around the corner.

Půjdu za vámi.
(I'll follow you.)

Kdo dal to kolo za dveře?
(Who put the bike behind the door?)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences that illustrate the use of the instrumental and accusative cases with prepositions.

1. I saw the children run behind the house.
2. What is that lying there under the address book?
3. Our friends recently bought a house with a big yard.
4. Why did you nail the picture up over the door?
5. Among us he is known for his bad memory.
6. Are you satisfied with the life you lead?
7. Some bird flew by just above my head.
8. Whose hat did you find under that bush?
9. Between this lecture and that one I'm going to study Czech literature.
10. A year ago he tried to convince me that I was wrong.
11. When we drove up in front of the station, she was waiting there for us.
12. I could see him clearly; he was sitting in the corner under the lamp.
13. Is it true that those small birds flew in in between our house and Holan's?
14. Before the lecture we were chatting with his teachers.
15. Why don't you take a look behind the cupboard?
16. What was it that ran under the table?
17. Do you have anything under your hat?
18. He was speaking with laughter in his voice.
19. I never have breakfast before my first coffee.
20. He smokes with a real passion (Use chut').
21. You can't put that between the bed and the wall.
22. I no longer go around with them (Use chodit and mezi).
23. He felt a rug under his foot.
24. We don't dare talk about that in front of them.
25. Why do you always have to walk behind me?

Class VIII Verbs

Class VIII verbs represent a small but statistically important class of verbs. They are distinguished by the fact that, while there is no thematic vowel for either present or non-present, these two latter stems differ from one another and differ consistently. The non-present stem always ends in its stem vowel, and the present stem always augments this by the addition of a final -j. It should be noted that the infinitive exhibits a long stem vowel, as frequently happens in the case of monosyllabic stems. This class will be illustrated by the verb pít (to drink). The non-present forms of this class appear as follows:

pí-t; pi-l, pi-la, pi-lo, pi-li, pi-ly, pi-la

The present tense forms all display the final -j. Again there is no thematic vowel; the -e- vowel serves to separate the -j of the stem from the consonantal personal endings. And, as in Class VII verbs, the personal endings of the first person singular and the third person plural, -i and -í, are to be compared with the endings, -u and -ou, of Classes V and VI.

	stem	personal ending		stem	personal ending
1 sg.	pij	- i	1 pl.	pij	- e - me
2 sg.	pij	- e - š	2 pl.	pij	- e - te
3 sg.	pij	- e - 0	3 pl.	pij	- í

One verb in this class with an apparent irregularity is the verb dít se (to happen, take place), where the infinitival stem is dí- and the present stem is děj-. The problem is easily solved by the fact that the long form of ě is regularly í, which turns up in the characteristically long infinitive. Note that this verb is used only in the third persons.

Non-Present: dít se; dě-lo se, dě-ly se, dě-la se
Present: děj-e se, děj-í se

Exercise

Conjugate the verbs in parentheses in the following sentences in all persons and in both tenses.

1. Nikdy ne (mýt se) mýdlem.
2. Když ne (mít) nic jiného, (pít) mléko.
3. (Přikrýt) všechno novinami.
4. (Žít) ještě se svými rodiči.
5. Proč (bít) do dveří?

Some Irregular Nouns

Now that all the important grammatical cases have been presented to the student, attention can be directed to deviant forms and paradigms found in the complex Czech nominal system. This lesson and subsequent lessons will gradually account for all such unusual nominal forms.

The words den (day), týden (week), and paní (lady, Mrs.) are three high-frequency words, each with a plurality of deviant forms, so their complete paradigms are given below. Study these paradigms and learn all forms. Note the alternative forms for den.

	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
N	den	dni/dny	týden	týdny	paní	paní
G	dne	dní/dnů	týdne	týdnů	paní	paní
D	dni	dnům	týdnu	týdnům	paní	paním
A	den	dni/dny	týden	týdny	paní	paní
I	dnem	dny	týdnem	týdny	paní	paními
L	dni	dnech	týdnu	týdnech	paní	paních

A number of masculine animate nouns utilize the endings -ové, -é in the nominative plural. The following nouns studied so far may take the ending -ové.

otec > otcové   pán > pánové   syn > synové   muž > mužové

The form synové is the only nominative plural form for this word, but the student is aware that otcové, pánové, and mužové, are going to exist alongside of the regular otci, páni, and muži. Usually, whenever alternative forms like these exist, the -ové- forms are going to represent more formal usage, such as dámy a pánové (ladies and gentlemen) and otcové našich otců (the fathers of our fathers). In the case of muži/mužové, however, there is a real semantic distinction. For most Czech speakers the form muži means "husbands," while mužové means "men." The ending -é is used with nouns having the suffix -tel and some other types of nouns not yet encountered. Two nouns in -tel have appeared in the vocabularies;

přítel > přátelé   učitel > učitelé

Note the vocalic change in the plural of přítel and the genitive plural form:

N. přátelé   G. přátel   D. přátelům   A. přátele   I. přáteli   L. přátelích

From now on the vocabularies will make note of all such nominative plural forms.

DIALOGUE

Můj dobrý a milý přítel, Jan Valouch, známý všem svým přátelům svým rozumným jednáním a svou upřímností, leží už týden v posteli. Má nějakou zvláštní nemoc. Nikdo, ani jeho lékař, neví vlastně jakou. V prvních dnech byl Jan hrozně slabý, tak slabý, že skoro	My good and dear friend, Jan Valouch, known to all his friends for his sensible behavior and his sincerity, has been in bed for a week now. He has some peculiar illness. No one, not even his physician, knows exactly what. During the first days Jan was

nemohl hýbat rukama ani nohama. Sotva jedl a nemohl bolestmi, které měl v celém těle, vůbec spát. Všichni jsme mysleli, že se stalo něco vážného. Ale Jan nás překvapil. Nejdřív se mu vrátila síla do nohou a potom do rukou, a nakonec začaly mizet i jeho bolesti, ačkoli ne všechny. Nyní už Jan může na pár minut vstát a chodit po pokoji. Byl jsem u něho na návštěvě. Jan byl sice unavený, ale chvílemi se mnou živě hovořil. Říkal mi například, že se svými problémy nikdy příliš nezabývá, že je prostě považuje za část svého normálniho života. Během celé své nemoci prý nikdy netrpěl strachem, že se mu může stát něco hrozného. Podobný strach prý nikdy neměl. Musím říci, že jeho slova na mne udělala silný dojem. Když jsem se s ním loučil, děkoval mi za návštěvu a říkal, že jeho zdraví nemusí nikomu dělat starosti. V každém případě prý nedělá starosti jemu. A to je ovšem to hlavní.

awfully weak, so weak that he could hardly move his arms and legs. He barely ate, and he couldn't sleep at all because of the pains that he had all over in his body. We all thought that something serious had happened. But Jan surprised us. At first strength returned to his legs and then to his arms, and finally even his pains began to disappear, although not all. Now already Jan can stand for a couple of minutes and walk around the room. I've just been with him. It's true Jan was weak, but at times he chatted very animatedly with me. He told me, for example, that he was never too concerned about his problems, that he simply considered them as a part of his normal life. In the course of his whole illness he says he never experienced the fear that something terrible could happen to him. He says he never experienced that kind of fear. I must say that his words made a strong impression on me. When I was saying good-bye to him, he thanked me and said that his health needn't cause anyone concern. In any case, he says it doesn't bother him. And that's the main thing, of course.

* * *

Co se tady děje? Proč je tady takový hluk? Proč bijete do té stěny?

What's going on here? Why is there so much noise here? Why are you beating on that wall?

Dobře, že jsi přišel. Snažíme se najít nějaké vhodné místo pro náš nový obraz. Měli jsme jej nejdřív nad dveřmi, potom jsem jej přibil tamhle nad stůl. A nyní skončil mezi skříní a tamtím zeleným obrazem v rohu. Ale já pořád ještě nevím. Nejsem spokojený ani s tím místem. Něco tam tomu obrazu chybí. Co říkáš? Nechceš nám pomoci?

It's a good thing that you've come. We're trying to find some suitable place for our new picture. We had it over the door at first, then I put it up there over the table. And now it has ended up between the cabinet and that green picture over in the corner. But I *still* don't know. I'm not satisfied with that place either. The picture lacks something there. What do *you* say? Don't you want to help us?

Je to tak těžké přibít obraz na stěnu? Asi ano. Vy se tomu učíte už půl dne a ještě to neumíte. Nemůžete na chvíli

Is it so difficult to put a picture up on the wall? It probably is. You've been working at that for a half a day

přestat? Možná, že mezitím dostanete nějaké nové nápady a já budu moci skončit svůj rozhovor s Holanem. Volám ho telefonem, ale vy tady děláte takový hluk, že skoro nic neslyším. Jestli chcete, můžete jít ke mně dolů. Já vám dám něco pít, mezitím to skončím s Holanem a potom vám pomohu. Ujednáno?

now, and you still don't know how. Can't you stop for a while? It's possible that you will get some new ideas in the meantime, and I will be able to finish my conversation with Holan. I'm calling him on the phone, but you are making so much noise that I can hardly hear anything. If you want, you can come down to me. I'll give you something to drink; in the meantime I'll finish up with Holan and then I'll help you. O.K.?

* * *

Karel je ještě malý, ale jako všechny děti hrozně rád maluje. Už ani nevím, jak se to stalo, ale včera jsem ho ve svém pokoji překvapil při práci. Seděl za mým stolem a právě končil další obraz. Zřejmě nečekal žádného návštěvníka a když jsem k němu přišel, chvíli nevěděl co má dělat. Přikryl obrázek svýma malýma rukama a říkal, že se na něj nemám dívat, protože to není pro mne. Ale nebyl na rozpacích dlouho. Brzo jsem se směl na celý obrázek dobře podívat. Byl na něm nějaký malý hoch, který držel v ruce nějaký velký předmět. Všude kolem stály nebo ležely další velké i malé předměty. Pod obrázkem jsem četl: "Karel myje mýdlo". Hned jsem ovšem pochopil, že ten hoch na obrázku je Karel a že je v koupelně. Nepochopil jsem ale, co znamenala slova "myje mýdlo". Proč mýdlo? Proč ne "Karel se myje?" Nebo "Karel se myje mýdlem?" Zeptal jsem se na to a dostal jsem docela rozumnou odpověd'. Ten malý Karel na obrázku prý musel nejdřív umýt mýdlo, protože to mýdlo bylo špinavé. A jak každý ví, špinavým mýdlem se nikdo nemůže umýt. Proto se špinaví lidé mají mýt jen čistým mýdlem. Když jsem to slyšel, nevěděl jsem, jestli má smysl zeptat se také čím se mají mýt čistí lidé.

Karel is still small, but like all children he's terribly fond of painting. I don't even know how it happened, but yesterday I surprised him at work in my room. He was sitting at my desk, and he was just finishing another painting. He obviously wasn't expecting any visitor; and, when I came up to him, he didn't know what to do for a while. He covered the picture with his small hands and said that I wasn't supposed to look at it because it wasn't for me. But he wasn't perplexed for long. Soon I was allowed to take a good look at the whole picture. In it there was a small boy who was holding some large object in his hand. All about there were standing or lying other large and small objects. Under the picture I read: "Karel washes soap." I understood immediately, of course, that the boy in the picture was Karel and that he was in the bathroom. But I didn't understand what the words "washes soap" meant. Why soap? Why not "Karel washes himself?" Or "Karel washes himself with soap?" I asked about that, and I got quite a sensible reply. The little Karel in the picture, he said, had to wash the soap first because the soap was dirty. And, as everyone knows, no one can wash with dirty soap. Therefore, dirty people should wash with clean soap only. When I heard that, I didn't know whether it made sense to ask also what clean people should wash with.

Čím je to, že si poslední dobou nic nepamatuji a všechno zapomínám? Tuhle jsem si potřeboval vzpomenout na adresu jednoho svého starého přítele, kterému jsem něco chtěl poslat poštou. Celá léta jsem tu adresu nosil v hlavě, protože mu skoro každý měsíc něco posílám; bud' dopis nebo knihu. Ale tentokrát mi najednou zmizela z paměti. Myslel jsem na ni asi týden dnem i nocí, ale bylo to marné. Nevzpomněl jsem si na ni. Nakonec jsem se na ni musel někoho zeptat. Co jsem mohl dělat? Nyní tedy vím, že začínám mít špatnou pamět'. Neměl jsem ji vždycky? Možná, že jsem si to jen neuvědomoval.

What's the reason for my not remembering anything recently and forgetting everything? The other day I needed to recall the address of an old friend of mine, to whom I wanted to mail something. For years on end I've been carrying this address around in my head because I send something, either a letter or a book, to him almost every month. But this time it suddenly escaped my memory. For perhaps a week I thought about it day and night, but it was futile. I couldn't recall it. In the end I had to ask somebody about it. What could I do? Now I know that I'm beginning to have a poor memory. Haven't I always had it? It's possible that I just didn't realize it.

* * *

Němec žije s ženou a s rodiči v malém městě za Prahou. Němcovi rodiče jsou už staří. Němec je velmi miluje a dobře se o ně stará. Protože je má ráda také jeho žena, nenajdete na celém světě tak spokojenou a šťastnou rodinu jako jsou oni. Možná, že jsou všichni spolu tak šťastní také proto, že mají stejné zájmy a záliby: pracují všichni hlavou, jsou nebo byli všichni učiteli. Starý pan Němec byl učitelem celý život a zůstal jím i dnes, když už nepracuje ve škole. Občas ještě učí několik žáků doma. Stará paní Němcová prý nejdřív byla něčím jiným, ale nakonec se také stala učitelkou, když viděla, jak úspěšným učitelem je její muž. Němcova žena je učitelkou od svých mladých let a Němce, jak mi někdo řekl, učitelem udělali. Na začátku prý byl hudebníkem v opeře. Jeho rodina a jeho přátelé prý ale mysleli, že jeho pravé místo je ve škole, a proto ho tak dlouho přesvědčovali, až z opery odešel a začal chodit na universitu. Nakonec dostal místo na stejné škole jako jeho otec. Mimochodem: Němec je ovšem Čech, ale jeho žena není Češka; je opravdová Němka. Narodila se totiž v Praze, kde před válkou žilo hodně Němců.

Němec lives with his wife and his parents in a small town outside of Prague. Němec's parents are already old. Němec loves them very much and takes good care of them. Since his wife likes them too, in the whole world you won't find such a contented and happy family as they are. It's possible that they are all so happy together also because they have the same interests and likings: they all work with their heads, they all are or were teachers. The old Mr. Němec was a teacher his whole life, and he has remained one even today when he no longer works in a school. From time to time he still teaches a few pupils at home. The old Mrs. Němec, they say, was something else, but ultimately she too became a teacher when she saw how successful a teacher her husband was. Němec's wife has been a teacher since her early years; and as someone told me, Němec was made a teacher. At first, I am told, he was a musician in the opera. But his family and his friends, it is said, thought that his proper place was in school; and, therefore, they spent so long trying to convince him that he left the opera and began to attend the university. Finally he got a position at the same school as his father. Incidentally, Němec is a Czech, of course; but his wife is not Czech; she's a real German. She was just born in Prague, where many Germans lived before the war.

READING SELECTION

Němcovi jsou zajímavá rodina. Rád k nim chodím, ačkoli je znám jen krátkou dobu a ačkoli žijí na druhé straně města. Rodiče i děti v té rodině jsou všichni bud' lékaři nebo zubaři. Víte asi, co to znamená. Na jedné straně mají málo času, na druhé straně mají hodně peněz.[1] Ale to není to, co o nich chci říci. Naopak. Chtěl jsem o nich říci něco docela jiného. Kromě toho mi ani jedno ani druhé nevadí. Chtěl jsem vám vypravovat o tom, že mají mnoho různých zájmů a že je mám z toho důvodu rád. Ani jeden z nich--a tady mluvím jak o synech a dcerách, tak o starých rodičích--není prostě jen lékařem nebo zubařem. Jsou také výborní hudebníci, čtou starou i novou literaturu a milují divadlo. Co mám zvlášt' rád je, že se přitom nebojí pracovat rukama a že mají smysl pro přírodu. Často vidím skoro celou rodinu na zahrádce za jejich domem. Mají tam všechno možné ze všech konců světa--květiny, keře, stromy--a starají se o všechno opravdu dobře. O dovolené na té zahrádce pracují i několik hodin denně. Jsem rád, že mohu říci, že se se stejnou starostí a zájmem starají i o lidi, kteří k nim chodí bud' jako k lékařům nebo jako k přátelům.

Jezdíme každý rok do Československa. Nejdřív jsme jezdili vlakem, v posledních letech létáme. Vracíme se tam, protože v Československu najdeme vždycky něco zajímavého, někdy dokonce něco, co na nás udělá silný dojem, a co nám potom zůstane v paměti. Na začátku naší cesty je obyčejně Praha, hlavní město [2] Československa. Tu opravdu milujeme. Často tam zůstáváme celé týdny. Čím je to, že nás Praha nepřestává překvapovat, ačkoli jsme ji už za ta léta dobře poznali? Je to zvláštní, ale je to patrně proto, že je jedním z těch měst, která zůstala stará, ačkoli se mezitím stala moderní.

Valouch a já bydlíme ve stejné ulici. Jsme přátelé a máme mnohé stejné záliby. Vidím ho velmi často a obyčejně ho potkávám už ráno, když pospícháme na stejný autobus. Poznám ho už z dálky, protože jak v zimě tak v létě nosí jednu a tu samou čepici. Takovou čepici nemá každý. Je půl zelená a půl modrá, a vypadá na Valouchově malé hlavě příliš velká. Jestli se nemýlím, Valouch si ji koupil před rokem, když se naučil řídit auto. Chtěl ji na začátku nosit jen při cestách autem do přírody. Ale potom ji začal mít rád a začal ji nosit denně. Nevím vlastně proč. Mohu jen říci, že mně ta čepice nevadí, ačkoli není právě krásná. Nemohu ale říci to samé o jiných lidech. Někteří z nich prostě Valouchovu čepici nesnesou. A Valouch to ví. Tuhle mi říkal, že v naší ulici může žít jen ten, kdo je zvyklý na hluk a na jeho čepici.

Jan volal Karla. Něco se totiž stalo v kanceláři a on tam musel hned odejít. Chtěl proto Karlovi rychle říci, že k němu nebude moci přijít, jak nejdřív chtěl. U Karla se nikdo dlouho nehlásil. Potom přišla k telefonu Karlova sestra. Když uslyšela Janův hlas, řekla že Karel není doma a hned začala mluvit o všem možném. Mluvila několik minut a nenechala Jana říci ani jediné slovo. Jan ovšem pospíchal, a proto se snažil ten zvláštní rozhovor skončit, ale nebyl úspěšný. Ta dívka na druhém konci telefonu ho prostě neposlouchala. Když se s ním nakonec rozloučila, Jan nebyl právě šťastný. Nechtěl se zdržet, proto volal telefonem. A zdržel se právě proto, že volal telefonem.

1 The discontinuous construct na jedné straně...na druhé straně has the English translation "on the one hand...on the other hand."

2 The Czech expression hlavní město means "the capital."

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Nothing has happened; I feel well again. 2. Jiří became a physician in a small town near Brno. 3. What's the reason for (Use že plus a clause) all that (Use tolik) noise in the hall? 4. He was pounding the table with his hand and was shouting. 5. She surprised me with her frankness. 6. Have you already said good-bye to them? 7. It was a strange play; right away in the first act three children were born to different mothers. 8. There is no soap in the bathroom. 9. All remained sitting; no one even stirred. 10. Incidentally, what railroad station am I supposed to wait in front of for you? 11. She has a normal memory; she remembers only what she wants to. 12. Have you ever been (Use emphatic už) so tired that you could barely walk? 13. We only knew his parents, not his whole family. 14. He was always uneasy when she would inquire what he was busy with at the moment. 15. No subject is difficult enough for Karel. 16. Even

teachers can sometimes be good pupils. 17. She was known everywhere for her intelligent questions. 18. People who know what illness is usually value their health. 19. He liked to drink, but only coffee. 20. These problems do not cause me concern; on the contrary, I fear they will be too simple and uninteresting. 21. He is one of those people who know how to work both with their hands and their heads (Use singular for "heads."). 22. Who were you talking with a while ago? 23. Overhead she saw only blue sky. 24. I felt a bit unhappy among them. 25. At what address (Use na + Acc.) are we supposed to send it to him? 26. She couldn't speak for joy. 27. There's always something strange going on at their place. 28. He drives home every day, but surprisingly enough he didn't come today. 29. In the course of the whole evening I didn't speak to even a single Czech. 30. He washes only when he has to, but he's never dirty. 31. In my life I've never painted a thing (Use nic). 32. I don't understand some Germans when they try to speak Czech. 33. Where did did you live before the war? 34. I don't think they have a real interest in that. 35. If the world is full of successful people, why haven't I met any one of them? 36. You will be surprised; her hobbies are all awfully serious. 37. He taught there exactly a week. 38. I found this under the table, is it yours? 39. They say the weather today will be the same as yesterday. 40. I'm looking for a suitable place for the telephone. 41. From time to time we used to go to dinner together. 42. Will you drink a whole glass or just half? 43. Unfortunately my son hasn't learned anything there. 44. That's the teacher (fem.) who takes care of our meetings. 45. I suffer from the fear that I won't remember it. 46. They were sitting behind us, and all that time he was telling her something in an animated way. 47. Do you want to wash first, or will you wait a while? 48. I have almost no strength in my legs. 49. He loved music, but he didn't consider it particularly important. 50. Will we be able to nail that picture here or there? 51. You don't have to cover either one (Use ani jeden) of those chairs. 52. When he wanted to, he was very kind towards everyone. 53. She lives in a small but clean room above us.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Nemoc a zdraví.
2. Hluk na ulici.
3. Telefon a dlouhé rozhovory.
4. Děti a co všechno umějí dělat.
5. Dobrá a špatná pamět'.
6. Život v malém městě.
7. Život ve velkém městě.
8. Co se právě děje ve vaší rodině?
9. Znáte nějakého Čecha? Jestli znáte, co o něm můžete říci?
10. Změna adresy.
11. Den ve škole.
12. Jaké záliby máte?
13. Vadí vaše záliby vašim zájmům?
14. Máte všechno, co potřebujete?
15. Čím se právě zabýváte?
16. Kde žijí vaši rodiče?
17. Jakým mýdlem se myjete? Nějakým zvláštním?
18. Jak dlouho obyčejně pracujete na českém cvičení?
19. Trpíte strachem o své zdraví?
20. Zajímavé a nezajímavé předměty.
21. Problémy s provozem v moderních městech.
22. Člověk, příroda a svět.
23. Pijete a kouříte?
24. Kdy a kde rád pracujete?
25. Považujete za vhodné studovat s dětmi a pomáhat jim přitom?

LESSON XI

VOCABULARY

at' (particle)(See Grammar Analysis)	let, have
barva[1](f)(Gen.pl. barev)	color
bez + Gen.	without, minus
bílý	white
černý	black
červený	red
dát do pořádku	to put in order
dělat:	
nedá se nic dělat	nothing can be done, it can't be helped, it's no use
dokonalý	perfect
druh(m)	kind, sort, species
fungovat(VII,i)	to function, work, operate
hrát[2](VIII,i)(See zahrát)	to play
hrdina(m)(See Grammar Analysis)	hero
chápat[3](IX,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to comprehend, grasp
jemný	fine, delicate, refined
jinak (adv.)	otherwise, in another way
jít o + Acc.	to be the point, to be a question of, the thing is
jméno(n)(Gen.pl. jmen)	name
kolega(m)(See Grammar Analysis)	colleague
legrace(f)	fun
lhát(IX,i)(See zalhat)(See Grammar Analysis)	to lie, tell lies
magnetofon(m)	tape recorder
mazat[4](IX,i)(See namazat and umazat)	to oil, grease, smear, soil
místo + Gen.	instead of
namazat[4](IX,p)(See mazat)	to oil, grease, smear
naposled (adv.)	for the last time, last, lastly

napsat (IX,p)(See psát)(See Grammar Analysis)	to write
několik málo (quantifier)	a few
než[5] (conj./adv.)	before, than
nutný	necessary, urgent
objevit se (II,p)(See objevovat se)	to appear, turn up
objevovat se (VII,i)(See objevit se)	to appear, turn up
od té doby, co (conjunctive phrase)	since the time that
optimista (m)(See Grammar Analysis)	optimist
ostatní	the remaining, the other
padat[4] (I,i)(See spadnout and upadnout)	to fall
padnout[4] (VI,p)(See padat)	to fall
pás (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	tape, strip, band
pečlivě (adv.)	carefully
pesimista (m)(See Grammar Analysis)	pessimist
Petr	Peter
Pét'a (m)(like hrdina)(See Grammar Analysis)	diminutive of Peter
poslat [6] (IX,p)(See Grammar Analysis)	to send
poslechnout (VI,p)(See poslouchat)	to listen, obey
potíž (f)(Gen.sg. and Nom.pl. -e; Dat. pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích)	difficulty, trouble
povědět[7] (See povídat)	to tell, talk (about)
povídat (I,i)(See povědět)	to tell, talk (about)
pozor, pozor! (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	attention, look out!
dávat pozor na + Acc.	to pay attention to, to watch out for
prosím vás (See prosím tě, Lesson V)	oh, come on! please
přece (adv.)	after all, surely, yet, anyhow
předtím (adv.)	before, previously
překládat (I,i)(See přeložit)	to translate
přeložit (II,p)(See překládat)	to translate
přímo (adv.)	directly, downright, just
psát (IX,i)(See napsat)(See Grammar Analysis)	to write
psát na stroji	to type

Punt'a(m)(like hrdina)(See Grammar Analysis)	Spot (dog's name)
původní	original
říkat:	
někomu se to říká	it's easy for someone to say
rozzlobit se(II,p)(+ na + Acc.)(See zlobit se)	to get angry (at/with)
růže(f)	rose
scéna(f)	scene, stage, scenery
skladba(f)(Gen.pl. skladeb)	composition, pattern, syntax
skvrna(f)	stain, spot
smát se^{8}(VIII,i)(+ Dat.)(See zasmát se)	to laugh, smile (at)
spadnout^{4}(VI,p)(See padat)	to fall (down from/off of)
správce(m)(See Grammar Analysis)	manager
stejně (adv.)	in the same way, anyhow, in any event
stroj(m)	machine
psací stroj	typewriter
studený	(very) cold, chilly, frigid
štěstí(n)	luck, good luck, happiness
tehdy (adv.)	at that time, then
tma(f)	dark, darkness
topení(n)	heating
účinný	effective
ujistit(II,p)(See ujišt'ovat)	to assure
ujišt'ovat(VII,i)(See ujistit)	to assure
ukázat^{9}(IX,p)	to show, display, demonstrate
umazat^{4}(IX,p)(See mazat)	to soil, smear
upadnout^{4}(VI,p)(See padat)	to fall down
vedle + Gen.	beside, next to, in addition to
vedoucí(m/f)(See Grammar Analysis)	head, leader, chief, boss, man in charge
volný	free, unrestrained, loose
výsledek/výsledk(m)	result
vyslovit(II,p)(See vyslovovat)	to pronounce
vyslovovat(VII,i)(See vyslovit)	to pronounce
vzduch(m)	air
zahrát^{2}(VIII,p)(See hrát)	to play

zalhat(IX,p)(See lhát)(See Grammar Analysis)	to lie, tell a lie
zasmát se[8](VIII,p)(+ Dat.)(See smát se)	to laugh, smile (at)
zazpívat(I,p)(See zpívat)	to sing
zbytečný	unnecessary, pointless
zem(f)(Declined like země)	soil, ground, floor
země(f)	country, land, soil, earth, globe, ground, floor
zkoušet(III,i)(See zkusit)	to try, attempt, try out
zkusit(II,p)(See zkoušet)	to try, attempt, try out
zlobit se(II,i)(+ na + Acc.)(See rozzlobit se)	to be angry (at/with)
znovu (adv.)[10]	anew, afresh, once again
zpěv(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	singing
zpívat(I,i)(See zazpívat)	to sing
zřídka (adv.)	seldom, rarely
ztrácet(III,i)(See ztratit)	to lose
ztratit(II,p)(See ztrácet)	to lose
žlutý	yellow

1 There are two ways of expressing the English phrase "to be a certain color:" mít...barvu or být...barvy (gen.sg.), e.g., Jaké barvy je váš klobouk? Ta květina má krásnou červenou barvu.

2 This verb has a long vowel in the infinitive and a short vowel in the present tense forms, as expected; but the perfect participle also has a long vowel.

3 The perfective for this verb is pochopit introduced in Lesson VI.

4 The verbs mazat and padat are the first verbs to be noted with multiple perfectives that correspond to different connotations in the meaning of the simple imperfective verb and that reinforce the contention that no such verbs have corresponding prefixed perfectives. Note how the meanings of the perfectives harmonize with the semantic content of the prefixes:

namazat = to oil well, thoroughly (na denotes quantity)
umazat = to soil, smear (u has a negative denotation)
spadnout = to fall down/off (s denotes "off of" or "down from")
upadnout = to fall down (of persons)(u again has a negative meaning)

In the padat family of verbs the derivative padnout is used in a number of figurative ways:

Jeho otec padl v poslední válce.
(His father fell in the last war.)

Padla mu kolem krku.
(She fell on his neck.)

Šaty mu nepadly.
(His clothes didn't fit him.)

5 This is the regular Czech counterpart of the English subordinate conjunction "before." The full and alternative form is dříve než. The meaning "than" will be utilized later when the comparative of adjectives and adverbs is introduced.

6 The imperfective of this verb is posílat introduced in Lesson VI.

7 This is an irregular verb conjugated exactly like vědět introduced in Lesson IV. As mentioned in vocabulary note No.5 in Lesson IX, this verb is also a possible perfective for vypravovat.

8 This verb has a different stem vowel in the present tense:

směj-i se, směj-e-š se, směj-e se, etc.

The perfect participle has a long vowel for historical reasons:

smá-l se, smá-la se, smál-o se, etc.

9 The imperfective of this verb is ukazovat introduced in Lesson IX.

10 This adverb, as well as the adverb zase, is frequently used to translate the English verbal prefix "re-," as in "re-read."

Rychle to znovu napsal.
(He re-typed it quickly.)

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Vocative Case (Usage)

It is perhaps a misnomer to label vocative forms as case forms because they do not affect the syntax of sentences with which they are associated. They are merely call forms that name the person or object to whom or which the communication is being directed. Czech, therefore, uses the vocative in sentences like the following:

Kam jdeš, Jarmilo?
(Where are you going, Jarmila?)

Pane Valouchu, co tam děláte?
(Mr. Valouch, what are you doing there?)

It stands to reason that the use of the vocative will for all practical purposes be confined to animate beings and that it will be used with inanimate objects only for special rhetorical purposes.

Vocative Case (Formation)

The vocative case exhibits special endings only in the masculine and feminine singular; in the plural all types of nouns use the nominative case forms as call forms. No adjectives have vocative forms. Among hard masculine nouns, stems terminating in the velar consonants -k, -g, -ch add the ending -u, and all other stems utilize -e. The latter ending, in general, does not palatalize preceding consonants, it effects the change r > ř, only when -r is directly preceded by another consonant. Soft masculine nouns show the ending -i. The student need note only that nouns in -ec form their vocative in -če, the result of a historical change.

Masculine

Karel > Karle
student > studente
pan profesor > pane profesore

žák > žáku
tatínek > tatínku
pan Valouch > pane Valouchu

bratr > bratře
ministr > ministře

muž > muži
přítel > příteli
pan Topič > pane Topiči

otec > otče
pan Němec > pane Němče

There are three irregular vocatives among masculine nouns: Bůh/Boh (God) > Bože, syn > synu, člověk > člověče. The form člověče should be used sparingly for the time being; it is used in highly colloquial situations and corresponds to the English "Boy!" or "Man!" A historical sound change has altered the stem vowel in the vocative form of Jan > Jene. The student should also learn that in more informal situations the family name in vocative phrases like pane + family name is frequently not inflected. Thus, one may hear: pane Holan! pane Valouch! pane Novák!

Feminine nouns present no unusual problems. Hard stems with -a in the nominative singular have the ending -o; and the corresponding soft stems with -e in the nominative singular have the ending -e, in other words, the vocative form is identical to the nominative. Feminine nouns with zero ending in the nominative singular all have -i.

Feminine

Klára > Kláro
sestra > sestro
slečna > slečno

Marie > Marie
vůle > vůle
práce > práce

radost > radosti
pamět' > paměti
noc > noci

Exercise

Decline the nouns listed below in all cases, including the vocative, and in both numbers.

pás
kopec
země
poledne
přítel
noc
louka
stroj
pesimista
topení
poloha
kancelář
slovo
hlava

Class IX Verbs

This is the last class of verbs to be discussed. In form this class resembles Class VII because it has the same thematic vowel -a- in the non-present stem and lacks a theme vowel in the present stem. Class IX verbs, however, do not have a suffix between the root and the theme. While there are some important and high-frequency verbs in Class IX, it is not a populous class; and there is a strong tendency for verbs of this class to shift wholly or partially into Class I. The non-present forms for Class IX read as follows:

maz-a-t; maz-a-l, maz-a-la, maz-a-lo, etc.
cháp-a-t; cháp-a-l, cháp-a-la, cháp-a-lo, etc.
lh-á-t; lh-a-l, lh-a-la, lh-a-lo, etc.

Note that in this class, too, a monosyllabic infinitive has a long vowel in contrast to the other non-present forms.

The formation of the present forms is complicated by the possibility of palatalization which affects only the following stem-final consonants: h > ž, k > č, r > ř, s > š, sl > šl, z > ž. These changes were caused by a -j- that developed after stem-final consonants in these verbs and whose effect was left only with the above consonants. As already stated, there is no thematic vowel in the present forms; the -e- in some forms merely separates the stem from the personal ending. Class IX verbs may display either -i/-í or -u/-ou in the first singular and third plural forms, respectively. Although the -u/-ou set seems to be gaining ascendancy in the literary language, it is advisable for the student to use the -i/-í set after the palatal consonants č/š/ž and the -u/-ou set elsewhere.

	Stem	Personal ending		Stem	Personal ending
1sg.	maž -	i	1pl.	maž - e -	me
2sg.	maž - e -	š	2pl.	maž - e -	te
3sg.	maž - e -	∅	3pl.	maž -	í

	Stem				Personal ending		Stem				Personal ending
1sg.	cháp		-		u	1pl.	cháp	-	e	-	me
2sg.	cháp	-	e	-	š	2pl.	cháp	-	e	-	te
3sg.	cháp	-	e	-	ø	3pl.	cháp		-		ou
1sg.	lž		-		u	1pl.	lž	-	e	-	me
2sg.	lž	-	e	-	š	2pl.	lž	-	e	-	te
3sg.	lž	-	e	-	ø	3pl.	lž		-		ou

The student can expect to find some deviations like lžu/lžou. In this case the irregular development may have been caused by the fact that the regular form lži is homonymous with the second person singular imperative form.

One verb in this class shows an irregularity in the root vowel between the non-present and present stems:

psát: psal, psala, psalo, etc.
píši, píšeš, píše, píšeme, píšete, píší

Exercise

Conjugate all verbs in parentheses below in all persons and in both present and past tenses.

1. (Říkat), že nikdy ne (zalhat).
2. (Napsat) odpovědi na všechny ty otázky.
3. Kam to (poslat)?
4. (Chápat), že to není lehké.
5. (Namazat) to kolo dobře.
6. (Ukázat) Karlovi své knihy.

The Imperative Mood (Formation)

As in all languages, the imperative expresses the request that the hearer or hearers (in the second person singular and plural forms) or the speaker together with the hearer(s) (in the first person plural form) carry out a given action. Thus, the basic imperative has only three forms: one form in the singular and two forms in the plural. These forms are made up of a specific indicator for the imperative (a vowel) plus personal endings.

	Imperative Indicator	Personal Ending
2sg.	-i-/-0-	-0
1pl.	-ě-/-0-	-me
2pl.	-ě-/-0-	-te

Even though the vowels -i-/-ě- seem to alternate with -0- in Modern Czech as specific indicators of the imperative, it may be expedient to consider -i-/-ě- as the basic indicators that merely disappear under certain circumstances because they leave traces in that they effect palatalization of stem-final -d/-t/-n. The distribution of the vowel/zero alternation (or the cases where the vowel disappears) is very clear: zero is found wherever there is only one stem-final consonant. Two or more stem-final consonants are possible only in classes II, IV, V, VI, and IX. As the student will see from the display below developing the imperative forms from all the verbal classes, the imperative is constructed on the basis of the present stem. If the present stem has an absolutely final thematic vowel, the latter disappears on addition of the sign of the imperative. An excellent rule of thumb will help the student: remove the personal ending from the third person plural present tense and add the imperative endings to the resulting stem.

Class I: ček + aj + 0 > čekej, čekejme, čekejte
Class II: mluv + í + 0 > mluv, mluvme, mluvte
konč + í + i/ě > konči, končeme, končete

Class III: sáz + ej + 0 > sázej, sázejme, sázejte
Class IV: sed + í + 0 > sed', sed'me, sed'te
rozmysl + í + i/ě si > rozmysli si, rozmysleme si, rozmyslete si
Class V: nes + 0 > nes, nesme, neste,
čt + i/ě > čti, čtěme, čtěte
Class VI: min + 0 > miň, miňme, miňte
tiskn + i/ě > tiskni, tiskněme, tiskněte
Class VII: děk + uj + 0 > děkuj, děkujme, děkujte
Class VIII: pij + 0 > pij, pijme, pijte
Class IX: maž + 0 > maž, mažme, mažte
pošl + i/ě > pošli, pošleme, pošlete

Note that the thematic element -*aj*- in Class I changes to -*ej*- in the imperative forms. This is a general rule and must be observed by the student. Note further that the elements -*aj*- in Class I and -*ej*- in Class III represent the original form of the themes for these classes and underscore the usefulness of the third plural present form for constructing the imperative.

Class II verbs with monosyllabic roots containing a long vowel *always* shorten this vowel in the imperative.

kouř + í + ∅ > kuř, kuřme, kuřte

po + chvál + í + ∅ > pochval, pochvalme, pochvalte

roz + louč + í + ∅ se > rozluč se, rozlučme se, rozlučte se

vrát + í + ∅ se > vrat' se, vrat'me se, vrat'te se

Shortening of the root vowel also occurs exceptionally in the imperatives of Class IX. Only two such verbs have been encountered so far.

píš + ∅ piš, pišme, pište
ukáž + ∅ ukaž, ukažme, ukažte

When the sign of the imperative is zero, a very interesting feature of pronunciation appears in the first person plural form. All voiced stem-final consonants are devoiced in this form even though the directly following -*m*- of the personal ending should not cause devoicing. This suggests the enclitic nature of -*me*/-*te* and their addition to the singular form to build the plural forms. Pronounce the following imperatives:

řid'me, mažme, běžme, uvěřme, jed'me

The following verbs have irregular imperatives that must be learned by the student:

chtít: chtěj, chtějme, chtějte
jíst: jez, jezme, jezte
mít: měj, mějme, mějte
odpovědět: odpověz, odpovězme, odpovězte
pomoci: pomoz, pomozme, pomozte
povědět: pověz, povězme, povězte
půjčit: půjč, půjčme, půjčte
stát: stůj, stůjme, stůjte
vědět: věz, vězme, vězte
vidět: viz, vizme, vizte

The student has been forewarned that Class IX verbs are losing ground before Class I verbs. This may happen occasionally only in the imperative. Only one verb with this propensity has been met so far:

chápat: chápej, chápejme, chápejte

The verb "to be" in Czech has an imperative, but it is obtained only from the stem of the verb *budu*. Its forms are regular: *bud'*, *bud'me*, *bud'te*. As was pointed out in Lesson V, this verb is basically perfective, and any apparent imperfective usages such as

Bud' vždycky se mnou.
(Always be with me.)

must be construed as

Bud' (být) vždycky se mnou.

where být is deleted because of the semantic identity with bud'.

Imperative Mood (Usage)

In general, the imperative mood in Czech is used just as it is in any other language for the expression of commands and prohibitions. The presence of the category of aspect in the Czech verb, however, necessitates a few remarks about some semantic nuances engendered by this category in both commands and prohibitions. The student will find that the basic distinction he noted in the indicative mood between the perfective and imperfective aspects, i.e., reference to the completion of a single instance of the action by the perfective versus non-reference to such a distinction by the imperfective, is born out in the imperative mood. It remains only to document the nuances mentioned above that have become associated with some uses of the imperative.

In positive commands the imperfective imperative is used as expected to request that an action occur a number of times.

Piš mi aspoň jednou za týden!
(Write me at least once a week.)

Kuřte dole, ne nahoře!
(Smoke downstairs, not upstairs.)

Volejte jen večer!
(Call evenings only.)

The imperfective imperative is also used when there is a certain amount of emphasis placed on the action itself. Here it will be instructive to contrast sentences containing related perfective and imperfective imperatives.

Počkejte na mne před nádražím!
(Wait for me in front of the railroad station.)

Čekejte tady!
(Wait here.)

Projdi se! Udělá ti to dobře.
(Take a walk. It will do you good.)

Procházejte se ještě chvíli!
(Go on walking for a while yet.)

Všimni si tohohle slova!
(Pay attention to this word.)

Všímejte si toho chvíli!
(Watch this for a while.)

From the discussion and examples just above it follows that when a sense of urgency accompanies the imperative, the latter must be imperfective. Study the following sentences including those with perfective counterparts.

Vstávej! Už je čas na snídani.
(Get up. It's already time for breakfast.)

Vstaň, tahle židle je pro tebe příliš nepohodlná!
(Get up, this chair isn't too comfortable for you.)

Dívej se dobře! Možná, že už to zase neuvidíš.
(Take a good look. It's possible you won't see
that again.)

Podívej se na něho!
(Take a look at him.)

Končete, končete! On už musí brzo přijít.
(Finish it! He should be coming soon.)

Prosímtě, skonči tu práci včas!
(Please, finish this work on time.)

It is natural to find that the imperfective aspect predominates in negative commands or prohibitions. In such instances denial of the action itself obviously entails emphasis on the action and selection of the imperfective aspect. Whenever the prohibition expresses a warning or an admonition, however, with the implication "do not accomplish this action or else...", then the perfective aspect is used in the negative imperative. The following pairs of sentences have been selected to contrast the use of both aspects in the negative imperative.

Nepijte vodu, pijte mléko!
(Don't drink water, drink milk.)

Nevypij všechno najednou!
(Don't drink everything all at once.)

Neberte si plášť', už neprší!
(Don't take your coat; it's no longer raining.)

Prosím vás, jen si omylem nevezměte jeho klobouk!
(Please, just don't take his hat by mistake.)

Nezapomínej, že jim to musíme ještě dnes přinést!
(Don't forget that we have to take that to them
today yet.)

Nezapomeň, víš co tě jinak čeká!
(Don't forget, you know what's waiting for you
otherwise.)

The use of the imperatives for determinate and indeterminate verbs requires some explanation. In the first place, since both of these types of verbs are imperfective, the connotations of a warning or admonition, on one hand, and urgency or emphasis, on the other hand, are not marked in any way. Rather, all negative imperatives in these verbs are expressed by the indeterminate. Positive commands may be expressed by both determinate and indeterminate verbs, but only the usual semantic distinctions between these two subsidiary aspects are observed. In the second place, a particular semantic development is to be noted in the confrontation of the imperatives from determinate verbs with imperatives from their counterparts containing the prefix po-. Just as in the indicative mood, the po- forms of these verbs have the effect of imperfective verbs; so there is no aspectual distinction between the imperatives with po- and without po-. There is, however, a semantic distinction between the two types. The po- forms carry the connotation of motion towards the speaker or motion together with the speaker. This meaning is so strong in the po- that the "let us" form can be expressed by the second singular form in familiar address; the -me is used only in polite address. Thus, both the sentences "Pojed' po té cestě." and "Pojed'me po té cestě." translate as "Let's drive along this road;" the first one is informal and the second one is formal. Study the following sentences containing various contrasting usages of determinate and indeterminate verbs.

Jdi k tatínkovi!
(Go to father.)

*Pojd' sem!
(Come here.)

Pojd' ven! Už přestalo pršet.
(Let's go outside. It has stopped raining.)

Chod'te jen po kobercích!
(Walk only on the rugs!)

Kdykoli můžete, chod'te do parku!
(Whenever you can, go to the park.)

Nechod' do vody, je studená!
(Don't go into the water; it's very cold.)

Nechod'me dnes večer do divadla, já jsem hrozně unavený.
(Let's not go to the theater this evening; I'm terribly tired.)

Běžte, on na vás čeká!
(Run, he's waiting for you.)

Poběž, nebo přijdeme pozdě!
(Let's run, or we'll be late.)

Běhejte jen tady před domem!
(Run around just here in front of the house.)

Neběhejte po zahrádce!
(Don't run in the yard.)

Prosím vás, neste to takhle!
(Please, carry that in this way!)

Pones to, a nezdržuj mě!
(Carry it over here, and don't delay me.)

---

* Přijd' sem! also means "Come here."; but Pojd' sem! expresses immediacy, i.e., "Come here right now."

Nos jí knihy do školy, ona je ještě slabá po nemoci!
(Carry her books to school for her; she is still
weak after her illness.)

Noste s sebou vždycky tužku i pero!
(Always carry pencil and pen with you.)

Nenoste mi už žádné peníze!
(Don't bring me any more money.)

Czech Equivalents of "Let/have him..." "Let/have them..."

When a request that a given action be carried out is directed toward someone other than the speaker and hearer, then both English and Czech use constructions different from the imperative. English uses phrases like "let/have him go, let/have them come," while Czech employs the regular present tense forms of the verb preceded by the particle at'. Both aspects may be used with this particle in their usual connotations.

At' přijde v neděli odpoledne.
(Let/have him come Sunday afternoon.)

At' odcházejí těmi druhými dveřmi.
(Let/have them go out by the other door.)

At' s tím ještě počkají.
(Let/have them wait with that.)

Exercise

Translate the following commands and prohibitions into Czech.

1. Have him call me after supper.
2. Don't run all the time (2sg.), you'll be too tired.
3. Please take the phone (2pl.); I am busy here (Use mít práci).
4. Sit someplace else (2pl.), my son has smeared that chair with something.
5. Let's run over to my place for a while; I want to show you something.
6. Never lend anything to anybody (2sg.).
7. Let's not fly; let's go by train.
8. Try not to put on weight (2sg.); eat little at every meal (Use při and jídlo).
9. Don't put the picture up over there (2sg.); it can fall from there.
10. Assure him that it will do him good (2pl.).
11. Don't occupy yourself with that (2sg.).
12. Don't laugh when you're not having a good time (2pl.).
13. Let him come on time if he wants a good seat (Use místo).
14. Bring me a glass of water (2sg.).
15. Buy yourself a new red hat (2sg.).
16. Let's make an effort to grasp what he wants to say to us.

17. Repeat these words after me.
18. Have him try to convince her that she should take part in the new play.
19. Consider everything carefully first (2pl.).
20. Stay here a while longer (2pl.); I want to tell (Use "relate") you something.
21. Please take note (2pl.) of what I'm going to tell you.
22. Don't be mistaken (2pl.); I know exactly how you feel.
23. Have him tidy up before we return.
24. Be reasonable; stop smoking cigarettes.
25. Don't exaggerate; tell the truth.
26. Don't take the children to the park yet (Use *vodit*); they haven't eaten.
27. Don't forget to take your (Use *si*) coat; it's been raining out all day.
28. Excuse me (2pl.), but I thought you were a friend of mine.
29. Don't be such a pessimist, and don't paint such a black picture (2pl.).
30. Please take (2sg.) me to the station in your car (Use Instr.)
31. Don't go yet (2pl.); wait until he comes.
32. Don't say good-bye to him yet (2sg.); you'll see (Use perfective) him again at the theater.
33. Stop helping us all the time (2pl.); we know what we are doing.
34. Believe me (2pl.); he will certainly take care of her.
35. Return home before lunch (2sg.).
36. Pay him immediately (2pl.); we have to leave in an hour.
37. Have him get ready; we have to go downtown.
38. Be a good friend to me (2sg.).
39. Don't cook there (2sg.); something may happen.
40. Let him laugh at what we are doing; it doesn't bother us.
41. Help (2pl.) me read this sentence that someone wrote for me in Czech.
42. Don't start yet; everyone (Use plural) isn't here yet.
43. Take a walk whenever you have free time (2pl.).
44. Don't be hesitant (2pl.); we aren't angry.
45. Have him lecture on that this week; I'll come for sure.
46. Detain him a little while longer (2sg.); I must finish something first.
47. Don't shout (2sg.); I can hear everything you say (Do not translate "can").
48. Ask (2pl.) him whether he can come on Sunday.
49. Let's have lunch, and then we'll return to the office.
50. Go away; we don't want to speak to you (Use *s* + Instr.).

Some Irregular Nouns

The student has already been convinced of the complexity of the nominal morphology in Czech. It remains now gradually to enumerate declensional types that deviate to a greater or lesser degree from the norms already presented. There are three specific areas to cover in this lesson.

1) Masculine nouns whose nominative singular ends in *-a* including such nouns in *-ista* and *-ita*, e.g., *optimista* (optimist) and *bandita* (bandit).

Note the singular case forms that agree with feminine nouns, but remember that adjectives and pronouns linked with these words are always masculine.

	Singular	Plural
N	hrdin - a	hrdin - ové
G	hrdin - y	hrdin - ů
D	hrdin - ovi	hrdin - ům
A	hrdin - u	hrdin - y
I	hrdin - ou	hrdin - y
L	hrdin - ovi	hrdin - ech
V	hrdin - o	

Nouns like optimista and bandita are declined like the above but have the forms optimisté, bandité in the nominative plural.

2) Masculine nouns ending in -ce in the nominative singular. In this case the only irregularities appear in the nominative and vocative singular.

	Singular	Plural
N	správc - e	správc - ové
G	správc - e	správc - ů
D	správc - i/správc - ovi	správc - ům
A	správc - e	správc - e
I	správc - em	správc - i
L	správc - i/správc - ovi	správc - ích
V	správc - e	

3) In the third group are some nouns declined like adjectives. The noun vedoucí (which may be either masculine or feminine) and the proper name Jiří are both declined like soft adjectives in the appropriate gender. In like manner the family name Krámský may be either masculine or feminine as in pan Krámský or paní Krámská and is declined accordingly as a hard adjective. Family

names like Novák are made feminine by the addition of the ending -ová and are frequently used in combinations such as paní Nováková and slečna Nováková. This kind of form is also declined as a hard adjective.

DIALOGUE

Pan Hrdina je správcem našeho domu. Máme štěstí, že to je právě on, protože pan Hrdina je velký optimista. Je takový optimista, že vedle něho všichni ostatní vypadáme jako dokonalí pesimisté. Kdykoli se něco nepříjemného stane--když například přestane v zimě v celém domě fungovat topení--vždycky hned přijde pan Hrdina a ujišt'uje nás: To nic není, pánové, za malou chvíli bude zase všechno v pořádku. Bud'te optimisté! Bud'te optimisté aspoň do té doby, než to dáme do pořádku! (Jednou mu na to někdo odpověděl: Pane Hrdino, vám se to říká, vy jste se už narodil optimista i hrdina, ale my normální lidé to nemáme tak jednoduché.) Ačkoli "malé chvíle" pana Hrdiny jsou obyčejně neobyčejně dlouhé, jsme mu stejně všichni vděční za jeho milá slova i za jeho smysl pro legraci.

Mr. Hrdina is the manager of our apartment house. We're lucky that he's the one because Mr. Hrdina is a great optimist. He is such an optimist that next to him all the rest of us look like perfect pessimists. Whenever something unpleasant occurs--when, for example, the heating stops working in the whole house in winter--Mr. Hrdina always comes immediately and assures us: it's nothing, gentlemen, everything will be in order in a short while. Be optimists. Be optimists at least until we fix it. (Once somebody replied to him: Mr. Hrdina, it's easy for you to say, you were born an optimist and also a hero, but we normal people don't have it so simple.) Although Mr. Hrdina's "short whiles" are usually unusually long, we are all thankful anyway for his kind words as well as for his appreciation of good fun.

* * *

At' ke mně nezapomene Jiří v neděli přijít. Řekni mu to, až ho uvidíš. Koupil jsem si nový magnetofon a mám na pásu několik krásných Mozartových skladeb. Chci mu je zahrát.

Let Jiří not forget to come to my place on Sunday. Tell him that when you see him. I have bought a new tape recorder, and I have several beautiful compositions by Mozart on tape. I want to play them for him.

Dobře, řeknu mu to. Mezi námi, ty také můžeš Jiřímu něco říci: At' přestane zpívat! Učí se zpívat už rok, ale výsledky jsou velmi špatné. Nelžu ti, Jiří nemá vůbec hlas. Je to prostě zbytečné. Ztrácí jen čas. Napsal jsem mu to už jednou v dopise, ale on myslí, že ničemu nerozumím.

Good, I'll tell him. Between us you too can tell Jiří something: why doesn't he stop singing? He's been studying singing for a year now, but the results are very bad. I'm not lying to you. Jiří hasn't any voice at all. It's simply pointless. He's only losing time. I've written this to him once

Jsem jeho přítel, miluji hudbu i zpěv, ale jak někdo někde řekl, milovat není jen mít rád.

already in a letter, but he thinks that I don't understand anything. I am his friend, and I love both music and singing; but, as someone has said somewhere, to love is not just to like.

* * *

Ukažte mi, prosím vás, ještě jednou ten obraz na druhé straně. Není krásný? Jakou barvu má vlastně tahle květina? Je to zvláštní jemná červená a je v ní trochu žluté. Některé červené nemám rád, ale tenhle druh přímo miluji. Podívejte se také na tuhle bílou. Je sice trochu studená, ale to mi nevadí. Spolu s touhle černou dělají velmi příjemný dojem. V celém obraze je jen několik málo barev, ale právě v tom je, myslím, jeho síla. Je to účinné právě proto, že to je jednoduché. Každá z těch barev je nutná v téhle scéně, kde jde o tak jednoduché věci jako je modré nebe, čistý vzduch, tma v oknech a růže na zahrádce.

Show me, please, once more that picture on the other page. Isn't it beautiful? Just what color is this flower? It's a peculiar delicate red, and there is a little yellow in it. I don't like some reds, but this red I love. Take a look at this white. It's a little cold, it's true, but I don't mind that. Together with this black they make a very pleasant impression. In the entire picture there are only a few colors: but just in that, I think, lies its strength. It is effective just because it is simple. Each of these colors is necessary in this scene, where what matters are such simple things as a blue sky, pure air, dark windows, and roses in the yard.

* * *

Pověz mi, prosím tě, jak mám říkat synovi Mileny Valouchové--Petře nebo Pét'o? Myslela jsem, že mu říkají Pét'o, ale včera jsem slyšela Milenu jak na něho volala: Petře!

Tell me, would you, what am I supposed to call Milena Valouch's son--Peter or Pete? I thought they called him Pete, but yesterday I heard Milena addressing him as Peter.

Říkej mu Petře, protože jinak se může stát, že místo Petra přijde Milenin pes.

Call him Peter; otherwise it might happen that Milena's dog would come instead of Peter.

Nepovídej. Myslíš to vážně?

Don't tell me. Are you serious?

Ovšem, od té doby, co Milena koupila Petrovi psa, mají prý potíže. Když jsem ji naposled viděla, Milena mi říkala, že kdykoli zavolá svého malého syna, přijde její pes. Punt'a, ten jejich pes, prý prostě nechápe, že mezi slovy Pét'o a Punt'o je nějaký rozdíl a objeví se vždycky, když slyší

I am; since Milena bought a dog for Peter, she says they've been having difficulties. When I saw her last, Milena told me that, whenever she calls her little son, her dog comes. Punt'a, that dog of theirs, simply doesn't understand, she says, that there is a difference between the words Pét'o and Punt'o and he

jedno z nich. Protože Petr prý obyčejně hned nepřijde, když ho někdo volá, Milana často neví, jestli se má smát nebo zlobit. V každém případě museli přestat říkat synovi Pét'o. Předtím zkoušeli všechno možné--snažili se například velmi pečlivě vyslovovat--ale nic nepomáhalo. Tak se zase vrátili k synovu původnímu jménu a říkají mu prostě Petře.

always turns up when he hears one of them. Since, she says, Peter usually doesn't come right away when someone calls him, Milena often doesn't know whether she should laugh or get angry. In any case they had to stop calling their son Pét'a. Before that they tried everything possible--they attempted, for example, to enunciate carefully--but nothing helped. So they returned to the son's original name, and they call him simply Peter.

To chápu. A rozumím nyní také tomu proč Petr tuhle říkal na schodech Punt'ovi: Člověče Punt'o, pamatuj si přece, jak se jmenuješ!

I get it. And I understand now too why the other day Peter was saying to Punt'a on the stairs: Punt'a Boy, remember now what your name is.

* * *

Proč jdeš tak pozdě?

Why are you so late?

Protože jsem měl práci po práci. Už jsem se chystal jít domů, když si vedoucí naší kanceláře vzpomněl, že jsme ještě neposlali jeden důležitý dopis někam do Ameriky, který jsme měli poslat už včera. Nedalo se nic dělat. Vedoucí musel rychle dopis napsat česky, protože neumí anglicky, a já jsem jej hned musel přeložit. Bez toho dopisu jsme prostě nemohli odejít. Stává se to zřídka, že musíme zůstat v kanceláři po praci, ale když se to stane, znamená to obyčejně, že ztratíme pár hodin volného času.

Because I had to stay after work. I was getting ready to go home when the manager of our office remembered that we hadn't yet sent out an important letter to someplace in America, which we should have sent out yesterday. It couldn't be helped. The manager had to write the letter quickly in Czech because he doesn't know English, and I had to translate it immediately. We just couldn't leave without that letter. It rarely happens; but when it happens that we have to stay in the office after work, it usually means that we lose a couple hours of free time.

Já jsem nedávno takhle ztratil skoro celý večer. Napsal jsem ráno na stroji několik dlouhých dopisů. Než jsem odpoledne odešel z práce, chtěl jsem je ještě ukázat jednomu kolegovi. Přitom mi tři z nich spadly na zem. Zem byla špinavá, a tak jsem si musel sednout k psacímu stroji a znovu je všechny napsat. To ovšem trvalo chvíli. Konečně jsem skončil. A víte, co se stalo? Všiml jsem si, že jsem skoro všechny dopisy něčím umazal. Den předtím mi totiž namazali psací stroj a já, jak jsem pospíchal, jsem nedával dobrý

I recently lost almost a whole evening this way. In the morning I typed several long letters. In the afternoon before I left work, I just wanted to show them to a colleague. In the process three of them fell on the floor. The floor was dirty, and so I had to sit down at the typewriter and retype them all. That took a while, of course. I finally finished. And do you know what happened? I noticed that I had smeared almost all of them with something. The day before they had just oiled my typewriter and,

pozor. Nevím, jak jsem to udělal, ale skoro na každém papíře byla skvrna. Všechno jsem ovšem musel napsat ještě jednou. Tentokrát už to bylo v pořádku, ale domů jsem tehdy přišel velmi pozdě. Nechci na to ani myslet.	as I was in a hurry, I wasn't paying enough attention. I don't know how I did it, but there was a smear on almost every sheet. Of course, I had to retype everything once again. This time it was all right, but I came home then very late. I don't even want to think about it.

READING SELECTION

Slečna Krámská ve volném čase maluje. A maluje dobře. Všiml jsem si, že v poslední době udělala několik docela zajímavých obrazů. Jsou to zvláštní, moderní skladby z barev. Jsou vlastně velmi jednoduché, protože na nich jsou jen velké nebo malé skvrny různých barev, ale jsou přece velmi účinné. Aspoň si to myslím. Slečna Krámská má totiž jemný smysl pro barvy. Její zelené a žluté jsou zvlášť dobré. Mám někdy dojem, že v těch obrazech vidím různé scény—voňavou letní louku, děti na ulici nebo bílé ptáky nad čistou vodou. Tak jsou živé. A přitom je to jen řada skvrn, které leží jedna vedle druhé jen tak, bez nějakého zvláštního pořádku.

* * *

Pane Němec, nemáte zdání, kdy se pan správce vrátí domů? Snažím se ho najít už celé odpoledne. Mám potíže s koupelnou. Nemám žádnou teplou vodu. Ráno jsem se nemohl ani dobře umýt. Jestli tedy pana správce někde uvidíte, řekněte mu, že ho nutně potřebuji. Budu vám za to vděčný.

* * *

Poslechni, ta Jarmila má opravdu výborný hlas. Slyšel jsem ji včera večer zpívat u Milana a musím říci, že na mne udělala velký dojem. Má příjemný silný hlas, který jasně zní. Jestli se bude ještě pár let učit, bude jednou zpívat někde v opeře. Zazpívala nám několik Brahmsových věcí a já mám jednu z nich na pásu. Jestli chceš, zahraji ti ji. Věř mi, budeš se divit. Něco tak krásného jsi už dlouho neslyšel.

* * *

Jiří musel půjčit bratrovi, který se jmenuje Jan, psací stroj. Janův psací stroj totiž přestal psát právě když Jan dělal nějakou důležitou práci. Jan měl ovšem štěstí. Nemusel se dlouho zdržovat a mohl si zase hned sednout ke stroji. Ale nebylo to přece tak jednoduché. Protože Jan nebyl na bratrův stroj zvyklý, často se pletl a tím ztrácel čas. Trvalo to celé tři hodiny, než byl s prací u konce a ten večer už ovšem nemohl dělat nic jiného. A on měl tehdy plné ruce různé práce. Když konečně napsal poslední větu na poslední straně, zasmál se a řekl Jiřímu: "Jak jsem někde četl: Poznej svůj psací stroj! Někdy je to právě tak důležité jako vědět, o čem má člověk psát."

* * *

Kdykoli se podívám na své auto, uvědomím si, že je opravdu potřebuji. Ani ne tak proto, že pořád někde musím brzo a včas, ale spís proto, že bez něho mi chybí něco, na co se mohu zlobit. Ačkoli se často stává, že mi auto jezdí, někdy se mi také stane, že mi přestane jezdit. To se obyčejně stane, když právě na něčem důležitém pracuji. Na tokové chvíle já bezděčně čekám. Tehdy mi totiž nikdo nemůže říci, že nemám pravdu, když říkám, že život není ani lehký ani jednoduchý. V takových chvílích mám dokonalý důvod k tomu být nespokojený. Tehdy je prostě celá pravda na mé straně, a o to ovšem jde. A tak doufám, že pochopíte proč říkám, že své auto potřebuji. Občas mi pomáhá mít pravdu. Že přeháním? Ano, ale jen trochu.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. How is it possible that the heating isn't working again (Use už)? 2. I assure you that everything I'm telling you is the truth. 3. Tell it, please, also to all your colleagues. 4. That, unfortunately, was never the question (Use an idiom here). 5. Try ("Give it a try")to pronounce it this way. 6. Don't go (2pl.) to his place, I'll call him immediately. 7. Don't buy (2sg.) these white roses; they're not fragrant. 8. We never had trouble (Use pl.) with that other boss. 9. Watch out (2sg.); it's usually dark donwstairs. 10. Previously he showed up here only on rare occasions (adv.). 11. Somebody dirtied my coat. 12. Write (2pl.) slowly and carefully. 13. Don't hurry (2pl.), they still won't be there anyway (Use stejně). 14. After all you can't go to the restaurant without money. 15. Although it was summer, the air in the room was chilly (Translate: the room was full of chilly air.).

16. Mr. Valouch, have you already written to Peter? 17. I've forgotten his original name, but I don't think he was called Němec. 18. Please have him look at it once more. 19. Professor, does it bother you that the typewriter is a different color? 20. That was simply a painful scene. 21. All the other kinds are not so fine. 22. What was he telling you there (Use the alternative verb for *vypravovat* and use *zase* for there.)? 23. I think you've gained weight since I saw you last. 24. I have never in my life had such good fortune as today. 25. Man, that was fun! 26. Your tape recorder needs oiling (Use the infinitive for "oiling"). 27. She arrived in a yellow hat and a black dress. 28. Go (2sg.) to the living room (Use "room") and bring me my glasses from there. 29. Don't be angry (2sg.), but I don't know how to lie. 30. They were laughing, but I don't think they were enjoying themselves. 31. Don't forget (2sg.) to show us the rest of the pictures too. 32. You must play this composition differently. 33. Jiří, I can never be such an optimist as you. 34. How many tapes do you need yet? 35. Never allow (2pl.) Spot to run around in the yard. 36. Be reasonable and stop (2sg.) thinking about that (Use *na* + Acc.). 37. Watch out (2pl.), hold it with your hands; otherwise it will fall on the ground. 38. At that time I didn't yet comprehend that nothing could be done. 39. Before you go (2pl.), sing us something else that is short (Omit the words "that is"). 40. Next to her he looks like a perfect parent. 41. Go (2pl.) directly into the living room, I'll join you there immediately (Use *přijít* + *za* + Instr.). 42. Karel, don't try anything and don't lose time. 43. We'll soon send you even the latest results. 44. The manager didn't tell you everything; every apartment doesn't have as pretty a bathroom as this one. 45. Instead of what will they play that opera of Mozart's? 46. In each family there is at least one pessimist. 47. She assured me that she was satisfied, but still she got angry when she heard how expensive it was. 48. Even the other side was full of black and red smudges. 49. Pronounce (2pl.) each word slowly and out loud. 50. It is not always possible to be a hero and sometimes it is pointless. 51. In what country were you last year? 52. Do you know any really effective remedy against a cold? 53. Translate it differently; this sentence bothers me here. 54. Unfortunately, my hands are tied (Translate "are not free"). 55. From the window opposite there came (Use "resounded") a child's singing.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Barvy a obrazy.
2. Psací stroj, který nepíše.
3. Proč jste nebo nejste optimista.
4. Páni správcové a páni vedoucí.
5. Komu rád píšete dopisy?
6. Jaká jména dáváte lidem, které dobře znáte?
7. Už jste někdy něco přeložil?
8. Máte dost volného času?
9. Legrace s dětmi.
10. O co vám vlastně v životě jde?
11. Pamatujete si jména všech svých kolegů?
12. Jaké štěstí jste měl v poslední době?
13. Co vyslovujete špatně a co vyslovujete dobře česky?
14. Jakou vodou a jakým mýdlem se myjete?
15. Stroje a jejich místo v moderním životě.
16. Potíže se zbytečnými věcmi.
17. Jak často musíte pracovat také večer?
18. Na co dáváte pozor při procházkách po ulicích?
19. Slyšel jste někdy svůj hlas z pásu? Poznal jste jej?
20. Jste spokojený s výsledky své práce?
21. Vzduch ve velkých městech.
22. Je možné žít bez peněz?
23. Kdo byl vaším hrdinou, když jste byl malý?
24. Co vás zlobí na lidech?
25. Hrál jste někdy na opravdové scéně?
26. Bojíte se tmy?

LESSON XII

VOCABULARY

anekdota(f)	joke, anecdote
banka(f)	bank
budík[1](m)	alarm-clock
cena(f)	price, prize
číslo(n)(Gen.pl. čísel)	number, numeral, size, copy
délka(f)(Gen.pl. délek)	length
dosud(adv.)	up to now, hitherto
dřív(e)(adv.)	before, once, first
elektrický	electric
haléř(m)	heller, penny
hlavně(adv.)	mainly, primarily, chiefly
hodiny(f)(Plural only)	clock
chyba(f)	mistake, error, blunder
kolikátý? (See Grammar Analysis)	what? which? (of a series)
konkrétní[2]	concrete, particular
koruna(f)	crown
kuchyně(f)	kitchen, cuisine
kvůli + Dat.	on account of, because of, for the sake of
měnit (II,i)(See změnit)	to change
měřit (II,i)(See změřit)	to measure, take measurements
míra(f)(Gen.pl. měr)	measure
naděje(f)	hope
náhoda(f)	chance
napřed(adv.)	before, in front, ahead
narozeniny(f)(Plural only)	birthday
no ne! (interjection)	Oh, really! You don't say! (expression of wonder, surprise)
oba, obě (See Grammar Analysis)	both

osud(m)	fate, destiny
počítat (I,i)(See spočítat)	to count, figure up, reckon
podle + Gen.	according to
pochybovat (VII,i)(+ o + Loc.) (See zapochybovat)	to doubt, have doubts (about)
politický	political
použít[3](VIII,p)(+ Ge.)(See používat)	to use, make use of, employ
používat[3](I,i)(+ Ge.)(See použít)	to use, make use of, employ
předevčírem (adv.)	the day before yesterday
půlnoc(f)(Loc.pl. -ích, Instr.pl. -emi, Loc.pl. -ích)	midnight
řádka(f)(Gen.pl. řádek)	line (of print)
schůzka(f)(Gen.pl. schůzek)	appointment, engagement, date
slušný	proper, decent, fair
spočítat (I,p)(See počítat)	to count, figure up, reckon
spoustu (quantifier)	plenty, a lot, a great deal
správný	correct, right
široký	broad, wide
šířka(f)(Gen.pl. šířek)	breadth, width
teprv/teprve (adv.)	only (no sooner than)
úspěch(m)	success
váha(f)(Gen.pl. vah)	weight, scales (both váha and váhy)
vejít(Va ,p)(conjugates like jít) (See vcházet)	to go in, enter, get in
vejít se(Va ,p)(conjugates like jít) (See Grammar Analysis)	to hold,contain (liquids), to fit
vězeň/vězň(m)(Nom.pl. vězňové)	prisoner, captive
vcházet (III,i)(See vejít)	to go in, enter, get in
výška(f)(Gen.pl. výšek)	height
zapochybovat (VII,p)(+ o + Loc.) (See zapochybovat)	to doubt, have doubts (about)
zdůraznit (II,p)(See zdůrazňovat)	to stress,emphasize, point out
zdůrazňovat (VII,i)(See zdůraznit)	to stress, emphasize, point out
zjistit (II,p)(See zjišt'ovat)	to find out, ascertain, verify

zjišt'ovat (VII,i)(See zjistit)	to find out, ascertain, verify
změnit (II,p)(See měnit)	to change
změřit (II,p)(See měřit)	to measure, take measurements
způsob(m)	way, manner, fashion

1 This noun may also be used as an animate noun. In that case its genitive and accusative singular ends in -a.

2 Note that both konkrétní and zvláštní may be translated by the word "particular" with different connotations. Konkrétní has the connotation "specific," while zvláštní has the connotation "special."

3 In spite of the fact that there is a morphological boundary between po and u in použít/používat, no glottal stop is pronounced between these two vowels; and they are articulated as a diphthong.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

The Numerals (Declension)

The student will recall that the numeral "one" was presented as the particularizing pronoun jeden in Lesson VII, where the entire declensional pattern can be found. The next numeral dva (two) and the semantically related quantifier oba (both) exhibit a declensional pattern that reflects old dual forms.

	masculine	feminine/neuter
Nom/Acc	dva oba	dvě obě
Gen/Loc	dvou	obou
Dat/Instr	dvěma	oběma

The numerals "three" and "four" may also be grouped together because of the close similarity of their paradigmatic forms.

	"three"	"four"
Nom/Acc	tři	čtyři
Gen.	tří	čtyř
Dat.	třem	čtyřem
Instr.	třemi	čtyřmi
Loc.	třech	čtyřech

The numerals "five" to "nineteen" and units of ten have a greatly simplified declension consisting of two forms only, one for the direct cases, nominative and accusative, and the other for the indirect or oblique case forms. The examples below include all slightly irregular or alternative case forms found among these particular numerals.

	5	9	10	11
Nom/Acc	pět	devět	deset	jedenáct
Other	pěti	devíti	deseti/desíti	jedenácti

	20	30	40	50
Nom/Acc	dvacet	třicet	čtyřicet	padesát
Other	dvaceti/dvacíti	třiceti/třicíti	čtyřiceti/čtyřicíti	padesáti

The numerals sto (one hundred) and tisíc (one thousand) represent a neuter noun and a masculine noun, respectively. Note how they deviate from the regular nominal declensions. The alternative plural forms tisíců, tisícům, and tisících are nonnumerical variants meaning "thousands," i.e., "a great quantity." In the singular the alternative instrumental form, tisícem, is used strictly as a noun. (See page 215 of this lesson.)

	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
N	sto	sta	tisíc	tisíce
G	sta	set	tisíce	tisíců/tisíc
D	stu	stům	tisíci	tisícům/tisíci
A	sto	sta	tisíc	tisíce
I	stem	sty	tisícem/tisíci	tisíci
L	stu	stech	tisíci	tisících/tisíci

The numerals milion(m)(one million), miliarda(f)(one billion), and bilion(m)(one trillion) are all nouns and are declined exactly as one would expect.

At this point it is convenient to speak also about the nonnumerical quantifiers that decline. An exhaustive inventory of such items appears in the table below.

Nom/Acc	mnoho	několik	kolik	tolik
Other	mnoha	několika	kolika	tolika

Other quantifiers like půl (one-half), čtvrt (one-quarter), hodně, spoustu, málo, dost, trochu, and pár (a few) are indeclinable in Czech.

The Numerals (Formation)

Learn how to construct any Czech numeral. The following lists should be more than adequate for this task. The numerals from one to twenty merely require listing. The numerals from eleven to nineteen are built up from the units plus the preposition na plus a severely contracted form of the number deset. Note only that sedm and osm are frequently pronounced "sedum" and "osum."

1 jeden, jedno, jedna
2 dva, dvě
3 tři
4 čtyři
5 pět
6 šest
7 sedm

11 jedenáct
12 dvanáct
13 třináct
14 čtrnáct
15 patnáct
16 šestnáct
17 sedmnáct

8	osm	18	osmnáct
9	devět	19	devatenáct
10	deset	20	dvacet

From twenty on all groups of ten may be formed in three different ways The left-hand column below represents the most formal expression of these numbers, the middle column the preferred form in the literary language, and the right-hand column the colloquial form. Note that the numeral dvaadvacet has a glottal stop between dva and a and that třiadvacet and čtyřiadvacet are sounded as if they were written "třijadvacet" and "čtyřijadvacet."

21	dvacet jeden, jedno, jedna	jedenadvacet	dvacetjedna
22	dvacet dva, dvě	dvaadvacet	dvacetdva
23	dvacet tři	třiadvacet	dvacettři
24	dvacet čtyři	čtyřiadvacet	dvacetčtyři
25	dvacet pět	pětadvacet	dvacetpět
26	dvacet šest	šestadvacet	dvacetšest
27	dvacet sedm	sedmadvacet	dvacetsedum
28	dvacet osm	osmadvacet	dvacetosum
29	dvacet devět	devětadvacet	dvacetdevět

The units of ten beyond twenty are listed below, as well as a sampling of numerals from 101 to 199. In the latter case only the two possible literary variants are given.

30	třicet
40	čtyřicet
50	padesát
60	šedesát
70	sedmdesát
80	osmdesát
90	devadesát

101	sto jeden, jedno, jedna
102	sto dva, dvě
112	sto dvanáct
123	sto dvacet tři / sto třiadvacet
134	sto třicet čtyři / sto čtyřiatřicet
145	sto čtyřicet pět / sto pětačtyřicet
156	sto padesát šest / sto šestapadesát
167	sto šedesát sedm / sto sedmašedosát
178	sto sedmdesát osm / sto osmasedmdesát
189	sto osmdesát devět / sto devětaosmdesát

The hundreds and numerals from 1001 to 1999 appear below. In both cases the student will observe some of the syntactic requirements of the numerals. The sequence dvě stě is a special case because it reveals an old dual form of sto; but tři and čtyři are seen to govern the nominative plural, and higher numerals the genitive plural. The forms jedenáct set, dvanáct set, etc., are practically used in Czech only up to devatenáct set.

200	dvě stě
300	tři sta
400	čtyři sta
500	pět set
600	šest set
700	sedm set

1001	tisíc jeden, jedno, jedna
1100	tisíc (jedno) sto/jedenáct set
1202	tisíc dvě stě dva, dvě/dvánáct set dva, dvě
1313	tisíc tři sta třináct/třináct set třináct
1424	tisíc čtyři sta dvacet čtyři/čtrnáct set čtyřiadvacet
1535	tisíc pět set třicet pět/patnáct set pětatřicet

800	osm set	1646	tisíc šest set čtyřicet šest/šestnáct set šestačtyřic
900	devět set	1757	tisíc sedm set padesát sedm/sedmnáct set sedmapadesát
1000	tisíc	1868	tisíc osm set šedesát osm/osmnáct set osmašedesát
		1979	tisíc devět set sedmdesát devět/devatenáct set devětasedmdesát

The thousands and higher numerals illustrate even more dramatically the syntactic behavior of the numerals. Note carefully that, when two numerals are juxtaposed in a compound numeral, it is the last member in the juxtaposed unit that governs the following numeral. As expected, jeden, jedno, jedna require nominative singular, dva, tři, čtyři nominative plural, and higher numerals genitive plural.

2 000	dva tisíce
3 000	tři tisíce
4 000	čtyři tisíce
5 000	pět tisíc
21 000	dvacet jeden tisíc/jedenadvacet tisíc
92 000	devadesát dva tisice/dvaadevadesát tisíc
153 000	sto padesát tři tisíce/sto třiapadesát tisíc
244 000	dvě stě čtyřicet čtyři tisíce/dvě stě čtyřiačtyřicet tisíc
875 000	osm set sedmdesát pět tisíc/osm set pětasedmdesát tisíc
999 999	devět set devadesát devět tisíc devět set devadesát devět

1 000 000	milion
2 000 000	dva miliony
3 000 000	tři miliony
4 000 000	čtyři miliony
5 000 000	pět milionů
1 000 000 000	miliarda
2 000 000 000	dvě miliardy
3 000 000 000	tři miliardy
4 000 000 000	čtyři miliardy
5 000 000 000	pět miliard
1 000 000 000 000	bilion

Exercise

Read the following numbers in Czech.

29	31	38
42	47	53
55	64	67
74	86	95
101	113	121
199	200	203
302	453	511
627	719	887
961	1003	1013

1113
4222
12.462
1,863.733
1.500,000.000

2856
5619
28.006
2,011.613
43.850,000.000

3061
9999
116.521
7,902.091
86.750,000 000

The Numerals (Counting)

In the process of counting there is a tendency to lose what gender distinctions there are among the Czech numerals. The distinction in gender is only partially observed in the numbers "one" and "two" even when there is a palpable connection between the counting process and the gender of objects being counted. Thus, the Czechs will begin counting in the following way:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
jeden	jedna	jeden	jedna
dva	dvě	dva	dva

All compound numerals containing "one" and "two" will always have the following invariable forms regardless of the gender of the reference noun:

dvacet jedna (dvacetjedna)	sto jedna	tisíc jedna
dvacet dva (dvacetdva)	sto dva	tisíc dva

When no particular objects are being counted or when mixed objects are being counted the numerals "one" and "two" may be rendered in one of the following three ways:

jeden, dva; jedna, dvě; jedna, dva

The Numerals (Arithmetical Operations)

It is appropriate at this point for the student to learn how the Czechs verbalize the basic arithmetical processes. The same numerals used in counting are used in arithmetic with the exception that *jedna* always renders "one" and *dvě* always renders "two" in the simple numbers.

Addition (Sčítání)

This process may be expressed in two ways: 1) first addend + the conjunction *a* + second addend + the verb "to be," and 2) first addend + *plus* + second addend + the verbal form *rovná se* (equals). In the first method the sum is obviously the subject because two,three, four" require the plural verb (all other numerals use the singular). In the second method the form *rovná se* is used with all numerals.

Tři a jedna jsou čtyři.
Pět a dvě je sedm.
Deset a dvanáct je dvacet dva.
Dvě plus jedna rovná se tři.
Šest plus osm rovná se čtrnáct.
Sedmnáct plus patnáct rovná se třicet dva.

Subtraction (Odčítání)

This process also may be expressed in two ways: 1) the minuend + bez + the subtrahend in the genitive case + the verb "to be," and 2) the minuend + minus + the subtrahend + the invariable verbal form rovná se. In the first method the numerals "two, three, four," when they function as the difference, again require the plural verb. Note carefully the declension of the numerals after bez; all components of compound numerals except sto are inflected (the colloquial forms dvacetjedna, dvacetdva, etc., are never used in a situation where they may be inflected).

Osm bez čtyř jsou čtyři.
Pětatřicet bez patnácti je dvacet.
Sto dvacet bez sta je dvacet.
Sto padesát bez sto dvaceti pěti (pětadvaceti) je dvacet pět.
Pět set bez dvou set je tři sta.
Dva tisíce bez tisíce čtyř set je šest set.
Deset minus sedm rovná se tři.
Šedesát pět minus třicet pět rovná se třicet.

Multiplication (Násobení)

Multiplication is expressed in two ways: 1) the multiplicand + the invariable past passive participle násobeno (multiplied) + the multiplier in the instrumental case + the verb "to be," and 2) the multiplier + the suffix -krát (times) + the multiplicand + the verb "to be." Note that -krát is added to the simple numbers jeden, dva: jedenkrát, dvakrát. At the level of compound numbers one may find the variants dvacet jedenkrát, dvacet dvakrát; dvacetjednakrát, dvacetdvakrát; and jedenadvacetkrát, dvaadvacetkrát with preference given to the latter forms. Again all components of compound numerals except sto are inflected when the instrumental case is demanded. If the product is "two, three, or four," the verb is in the plural number.

Pět násobeno pěti je dvacet pět.
Dvanáct násobeno čtyřmi je čtyřicet osm.
Deset násobeno dvaceti dvěma je dvě stě dvacet.
Dvacet násobeno stem je dva tisíce.
Tři násobeno sto třemi je tři sta devět.
Jedenkrát tři jsou tři.
Dvakrát dvě jsou čtyři.
Devětadvacetkrát pětadvacet je sedm set pětadvacet.

Division (Dělení)

Division can be expressed in only one way: the dividend + the invariable past passive participle dēleno (divided) + the divisor in the instrumental case + the verb "to be." The inflection takes place just as in the case of multiplication; and, if the quotient is "two, three, or four," the verb is plural.

Dvě děleno jednou jsou dvě.
Dvanáct děleno třemi jsou čtyři.
Sedmdesát pět děleno patnácti je pět.
Patnáct set děleno stem je patnáct.

Exercise

Read the following equations in Czech.

$8 + 5 = 13$
$17 + 19 = 36$
$36 + 21 = 57$
$45 + 33 = 78$
$58 + 44 = 102$
$73 + 76 = 149$
$132 + 181 = 313$
$243 + 368 = 611$

$7 - 4 = 3$
$18 - 11 = 7$
$27 - 12 = 15$
$38 - 18 = 20$
$53 - 39 = 14$
$82 - 26 = 56$
$160 - 46 = 114$
$350 - 110 = 240$

$2 \times 0 = 0$
$4 \times 3 = 12$
$6 \times 5 = 30$
$9 \times 4 = 36$
$11 \times 11 = 121$
$15 \times 12 = 180$
$21 \times 18 = 378$
$36 \times 36 = 1296$

$8 \div 4 = 2$
$25 \div 5 = 5$
$100 \div 10 = 10$
$483 \div 21 = 23$
$1428 \div 34 = 42$
$5661 \div 111 = 51$
$9660 \div 46 = 210$
$181{,}500 \div 330 = 550$

Fractions

With the exception of polovina (one-half) all fractions in Czech are formed by the addition of the suffix -ina to the basic cardinal numeral or to the ordinal in a few cases. All the products are feminine nouns and are inflected accordingly when used with other numbers.

polovina
třetina
čtvrtina
pětina
šestina
sedmina
osmina
devítina

desetina
jedenáctina
dvacetina
dvaatřicetina
padesátina
setina
stopadesátina
tisícina

Note how the following fractions and decimals are read.

2/3	dvě třetiny
3/4	tři čtvrtiny
7/8	sedm osmin
11/20	jedenáct dvacetin
22/50	dvaadvacet padesátin
17/100	sedmnáct setin
221/1000	dvě stě dvacet jedna tisícina
1.2	jedna celá dvě (desetiny)
7.8	sedm celých osm (desetin)
3.01	tři celé nula jedna / tři celé jedna setina
6.254	šest celých dvě stě padesát čtyři (tisíciny)
7.075	sedm celých nula sedmdesát pět / sedm celých sedmdesát pět tisícin

Exercise

Read off in Czech the fractions and decimals listed below.

2/5
3/8
1/9
5/12
4/18
6/33
21/45
33/121

.03
1.7
2.2
3.006
8.56
11.375
101.07
152.654

Numerals (Their Syntax in Noun Phrases)

After reading the preceding paragraphs the student will discover some repetition in this section, but he should pay close attention to the details here. With one exception all parts of all compound numerals decline, and in the oblique cases nouns accompanying numerals always agree with the latter in case.

The syntactic behavior of "one" has been adequately described in Lesson VII; its formal use is similar to that of the particularizing pronoun jeden. Compound numerals with jeden, jedno, jedna as the last element decline all parts and govern following nouns or adjectives in the singular and in the appropriate case. Such constructions are, however, bookish; and Czech speakers prefer forms like jedenadvacet, jedenapadesát, etc., or indeclinable colloquial forms like dvacetjedna, sedmdesátjedna, stojedna, tisícjedna. Constructions like those found in the following examples should be noted but considered unusual by the student.

Přeložil jsem dvacet jednu větu.
(I translated twenty-one sentences.)

Dům stál před stem jedním krásným stromem.
(The house stood before one hundred and one
beautiful trees.)

Tyhle knihy patří třiceti jednomu studentovi.
(These books belong to thirty-one students.)

The numerals *oba/obě*, *dva/dvě*, *tři*, *čtyři* and compound numerals in which these words constitute the last component are used with accompanying nouns and adjectives in the plural number, and both numerals and nominal elements appear in the appropriate case. Here too there is a great tendency to use numeral forms like *dvaadvacet*, *třiadvacet*, *čtyřiačtyřicet* and some tendency to employ indeclinable colloquial forms like *dvacetdva*, *třicettři*, *čtyřicetčtyři*.

Obě jejich auta přijela k našemu domu.
(Both their cars drove up to our house.)

Učitel odpověděl všem těm dvaceti čtyřem studentům.
(The teacher answered all those twenty-four students.)

Bojíte se všech těch třiceti dvou hochů?
(Are you afraid of all those thirty-two boys?)

Bydlíme blízko všech těch tří míst.
(We live near all three of those places.)

Kdo ví, co najdeme za tamtěmi čtyřmi dveřmi?
(Who knows what we will find behind those four doors
over there?)

All other declinable numerals and quantifiers require the genitive plural of accompanying nouns and adjectives when the entire phrase is in the direct cases, nominative or accusative. When the entire phrase is in one of the oblique cases, then all components of the phrase including the numeral are in the appropriate case. Here also there is some tendency in the literary language to use the indeclinable colloquial forms like *dvacetpět*, *třicetšest*, *padesátdevět*, etc.

Komu jste půjčil těch dvanáct židlí?
(To whom did you lend those twelve chairs?)

Kam jdeš se všemi těmi sedmi českými knihami?
(Where are you going with all those seven Czech books?)

Voda byla ve všech těch čtyřiceti šesti / šestačtyřiceti domech.
(There was water in all those forty-six homes.)

Vrátili jsme ty knihy všem těm stu padesáti studentům.
(We returned the books to all those one hundred and
fifty students.)

Pracovali jsme se všemi těmi tisíci lidmi.
(We worked with all those one thousand people.)

Pomohli jsme mnoha nešt'astným lidem.
(We helped many unfortunate people.)

Po několika dnech se počasí změnilo.
(After several days the weather changed.)

Jeli jste tam opravdu tolika parky?
(Did you really go there by way of so many parks?)

Numerals like *milion*, *miliarda*, and *bilion* behave like nouns and always govern a directly following noun in the genitive plural no matter what case the numeral itself is in. The numerals *sto* and *tisíc* may also function in this way as nouns.

Amerika ztratila v té válce dvacet čtyři miliardy dolarů.
(America lost twenty-four billion dollars in that war.)

Napsal knihu se třemi miliony slov.
(He wrote a book with three million words.)

Co uděláme s těmi sedmi miliony korun?
(What will we do with those three million crowns?)

Zeptal jsem se na to sta hudebníků.
(I asked one hundred musicians about that.)

Přednášel před tisícem lidí.
(He lectured before one thousand people.)

The colloquial indeclinable numerals and the indeclinable quantifiers are used with nouns in the case demanded by the use of the whole phrase in the sentence. The numerals always require plural number, but the quantifiers may be used with either singular or plural depending on the intended meaning. The numeral *sto* may also be used as an indeclinable both before nouns and in compound numerals. This means that *sto*, when declined, may function either as a regular numeral or as a noun and that, when it is not declined, it functions as a numeral.

Jel jsem na dovolenou s dvacettři přáteli.
(I went on vacation with twenty-three friends.)

Za pět let jsem hrál v padesátpět hrách.
(In five years I took part in fifty-five plays.)

Mluvili jsme o stojedna věcech.
(We talked about one hundred and one things.)

Po půl hodině jsem odešel.
(After a half hour I left.)

Bratr věří málo lidem.
(My brother believes few people.)

Před pár dny jsem ho viděl na ulici.
(A few days ago I saw him on the street.)

Numerals (Their Syntactic Behavior with Predicates)

Numerals whose last element is jeden govern a singular verb and singular predicate adjective in the literary style when they function as subject of the sentence. Again such numerical expressions are used in very formal language, and they are practically always replaced in less formal situations by numerals like jedenadvacet and dvacetjedna.

Tady ve městě pracuje jen dvacet jeden muž.
(Only twenty-one men work here in town.)

V divadle, které znám, je aspoň padesát jeden hudebník šťastný.
(In the theater I know at least fifty-one musicians are happy.)

Sto jeden Čech bude doktorem.
(One hundred and one Czechs will be doctors.)

When noun phrases containing the numerals oba, dva, tři, čtyři function as subjects, all predicate elements appear in the plural.

Všichni čtyři učitelé zhubli.
(All four teachers lost weight.)

Ti čtyřicet tři profesoři byli úspěšní.
(Those forty-three professors were successful.)

Ti sto dva jsou optimisty.
(Those one hundred and two are (i.e., have become) optimists.)

When noun phrases contain other numerals and quantifiers and function as subjects, they govern a neuter singular verb and predicate adjectives and nouns in the genitive plural.

Pět set padesát studentů pracuje v těch kancelářích.
(Five hundred and fifty students work in these offices.)

Všech těch pět stromů je zdravých.
(All those five trees are healthy.)

Všech sto třicet sedm odpovědí bylo správných.
(All one hundred and thirty-seven answers were correct.)

Jeho šest bratrů bylo doktorů / doktory.
(His six brothers were doctors.)

Všech dvě stě návštěvníků je žen.
(All two hundred visitors are women.)

Málo zubařů je Čechů.
(Few dentists are Czechs.)

In a less formal style with numerals and quantifiers of this latter type when the predicate consists of a noun, Czech speakers will resort to a construction composed of to jsou/byli plus the nominative plural of the predicate noun.

> Těch pět mužů, to jsou jeho přátelé.
> (These five men are his friends.)
>
> Všech těch dvanáct doktorů, to byli moji kolegové.
> (All these twelve doctors were my colleagues.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. At the end there are thirty-four pages missing.
2. The teacher praised all twenty-one of those pupils.
3. After two hours of heavy work he felt tired.
4. All thirty-seven students greeted the two visitors.
5. She counted up to three, and then she suddenly stopped.
6. Will those four children never stop shouting?
7. The opera is ten to fifteen (Translate "ten fifteen") minutes from there.
8. I sat down with those twelve girls and began to speak Czech.
9. After all, the nine of you couldn't have ridden in that small car.
10. The lecture lasted four hours.
11. After a hundred years no one will remember it.
12. My colleagues took part in both plays.
13. Only five of them are his daughters, the rest are visiting here.
14. Her brother didn't want to cause his three friends any concern.
15. Have those two acquantainces of yours (pl.) from Prague arrived already?
16. All five girls were blondes.
17. In the park beyond the town we saw hundreds of interesting trees.
18. All seven men who disappeared were dentists.
19. All nine of you come at the same time!
20. Sister didn't want to stay with those six children.
21. When you speak of one thousand seconds, just how many minutes is that?
22. All five windows were open.
23. Don't send many of those large sizes; no one is buying them.
24. I bought a typewriter for my two sons.
25. He was still here ten minutes ago.
26. Many sick people need those kinds (Use takový in the plural) of medicine.
27. Did you (2pl.) notice the four pencils in the drawer?
28. We are loaning our car to a few friends.
29. How many sentences on this page don't you (2pl.) understand?
30. I've been waiting for you here now for five solid (Use celý) hours.

Ordinal Numerals (Formation)

The ordinal numerals are all adjectives; three of them, *první*, *třetí*, and *tisící* are soft, all the rest are hard. Learn how to form all the ordinals from the display below.

první
druhý
třetí
čtvrtý
pátý
šestý
sedmý
osmý
devátý
desátý

jedenáctý
dvanáctý
třináctý
čtrnáctý
patnáctý
šestnáctý
sedmnáctý
osmnáctý
devatenáctý

dvacátý
třicátý
čtyřicátý
padesátý
šedesátý
sedmdesátý
osmdesátý
devadesátý
stý

The ordinals from twenty-one to ninety-nine may be formed in two ways depending on the ordering of the numerals in the compound. The ordinals from one hundred and one to one hundred and ninty-nine may also appear in two forms depending on whether or not *sto* is inflected.

dvacátý první	jedenadvacátý
čtyřicátý třetí	třiačtyřicátý
šedesátý pátý	pětašedesátý
devadesátý devátý	devětadevadesátý
stý dvacátý první	stodvacátý první
stý třicátý druhý	stotřicátý druhý
stý osmdesátý sedmý	stoosmdesátý sedmý

Multiples of *stý*, *tisící*, and *miliontý* are formed by prefixing the genitive form of the cardinal numeral to the appropriate ordinal.

dvoustý
třístý
čtyřstý
pětistý
šestistý
sedmistý
osmistý
devítistý
tisící

dvoutisící
třítisící
čtyřtisící
pětitisící
desítitisící
dvacetipětitísící
padesátiosmitisící
stotisící
dvousettisící

dvoumiliontý
třímiliontý
čtyřmiliontý
pětimiliontý
čtrnáctimiliontý
třicetišestimiliontý
stomiliontý
stopadesátimiliontý
čtyřsetmiliontý

The interrogative adjective corresponding to the ordinal numerals is *kolikátý*. It questions the numerical value of a specific object or person in an ordered series. Note the following examples.

V kolikáté řadě sedíte?
(In which row are you sitting?)

Kolikátou kávu už pijete?
(How many coffees have you had so far?)

Kolikáté už máte auto?
(How many cars have you had?)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences illustrating ordinal numerals into Czech.

1. He lives upstairs in the third room on the left.
2. Every thousandth visitor will get some prize.
3. The fifth student in the second row is a friend of mine.
4. If you (2pl.) have counted well, this last step must be the one hundred and first.
5. Please repeat the eleventh sentence.
6. This is probably my one millionth meeting this year.
7. In this third case you (2pl.) will see that you have made a mistake.
8. After the eighth week of his illness he began to lose weight rapidly.
9. The fourth door on the right leads to the yard.
10. Where did we stop reading? On the one hundred and twenty-first page?
11. Does that tenth note have any meaning at all?
12. The sixth drawer is full of her letters.

Time Expressions (Time of Day)

Telling time in Czech presents some complexities that will require the student's close attention. The basic question here is the following:

Kolik je hodin?	What time is it?

The possible answers to this question involve hours, halves and quarters of hours, and minutes. The hours are expressed by the cardinal numerals plus the noun hodina. Note the syntactic behavior of the noun phrases.

Je jedna hodina.
Jsou dvě/tři/čtyři hodiny.
Je pět hodin.
Je dvanáct hodin.

The half hours are expressed by the word půl plus the genitive singular of the hour designated by the ordinal numeral except in the case of the "first" hour which uses the genitive singular of the numeral jedna. This means that when English says "half past two," Czech says "half of the third hour." The quarter hours are expressed by the singular or plural of čtvrt followed by a prepositional phrase consisting of na plus the cardinal numeral designating the next hour. Note that the plural form čtvrti is extremely formal.

Je půl jedné. (It's half past twelve.)
Je půl druhé. (It's half past one.)
Je půl osmé. (It's half past seven.)

Je čtvrt na jednu. (It's a quarter past twelve.)
Je čtvrt na devět. (It's a quarter past eight.)
Je tři čtvrtě(Jsou tři čtvrti) na dvě. (It's a quarter to two.)
Je tři čtvrtě(Jsou tři čtvrti) na jedenáct. (It's a quarter to eleven.)

The usual Czech way of expressing the time in minutes will seem idiosyncratic to English speakers in that it figures the time in relation to quarter-hour intervals. Two alternatives are available to the student depending on whether one figures the time after a quarter-hour interval or before it. Learn both methods.

1) Je pět a tři minuty. (It's three minutes after five.)
Je čtvrt na tři a osm minut. (It's twenty-three minutes after two.)
Je půl jedné a šest minut. (It's twenty-four minutes to one.)
Je tři čtvrtě na čtyři a pět minut. (It's ten minutes to four.)

2) Je za pět minut čtvrt na sedm. (It's ten minutes after six.)
Je za čtyři minuty půl šesté. (It's twenty-six minutes after five.)
Je za sedm minut tři čtvrtě na osm.(It's twenty-two minutes to eight.)
Jsou/je za deset minut dvě. (It's ten minutes to two.)

The twenty-four-hour basis for telling time is used in making all kinds of public announcements: radio time, times of performances, train and airline schedules,etc. Some form of the noun hodina must be used if the time is exactly on the hour; and, if the specific form hodiny is used, the plural verb jsou is required. Zeros in this system may be expressed by the noun nula.

1.15 Je jedna (hodina) patnáct.
2.10 Je (jsou) dvě (hodiny) deset.
10.28 Je deset (hodin) dvacet osm.
12.05 Je dvanáct (hodin) nula pět.
18.00 Je osmnáct hodin. / Je osmnáct nula nula.
24.00 Je čtyřiadvacet hodin. / Jsou dvacet čtyři hodiny.
00.03 Je nula nula nula tři.

The answer to the question: "V kolik hodin to bylo/je/bude?" or the designation of the exact time of day of any action is rendered by the preposition v plus the accusative case. No preposition is used, however, when the designation of minutes involves the preposition za. Study the following examples.

v jednu hodinu
ve dvě hodiny
v jedenáct hodin

v jednu a sedm minut
ve čtvrt na pět a tři minuty
za minutu dvě

v půl třetí
ve čtvrt na tři
ve tři čtvrtě (čtvrti) na šest

v jednu čtyřicet pět
ve třináct čtrnáct
v devatenáct dvacet

Exercise

Verbalize the following times of day in the two Czech systems: the everyday system and the twenty-four-hour system (Each time will have two possible forms in the twenty-four-hour system.).

2:18
9:35
5:15
1:04
6:00
8:20
11:55
3:10
12:30
9:05
4:07
5:40
1:45
7:35
10:31
3:48
2:37
6:21
8:56
12:01
4:30
11:17
7:08
10:12

Time Expressions (Days of the Week)

Learn the days of the week from the list below. The variants pondělek and úterek are used only in oblique cases with prepositions. The word úterý is declined like any neuter noun in -í.

neděle (f)	Sunday
pondělí (n)	Monday
pondělek/pondělk (m)(Gen.sg. -a)	"
úterý (n)	Tuesday
úterek/úterk (m)(Gen.sg. -a)	"
středa (f)	Wednesday
čtvrtek/čtvrtk (m)(Gen.sg. -a)	Thursday
pátek/pátk (m)	Friday
sobota (f)	Saturday

The answer to the question "Kterého dne to bylo?" (On what day was that?) is always expressed by the preposition v plus the accusative case.

v úterý, ve středu, ve čtvrtek, v sobotu

Learn these additional time expressions involving weeks, days of the week and divisions of the days. The latter divisions have the following approximate values in the twenty-four-hour scale:

ráno	3:00 to 9:00 A.M.	odpoledne	12:00 noon to 5:00 P.M.
dopoledne	9:00 A.M. to 12:00 noon	večer	5:00 P.M. to 11:00 P.M.
v poledne	at noon	o půlnoci	at midnight

v noci 11:00 P.M. to 3:00 A.M.

tenhle týden	(this week)	před týdnem	(a week ago)
minulý týden	(last week)	před dvěma týdny	(two weeks ago)
příští týden	(next week)	před několika týdny	(several weeks ago)

za týden	(in a week)
za dva týdny za čtrnáct dní	(in two weeks)
za patnáct týdnů	(in fifteen weeks)

tenhle pátek	(this Friday)
minulé úterý	(last Tuesday)
příští středu	(next Wednesday)

před třemi dny	(three days ago)
před pěti dny	(five days ago)
před sto dny	(one hundred days ago)

za den	(in a day)
za dva dny	(in two days)
v ten den toho dne	(on that day)

dnes odpoledne	(this afternoon)
zítra brzo ráno	(early tomorrow morning)
dnes ráno	(this morning)
včera pozdě ráno	(late yesterday morning)

dnes dopoledne	(this forenoon)
zítra v poledne	(tomorrow noon)
zítra v noci	(tomorrow night)
včera pozdě v noci	(late last night)

v pátek ráno	(Friday morning)
v úterý brzo dopoledne	(on Tuesday early forenoon)
ve středu v poledne	(Wednesday noon)
příští pondělí večer	(next Monday evening)
v neděli o půlnoci	(on Sunday at midnight)
minulý čtvrtek v noci	(last Thursday night)

v jednu (hodinu) odpoledne	(at one o'clock in the afternoon)
v šest (hodin) večer	(at six o'clock in the evening)
příští středu ve tři (hodiny) v noci	(next Wednesday at 3 A.M.)
minulý týden v pátek o půlnoci	(last week on Friday at midnight)

Time Expressions (Months)

Learn the months of the year from the table below. The task of the student will not be facilitated by the fact that the Czechs use early Slavic designations for the months.

leden/ledn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	January
únor (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	February
březen/březn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	March
duben/dubn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	April
květen/květn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	May
červen/červn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	June
červenec/červenc (m)	July
srpen/srpn (m)(Gen.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	August

září(n)	September
říjen/říjn (m)(Gan.sg. -a, Loc.sg. -u)	October
listopad (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	November
prosinec/prosinc (m)	December

The answer to the question "V kterém měsíci to bylo?" (In what month was that?) is expressed by the preposition v plus the locative case.

v lednu, v květnu, v červenci, v září

Learn the following additional time expressions for months.

tenhle měsíc	(this month)	před měsícem	(a month ago)
minulý měsíc	(last month)	před devíti měsíci	(nine months ago)
příští měsíc	(next month)	toho měsíce	(that month)

za měsíc	(in a month)
za dva měsíce	(in two months)
za pět měsíců	(in five months)

na začátku září začátkem září	(at the beginning of September)
na konci října koncem října	(at the end of October)
uprostřed ledna	(in the middle of January)

Time Expressions (Dates)

Dates are expressed by ordinal numerals. If the date follows the verb být or if it refers to a date on which something happens, then it is used in the genitive case and is usually followed by the genitive case of the month. The year is expressed in cardinal numerals and never inflects. As in English the hundreds are used up through nineteen. Multiples of "one" and "two" use invariably jedna and dva. The basic question here is: "Kolikátého je dnes?" (What is the date today?). Note the following examples.

Dnes je úterý patnáctého června devatenáct set sedmdesát jedna.
Včera byl pátek dvacátého čtvrtého října osmnáct set čtyřicet dva.
Včera bylo dvacátého prvního srpna třináct set deset.
To bylo v sobotu třetího dubna sedmnáct set dvacet jedna.
Narodila se dvanáctého května devatenáct set dvacet tři.
Přijeli šestnáctého listopadu patnáct set sedmdesát pět.

When the question of date concerns only the year, then it may take one of three possible forms:

Který rok to bylo? V kterém roce to bylo? Kterého roku to bylo?

And the answer may vary accordingly:

To bylo devatenáct set čtyřicet devět.
To bylo v roce osmnáct set sedmdesát jedna.
To bylo roku devět set šest.

When a date is spoken about in any context other than the above, the date and its month form one noun phrase that is inflected according to its syntactic usage. Note these examples:

Dvacátý osmý říjen je svátek.
Nejezdi před prvním dubnem.
Vzpomínali jsme si na patnáctý květen.

The usual European custom of recording the date in the heading of a letter, for instance, may be written and pronounced in the following ways;

10.7.1970	
10/7 1970	desátého sedmý devatenáct set sedmdesát
10.VII.1970	desátého července devatenáct set sedmdesát
10/VII 1970	

Learn the following additional time expressions referring to years and seasons of the year.

letos tohohle roku v tomhle roce	(this year)
loni minulý rok minulého roku v minulém roce	(last year)
toho roku	(that year)
napřesrok příští rok příštího roku v příštím roce	(next year)

před rokem	(a year ago)	před čtvrt rokem	(a quarter of a year ago)
před dvěma roky	(two years ago)	před půl rokem	(a half a year ago)
před čtyřmi léty	(four years ago)	před tři čtvrtě rokem	(three quarters of a year ago)

za rok	(in a year)	za čtvrt roku	(in a quarter of a year)
za pět let	(in five years)	za půl roku	(in half a year)
za šest roků	(in six years)	za tři čtvrtě roku	(in three quarters of a year)

na začátku / začátkem roku	(at the beginning of the year)
na konci / koncem roku	(at the end of the year)
uprostřed roku	(in the middle of the year)

na jaře	(in spring)	na podzim	(in the fall)
v létě	(in summer)	v zimě	(in winter)
letos na jaře	(this spring)	loni na podzim	(last fall)
letos v létě	(this summer)	loni v zimě	(last winter)

napřesrok na jaře	(next spring)
napřesrok v zimě	(next winter)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences illustrating various time expressions into Czech.

1. On Friday afternoon we walked from three until five.
2. Next Tuesday will be the first of November.
3. We hope that we will finish that before the fifteenth of April.
4. From last Saturday to the day after tomorrow is (Translate "that is") not so long as you think.
5. In the spring of 1945 I was just finishing the university.
6. Last year it didn't rain as much as this year.
7. The sixth of June was a beautiful day.
8. They left there early in the fall, either at the end of September or at the beginning of October.
9. We waited for him until 10:00 on Thursday morning.
10. When were you (2pl.fem.) in America the last time, in fifty-three?
11. The Holans (Holanovi) always go on their vacation in August.
12. On what day is the fourth of July this year?
13. That happened on Monday, the eighteenth of May, 1913.
14. We usually go there every second Tuesday, but in the last three months we haven't been there yet.
15. From 1932 to 1941 I was working in Prague.

Weights and Measures

The metric system provides the standard system of weights and measures in Czechoslovakia. The basic units in the system are the following:

gram (m)	gram (.03527 ounces)(avoirdupois)
metr (m)	meter (39.37 inches)
litr (m)	liter (1.0567 quarts)
ar (m)	are (119.6 sq.yards)

Other units in the system are formed by successive multiples and fractions of ten. The multiples of the basic units are designated by the prefixes deka- (10), hekt(o)-(100), and kilo- (1000). The fractions of the basic units are marked by the prefixes deci- (.1), centi- (.01), and mili- (.001). The units of measure may also be modified by the following adjectives:

čtvereční	square
krychlový / kubický	cubic

While all the derivative units may be formed theoretically by prefixing, only the following units enjoy wide currency:

kilogram
dekagram

kilometr
decimetr
centimetr
milimetr

hektolitr
decilitr
mililitr

hektar

Questions and answers about weight may be phrased in the following ways:

Kolik vážíte?	(How much do you weigh?)
Kolik váží ta kniha?	(How much does that book weigh?)
Jak těžký je ten stůl?	(How heavy is that table?)
Jakou váhu to má?	(What is its weight?)
Vážím sedmdesát pět kilogramů.	(I weigh 75 kilograms.)
Ta kniha váží celé dva kilogramy.	(That book weighs two whole kilograms.)

Questions and answers about liquid measure may be expressed by the verb vejít se. Note particularly that this verb is perfective. Its perfective nature may puzzle English speakers, but it is apparent that Czech speakers present this process as a potentially realizable action.

Kolik vody se vejde do té láhve?
(How much water does that bottle hold?)

Kolik mléka se vejde do té druhé sklenice?
(How much milk does that second glass hold?)

Do téhle láhve se vejdou tři litry vody.
(This bottle holds 3 liters of water.)

Sem se všechna ta voda nevejde.
(All that water won't go in here.)

Questions and answers about measurements may be stated as follows.

Jakou délku to má?	(What is its length?)
Jakou šířku to má?	(What is its width?)
Jakou výšku to má?	(What is its height?)
Jak dlouhý je ten stůl?	(How long is that table?)
Jak jste vysoká?	(How tall are you?)
Jak široké je to okno?	(How wide is the window?)
Kolik měříte?	(How tall are you?)
Kolik měří ten pokoj?	(What is the size of that room?)

Tahle cesta je sto padesát kilometrů dlouhá.
(This road is 150 km. long.)

Karel je sto osmdesát centimetrů vysoký.
(Karel is 180 cm. tall.)

Můj stůl je šedesát pět centimetrů široký.
(My table is 65 cm. wide.)

Tyhle dveře měří osmdesát krát dvě stě deset.
(This door measures 80 by 210.)

Naše zahrádka měří tři sta šedesát čtverečních metrů.
(Our yard measures 360 square meters.)

Milenin pokoj měří devadesát šest krychlových/
kubických metrů.
(Milena's room measures 96 cubic meters.)

Šířka toho okna je metr a půl.
(The width of that window is a meter and a half.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. This glass holds two hundred and fifty grams of water.
2. No dresses will fit her (Use padnout) her because she has gained seve kilograms (Use ztloustnout + o + Acc.).
3. The main street is twelve kilometers long.
4. How much do one and a quarter hectares of land cost in this part of the city?
5. Both trees in front of our house are fifteen meters high.
6. I doubt that that (Use tam) will hold this fifth liter.
7. The only park in town measures eight hectares.
8. How much did the bathroom measure: three by four and a half by five and three quarters or three by four and three quarters by five and a half?
9. The first drawer in the desk measures one hundred and eighty square centimeters.
10. Milena is a small girl; she measures barely one meter and a half.

Collective Numerals (Formation)

Czech collective numerals are either adjectives or nouns in form and function. All such numerals have the ending -er between the root of the numeral and the adjectival or nominal ending. As adjectives they exhibit both long and short forms. The long forms are declined as hard and soft adjectives in all cases and both numbers with the single exception that the hard adjectives are not used at all with animate masculine nouns. Learn the patterns of formation from the following list, and note where the root of the numeral is changed.

dvojí
obojí
několikerý
trojí
čtverý
paterý
šesterý
sedmerý
osmerý
devaterý

desaterý
jedenácterý
dvanácterý
třinácterý
dvacaterý
třicaterý
čtyřicaterý
padesaterý
sterý
tisícerý

The short form adjectives have short vowel endings and only a partial paradigm. They can be formed only in the nominative and accusative, and even here they lack forms for masculine singular and animate masculine plural.

	Singular			Plural		
	Neuter	Feminine		Masc.Inan.	Neuter	Feminine
	N/A	Nom.	Acc.	N/A	N/A	N/A
Soft	troje	troje	troji	troje	troje	troje
Hard	patero	patera	pateru	patery	patera	patery

The noun forms are formed like the hard adjectives above, but they are singular neuter nouns ending in -o and are declined like nouns of that type. There are no noun forms corresponding to the soft adjectives.

čtvero
patero
osmero
desatero
jedenáctero

dvacatero
padesatero
stero
tisícero
několikero

Collective Numerals (Usage)

Collective numerals in Czech have developed various connotations. In the first of these the numerals refer to a given number of different kinds of objects. Both adjectival and nominal collective numerals can be used with this meaning. Adjectival collective numerals may be used first of all in both long and short forms with mass nouns and abstract nouns in the singular.

Pro tohle budeme potřebovat trojí papír.
(For that we shall need three kinds of paper.)

V tomhle případě jde o dvojí/dvoji práci.
(In this case it's a question of two kinds of work.)

V dubnu tady obyčejně máme několikero/několikeré počasí.
(In April here we usually have several kinds of weather.)

Both long and short forms of the adjectival numerals may be used with other nouns in the plural.

Měla ve skříni pateré/patery klobouky.
(She had five kinds of hats in the cabinet.)

Do pokoje nahoře jsme koupili čtveré/čtvery židle.
(For the room upstairs we bought four kinds of chairs.)

V té restauraci dostanete trojí/troje jídla.
(In that restaurant you will get three kinds of food.)

The noun forms of collective numerals are also used with this connotation. Note that the noun forms are always followed by the genitive plural and must be used when there is reference to animate masculine nouns.

Na příští naší schůzi potkáte čtvero doktorů.
(At our next meeting you will meet four different kinds of doctors.)

Na stěnách té banky viselo patero obrazů.
(Five different kinds of pictures were hanging on the walls of that bank.)

Collective numerals may also be employed to count sets of objects. Both adjectival and nominal forms can be used here, but note that, if the adjectival choice is made, the short adjectives are preferred in the nominative and accusative.

Vždycky s sebou nosím šestery klíče.
(I always carry six sets of keys with me.)

Jestli to chceme skončit brzo, budeme potřebovat aspoň troje ruce.
(If we want to finish that soon, we shall need at least three pairs of hands.)

Všichni se snažíme žít podle desatera přikázání.
(We all try to live according to the Ten Commandments.)

Lastly adjectival collective numerals are used to count pluralia tantum nouns, those used only in the plural form. Here too the short forms are preferred in the nominative and accusative.

Četl jsem to ve čtverých novinách.
(I read that in four newpapers.)

Každý z nás má dvoje brejle.
(Each of us has two pairs of glasses.)

Nemám zdání komu patří ty šestery hodinky.
(I have no idea who these six watches belong to.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech using both nominal and adjectival collective numerals when possible.

1. Eight clocks hung on the wall.
2. She bought two dresses of the same color.
3. Five pairs of glasses were lying on the table near the lamp.
4. We saw four open doors upstairs, and somebody was standing in one.
5. Mother is ill; the doctor has given her several kinds of medicine (Use plural).
6. We tried to translate that in three different ways, but without success.
7. He has a hundred different answers to this question.
8. In their back yard were five kinds of yellow flowers.
9. Do that and both kinds of problems will disappear.
10. He always finds twenty different reasons for (Use k) everything.

The Number Nouns

Whenever Czech speakers talk about a number itself or any numbered object such as rooms, streetcars, buses, bills, sizes, etc., they must resort to special feminine nouns produced from numerals by addition of the ending -ka. The following list should permit the student to form any desired noun of this type.

jednička
dvojka
trojka
čtyřka
pětka
šestka
sedmička
osmička

devítka
desítka
jedenáctka
dvacítka
dvaadvacítka
padesátka
stovka
tisícovka

Note how these nouns may be used in the following sentences.

Bydlí někdo v dvojce?
(Does anyone live in No.2?)

Kam jede jedenáctka?
(Where does No.11 go?)

Nosím osmičky.
(I wear No.8 (shoes).)

Karel mi dluží stovku.
(Karel owes me a hundred (crown note)).

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech using number nouns where possible.

1. They say number thirteen is her lucky number.
2. I think we'll have to go there by number two and not by number twenty-two.
3. You need size thirty-one; size thirty doesn't fit you at all.
4. The key to (Use k) number five is over there on the desk.
5. Do we have to give him a whole fifty next month again?

DIALOGUE

Co je dnes, středa nebo čtvrtek?	What's today, Wednesday or Thursday?
Příteli, dnes už je pátek.	My friend, it's already Friday today.
No ne! Proč jsi mi to neřekl dřív? Milena bude mít zítra narozeniny a já jsem jí ještě nic nekoupil. Kolikátého je dnes?	You don't say! Why didn't you tell me that before? Milena is having her birthday tomorrow, and I haven't bought anything for her yet. What's the date today?
Dnes je sedmého--sedmého května.	Today is the seventh--the seventh of May.
V tom případě mám štěstí, protože Mileniny narozeniny jsou patnáctého května, a to bude, jestli se nemýlím, teprve příští sobotu. A kdy máš narozeniny ty?	In that case I am lucky because Milena's birthday is the fifteenth of May, and that won't be until next Saturday, if I'm not mistaken. And when are you having your birthday?
Pozítří. Narodil jsem se také v květnu jako Milena.	The day after tomorrow. I too was born in May like Milena.
V neděli? Tuhle neděli? Proč jsi mi to neřekl dřív? Dnes už je pátek a já jsem ti ještě nic nekoupil.	On Sunday? This coming Sunday? Why didn't you tell me that earlier? It's already Friday today, and I haven't bought you anything yet.

* * *

Tohle je anekdota, kterou jsem nedávno četl v jedné české knize.	This is an anecdote that I read recently in a Czech book.
Ptá se jeden politický vězeň druhého: Kolik jsi dostal?	One political prisoner asks another: How much did you get?
Šestnáct měsíců.	Sixteen months.
A za co, prosímtě?	And what for, may I ask?
Za nic!	For nothing!

Tak to mi nepovídej. Ty jsi musel něco udělat. Za nic dávají pět let.	Don't tell me that. You had to do something. For nothing they give five years.

* * *

Karle, kolik je hodin?	What time is it, Karel?
Mé hodinky ukazují tři čtvrtě na šest a tři minuty.	My watch shows twelve minutes to six.
To není možné. Tak pozdě ještě nemůže být. Určitě ti hodinky nejdou přesně. Já mám teprve za minutu půl šesté a mé hodinky jdou obyčejně napřed.	That's not possible. It can't be that late yet. Your watch surely isn't accurate. I have only twenty-nine minutes after five, and my watch is usually fast.
Tak se jdi podívat do kuchyně na Mileniny elektrické hodiny. Ale neříkej mi, že tvé hodinky jdou napřed. Předevčírem jsi mi říkal, že ti obyčejně jdou pozdě. Pamatuješ si? Mluvil jsi o tom, že si budeš muset koupit nějakého dobrého budíka, protože kvůli svým hodinkám chodíš pozdě do práce.	In that case go into the kitchen and take a look at Milena's electric clock. But don't tell me that your watch is fast. The day before yesterday you were telling me that yours is usually slow. Do you remember? You were speaking about the fact that you will have to buy yourself a good alarm-clock because you're always late to work on account of your watch.
To bylo předevčírem. Nyní bohužel nemám čas na dlouhé rozhovory o tom jak komu hodinky ukazují čas. Mám v šest schůzku s jedním tatínkovým známým. Je to u nádraží a chci tam přijít včas.	That was the day before yesterday. Unfortunately, I haven't time now for long conversations about how whose watch tells time. I have an appointment at six with an acquaintance of my father's. It's by the railroad station, and I want to get there on time.
V kolik hodin? V šest? Tak to tam už sotva budeš přesně v šest. Na nádraží to trvá takových dvacet třicet[1] minut a nyní už je aspoň půl a deset minut.	At what time? At six? In that case you will hardly be there right at six. To get to the railroad station takes some twenty to thirty minutes, and now it's at least twenty minutes to.
Vidím, že máš pravdu. Nedá se nic dělat. Přijdu tedy trochu pozdě. Ale nesmím toho pána v žádném případě nechat dlouho čekat.	I see that you're right. It can't be helped. I'll arrive a little late then. But in no case do I dare let that gentleman wait a long time.

* * *

Když říkám, že tenhle dopis má malou váhu, ačkoli byl těžký, není to jen hra se slovy. Nejde tady ovšem o to, že něco je lehké, protože to má malou váhu nebo naopak o to, že to je těžké, protože to má velkou váhu. Na váhu v tomhle konkrétním smyslu--na kilogramy, dekagramy, gramy--jsem vůbec nemyslil. Používám těch slov tímhle způsobem hlavně proto, že chci zdůraznit, že to bylo těžké ten dopis napsat. Potom jich používám také proto, že mám jen malou naději, že můj dopis bude mít úspěch.	When I say that this letter has little weight, although it was difficult, it's not merely a play on words. It isn't a question of something being light because it has little weight or, on the contrary, of something being heavy because it has great weight. I wasn't thinking at all of weight in that concrete sense--of kilograms, decagrams, grams. I am using those words in this way primarily because I want to emphasize that it was difficult to write that letter. Then I am also using them because I have but little hope that my letter will be successful.

* * *

Kolik stojí tamhleten stůl za vámi?	How much does that table over there behind you cost?
Tenhle? Jen padesát korun dvacet haléřů. Je to velmi slušná cena. A nemusíte zaplatit všechno najednou.	This one? Just fifty crowns and twenty hellers. That's a very fair price. And you don't have to pay everything at once.
Mně v téhle chvíli nejde ani tak o cenu jako spíš o míru. Ten stůl je sice pěkný, ale nevím, jestli pro mne není příliš velký. Nevím, jestli se mi vejde do pokoje. Prosímvás, kolik měří?	At this moment I'm not so much concerned about price as about size. It's true that table is nice, but I don't know whether it isn't too big for me. I don't know whether it will fit into my room. What size is it, may I ask?
Je pětasedmdesát centimetrů vysoký, metr a půl široký a tři metry dlouhý.	It's seventy-five centimeters high, a meter and a half wide, and three meters long.
Jak vysoký je? Dobře jsem vás neslyšel.	How high is it? I didn't hear you well.
Sedmdesát pět centimetrů--tři čtvrtě metru.	Seventy-five centimeters--three quarters of a meter.
Šířka a výška jsou dobré, ale nevím co dělat s délkou. Pochybuji o tom, že mám pro tak dlouhý stůl dost místa. Víte co, já to nejdřív přesně doma zjistím a potom se sem vrátím. Potřebuji stůl, ale musí to být ovšem stůl, kterého mohu použít.	The width and height are fine, but I don't know what to do about the length. I doubt that I have enough room for such a long table. You know what, I'll first check carefully at home; and then I'll return here. I need a table, but it must naturally be a table that I can use.

* * *

Přijelo sem deset návštěvníků. Pět jich je malých a pět velkých. Těch pět malých je otců, těch pět velkých synů. Máme tady tedy patero otců a synů, a ovšem dvojí zájmy. Co zajímá otce, to nezajímá syny a naopak. Je to náhoda nebo osud?

Ten visitors have arrived here. Five of them are short and five tall. The five short ones are fathers, the five tall ones are sons. So we have here five fathers and sons; and, of course, two kinds of interests. What interests the fathers doesn't interest the sons and vice versa. Is it accident or fate?

* * *

Prosímtě, pojd' sem. Počítám kolik mám peněz v bance, ale nemohu to z nějakého důvodu spočítat. Mám takový dojem, že jsem někde udělal chybu. Podívej se prosím jestli je to dobře. Už vidím, že to dobře není. Tady nahoře na druhé řádce je první chyba. Má tam být jednička místo dvojky. To znamená, že obě čísla pod tím také nejsou správná. Změň to, než na to zapomeneme. Dnes mám špatný den. I když se tím budu zabývat do půlnoci, nic to nepomůže. Udělám jen spoustu dalších chyb. Ale aspoň jedna věc je dobrá. Podle toho, co jsem dosud zjistil, mám tenhle měsíc v bance skoro tolik peněz kolik jsem jich tam měl minulý měsíc. A to je v mém případě opravdový úspěch.

Please come here. I'm trying to figure out how much money I have in the bank, but for some reason I can't do it. I have an impression that I made a mistake somewhere. Would you take a look and see whether it's correct? Already I can see that it's not correct. Up here in line two is the first mistake. Number one should be there instead of number two. This means that both numbers below it are not correct either. Change it before we forget it. Today is a bad day for me. Even if I work with it until midnight, it won't help. I'll only make a lot of other mistakes. But at least one thing is good. According to what I have found out so far, this month I have in the bank almost as much money as I had there last month. And in my case that's a real achievement.

1 Approximations involving two numerals are expressed in Czech by merely juxtaposing the two numerals in the noun phrase:

dvě tři hodiny
v pěti šesti týdnech

do deseti dvaceti kilometrů
za jedenáct dvanáct měsíců

READING SELECTION

Mám mnoho práce a málo času. Tahle slova slyším v poslední době od každého, koho potkám. Všichni někam s něčím nebo pro něco nebo kvůli něčemu pospíchají. A žádný prý v tuhle chvíli ještě neudělal to, co už udělat měl. V úterý jsem, například, potkal Karla. Protože jsem ve čtvrtek odpoledne neměl nic zvláštního na práci, chtěl jsem s ním jít na procházku. Ale Karel říkal, že nebude mít do příští soboty ani minutu volnou. Pracuje na něčem pro noviny a chce to skončit před koncem příštího týdne. Den po tom, ve středu, jsem náhodou viděl Jiřího. Když jsem mu vypravoval o svém volném odpoledni, zasmál se a řekl: Ty jsi druhý, kdo se mnou chce zítra někam jít a kdo si neuvědomuje, že pracuji. Musím být každý den v kanceláři od osmi od rána do pěti odpoledne a nemám bohužel právě dovolenou. Proto se mnou nepočítej. Potom jsem byl ve čtvrtek v poledne v jedné restauraci, kde se najednou objevila také Klára. Sotva jsem ji pozdravil, zeptala se mně, co dělám v pátek večer. Říkala, že nemá s kým jít do divadla, protože všichni ostatní budou v pátek pryč. Tentokrát jsem to byl zase já, kdo říkal, že nemá čas. Mám totiž v pátek narozeniny a jdu na večeři k rodičům. Z celého týdne nemám právě tenhle jediný večer volný.

Pan Krámský měří sto osmdesát centimetrů a je mu čtyřicet let. Není tedy ani malý ani starý. Já měřím přesně tolik jako on--ale neřeknu vám kolik je mi let. Když jsme tuhle mluvili o tom, že jsme stejně velcí, řekl mi pan Krámský: Cítíte se také mezi mladými lidmi tak malý a starý jako já? Z nějakého důvodu všichni vypadají dvakrát tak velcí a mladí, než opravdu jsou. Čím to je? Co jsem mu na to mohl odpovědět? Řekl jsem jen: Je to asi proto, že nejen jsou, ale že se také cítí mladí.

Bylo to před pěti léty, bud' koncem jara nebo začátkem léta když Milena naposled viděla rodiče. Tehdy byla u nich na návštěvě v městě, kde se narodila. Zůstala tam tři nebo čtyři týdny. Ale měla smůlu. Celou tu dobu, kterou tam byla, pořád pršelo. Pršelo každý den od rána do večera, a Milena se proto nemohla podívat kam chtěla. Neviděla také všechny přátele a známé, které chtěla vidět. Odjela odtud nespokojená a nešt'astná a často nám potom o té navštěvě vypravovala. Letos se Milena zase chystá jet na pár týdnů k rodičům. Tuhle jsem ji potkal když právě pršelo a vzpomněl jsem si na to, co vypravovala o své poslední návštěvě doma. Proto jsem se jí z legrace zeptal: Už víš, co budeš dělat doma místo toho, co jsi chtěla dělat? Já mám totiž dojem, že takhle jako je dnes bude celé léto. Odpověděla mi se smíchem v hlase: To je to poslední, co chci vědět. Ale at' zase prší, až budu doma. Aspoň budu mít čas na nějakou četbu. Kdykoli jedu na dovolenou, vozím s sebou spoustu knih, ale obyčejně žádnou nepřečtu, protože jsem pořád venku v přírodě a na vážnou četbu nemám čas ani chut'. Tentokrát to ale může být jiné. Říkám: může být, ale přitom doufám, že to nebude. Letos jsem už viděla mnoho knih, ale zato málo luk a lesů.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. It's true these glasses belong to me, but those others belong to someone else. 2. All six of his sisters went south on their vacation. 3. Few people have as many worries as (Add "of them") she has. 4. I have only one watch. 5. She knows a lot of great (Translate "excellent") stories. 6. We can do that in two ways. 7. I have a date with Klára Tuesday noon at the opera. 8. Why do you (pl.) doubt it? 9. You shouldn't get angry right away on account of that. 10. He was a captive of his hobbies. 11. Not a single one of these three questions is concrete. 12. You can't buy (Omit "can" and use perfective) anything today for five crowns. 13. Tell me, what date was the day before yesterday? 14. Again I emphasize that only little hope is left (Translate "remained") for change. 15. My first impression was correct then. 16. Both of these poems lack something. 17. Which birthday are you (pl.) actually having today? 18. Do you think it was really an accident? 19. Don't wait (pl.) for me with dinner; I'll arrive home only after midnight. 20. Go on ahead; we'll be held up here for a while yet. 21. Unfortunately I don't have even a penny with me. 22. Only in one hundred cases out of a thousand is the result normal. 23. Come along with me to the bank. 24. On the ninth page she saw several large red numerals. 25. There must be a mistake somewhere here. 26. I know nothing about the price. 27. He's been going to school for a year now, but he still doesn't know how to count up to ten. 28. Formerly everything was different. 29. According to you then only twenty-one lines will fit in there. 30. Peter, the light is still (Add pořád for emphasis) on in the kitchen. 31. Have him ask particularly (Use hlavně) about the width of that room. 32. This play had a strange fate. 33. We will need a (Use nějaký) good electric clock. 34. He was born exactly four hundred years ago. 35. Please pay; we've got to go now (Use už). 36. Every thousandth visitor will get something. 37. They arrived just a week ago. 38. He lives in the third apartment on the right. 39. I bought myself

two dresses, and I'll have ~~to return both of them~~ again. 40. I noticed that he had four kinds of paper on his desk. 41. Can you lend me your alarm-clock? 42. Use (pl.) it very carefully. 43. We learned that it had taken exactly twenty-two minutes. 44. Please measure also the length of John's kitchen. 45. I don't remember well, but I think that he was saying something about five thousand crowns. 46. What's the political situation there? 47. We didn't expect that his second composition would have such success. 48. She too was known for her proper behavior. 49. At both ends of the hall there were wide stairs. 50. Oh really! I didn't expect such frankness.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Hodinky, které nejdou správně.
2. Dobré a špatné anekdoty.
3. Máte v bytě dost místa pro své knihy?
4. Vážíte tolik, kolik máte vážit?
5. Ceny aut.
6. Kde máte obyčejně schůzky s přáteli?
7. Potřebujete budíka?
8. Osud mnoha dobrých nápadů.
9. O kterých důležitých dnech můžete něco říci?
10. Nějaká šťastná náhoda ve vašem životě.
11. Kolik peněz máte obyčejně s sebou?
12. Váš úspěch v práci.
13. Kolik měří váš pokoj?
14. Používáte tužky nebo pera?
15. Víte, kolik korun dostanete za dolar?
16. Jak pozdě studujete večer? Po půlnoci?
17. Cítíte se vězněm své kultury?
18. Ženy a narozeniny.
19. Jakým způsobem se učíte?
20. Co zdůrazňujete v životě?

LESSON XIII

VOCABULARY

at'.....nebo(conj.)	whether.....or
biograf(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	movies, motion-picture theater
bohatý	rich
Čechy(f)(Plural only)	Bohemia
čím..., tím...[1](with comparatives)	the..., the...
čím dál.....(with a comparative)	more and more....., increasingly.....
daleký	far, distant
dávný	of long ago, former, ancient
dílo(n)(Gen.pl. děl)	work (product)
dítě(Mixed declension, see Grammar Analysis)	child
divoký	wild
dnešní	today's
dočkat se (I,p)(+ Gen.)(No imperfective)	wait/live to see somebody/something or something happen
film(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	film, motion picture
formální	formal
hluboký	deep
hodnota(f)	value
host(m)[2]	guest
hotový	ready, finished, completed
hustý	thick, dense
hvězda(f)	star
chléb/chleb[3](m)(Gen.sg. -a)	bread, loaf
chudý	poor, impoverished
chutnat (I,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to like, taste
jistý[4]	sure, certain
kabát(m)	overcoat, suitcoat, jacket
kámen/kamen-[3] (m)(Mixed declension, see Grammar Analysis)	stone, rock

klid(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	quiet, calm, peace
laskavý	kind
líbit se (II,i)(See Grammar Analysis)	to like, appeal to
lišit se (II,i)(+ od + Gen.)	to differ (from)
literární	literary
mlčet (IV,i)	to be silent, say nothing
mrtvý	dead
myšlenka(f)(Gen.pl. myšlenek)	thought, idea
nálada(f)	mood, spirits, temper
nemít náladu	not to be in the mood
namáhavý	hard, strenuous, tiring
názor(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	view, opinion
nudit se (II,i)	to be bored
obchod(m)	shop, trade, business
odpočinout si (VI,p)(See odpočívat)	to rest, have a rest, relax
odpočívat (I,i)(See odpočinout si)	to rest, have a rest, relax
okamžik(m)	moment, instant
oko(n)[5]	eye
otrava(f)	boredom, tedium, poisoning
oznámit (II,p)(See oznamovat)	to announce, notify, inform
oznamovat (VII,i)(See oznámit)	to announce, notify, inform
podle všeho	to all appearances
pole(n)	field
pospíšit[6](II,p)	to hurry
pozvat[7] (Vc,p)(See zvát)	to invite
pramen(m)(Mixed declension, see Grammar Analysis)	source, spring
praktický	practical, handy
prodat (I,p)(See prodávat)	to sell
prodávat (I,i)(See prodat)	to sell
přátelský	friendly, amicable
přednost(f)	priority, preference, merit, advantage
dávat přednost něčemu před něčím	to prefer something to something
rameno(n)(Mixed declension, see Grammar Analysis)	shoulder

rozejít se(Va,p)(+ s + Instr.)(See rozcházet se)	to part, part company (with)
rozhodný	resolute, definite, decisive
rozcházet se (III,i)(+ s + Instr.) (See rozejít se)	to part, part company (with)
sám (See Grammar Analysis)	alone, one's self, the very
skvělý	brilliant, exquisite
slíbit (II,p)(See slibovat)	to promise
slibovat (VII,i)(See slíbit)	to promise
smutný	sad
společnost(f)	society, company, community
společný	common, joint
spolehlivý	reliable
srovnat (I,p)(See srovnávat)	to compare
srovnávat (I,i)(See srovnat)	to compare
stanovisko(n)(Gen.pl. stanovisek)	point of view, standpoint, attitude
starost	
být bez starosti	not to worry
strávit (II,p)(See trávit)	to spend, pass
styk(m)	contact, relations (in plural)
svatý	holy, sacred, Saint
šálek/šálk(m)	cup
těšit se (II,i)(+ na + Acc.)	to look forward to
trávit (II,i)(See strávit)	to spend, pass
ubohý	poor, wretched
úkol(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	task, assignment
umění(n)	art
úzký	narrow
Václav	man's name
svatý Václav	Saint Wenceslas, the patron saint of Bohemia
vědec/vědc(m)	scientist
vědomý (+ Gen.)	conscious, aware (of)

venkov(m)(Gen.sg. -a)	the country (side)
na venkově/na venkov	in the country/into the country
veselý	merry, cheerful, gay
vesnice(f)	village
většinou (adv.)	mostly, for the most part
vkus(m)	taste
vliv(m)(Loc.sg. -u)	influence
vyznat se (I,p)(+ v + Loc.) (Perfective only!)	to be good at, be familiar with, know one's way around (in)
záležitost(f)	affair, matter
zatímco (conj.)	while
zvát[7] (Vc,i)(See pozvat)	to invite
zvědavý	curious, inquisitive
zvíře(n)(Mixed declension, see Grammar Analysis)	animal

1 The instrumental forms of the pronouns co and to are used to introduce juxtaposed clauses containing comparatives and expressing degree or measure of difference. For example:

> Čím déle tu knihu čtu, tím méně ji rozumím.
> (The longer I read this book, the less I understand it.)
>
> Čím je starší, tím je hezčí.
> (The older she is, the prettier she is.)

2 The plural forms of this noun exhibit two sets of endings:

> N. hosté, G. hostů, D. hostům, A. hosty, I. hosty, L. hostech
> N. hosti, G. hostí, D. hostím, A. hosti, I. hostmi, L. hostích

3 This is the first example of the quantitative alternations é/e and á/a. The long vowels é or á appear only when the ending is "zero."

4 When this adjective is used predicatively, its corresponding short forms are employed and are often accompanied by the reflexive pronoun si.

> Jsem si jist, že přijde.
> (I am sure he will come.)

5 The forms of the plural represent the old dual and read as follows:

> N. oči, G. očí, D. očím, A. oči, I. očima, L. očích

6 This is the perfective counterpart of pospíchat introduced in Lesson I. It has an irregular imperative pospěš, pospěšte, pospěšme.

7 This verb is another one of the limited irregularities in Class V where the nonpresent stem must be learned. Note that here too the perfect participle has a short vowel.

zvát: zvu, zveš, zve, etc.; zval, zvala, etc.
pozvat: pozvu, pozveš, etc.; pozval, pozvala, etc.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Short Adjectives

The student has been taught so far that all adjectives have endings that incorporate long vowels. In this lesson the student will discover that some adjectival forms may not have long-vowel endings. Such adjectival forms can appear only 1) with qualitative adjectives, 2) in the nominative case, and 3) as predicate adjectives after the verb být. Accordingly, only the following short forms can exist as exemplified by the adjective hotový (ready).

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singular		hotov	hotova	hotovo
Plural	Anim.	hotovi	hotovy	hotova
	Inan.	hotovy		

Note that these adjectives have endings identical to those characteristic of the basic types of masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns. As a matter of fact, endings such as the above were originally characteristic of all adjectives in the nominative case; the adjectival forms the student is familiar with were all derived from adjectival forms like the above by the addition of an early pronominal element.

The short-form adjectives are stative forms; and, used as they are exclusively in the predicate, they have the effect of assigning a given object to a possibly transitory state or condition expressed by the adjectives. When the regular or long-form adjectives are used in the predicate after být, they are essentially classificatory in nature, assigning the object to a class of objects marked by the quality expressed in the adjective. When the short and long forms of a given adjective can compete in the predicate, then we can see more clearly how the short form expresses an impermanent state. Examples below will clarify these statements. While it is theoretically possible to produce short forms from all qualitative adjectives, they are not used consistently wherever the definition of the category would permit. Their most consistent employment is found in the most formal literary style of SČ. From this point on down their use decreases until one arrives at pure OČ which uses long forms exclusively except for not more than a dozen adjectives. Besides these statistical restrictions there is also a strong tendency to confine the employment of short forms to persons, particularly in the masculine singular. The student will be well advised to use short forms only for the adjectives listed below and for any appropriately marked adjectives introduced in future lessons and to apply these adjectives only to persons.

The following list gives the masculine singular short forms of adjectives from the vocabularies that enjoy reasonable currency in Modern Literary Czech. Note the long stem vowel in zdráv and the inserted vowel between stem-final consonants and the adjectival suffixes -n and -v.

hotový > hotov
jistý > jist
laskavý > laskav
mrtvý > mrtev
nemocný > nemocen
plný > pln
podobný > podoben
schopný > schopen
šťastný > šťasten
vděčný > vděčen
vědomý > vědom
zdravý > zdráv
zvědavý > zvědav
živý > živ

Study the following sentences employing both long and short forms of the above adjectives. Observe the purely stative quality of the short adjectives. Note too that the short forms may exhibit a different connotation, but one that is strictly in keeping with their stativeness.

Každý o ní věděl, že byla dobrá a laskavá.
(Everybody knew about her, that she was good and kind.)

Buď k ní, prosímtě, laskav.
(Please be kind to her.)

Karel je už od svých prvních let nemocný.
(Karel has been sickly since his early years.)

Byl jste letos také tak často nemocen jako já?
(Were you also sick last year as often as I was?)

Tenhle člověk je docela neschopný.
(This man is quite incompetent.)

Byl tak překvapen, že nebyl schopen slova.
(He was so surprised that he was incapable of saying a word.)

To dítě je a vždycky bude zvědavé.
(That child is and always will be curious.)

Jsem zvědav, co se nyní stane.
(I am curious about what will happen now.)

Ta malá blondýnka je opravdu velmi živá.
(That little blonde is really very lively.)

Zjistil jsem nedávno, že můj starý profesor je ještě živ.
(I recently learned that my old professor is still alive.)

Vrať se živ a zdráv.
(Come back alive and well.)

The adjectives *otevřený*, *spokojený*, *unavený*, and *zavřený*, are actually past passive participles. Strictly speaking, they should always appear in the predicate in their short forms. The fact that the long forms of these words have been used so far in the predicate is due to the influence of the spoken language and to the fact that these particular past passive participles have acquired a strongly adjectival flavor in current Czech. As the following sentences show, however, strict usage in the literary language still prefers the short forms of all participles in the predicate after the verb *být*. Past passive participles in general, which are clearly stative in nature, will be discussed in detail in Lesson XVIII.

Myslím, že s tímhle budete určitě spokojen.
(I think that you will certainly be satisfied with this.)

Dnes je tady otevřeno.
(They are open today.

Cítím se unaven.
(I feel tired.)

Another syntactic area where short adjectives are used predicatively is constituted by certain kinds of impersonal sentences. Here the predicate adjective occurs exclusively in the neuter singular, as in the following sentences. This category also will be postponed. See the detailed discussion in Lesson XV.

Bylo mu smutno.
(He felt sad.)

Bude nutno s tím brzo začít.
(It will be necessary to start this early.)

Je zřejmo, že to není pravda.
(It is clear that that isn't true.)

The Adjective *sám*

A very special case of a short adjective, used in both the nominative and the accusative, is encountered in the Czech adjectival form that translates into English as: "(one's) self," "by (one's) self," or "alone." The long forms of this adjective (*samý*, *samá*, etc.) in the nominative and accusative have the meanings "the very," "nothing but, "only." In the oblique cases all the above meanings are present.

	Singular			Plural			
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.		Neut.	Fem.
				Anim.	Inan.		
Nom.	sám	samo	sama	sami	samy	sama	samy
Acc.	sama	samo	samu	samy		sama	samy

The long forms of this adjective are used exclusively in all oblique cases. Study the following examples:

Sama uklidila celý dům.
(She cleaned up the whole house all by herself.)

Slyšel jsem to od něho samého.
(I heard that from him himself.)

Podívej se, ten člověk jde až k samým schodům.
(Look, that man is walking right up to the very steps.)

Slyšeli jsme ji samu v pokoji.
(We heard her alone in the room.)

On sám byl u ní na návštěvě minulou středu.
(He himself had visited her last Wednesday.)

Mluvili jsme o té hře samé celou hodinu.
(We talked about that play alone for a full hour.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences illustrating the use of short adjectives into Czech.

1. That man is never ready for (Use k) for work.
2. She alone assured me that I need not fear anything.
3. I was very happy that nothing happened to him.
4. Milena was grateful to us for the tape-recorder we gave her.
5. Everybody says that he is like his father.
6. Be so kind as to (Use "and" plus another imperative) come to lunch with me.
7. Children are always curious about what their parents are doing.
8. When I asked the boy himself, he lied to me.
9. Are you all aware of what Karel has promised us?
10. That relative of his has been sick all his life.
11. I have been well for five years now (Use už).
12. What are you going to do with this glass? It's full of dirt.
13. All wild animals are curious.
14. His very behavior surprised me greatly.
15. Are you sure that he is looking forward to a walk?
16. Not one of us thought he was capable of such behavior.
17. Even happy people are sometimes unhappy.
18. I must say that my views are similar.
19. Marie just told me that nothing serious had happened to them themselves.
20. As a small girl she was slender and lively.

Adjectival Adverbs

A number of adverbs have already been presented to the student; and, even from a short list of adverbs like během, česky, najednou, pořád, špatně, velmi, and zřídka, he can readily convince himself that many of them cannot be predicted, must be learned as individual vocabulary items. There is, however, a high degree of predictability for the formation of adverbs from adjectives. The vast majority of this type of adverbs are formed by means of the ending -e added to the adjectival stem. This -e causes palatalization of stem-final labials (p, b, m, v), dentals (t, d, n), the liquid r, and velars (k, h, ch); in the latter case the dental products of palatalization appear (k > c, h > z, but ch > š). Adjectives already introduced are sufficient to illustrate this point.

zdravý > zdravě
živý > živě
slabý > slabě
známý > známě
mladý > mladě
moderní > moderně
pohodlný > pohodlně
tlustý > tlustě
hlavní > hlavně
cizí > cize

zlý > zle
dobrý > dobře
chytrý > chytře
drahý > draze
lehký > lehce
tichý > tiše
hluchý > hluše
dlouhý > dlouze
jednoduchý > jednoduše
těžký > těžce

Another regularity is represented by adjectives ending in -ský, -cký; all these adjectives form their adverbs in -y. Analogy has produced one anomaly here; the adverbial form of hezký is hezky.

český > česky
americký > americky

elektrický > elektricky
politický > politicky

The student must bear in mind that there are two adverbs corresponding to the adjectival pair veliký/velký. One of them is the regular form velice, the other the irregular velmi. Although both of these synonyms are used in the literary language, only velmi has been used in this text so far.

Other adjectival adverbs add -o to the adjectival stem. These must be learned by the student. He has encountered six such adverbs so far: blízko, brzo, často, dlouho, nedávno, and přímo. Others, corresponding to adjectives already familiar to the student, are the following:

dávný > dávno
drahý > draho
hluchý > hlucho
krátký > krátko
laciný > lacino

lehký > lehko
nízký > nízko
snadný > snadno
široký > široko
vysoký > vysoko

Many adverbs in -o have corresponding adverbial forms in -e. These differences in form are associated with differences in meaning. Most frequently the -o form is used in a concrete sense, while the -e form is used in an abstract sense. Learn the following -o/-e pairs and study the illustrative sentences.

blízko / blízce
daleko / dalece
divoko / divoce
dlouho / dlouze
draho / draze
hluboko / hluboce
hlucho / hluše
krátko / krátce

lacino / lacině
lehko / lehce
nízko / nízce
snadno / snadně
široko / široce
těžko / těžce
úzko / úzce
vysoko / vysoce

Marie bydlí blízko.
(Mary lives nearby.)

Obě kultury jsou blízce příbuzné.
(Both cultures are closely related.)

Čekáte tady dlouho?
(Have you been waiting here long?)

Odpovídal vždycky dlouze.
(He always answered at length.)

Musel jsem to bohužel koupit draho.
(Unfortunately, I had to pay a high price for it.)

Najednou uslyšel její draze známý hlas.
(All at once he heard her dearly familiar voice.)

Note that some forms in -o like chladno, snadno, teplo, těžko, ticho and vlhko, produced from adjectival stems, are short-form neuter adjectives that are used in impersonal sentences. These will be discussed in Lesson XVII.

The adverbs the student has learned so far imply corresponding adjectives that can be easily assimilated by the student. Learn the following adjectives. In future vocabularies corresponding adverbs, if irregular in any respect, will be listed along with their adjectives.

anglicky > anglický
bezděčně > bezděčný
blízko > blízký
brzo > brzký (early)
často > častý
česky > český
denně > denní
hodně > hodný
chladně > chladný
jasně > jasný
konečně > konečný
nedávno > nedávný
obyčejně > obyčejný (usual, ordinary, plain)
patrně > patrný (apparent, perceptible)

pečlivě > pečlivý
pomalu > pomalý
pozdě > pozdní (late)
prostě > prostý
přesně > přesný
přímo > přímý
přirozeně > přirozený
rozpačitě > rozpačitý
rusky > ruský
zřídka > řídký
úplně > úplný
určitě > určitý
vlastně > vlastní (one's own, proper)
zřejmě > zřejmý

Exercise

Translate the following sentences containing adverbs into Czech.

1. Can you (pl.) compare these two closely related objects?
2. This coat practically doesn't differ from that other one.
3. All our students can already count correctly in Czech from one to one hundred.
4. We parted in a friendly manner (Use adverb).
5. I'm very curious; I don't think I can wait that long.
6. We have rarely been at a meeting where we were so terribly bored.
7. He worked on the problem strenuously and still didn't find the answer.
8. She talked to him hesitantly because she wasn't sure what mood he was in.
9. We could see the stones lying deep under the water.
10. I am deeply grateful for your frankness.
11. High above our heads (Use dative of pronoun and singular of noun) were flying some small birds.
12. Our teacher got angry (Use perfective) easily.
13. Although he was highly intelligent, he still didn't understand everything.
14. Whenever we visit them, we stay just a short time (Use adverb).
15. How far will we go tomorrow afternoon?
16. She explained the story to me briefly, but I still didn't grasp it.
17. Do you really sing that low?
18. We rested there at least three quarters of an hour.
19. Last night they again played that well known opera.
20. Poor people usually live very simply.
21. How can they sell these things so cheaply?
22. He felt her hand move (Use jet) lightly along his shoulder.
23. On that day he informed us sadly that he would not return next year.
24. His opinions interest us primarily, not you.
25. We ascertained that he knew how to lie very cleverly.

Comparison of Adjectives (Formation of the Comparative Degree)

With few exceptions the comparative degree in Czech is formed by the addition of either -ší or -ejší to the positive or simple stem of qualitative adjectives. The reasons for the choice of one ending or the other are buried in the history of the Slavic languages. The student will be well advised, therefore, to memorize which adjectives take -ší and to use -ejší for all other adjectives. The declension of comparative forms is no problem; they all decline like regular soft adjectives. A few problems arise, however, in the formation of both kinds of comparatives. We turn our attention to -ší comparatives first.

All adjectives from the lessons that take the ending -ší in the comparative are listed below. The student must learn these comparative forms, but a few remarks may facilitate his task. Note first of all that the ending -ší is added to the root, not the stem, of the adjective; adjectives with the suffixes -*k*, -*ok*, -*ek* drop these before -*ší*. There are only three exceptions to this statement: the comparatives for *hezký*, *lehký*, and *vlhký*. Note also that the velars (*k*, *h*, *ch*) and the dental fricatives (*s*, *z*) palatalize before this ending. And finally, long root vowels shorten in these comparative forms.

blízký	bližší	mladý	mladší
bohatý	bohatší	nízký	nižší
čistý	čistší	prostý	prostší
daleký	další	řídký	řidší
drahý	dražší	slabý	slabší
hezký	hezčí	snadný	snažší
hluboký	hlubší	starý	starší
hluchý	hlušší	široký	širší
horký	horčí	těžký	těžší
hustý	hustší	tichý	tišší
chudý	chudší	tlustý	tlustší
jednoduchý	jednodušší	úzký	užší
krátký	kratší	vlhký	vlhčí
lehký	lehčí	vysoký	vyšší

Six import and high-frequency adjectives attache the ending -*ší* to entirely different roots in the formation of their comparatives.

dlouhý	delší (longer)	špatný	horší (worse)
dobrý	lepší (better)	velký	větší (bigger)
malý	menší (smaller)	zlý	horší (worse)

All remaining adjectives regularly form their comparatives by means of -*ejší*. This ending is always added to the full stem of the adjectives and causes the usual palatalization of labials (*p*, *b*, *m*, *v*), dentals (*t*, *d*, *n*), the liquid *r* (*ř*), and the velars (*k* *č*, *h* *ž*). Note particularly that the stem-final clusters -*sk* and -*ck* soften to -*šť* and *čť*, respectively. Study the following examples:

čerstvý	čerstvější	důležitý	důležitější
nový	novější	chytrý	chytřejší
známý	známější	teplý	teplejší
přímý	přímější	cizí	cizejší
jistý	jistější	bílý	bělejší (short vowel!)
svatý	světější (root vowel!)	divoký	divočejší
čistý	čistější (also čistší)	ubohý	ubožejší
tlustý	tlustější (also tlustší)	dětský	dětštější
normální	normálnější	přátelský	přátelštejší
silný	silnější	praktický	praktičtější

There are two comparatives in -*ejší* that require special attention. The first of these is *dřívější*, which is the completely irregular comparative for *brzký*. The second is *pozdější*, which has the meaning "later (in sequence), ensuing." The regular comparative for *pozdní* (which means "not early") is *pozdnější*.

Comparison of Adjectives (The Expression of Equal and Unequal Comparisons)

When two objects or persons exhibit a given quality to the same degree, then Czech resorts to expressions very similar to the English.

tak .... jako = as .... as
právě tak .... jako = just as ..... as
stejně .... jako = equally/just as ... as
takový .... jako = such .... as

These expressions are usually found in the predicate after the verb být, but they may occur in any case form in sentences. Study the following illustrative sentences.

Tyhle ceny jsou právě tak vysoké jako tamty.
(These prices are just as high as those.)

Bydlíme v tak drahém bytě jako oni.
(We live in as expensive an apartment as they do.)

Bydlíme v tak drahém bytě jako je jejich.
(We live in as expensive an apartment as theirs.)

Včera nás minulo na ulici jedno auto tak staré jako naše.
(A car as old as ours passed us on the street yesterday.)

Vypadáte dnes stejně unavený jako včera.
(You look just as tired today as you did yesterday.)

Proč půjčujete peníze lidem tak protivným jako je on?
(Why do you lend money to people as detestable as him?)

Proč půjčujete peníze takovým protivným lidem jako půjčuje on?
(Why do you lend money to such detestable people as he does?)

Vypravoval nám o stejně složité situaci jako je tahle.
(He was telling us about just such a complex situation as this.)

When a Czech speaker wants to say that a given quality is possesed by two objects or persons to differing degrees, he makes use of the comparative degree. The comparative form usually appears as a predicate adjective, but it may be found in any case form. The second object or person involved in the comparison is introduced by the connective než (than). Note that, if an exact measure of the difference in quality is to be expressed, as in the English phrases " a year older, two feet higher," Czech uses the preposition o plus the accusative case.

Tenhle pokoj je o dva metry širší než tamten.
(This room is two meters wider than that one.)

Pracuje v horší části města než já.
(He works in a worse part of town than I do.)

Nikdy jsem nečetl zajímavější knihu než je tahle.
(I have never read a more interesting book than this.)

Nikdy jsme nic nedali vděčnějším lidem než dal on.
(We never gave anything to more grateful people than he did.)

Nikdy jsme nic nedali vděčnějšímu člověku než je on.
(We have never given anything to a more grateful person than him.)

Nikdy jsem nebyl v trapnější situaci než je tahle.
(I was never in a more awkward situation than this.)

Myslíte, že můžete najít lepší důvod než je náš?
(Do you think you can find a better reason than ours?)

Myslíte, že můžete najít lepší důvod než my?
(Do you think you can find a better reason than we can?)

Znáte nějakou normálnější dívku než je ona?
(Do you know a more normal girl than her?)

Zůstali jsme v Praze delší dobu než vy.
(We stayed a longer period of time in Prague than you.)

Jeho žena byla o pět let starší než on.
(His wife was five years older than he.)

Tahle řeka je širší než je hluboká.
(This river is wider than it is deep.)

Occasionally, in all languages speakers wish to express that a given quality is possessed by an object or person to a lesser degree than by another object or person. Here Czech uses the comparative adverb méně (less) in the same way as English.

Vím, že ten krok bude méně účinný než tenhle.
(I know that that step will be less effective than this one.)

Sedíte v méně pohodlné židli než já.
(You are sitting in a less comfortable chair than I am.)

Méně důležití lidé než on měli tady úspěch.
(Less important people than he have been successful here.)

Nemůžete napsat méně složitou větu než je tahle?
(Can't you write a less complex sentence than this?)

Czech may also use the comparative adjectives in some situations where no direct comparison is involved. Some of these constructions are closely paralleled by English usage, and others not. Study the following examples and their translations.

Pochyboval o tom, že to nějaký starší člověk bude moci udělat.
(He doubted that an older person would be able to do that.)

Byl z lepší rodiny.
(He was from a better family.)

Marie byla vysoká a tlustší.
(Marie was tall and rather fat.)

Comparison of Adjectives (The Superlative)

The superlative degree of all Czech adjectives is formed simply by adding the prefix nej- to all comparative forms.

kratší > nejkratší
starý > nejstarší
lepší > nejlepší (best)
menší > nejmenší (smallest)
horší > nejhorší (worst)

větší > největší (biggest)
lacinější > nejlacinější
protivnější > nejprotivnější
šť'astnější > nejšť'astnější
zdravější > nejzdravější

When an object or person modified by a superlative form is compared with a group of other objects or persons, the latter group may appear after one of the following three prepositions: z + Gen., v + Loc., or mezi + Instr. Here, too, the superlative form may be found in any case. Note that the English expression "as ... as possible" is translated into Czech by the equivalents co ... or co možná ..., where superlative forms are used. Study the examples below.

Jarmila prý je nejhezčí dívka v celé škole.
(They say that Jarmila is the prettiest girl in the
whole school.)

Nejbližší divadlo tady v městě je na Čtrnácté ulici.
(The nearest theater here in town is on Fourteenth Street.)

Dvacátá druhá věta je nejtěžši věta ze všech.
(The twenty-second sentence is the most difficult of all.)

Nejvoňavější mezi všemi květinami je růže.
(The most fragrant among all the flowers is the rose.)

Dejte mi co největší sklenici.
(Give me a glass as large as possible.)

V tomhle případě potřebuji co možná nejpřesnější míru.
(In this case I need as accurate a measure as possible.)

Nosil vždycky co možná nejdelší plášt'.
(He always wore a coat as long as possible.)

When, in comparison with other objects or persons, an object or a person has a given quality to the smallest or least degree, then Czech uses the superlative adverb nejméně (the least) along with the positive degree of the adjective, just as in English.

Proč jste koupili tu nejméně drahou lampu?
(Why did you buy the least expensive lamp?)

Ten nejméně originální mezi těmi hudebníky je ten nejúspěšnější.
(The least original among those musicians is the most successful.)

Nejdřív udělá vždycky tu nejméně nutnou věc.
(He always does the least necessary thing first.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences illustrating the comparison of adjectives into Czech.

1. The questions are just as important as the answers.
2. Are you saying that this stone is heavier than that?
3. How can she live constantly under the influence of an older woman?
4. That blue star is the brightest of all those distant suns.
5. The kitchen is the warmest spot in the house.
6. He is in contact with more intelligent people than I am.
7. Let's rest in a more pleasant place than we did yesterday.
8. Can any situation be worse than this?
9. Scientists try to be more accurate than other people.
10. His sister was looking forward to an easier life in the south.
11. I felt a little freer when I lived there.
12. We consider him the friendliest person we know.
13. This is the widest and deepest river in this part of the country.
14. From a more practical standpoint this plan is the least complex.
15. I hope to buy it at a price as fair as possible.
16. Maybe you'll be in a better mood the day after tomorrow.
17. That older woman was recently just as thin as that young girl.
18. Show me a more reliable source than he has.
19. Her literary preferences (Use záliba) are narrower than mine.
20. Let's go to a movie as close by as possible.
21. His political views have been less successful (Use mít úspěch).
22. The bigger the car, the more expensive it is.
23. Are the later exercises more difficult than the earlier ones?
24. Is that part of the forest thicker or sparser?
25. Can you buy as beautiful cups as these in a less expensive store?
26. Such things are known even to the poorest people in that society.
27. This scene is two and a half minutes shorter than that first one.
28. A close friend of his is the tallest pupil in the school.
29. Did she spend a longer time in Prague than you?
30. Can the least curious student also be the most intelligent?

Comparison of Adverbs (Formation of the Comparative Degree)

There is a striking, but not complete, parallelism between the formation of comparative adjectives and comparative adverbs. The latter, too, display two different endings added to the roots or stems of the basic adjectives. The ending -e, like the -ší termination for comparative adjectives, is limited in scope; and its forms must be memorized by the student. But note that the range for adverbial -e does not coincide with the range for adjectival -ší. Observe also that -e is added directly to adjectival roots and causes the expected palatalization of root-final -h, -z, -s, and -r.

blízko/blízce > blíže
daleko/dalece > dále
draho/draze > dráže
nízko/nízce > níže
snadno/snadně > snáze
široko/široce > šíře
těžko/těžce > tíže
úzko/úzce > úže
vysoko/vysoce > výše

Comparative adverbs in -e may also be formed from entirely different roots.

brzo > dřív/dříve
dlouho/dlouze > déle
dobře > lépe
málo/trochu > méně
špatně > hůře
mnoho/velmi/velice > více
zle > hůře

All other comparative adverbs are produced by the addition of the ending -eji to the stem of the adjective. This ending effects the regular palatalization of labials (p, b, v, m), dentals (t, d, n), the liquid r, velars (k > č, ch > š, h > ž), and the special clusters (st > šť, ct > čť). Study the following examples. Note that the comparative of the adjective rád is an adverbial form; more discussion of these important words follows in this Grammar Analysis.

slabě > slaběji
nově > nověji
přímo > příměji
rád > raději
mladě > mlaději
pozdě > později
prostě > prostěji
přesně > přesněji
jasně > jasněji
snadně > snadněji (also snáze)
chytře > chytřeji
rychle > rychleji
pomalu > pomaleji
úzko/úzce > úžeji (also úže)
krátko/krátce > kratčeji
lehko/lehce > lehčeji
zřídka/řídce > řidčeji
divoce > divočeji
tiše > tišeji
jednoduše > jednodušeji
uboze > ubožeji
přátelsky > přátelštěji
politicky > političtěji

Comparison of Adverbs (Equal and Unequal Comparison)

Comparisons involving equal and unequal degrees are expressed among adverbs just as they are in the case of adjectives. In the following examples the student should note the expected use of comparative adverbs in conjunction with verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. Note also the use of the Czech adverb méně (less) and of the Czech quantifiers méně (less, fewer) and více (more).

Jsem s ním tak blízce příbuzný jako oni.
(I am as closely related to him as they are.)

Jsem s ním tak blízce příbuzný jako s nimi.
(I am as closely related to him as to them.)

Bydlíme tak blízko u parku jako ona.
(We live as close to the park as she does.)

Bydlíme tak blízko u parku jako u ní.
(We live as close to the park as to her.)

Vypijete tak mnoho mléka jako on?
Vypijete tolik mléka kolik on?
(Can you drink as much milk as he can?)

Vypijete tolik mléka?
(Can you drink as much milk as that?)

Miluje bratra tak jako sestru.
(She loves her brother as much as her sister.)

Note in the sentence above that tak by itself may have the meaning "as much." The forms tolik/tak mnoho in such comparisons are reserved for specifically quantitative denotations.

Píše tvůj bratr tak pečlivě jako já?
(Does your brother write as carefully as I do?)

Píše tvůj bratr takhle pečlivě?
(Does your brother write as carefully as this?)

Letí ti ptáci výše než my?
(Are those birds flying higher than we are?)

Letí ti ptáci výše než je ten dům?
(Are those birds flying higher than that house?)

Zaplatil jsem za tu lampu více než vy.
(I paid more for that lamp than you did.)

Zaplatil jsem za tu lampu více než za tu židli.
(I paid more for that lamp than for that chair.)

Vysvětlil nám šesté cvičení jasněji než páté.
(He explained to us the sixth exercise more
clearly than the fifth.)

Vysvětlil nám šesté cvičení jasněji než náš druhý učitel.
(He explained to us the sixth exercise more clearly than
our other teacher.)

Jsem u nich na návštěvě méně často než u rodičů.
(I visit them less often than my parents.)

Jsem u nich na návštěvě méně často než mí rodiče.
(I visit them less often than my parents do.)

Tenhle měsíc jsem si koupil méně čaje než minulý měsíc.
(This month I bought less tea than last month.)

Učitel mi půjčil více knih než tužek.
(The teacher loaned me more books than pencils.)

Učitel mi půjčil více knih než svému příteli.
(The teacher loaned more books to me than to his friend.)

Učitel mi půjčil více knih než jeho přítel.
(The teacher loaned me more books than his friend did.)

Comparison of Adverbs (Superlative)

The superlative forms of adverbs are obtained directly from the comparative forms by prefixing the morpheme nej-. Just as in the case of the adjectives, the English expression "as...as possible" is translated into Czech by the superlative in the following possible contexts: co..., co možná..., or co můžete... Note also the use of the quantifiers nejméně (the least) and nejvíce (the most). Study carefully these illustrative sentences.

Bydlí z nás ze všech nejblíže u nádraží.
(Of all of us she lives the closest to the station.)

Tenhle hoch běžel nejrychleji ze všech žáků.
(This boy ran the fastest of all the pupils.)

Nejméně vody je v téhle sklenici.
(The least amount of water is in this glass.)

Nejvíce knih leží na stole.
(Most of the books are lying on the table.)

Milena chodí vždycky co možná nejpomaleji.
(Milena always walks as slowly as possible.)

Chce bydlet co nejdále od města.
(He wants to live as far as possible from the city.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Czech.

1. Please speak a little more softly; the children are not yet asleep.
2. They gave me the least amount of money possible for my old books.
3. I'm afraid I live a little farther from the university.
4. His parents have less influence on him than his teachers.
5. Do you know anyone who writes worse than he does?
6. If you'll walk faster, we'll arrive there on time.

7. The patient can move his arms and shoulders better now.
8. Tell me if you want more coffee.
9. She loves her brother more than her sister.
10. Milan learned to speak Czech more quickly than I did.
11. He remembers numbers the easiest.
12. Children should drink as much milk as possible.
13. Of all the pupils that girl writes the least correctly.
14. I think that in the summer these clothes are going to be less suitable than those.
15. If you must work as slowly as possible, something unpleasant is going to happen.
16. They were detained there longer than I thought.
17. Who busied himself more seriously with the problems of others than he?
18. Last week our typewriter worked more reliably than ever before.
19. He can pronounce Czech words better than English words.
20. Musicians naturally know music more perfectly than they do linguistics.
21. Can you sing it somewhat (Use o něco) higher than before?
22. And later I lost my best pen.
23. You (pl.) couldn't have said that more simply.
24. I have tried (Add jíst) food of this kind less often than you.
25. Next time (Use the adverb for "next") write more carefully.

Czech Equivalents for the Verbs "to like" and "to love"

The presence in previous vocabularies of the short adjective rád and the verb milovat and the introduction of the verbs líbit se and chutnat into this lesson signal the necessity of discussing briefly the correspondences between these expressions and the English verbs "to like" and "to love." The Czech expressions are presented below in the order of decreasing intensity of feeling or emotion.

1) The verb milovat conveys the strongest degree of emotion here and may always be translated by the English "to love." It may be used with animate and inanimate objects. Just as in the case of the English verb its use is occasioned by both the intrinsic qualities and the physical attraction of the object of the verb.

Valouch miluje svou ženu.
(Valouch loves his wife.)

Děti obyčejně milují rodiče a naopak.
(Children usually love their parents and vice versa.)

Milujete také květiny?
(Do you also love flowers?)

2) The short adjective, rád, ráda, etc., with or without the verb mít denotes a lesser intensity of feeling than milovat. In practically all cases it may most appropriately be translated by the English verb "to like"; but, when rád is used alone with verbs, it may also be translated

as "to love." Note that it is the intrinsic qualities of objects or the consistent and lasting appeal of objects or actions that inspire its use. Pay close attention to the following sentences.

Mám rád legraci.
(I like fun.)

Milena nemá ráda kočky.
(Milena doesn't like cats.)

Má rád blondýnky.
(He likes blondes.)

Proč váš bratr nemá rád černé obleky?
(Why doesn't your brother like black suits?)

Jana tady mají všichni rádi.
(Everybody here likes Jan.)

Nemám rád, když děti pořád křičí.
(I don't like it when the children constantly shout.)

Ráda si kupuje hezké věci.
(She likes to buy pretty things.)

Rád přijdu.
(I'll be glad to come.)

Rád to udělám.
(I'll be happy to do that.)

3) The next step down the semantic scale is represented by the reflexive verb líbit se plus the dative case. The person experiencing the feeling or emotion is in the dative case. This kind of construction is usually translated by the English verb "to like," but it may also be rendered by the expression "to appeal to" or "to be pleasing to." The verb líbit se differs from rád in that its use results solely from relatively superficial sensual impressions.

Líbila se vám ta hra?
(Did you like that play?)

Moderní obrazy se mi nikdy nelíbily.
(Modern pictures have never appealed to me.)

V Kalifornii se mi líbilo.
(I liked it in California.)

Karlovi se prý líbí blondýnky.
(They say Karel likes blondes.)

4) The verb chutnat plus the dative case carries the same intensity of feeling as líbit se, but it is reserved for the physical sensation of taste.

Vaše káva mi dnes chutnala.
(I liked your coffee today.)

Chutná vám bílý chléb více než černý?
(Do you like white bread more than dark?)

The comparative form of rád requires special mention because it is clearly an adverbial form raději, and because it may have some idiomatic English equivalents. When used with the indicative mood of various verbs, raději may be translated by the phrases "like better," "prefer," "would rather." When used with the imperative mood, raději usually corresponds to the English phrase "had better." Study the two groups of examples below.

Jeho mám raději než ji.
(I like him better than I like her.)

Měla mléko raději než čaj.
(She preferred milk to tea.)

Děkuji, pero nepotřebuji; já raději píši na stroji.
(I don't need a pen, thank you; I prefer to type.)

Zavolám ho raději sám.
(I'd rather call him myself.)

Při přednášce raději stál než seděl.
(When lecturing he preferred to stand rather than to sit.)

Vrat'te se raději už odpoledne.
(You'd better return in the afternoon.)

Raději jim hned odpovězme.
(We'd better answer them immediately.)

Venku prší; raději tady ještě zůstaňte.
(It's raining out; you'd better stay here a while yet.)

Exercise

Translate the following sentences illustrating the various Czech expressions for "to like" and "to love" into Czech.

1. How did you like that poem?
2. I like to type on this typewriter.
3. We don't like pessimists.
4. All our students like to study Czech syntax.
5. Everyone prefers his hobbies to his work.
6. That city appealed to her very much.
7. I prefer lunch to supper.
8. For the most part students love foreign films.
9. Do you prefer the broad fields to the narrow streets of the city?
10. Milan loves Marie's sister.
11. Our whole family prefers to live in the country.
12. Do you like that kind of coat?
13. Not everyone loves nature.
14. You'd better let me know before you go out.
15. Do you think you are going to like American music?

Mixed Declensional Patterns

From now on it will be convenient to apply the label "mixed declension" to three numerically limited sets of masculine and neuter nouns that, for the most part, exhibit soft endings in the singular and hard endings in the plural. The first set consists of masculine nouns whose stems with one single exception end in -en. The student will recognize that the nouns den and týden could possibly belong to this set; but, since the latter nouns have a fugitive -e- in the -en and other complications in the plural, it is expedient to learn them as separate grammatical items. The word pramen serves as a good example.

	Singular	Plural
N	pramen	prameny
G	pramene	pramenů
D	prameni	pramenům
A	pramen	prameny
I	pramenem	prameny
L	prameni	pramenech

The second set of mixed declension nouns contains only neuter nouns whose stems end in -men. The noun rameno will illustrate the group. Note that the soft endings are not consistent in the singular.

	Singular	Plural
N	rameno	ramena
G	ramene ramena	ramen
D	rameni ramenu	ramenům
A	rameno	ramena
I	ramenem	rameny
L	rameni ramenu	ramenech

The third set of mixed declension nouns is comprised practically exclusively of neuter nouns, most of which designate the young of various mammals. In all these nouns the stem ends in -e in the direct cases of the singular, in -et in the indirect cases of the singular, and in -at in all plural forms. The word dítě belongs here in the singular; but, as has already been demonstrated in Lesson X, the plural is different. The word zvíře furnishes a good example.

	Singular	Plural
N	zvíře	zvířata
G	zvířete	zvířat
D	zvířeti	zvířatům
A	zvíře	zvířata
I	zvířetem	zvířaty
L	zvířeti	zvířatech

DIALOGUE

Milane, kde jsi? Pospěš, prosímtě. Jestli chceš opravdu dnes večer jít do biografu, musíme už brzo odejít.	Milan, where are you? Please hurry. If you really want to go to the movies tonight, we have to leave soon.
Buď bez starosti. Budu za okamžik hotov. Zjisti mezitím, co kde hrají. Jsem zvědav, jestli něco zajímavého najdeš.	Don't worry. I'll be ready in a moment. In the meantime find out what's playing where. I'd like to know whether you'll find anything interesting.
Na jaký film se chceš vlastně podívat? Na něco veselého, smutného? Na co?	What kind of film would you actually like to see? Something humorous, something sad? What?
Nemám dnes náladu na nic vážného nebo hlubokého. Chci si prostě v biografu odpočinout.	Today I'm in no mood for anything serious or deep. I simply want to relax at the movies.
V tom případě nemusíme chodit daleko. Tady u nás za rohem hrají film o přírodě—o divoké přírodě v Americe, ten se ti bude jistě líbit.	In that case we don't have to go far. Just around the corner in our neighborhood they're showing a nature film—about the American wilderness. You'll certainly like it.
Tak dobře. Proti přírodě nic nemám. Ať je divoká nebo ne. Jsem si jist, že to bude menší otrava, než trávit	O.K. I have nothing against nature, whether it's wild or not. I am sure that it will be less boring than

večer někde na návštěvě. Ani nevíš jak jsem rád, že jsme dnes nemuseli jít zase ke Karlovi. V poslední době se u něho vždycky nudím. Kromě toho jsou jeho večeře čím dál tím ubožejší.. Nemyslíš?	to spend the evening somewhere visiting. You don't even know how glad I am that we didn't have to go to see Karel again today. Lately I've always been bored at his place. Besides, his suppers are getting poorer and poorer. Don't you think so?
Nebyl jsem si vědom toho, že ses u Karla někdy nudil. Vypadal jsi vždycky docela spokojeně. Ale, bud' tak laskav, pojd' už. Je za deset minut sedm.	I'm not aware that you were ever bored at Karel's. You always looked quite happy. But be so kind as to come along. It's ten to seven.

* * *

Mám pro vás dost dobrou anekdotu. Víte jaký je rozdíl mezi pesimistou a optimistou?	I have a rather good joke for you. Do you know the difference between a pessimist and an optimist?
Jaký?	What is it?
Pesimista říká, že situace v dnešním světě je tak hrozná, že už horší být nemůže, zatímco optimista říká: ale ne, může.	The pessimist says that the situation in today's world is so terrible that it can't be any worse, while the optimist says, no, it can.

* * *

Podle všeho sem letos nebudeme moci pozvat profesora Valoucha. Nemáme dost peněz. Nikdy jsme nebyli bohatí, ale letos jsme chudší než kdykoli předtím. Myslím, že je to proto, že jsme sem na jaře pozvali příliš mnoho hostí. Kolik návštěvníků jsme tady vlastně měli? Byl jsem sám nejméně na pěti přednáškách.	To all appearances we won't be able to invite Professor Valouch here this year. We don't have enough money. We never were rich, but this year we are poorer than ever before. I think that is because we invited too many guests here in the spring. How many visitors did we actually have here? I myself attended at least five lectures.
Je to trochu trapné, protože jsme to Valouchovi slíbili už dávno. Sám jsem mu víc než před půl rokem říkal, že ho letos určitě pozveme. A je to také škoda, protože Valouch je velký vědec a, ačkoli je to starší člověk, skvěle přenáší. Přednáší rozhodně lépe, než mnozí jeho kolegové, kteří jsou mladší než on.	It's a bit embarrassing because we already promised Valouch a long time ago. I myself told him more than half a year ago that we would invite him this year for sure. And it's also a shame because Valouch is a great scientist; and, although he is an older man, he lectures brilliantly. He definitely lectures better than many of his colleagues who are younger than he.

Ale nedá se nic dělat. Pozvat ho nemůžeme. Mám mu to napsat já nebo mu to napíšete sám? Jestli chcete, napíši mu. On je jeden z mých nejlepších přátel. Ne, počkejte. Raději mu napište vy. Vy jste s ním byl ve styku první. Kromě toho to bude formálnější, než když mu to oznámím já v přátelském dopise.	But it can't be helped. We cannot invite him. Am I to write that to him, or will you write to him yourself? If you want, I'll write to him. He is one of my best friends. No, wait. You had better write to him. You were the first to be in contact with him. Besides that it will be more formal than if I inform him about that in a friendly letter.

* * *

Jak vám chutná tahle káva?	How do you like this coffee?
Není špatná; už jsem pil horší. Proč? Vyznáte se v kávě? Já ne. Mám sice kávu rád, ale čaj mám raději a obyčejnou vodu nejraději.	It's not bad; I've drunk worse. Why? Are you an expert on coffee? I'm not. It's true I like coffee, but I like tea better, and I like plain water the best.
V tom se tedy od vás liším. Mám kávu hrozně rád. Vypiji každý den nejméně pět šálků. Když říkáte, že dáváte přednost čaji, a dokonce vodě, před kávou, to pro mne zní jako: rád zpívám, ale raději mluvím a nejraději mlčím nebo něco podobného.	In that I differ from you. I'm terribly fond of coffee. Every day I drink at least five cups. When you say that you give preference to tea, and even water, over coffee, that sounds to me like: I like to sing, but I prefer to talk, and I like best to be quiet, or something like that.
Co kdo miluje nebo nemá rád, to je ovšem záležitost chuti a vkusu. A ve věcech vkusu se názory nejčastěji rozcházejí. Můžete o takových věcech říci něco konkrétnějšího? Já proto raději mluvím o něčem praktickém a jednoduchém. Například o zvířatech. Doufám, že máte rád psy. Nebo nemáte?	What one loves or doesn't like, that is after all a matter of liking and taste. And in matters of taste opinions most often diverge. Can you say anything more concrete about such things? That's why I prefer to talk about something practical and simple. For instance, about animals. I hope you like dogs. Or do you?

* * *

Je Faulkner tak známý jako Hemingway?	Is Faulkner as famous as Hemingway?
Možná, že je stejně známý jako Hemingway, možná, že méně. Nevím. Příliš mě to nezajímá. Má úspěch něco společného s hodnotou díla?	Maybe he's just as famous as Hemingway, maybe less. I don't know. That doesn't interest me too much. Has success anything in common with the value of a work?

Nemyslel jsem to v tomhle úzkém smyslu. Mne také nezajímá, kdo z nich je větší literární hvězda--jestli je jeden právě tak úspěšný jako ten druhý, nebo méně nebo více úspěšný než ten druhý. Jde mi spíš o jejich myšlenky a o jejich stanovisko k člověku a životu.	I didn't mean it in that narrow sense. I'm not interested either in which of them is the bigger literary star--whether one is just as successful as the other. Rather I am concerned with their thoughts and with their attitude toward man and life.
Může to vůbec někdo zjistit? Jsou k tomu spolehlivé prameny? Není totiž těžší úkol než měřit a srovnávat vliv literatury a umění na společnost.	Can anyone find that out at all? Are there reliable sources for that? There just isn't a more difficult task than measuring and comparing the influence of literature and art on society.

* * *

Na svatého Václava se s Jiřím[1] chystáme na venkov. Pojedeme do jedné vesnice na jihu Čech, kam obyčejně jezdíme, když si chceme odpočinout. (Občas tam také jedeme proto, že tam v obchodě prodávají hrozně dobrý černý chléb, jaký nedostanete v celé Praze.) Svátek svatého Václava je koncem září, kdy je v téhle části Čech většinou ještě teplé a suché počasí, ale kdy už jsou barvy v přírodě jiné, než byly v létě, a kdy je všude v lesích a polích příjemný klid, spíš než to mrtvé ticho, které tam bude později na podzim. Doufám, že také letos bude hezky.[2] Těším se na tu cestu jako malé dítě.	On Saint Václav's Day Jiří and I are planning to go out into the country. We're going to drive to a village in the south of Bohemia, where we usually go when we want to relax. (From time to time we also go there because in a store there they sell awfully good dark bread, the like of which you won't get in the whole of Prague.) Saint Václav's Day falls at the end of September, when the weather for the most part is still warm and dry in this part of Bohemia, but when the colors in nature are already different from the way they were in summer, and when there is a pleasant calm everywhere in the forests and fields, rather than the dead silence that will be there later on in the fall. I hope that it will be nice this year too. I am looking forward to the trip like a little child.
S kabátem přes rameno půjdeme hustým lesem a budeme se dívat a poslouchat, co se kolem děje. Jsem hlavně zvědav, jestli se mi ještě bude tolik líbit to místo nad řekou, kde jsme před dvěma měsíci strávili celé odpoledne. Seděli jsme tam tehdy na velkých kamenech a odpočívali po namáhavé procházce. Brzo jsme si uvědomili, že se nám tam líbí, a nakonec jsme tam zůstali několik hodin. Ještě dnes mám to krásné místo před očima. Zůstalo mi jasně	With our coats thrown over our shoulders we shall go through the dense woods, and we shall watch and listen to what goes on around us. I'm mainly curious whether I'll still like as much that place above the river where we spent the whole afternoon two months ago. We were sitting then on some large rocks and were resting after a strenuous walk. We soon realized that we liked it there, and we ended up staying there for several hours. Even today I have

v paměti. Nemohu se opravdu dočkat až je zase uvidím.	that beautiful spot before my eyes. It has remained clearly in my memory. I really can't wait until I see it again.

1 When the notion of accompaniment is emphasized in a compound subject consisting of two elements, Czech speakers prefer the prepositional phrase *s* + Instrumental to the use of the coordinating conjunction *a*. Note that the verb is always plural, and be careful to select the appropriate person.

2 The student has already encountered *chladno*, *teplo*, and *vlhko* in similar phrases, and he would expect *hezko* here; but Czech uses the irregular adverbial form *hezky* in this type of impersonal sentence.

READING SELECTION

Jsem zvědav, co bude bratr říkat, až se vrátí z biografu. Šel se tam podívat na jeden film, který jsem viděl před několika dny a který se mi velmi líbil. Ačkoli jsem pochyboval o tom, že ten film bude bratra zajímat, přece jen jsem mu o něm vypravoval. Je to totiž dílo, které na mne udělalo zvlášt' silný dojem. Dlouho jsem nic lepšího neviděl. Přitom je to jednoduchý film o obyčejném životě obyčejných lidí. Ovšem to samo nevysvětluje proč ten film má opravdovou hodnotu. Podle mého názoru je dobrý prostě proto, že je dobrý jako umění. Bratr je všude známý svou zálibou v moderních a neobyčejných filmech. Jsem si ale skoro jist, že se dnes večer nudit nebude. A to právě proto, že má jemný vkus a smysl pro formální hodnoty.

Petře, pojd', musíme už jít domů. Nebudeme přece trávit celou noc rozhovory o tom, jestli mají hvězdy vliv na osudy lidí. Už jste nám během večera stejně všechno vysvětlili. I tadyhle Punt'a už ví, že mezi nebem a zemí je tolik zvláštních věcí, že se v nich jeden člověk--nebo v jeho případě jeden pes--těžko vyzná. Já jsem kromě toho unavená. Zítra bohužel není svátek a musíme jít jako obyčejně do práce. Mezi tím okamžikem a touhle chvílí je už jen sedm a půl hodiny. Tak vstaň a rozluč se.

Jeho stanovisko je trochu nejasné. Nevíme ani, jestli chce pracovat společně s námi nebo sám. Nejdřív pořád zdůrazňoval, že se mu myšlenka na společné dílo líbí a často k nám chodil s nejrůznějšími nápady. Byli jsme s ním tehdy ve velmi úzkém styku. Brzo ale začal říkat, že se cítí vězněm cizích názorů a přicházel k nám méně a méně často. Nyní jsme ho už několik dní vůbec neviděli. Co bude dále, to není lehké říci. Zřejmě se nevrátí k svým původním plánům a nebude už chtít pracovat s námi ostatními. Máme dojem, že všechno dělá nejraději sám a svým vlastním způsobem. Nepochybujeme sice o jeho upřímnosti, ale někdy pochybujeme o tom, že je schopen opravdové společné práce.

V celém domě je velký klid; dokonalejší snad nemůže být. Na stole v pokoji, kam jsem právě vešel, stojí šálky s něčím voňavým. Vedle nich je trochu čerstvého bílého chleba. V kuchyni tiše jdou hodiny. Brzo bude poledne a venku už začíná být teplo. Kam se člověk podívá je zvláštní příjemný pořádek. Všechny věci vypadají, že jsou na svém pravém místě. Srovnávám to, co vidím, se svým bytem v městě a jsem si najednou vědom toho, že se velice těším na další dny své dovolené tady v téhle vesnici, daleko od hluku v ulicích, od telefonu, od psacího stroje a od denních starostí. Líbí se mi tady a jsem tady rád. Miluji tenhle tichý a prostý způsob života. Dělá mi dobře. Když ale o tom myslím hlouběji, jsem si opravdu jist, že nemiluji změnu ještě více?

Úkoly umění jsou mnohé a nezůstávají stejné od jedné doby k druhé. V umění se tedy pořád něco děje, co je ve větší nebo menší míře mění. Není proto nikdy jednoduché říci co je a co není umění nebo co je dobré a co je špatné umění. Přes všechny ty změny, kterými nás umění překvapuje, jedna věc je jasná. Umění nepřestává mít své pevné a důležité místo mezi hodnotami společnosti. A je to snad právě proto, že umění a jeho změny nám pomáhají objevovat to, co máme všichni společného a co nás dělá tím, čím jsme. Jinými slovy, že umění je jedním ze způsobů jak zůstat ve styku s životem samým, spíš než jen s myšlenkami nebo názory.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. You (sg.) arrived earlier than I thought. 2. The next film will begin in a moment. 3. We haven't been in touch with them since the end of November now (Use už). 4. The more she studied it, the less familiar she was with it. 5. Marie and Klára like to be by themselves. 6. For Václav there is nothing in the world more sacred than art. 7. She was looking at him with her blue eyes and was saying nothing. 8. You'd (pl.) better rest a while; this work is really strenuous. 9. He was more dead (not the comparative of "dead") than alive. 10. Don't

worry; in these sources you (pl.) will find everything you need. 11. During our next vacation (Use o + Loc.) we shall travel around Bohemia. 12. Are you (sg.) aware of the fact that you will spend there at the least (Use nejméně) nine days? 13. I've never read his book in its entirety (Use the adjective celý); it's very boring (Use a noun phrase with velký). 14. And what place (Use kde) appealed to you (pl.) the most? 15. If you (sg.) don't like milk, you unfortunately won't like this dish. 16. Of course, I'm sure that I notified them a long time ago. 17. Which movie house do (pl.) like to go to best? 18. Both viewpoints diverge anyhow. 19. Can't we do it in a more practical way (Use the adverb)? 20. They weren't at all friendly; they replied to everything dryly and curtly. 21. In this case it was a question of several literary works. 22. Do you (pl.) think you'll be ready for sure at five thirty? 23. He lives quite far away, almost at the very end of the next street. 24. Although he was a scientist, he was better (Use "more") known as a musician. 25. Why have you (fem.sg.) invited so few guests? 26. I too was looking forward to Jiří's birthday. 27. He was telling us at length about his affairs. 28. I see you're already having a third cup of that excellent tea. 29. Valouch is more reliable than Milan, but for the most part he takes care of his own interests only. 30. Don't compare (sg.) Miss Krámská with your sister; they have nothing in common (Translate "nothing common"). 31. In this whole thing you won't find even a single deeper thought. 32. He has been promising me since last spring that he would find out for me when that happened. 33. Don't sell (pl.) the car yet; wait until the prices get (Translate "will be") higher. 34. I'm just not in the mood for his stories. 35. We'd better go someplace else; we'll evidently be bored here. 36. Milan told her that himself, they say. 37. Father's opinions sometimes differ quite a bit from mother's. 38. He who waits long, finally lives to see everything. 39. Please speak even (Use ještě) more quietly. 40. In (Use na) the sky there shone just a few bright stars. 41. Which of these two benches is actually the narrower? 42. We had a thousand different tasks, and one was harder than the other. 43. Karel is one of the most curious people that I've ever (Use kdy) met. 44. She had even a worse influence on him than his mother. 45. Send (sg.) me immediately a couple of my older coats; I need them urgently. 46. Note (pl.) that in these sentences he speaks only about purely formal values. 47. When Peter was in the country, did he see any wild animals there?

48. To all appearances we are not going to have too much peace here. 49. All at once we entered a forest thicker than the one we had been walking through up to then. 50. He never even laughed in her company. 51. While she gave preference to the city over the village, her brother couldn't even bear life in the city. 52. All the way we walked over nothing but (Use sám) stones. 53. On her shoulder there sat a black cat with green eyes. 54. I am less well acquainted (Translate "know less") with him than with her, but I can say that neither one (Use oba) has taste. 55. I prefer to stay here. 56. Is there a holiday on Monday? 57. We also like to walk through fields and forests. 58. Take (pl.) a little of this bread; you will like it. 59. Don't let Jarmila give that poor child anything very cold. 60. She was kind; she never got angry when I returned late from the store.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Děti a klid.
2. Přednosti venkova.
3. Dnešní biografy.
4. Divoká příroda v Americe a na světě vůbec.
5. Nudíte se často?
6. Vypravujete rád anekdoty?
7. Názory na umění.
8. Zvířata ve vašem domě.
9. Kde rád trávíte svůj volný čas?
10. Vědci a dnešní svět.
11. Kdy jste obyčejně v dobré náladě?
12. Na co se právě těšíte?
13. Jste v častém styku se svými přáteli?
14. Jsou lidé, které znáte, většinou spolehliví?
15. Jaké praktické záležitosti vám dělají starosti?
16. Jaké české úkoly rád děláte?
17. Díváte se někdy na hvězdy?
18. Odpočíváte před nebo po práci?
19. Zvete rád lidi na návštěvu?
20. Snažte se srovnat film a divadlo.
21. Hodnota přátelských styků.
22. Bohatí a chudí v naší společnosti.
23. V čem se vyznáte a v čem se nevyznáte.
24. Dobré a špatné vlivy.
25. Čeho se už asi nedočkáte?

LESSON XIV

VOCABULARY

aktivní	active
až	
až + na + Acc.	except (for)
Brno (n)	capital of Moravia
budova (f)	building
celkem (adv.)	altogether, on the whole, roughly speaking
cesta	
být někomu v cestě	to be in one's way
cizinec/cizinc-(m)	foreigner, stranger, outsider
co	
co je to za + Acc.	what kind of...is that?
čistit (II,i)(See vyčistit)	to clean
dělat/udělat si legraci (z + Gen.)	to make fun of
dívat se/podívat se (do + Gen.)	to look into, take a look in
dohadovat se (VII,i)(s někým o něčem) (See dohodnout se)	to agree (upon something with someone,) come to an agreement (with someone)
dohodnout se (VI,p)(s někým o něčem) (See dohadovat se)	to agree (upon something with someone,) come to an agreement (with someone)
dohromady (adv.)	together, all in all; hardly, scarcely (with negation)
donutit (II,p)(někoho k něčemu/do něčeho) (See nutit)	to force, compel, make someone do something
dovědět se (p, irreg., see vědět Lesson IV)(o + Loc.)(See dovídat se)	to learn, hear of
dovídat se (I,i)(o + Loc.)(See dovědět se)	to learn, hear of
drogerie (f)	drugstore
držet se (IV,i)(+ Gen.)(See podržet se)	to hold on (to someone/something)
ekologický	ecological
ekologie (f)	ecology
fakt (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	fact
fotografie (f)	photograph, photography

fotografovat (VII,i)(See vyfotografovat)	to take pictures, photograph
funkce (f)	function
chvíle	
na poslední chvíli	at the last moment
informace (f)(either sg. or pl.)	piece of information, information
jezero (n)	lake
kapsa (f)(Gen.pl. kapes)	pocket
kartáček/kartáčk- (m)	brush
kartáček na zuby	toothbrush
klidný	quiet, calm, peaceful
konat (I,i)(See vykonat)	to do, make, perform
konat se (I,i)	to take place
košile (f)(Gen.pl. košil)	shirt
logický	logical
mírný	mild, gentle, moderate
místnost[1](f)	room
móda (f)	fashion, vogue
možnost (f)	possibility, likelihood, chance
druhá (jiná) možnost	alternative
najíst se (p, irreg., see jíst Lesson IV)(+ Gen.)	to eat one's fill (of)
napsat se (IX,p)(See psát Lesson XI)	to write a lot
navzájem (adv.)	mutually, each other, one another
nedostatek/nedostatk- (m)	shortage, lack, deficiency
nevýhoda (f)	disadvantage, drawback
nutit (II,i)(někoho k něčemu/do něčeho) (See donutit)	to force, compel, make someone do something
obličej (m)	face
obvyklý	customary, habitual, usual
okamžitě (adv.)	instantaneously, immediately, at once, without delay
okamžitý	instantaneous, immediate
okolnost (f)	circumstance, condition
pak (adv.)(See potom Lesson V)	then
Pavel/Pavl- (m)	Paul (first name)

pálit (II,i)(See spálit)	to scorch, burn
pero	
kuličkové pero	ball-point pen
podlaha (f)	floor
podobně (adv.)	like that, similarly
a podobně (abbrev. apod.)	and the like
podržet se (IV,p)(+ Gen.)(See držet se)	to hold on (to someone/something)
pořádně (adv.)	thoroughly, decidedly, in an orderly manner, properly
postačit (II,p)(See stačit)	to suffice, be enough
požádat (I,p)(+ o + Acc.)(See žádat)	to request, ask (for), require
pravidlo (n)(Gen.pl. pravidel)	rule, axiom
pravopis (m)	orthography, spelling
program (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	program
prohlédnout si (VI,p)(See prohlížet si)	to examine, inspect, visit (places)
prohlížet si (III,i)(See prohlédnout si)	to examine, inspect, visit (places)
prudký (prudce = adv.)	violent, strong, extreme, intense
předem (adv.)	in advance, beforehand
přemýšlet (III,i)(+ o + Loc.)	to think about, reflect on
přijít	
přijít + o + Acc. (Perfective only)	to lose (not to misplace)
příležitost (f)	opportunity, occasion
připomenout^2(VI,p)(+ někomu + něco/někoho)(See připomínat)	to remind of/about, suggest
připomínat (I,i)(+ někomu + něco/někoho)(See připomenout)	to remind of/about, suggest
přizpůsobit (II,p)(+ něco + něčemu)(See přizpůsobovat)	to adapt, adjust (something to something)
přizpůsobit se (II,p)(+ Dat.)(See přizpůsobovat se)	to conform, adjust
přizpůsobovat (VII,i)(+ něco + něčemu)(See přizpůsobit)	to adapt, adjust (something to something)
přizpůsobovat se (VII,i)(+ Dat.)(See přizpůsobit se)	to conform, adjust
rada (f)	advice, counsel, suggestion
rozdělit (II,p)(See rozdělovat)	to divide
rozdělovat (VII,i)(See rozdělit	to divide

rozhodnout se (VI,p)(+ o + Loc.)(See rozhodovat se)	to decide, make up one's mind
rozhodovat se (VII,i)(+ o + Loc.)(See rozhodnout se)	to decide, make up one's mind
samotný (Synonymous with sám, see Lesson XIII)	alone, one's self, the very
sejít se (Va, p,see jít,Lesson V) (See scházet se)	to meet, come together
scházet se (III,i)(See sejít se)	to meet, come together
sjezd (m)	convention, congress
skládat se (I,i)(+ z + Gen.)	to be composed of, consist of
skupina (f)	group
slavnostní	festive, gala, ceremonial, solemn
slovník (m)	dictionary
spálit (II,p)(See pálit)	to scorch, burn
společenský	social
stačit (II,i)(See postačit and vystačit)	to suffice, be enough, manage to (+ inf.)
ted'[3](adv.)(See nyní, Lesson II)	now
tenkrát (adv.)	then, at that time
tím spíš, že	the more so as, especially since
tráva (f)(Gen.pl. trav)	grass
tvář (f)(Nom.pl. tváře)	cheek, face
tvářit se (II,i)(+ adv.)(See zatvářit se)	to show or pretend some emotion on one's own face
událost (f)	event, happening, occurrence
upozornit (II,p)(+ někoho + na něco) (See upozorňovat)	to draw one's attention to, inform someone of
upozorňovat (VII,i)(+ někoho + na něco) (See upozornit)	to draw attention to, inform of
uvnitř (adv.)	inside, within
užitečný	useful, valuable
vědět	
vědět si rady + s + Instr.	to cope (with), handle ; be puzzled (by)(negative)
vina (f)	blame, fault, guilt
vlastní	one's own, intrinsic
vpředu (adv.)	in front

však[4](conj.)(See ale, Lesson I)	but
vybírat si (I,i)(See vybrat si)	to choose, select
vybrat si(Vc,p, like brát)(See vybírat si)	to choose, select
vyčistit (II,p)(See čistit)	to clean
vydání (n)	edition, publication
vyfotografovat (VII,p)(See fotografovat)	to take pictures, photograph
výhoda (f)	advantage, asset, merit
vykonat (I,p)(See konat)	to do, make, perform
výlet (m)	trip, picnic, outing
vyspat se (p, irreg., see spát, Lesson IV)	to have a night's sleep
vystačit (II,p)(See stačit)	to suffice, be enough
vzadu (adv.)	at the back, in back
vznikat (I,i)(See vzniknout)	to arise, originate, be caused by
vzniknout (VI,p)(See vznikat)	to arise, originate, be caused by
záda (n)(Plural only)(Gen.pl. zad)	back
zajímat se + o + Acc.	to be interested in
záležet[5](IV/III,p)(+ na + Loc.)	to depend on
na tom nezáleží	it doesn't matter
zatvářit se (II,p)(+ adv.)(See tvářit se)	to show or pretend some emotion on one's face
zaujímat[6](I,i)(See zaujmout)	to occupy, take up, absorb, captivate
zaujmout[7](Vb,p)(See zaujímat)	to occupy, take up, absorb, captivate
zazelenat se (I,p)(See zelenat se)	to be green, appear green
zelenat (I,i)(See zezelenat)	to turn green, become green
zelenat se (I,i)(See zazelenat se)	to be green, appear green
zezelenat (I,p)(See zelenat)	to turn green, become green
zoufalý	desperate
zmatek/zmatk-(m)	confusion, mess, tangle
zpáteční	return (adj.)
zub (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	tooth
zvlášt' /zvláště (adv.)(See Lesson IV)	apart, separately
žádat (I,i)(+ o + Acc.)(See požádat)	to request, ask (for), require

1 This word is the general term for a living space. The word pokoj in Lesson III is a more specific term; its primary meaning is living-room, but it also is a general term referring to bedroom, dining-room, parlor, library, or study, but not to kitchen, bathroom, or utility room, which are místnosti. All these rooms, of course, have their specific terms in Czech.

2 This verb has an irregular perfect participle: připomněl, připomněla, etc.

3 This form is more colloquial than nyní.

4 This conjunction has the same meaning as ale, but it is a dependent word and cannot introduce any clause. Compare the following sentences:

Slíbil, že přijde, ale nepřišel.
Slíbil, že přijde, nepřišel však.

The form však is hardly ever used in the spoken form of the literary language.

5 In Czech there are a few prefixed suffixless verbs that are imperfective.

6 There is a glottal stop between the prefix za and the rest of the verb. This holds true also for zaujmout.

7 The verb zaujmout is an irregular Class V verb for which the various forms must be listed:

Present tense	Perfect participle
zaujmu, zaujmeš, zaujme, etc.	zaujal, zaujala, zaujalo, etc.

Imperative

zaujmi, zaujměte

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Reflexive Verbs

The student has already learned to use a fair number of reflexive verbs employing both reflexive particles se and si. Reflexive verbs were introduced early in the textbook without special comment because they express some basic and statistically frequent verbal concepts, because they may deviate semantically in an unpredictable way from their nonreflexive counterparts, and because it was important for the student to learn to handle the enclitics se and si. It is now time to give detailed consideration to reflexive verbs and to explicate their role in the Czech verbal system. Their role is considerable and strategic: most Czech verbs have both reflexive and nonreflexive forms. It will behoove the student to follow closely the discussion below; it will be essential to his future analysis and assimilation of reflexive verbs and to his understanding of the Czech verb system in general.

Even though it is sometimes tempting to regard reflexive verbs as entirely separate verbs in respect to their nonreflexive counterparts, they cannot be understood without recourse to the basic underlying nonreflexive verbs. Probably the most comprehensive statement that can be made about the relationship between nonreflexive verbs and their reflexive derivatives is that the object, either direct or indirect, associated with the nonreflexive verb becomes the subject of the reflexive verb. The memory, so to speak, of the new subject's former role as object is preserved in the enclitic forms of the reflexive pronoun, se and si. If the new subject functioned as a direct object, se is used; if it was an indirect object, si is employed. From what has been said, it is readily understandable why se-reflexives must have objects in cases other than the accusative, while si-reflexives may have direct objects. While the above may be a rational account of the process that has given rise to reflexive verbs, the real problem lies in the varying degrees of predictability about just what kind of reflexive will be produced from a given nonreflexive verb. These range from a very high degree of predictability in the case of so-called passive reflexives to a zero degree of predictability where reflexives have developed with figurative semantic shifts. It is for this reason that dictionaries have adopted the practice of listing reflexive verbs as separate lexical items.

The following paragraphs provide a classification of reflexive verbs against the background of their nonreflexive counterparts. As usual, verbs from this and preceding lessons are drawn upon to illustrate the various types. The classification will be organized around three primary features: 1) whether the corresponding nonreflexive verb is transitive or intransitive, 2) whether the object associated with the reflexive verb is animate or inanimate, and 3) whether the animate object is direct or indirect. We first turn to the situation where the underlying or original nonreflexive verb is transitive and takes an animate object.

Underlying Transitive Verbs with Animate Direct Objects

The following list of previously introduced reflexive verbs and of reflexivized forms of nonreflexive verbs the student has already studied and used should give the student a good idea of the varied functions of the reflexive when the object of the underlying nonreflexive verb is animate. When this animate object is also made the subject of the reflexive verb, the effect of this new subject is felt as the agent of the action to varying degrees. This feeling of agency is very strong in the case of verbs like mýt se (to wash) and oblékat se (to dress), and neither of these verbs can be used passively in the sense of "to be washed" or "to be dressed" when the object is animate. The feeling of agency in the subject is weaker in verbs like mazat se (to get dirty) and zlobit se (to get angry), and it is almost nonexistent in the case of verbs like jmenovat se (to be called) and rodit se (to be born). These differences in the feeling of agency are not significant for our classification. They are caused, first of all, by the fact that the subject of the reflexive verb was originally solely an object of the nonreflexive verb and, secondly, by the different semantic nature of the various verbs. Particularly in this class of reflexive verbs the student should expect to observe figurative semantic shifts. These will always be readily understandable, but not necessarily predictable, and must therefore be learned by the student. Examples of this kind of semantic shift are found in the reflexives dát se + do (to set about), dělat se (to pretend), mýlit se (to be mistaken), and mít se (to be-- state of well-being) listed below. Study carefully the display of reflexives below bearing in mind the meaning of the corresponding nonreflexives. The corresponding nonreflexive verb is supplied if it has not been already introduced.

bavit se/pobavit se (to amuse one's self, have a good time)
  bavit/pobavit (to attract, amuse)
cítit se (to feel)
dávat se/dát se + do + Gen. (to set about)
dělat se (to pretend)
dostávat se/dostat se (to get into, get involved in)
držet se/podržet se + Gen. (to hold on to)
hlásit se/ohlásit se (to answer a call, appear, report)
  hlásit/ohlásit (to announce, report)
hýbat se/hnout se (to move)
chválit se/pochválit se (to praise one's self)
chystat se/přichystat se (to prepare, make ready)
  chystat/přichystat (to prepare, make ready)
jmenovat se (to be called, named)
  jmenovat (to call by name, appoint)
lišit se (to differ)
  lišit/rozlišit (to distinguish, differentiate)
mazat se/umazat se (to get dirty)
mít se (to be-- mental or physical state)
mýlit se/zmýlit se (to be mistaken)
  mýlit/zmýlit (to deceive, confuse)
mýt se/umýt se (to wash)
nudit se (to be bored)
  nudit (to bore)
objevovat se/objevit se (to appear, turn up)
  objevovat/objevit (to discover, reveal, disclose)
oblékat se/obléknout se (to dress)
  oblékat/obléknout (to dress)
plést se/splést se (to be confused)
  plést/splést (to braid, entwine, confuse)
považovat se + za + Acc. (to consider one's self as)
poznávat se/poznat se + s + Instr. (to get acquainted with)
přesvědčovat se/přesvědčit se (to convince one's self)
přizpůsobovat se/přizpůsobit se (to conform to)
  přizpůsobovat/přizpůsobit (to adjust)

- rodit se/narodit se (to be born)
  - rodit/porodit (to bear children)
- rozhodovat se/rozhodnout se (to make up one's mind)
  - rozhodovat/rozhodnout (to decide)
- těšit se + na + Acc. (to look forward to, anticipate)
  - těšit/utěšit (to comfort, console)
- učit se/naučit se (to study, learn)
- vidět se/uvidět se (to see one's self)
- vracet se/vrátit se (to return)
- vyznávat se/vyznat se (to know one's way about, confess)
  - vyznávat/vyznat (to confess)
- zajímat se + o + Acc. (to be interested in)
- zdržovat se (to linger, stay)/zdržet se (to be detained)
  - zdržovat/zdržet (to detain)
- zlobit se/rozzlobit se (to get angry)
  - zlobit/rozzlobit (to irritate, worry)
- znát se (to know one's self)

An interesting and important subclass of reflexive verbs developed from underlying transitive verbs with animate objects is represented by the so-called reciprocal reflexives. The reciprocity in these verbs is translated into English by the compound pronoun "each other." When the direct object (which must always be plural) linked with the nonreflexive counterparts becomes the subject of these particular verbs, each particular subject must be construed as directing the action not towards itself but towards all the other participating objects, as in Pozdravili jsme se (We greeted each other). All these verbs are quite clearly defined by their semantic content; if a given verb frequently calls for mutual and reciprocal action, then it will form a reciprocal reflexive in Czech. If verbs do not naturally imply reciprocal action but may be used reciprocally, then the reflexive must be accompanied by an adverb such as navzájem (mutually, each other), as in Myli se navzájem (They were washing each other). The following list of verbs includes only natural reciprocal actions; they may use navzájem but only for emphasi

- bít se (to hit each other, to fight)
- brát se/vzít se (to marry)
- dohadovat se/dohodnout se + o + Loc. (to come to agreement about)
- fotografovat se/vyfotografovat se (to photograph each other)
- chválit se/pochválit se (to praise each other)
- míjet se/minout se (to pass each other)
- milovat se (to love each other)

potkávat se/potkat se (to meet each other)

poznávat se/poznat se (to recognize each other, become acquainted with each other)

srovnávat se/srovnat se (to make a comparison among themselves)

vidět se/uvidět se (to see each other)

volat se/zavolat se (to call each other)

zdravit se/pozdravit se (to greet each other)

znát se (to know each other)

zvát se/pozvat se (to invite each other)

Mutual or reciprocal action may also be expressed in Czech somewhat idiomatically through use of the reflexive verb together with a prepositional phrase consisting of the preposition s (with) plus the instrumental case form of the other subject involved in the action. We shall term this type of verb "joint" reflexives. Most "reciprocal" reflexives can be used in this way. Joint reflexives may be either singular or plural depending on the number of the participants selected as the grammatical subject. As mentioned above, the other participant in the joint action appears in the prepositional phrase introduced by s and in this guise represents an additional agent for the action of the verb. In a few cases the prepositional phrase can be translated into English by a corresponding phrase introduced by "with," but in most cases English has no distinctive way of rendering the joint reflexives. Note the following joint reflexives and illustrative sentences.

bít se + s + Instr. (to fight with)

míjet se/minout se + s + Instr. (to pass each other)

potkávat se/potkat se + s + Instr. (to meet with)

poznávat se/poznat se + s + Instr. (to recognize each other, become acquainted with each other)

vidět se/uvidět se + s + Instr. (to see each other)

volat se/zavolat se + s + Instr. (to call each other)

zdravit se/pozdravit se + s + Instr. (to greet each other)

Potkával se s ní často na různých schůzích.
(He often ran into her at various meetings.)

Volali jsme se s nimi kdykoli přijeli do Prahy.
(We used to call each other whenever they came to Prague.)

Už ses viděl s Pavlem?
(Have you already seen Pavel?)

Nebudete se přece s kolegou kvůli tomu bít?
(After all you won't be fighting with your colleague over that.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating all types of reflexive verbs with underlying animate direct objects.

1. If I am not mistaken, we saw each other on the street last Friday at about 10:00 P.M.
2. Many people are interested in ecology now and give preference to it over everything else.
3. He said that he wasn't angry at me because I hadn't prepared the coffee on time.
4. That winter (Use Acc. without a preposition) he used to meet with her every afternoon in the park (Use joint reflexive).
5. Scientists are constantly comparing themselves to each other (Add navzájem).
6. We dressed quickly and went out to see (Use podívat se) what was going on.
7. The boy was so frightened that he couldn't even move from the spot.
8. Where did you two get acquainted?
9. One of our acquaintances is concerned because his wife is learning how to drive a car.
10. I'll be detained a while at the office; can you wait for me?
11. Please make up your mind; it's already late and we don't have much time.
12. I don't doubt that your friend is always fighting for something concrete (Use za + Acc.).
13. I tried to call her last night when I got in, but no one answered at her place.
14. How did you get so dirty? Go and wash!
15. Everyone thought that her daughter was lost, but the next day she turned up downtown on 16th Street.
16. Many people meet each other every day and yet do not become acquainted.
17. They say he considers himself the best musician in our city.
18. If those two people love each other, why don't they get married?
19. He and I used to say hello to each other every morning on the way to work (Use joint reflexive).
20. Can anyone explain to me why people differ so much?

Underlying Transitive Verbs with Inanimate Direct Objects

When inanimate direct objects become subjects of reflexive verbs, a very strong notion of passivity develops because inanimate nouns are not ordinarily conceived of as agents of actions and therefore grammatical subjects. As a result, such Czech constructions are very frequently but not always translated by the passive in English. There are no restrictions on the use of this type of passive reflexive in the imperfective aspect, but some develop in the perfective aspect. In general these reflexives are not used at all in the perfective past forms and are statistically limited in the perfective present. It is important to point out here that the reflexive forms of the imperfective future and the perfective future (perfective present) may carry the connotation of peremptoriness as in the English "As I have said before, this letter will be written this afternoon!" It is interesting to note also that those verbs in this group that are not subject to the above restrictions, that is, those reflexive verbs that may be used freely in all perfective forms, are in most cases just those reflexive verbs that need not be translated into English by the passive. These verbs are *prodat se*, *skončit se*, *udělat se*, *uvařit se*, *začít se*, *změnit se*, and *ztratit se* and are semantically distinctive in that each of them denotes a process, a change of state, whereby the action seems to originate in the inanimate subject. Another important word of caution is in order here: these Czech reflexive constructions do not permit the use of a true animate agent in the instrumental case. In other words, one cannot say in Czech: Voda se vaří maminkou. (The water is being boiled by mother.). What follows is an exhaustive list of verbs studied thus far that form passive reflexives and a set of illustrative sentences.

číst se/přečíst se (to read, be read)
dávat se/dát se + na + Acc. (to be placed on)
dělat se/udělat se (to be done)
držet se/podržet se (to be held)
jíst se (to be eaten)
jmenovat se (to be called)
končit se/skončit se (to end, be finished)
měnit se/změnit se (to change, be changed)
měřit se/změřit se (to be measured)
mýt se/umýt se (to be washed)
nést se (to be carried)
nosit se (to be worn)
opakovat se/zopakovat se (to be repeated)
oznamovat se/oznámit se (to be announced, made known)
platit se/zaplatit se (to be paid)
posílat se/poslat se (to be sent)
používat se/použít se (to be used, made use of)
překládat se/přeložit se (to be translated)
přibíjet se/přibít se (to be nailed up, fastened)
prodávat se/prodat se (to sell, be sold)
psát se/napsat se (to be written)
půjčovat se/půjčit se (to be loaned)
sázet se/zasadit se (to be planted)
skládat se + z + Gen. (to be composed of)
  skládat (to compose, put together)
srovnávat se/srovnat se (to be compared)
tisknout se (to be printed)

trpět se/strpět se (to be tolerated, endured)
uklízet se/uklidit se (to be cleaned up, tidied up)
vařit se/uvařit se (to cook, boil, be cooked be boiled)
vyslovovat se/vyslovit se (to be pronounced)
vysvětlovat se/vysvětlit se (to be explained)
začínat se/začít se (to begin, be begun)
zdůrazňovat se/zdůraznit se (to be emphasized, stressed)
ztrácet se/ztratit se (to be lost)

Loni se nám ztratily tři psací stroje.
(Last year three of our typewriters were lost.)

Jak se to jí?
(How is this eaten?)

Knihy jako je tahle se čtou dobře.
(Books like this read well.)

Magnetofon se dnes používá v každé kanceláři.
(The tape-recorder is being used today in every office.)

Až se ta záležitost skončí, půjdeme si odpočinout.
(As soon as this affair is over, we'll go and take a rest.)

Moderní města se rychle mění.
(Modern cities change rapidly.)

To se musí držet oběma rukama.
(That must be held in both hands.)

Jak jsem řekl, změní se to hned!
(As I said, it will be changed immediately!)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the use of reflexive verbs with underlying inanimate direct objects.

1. All information (pl.) of that type is customarily announced in the newspapers.
2. When must that be paid?
3. Sentences like these are not easily translated.
4. All rules of orthography must be constantly stressed.
5. All assignments will be written in pen or on a typewriter.
6. The whole apartment is tidied up every Thursday.
7. This picture will be put up on the other wall!
8. How do you know that such clothes are worn there in the fall?
9. This tree is going to be planted here close to the house and not elsewhere.

10. I understand (Use prý) that the meetings begin (Use reflexive, but this verb could also be nonreflexive) each day at exactly 9:45.
11. Was he able to tell you whether a lot of tape-recorders were sold in Czechoslovakia?
12. These things have always been put on top of the cupboard.
13. All new words are repeated at least five times.
14. That's not done that way at our place.
15. My new car will not be loaned to anyone.
16. Are such views really tolerated there?

Underlying Intransitive Verbs Developing Direct Objects

When we turn to an examination of intransitive verbs that have become reflexivized, we enter a highly idiomatic area of the Czech verbal system, where we are forced to indulge in some speculative reasoning in order to account for the observed phenomena. Whether the objects developed by these intransitive verbs are animate or inanimate is critical to only one of the subclasses discussed below; so this feature will not play a significant role in the over-all classification. There seem to be three subclasses of these reflexive verbs, and the basis for each subclass is different.

The first subclass is comprised exclusively of verbs derived by means of prefixes. The presence of the prefixes here must be decisive. The prefixes further define the semantic content of the underlying intransitive verb, and certain nuances of the new meaning of the verb permit the development of a direct object that then becomes the subject of the reflexive verb. A good case in point here is the derived verb vyspat se which can be neatly paraphrased by the English "to sleep one's self out." Another useful example is the verb rozcházet se (to differ, diverge), which can readily be construed to mean "to betake one's self away." Note that rozcházet se/rozejít se (to take leave of) would have to be construed differently, perhaps as "to go away from," which would then take a direct object; and the verb would have to be considered a reciprocal reflexive. The latter fact is supported by the presence of a joint reflexive for this verb: rozcházet se/rozejít se + s + Instr. The verbs ennumerated below represent an exhaustive list of this class already presented to the student.

dočkat se (to wait to see something)
procházet se/projít se (to take a walk)
rozcházet se/rozejít se (to differ, diverge)
rozcházet se/rozejít se (to part, take leave of)
scházet se/sejít se (to gather, come together)
vejít se (to be contained, fit)
vyspat se (to have a night's sleep)

The second subclass apparently includes only verbs pertaining to colors. The student has seen only one such verb so far, the verb zelenat (to turn green), introduced in this lesson. This kind of verb expresses a change of state and can be formed from any adjective denoting a color. Since zelenat means "to turn green," and zelenat se signifies "to appear green," it is reasonable to assume that the meaning of the latter could have developed from the phrase "to turn one's self green."

The third subclass yields impersonal reflexives that are always found in the third singular neuter and, therefore, imply some kind of original inanimate object. Verbs used in this way will, of course, be absolutely intransitive, but they may also be intransitive verbs that are capable of being used transitively such as pít and psát, ~~or they may be~~ intransitive verbs such as rozumět and věřit, that govern a case other than the accusative.

The flavor of sentences containing these impersonal verbs is that of a generalized statement about the action of the verb usually rendered in English by such subjects as "one," "they," or "we." A typical example is found in the sentence: Nahoře se tancovalo (They were dancing upstairs or There was dancing upstairs). We may account for this particular sentence by assuming that the underlying direct object of the verb "dance" was a verbal noun with the identical meaning, "dancing" so that we would obtain a basic sentence like "Someone danced a dancing." The form "dancing," then, becomes the subject of the sentence and is later dropped because of its semantic identity with the verb. All sentences of this type can be explained in this way. Below is a list of some verbs that form these impersonal reflexives and a group of sentences to illustrate how they may be used in the language.

bydlet
čekat
hovořit
jet
jít
ležet
mluvit
obědvat
pít
psát
rozumět
snídat
spát
svítit
věřit
vstávat

Snídalo se v osm a obědvalo se v jednu.
(We used to have breakfast at eight and lunch at one.)

Nehovořilo se tam o ničem vážném.
(They didn't talk about anything important there.)

Jak se leží v posteli nahoře?
(How is the bed upstairs?)

Pojede se už zítra.
(We'll leave tomorrow.)(Emphasis on tomorrow!)

Rozumělo se tomu v jiném smyslu.
(People understood it in another sense.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences exemplifying the use of reflexivized intransitive verbs.

1. See (Use podívat se) how green the grass looks.
2. I went to bed early last night, but I slept poorly.
3. One walked along a narrow corridor to his room.
4. No two doctors ever agree; they usually differ.
5. Whenever it rained, for (Use z + Gen.) some reason we (Impersonal) waited outside.

6. People in town never believed in what he said.
7. Will this table fit in that room across the way?
8. When we were young, we (Impersonal) used to get up every morning at 6:30.
9. We (Impersonal) lived nicely in that old apartment.
10. She can hardly wait for our trip into the mountains.

Verbs with Indirect Objects

The student already knows that si is the dative form of the enclitic reflexive pronoun. This is the form left in the sentence when the indirect object becomes the grammatical subject. It expresses the idea that the action is being performed by the subject for himself, for his own benefit or advantage, frequently for his own pleasure or enjoyment. In the case of indirect objects there is obviously no reason to make a distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, and there is no reason to make a distinction between animate and inanimate objects since, unless some kind of personification takes place, indirect objects are exclusively animate. We include here also any verb whose only object appears in the dative case, such as pomáhat, rozumět, and věřit. Study the following verbs and illustrative sentences very carefully, for the use of si is apt to be highly idiomatic.

bydlet si (to reside someplace and derive particular pleasure from it)

brát si/vzít si (to help one's self)

čekat si/počkat si (not to mind waiting)

číst si/přečíst si (to read for one's own enjoyment)

dělat si/udělat si (to make/do for one's self)

dlužit si (to owe to one's self)

hrát si (to play for one's own pleasure)

zjišt'ovat si/zjistit si (to find out for one's self)

jít si (to walk, deriving pleasure from the action)

kouřit si (to smoke for one's enjoyment)

kupovat si/koupit si (to buy for one's self)

myslet si (to think to one's self)

prohlížet si/prohlédnout si (to examine, inspect)

přinášet si/přinést si (to bring for one's self)

říkat si/říci si (to say to one's self)

sedět si (to enjoy sitting)

spát si (to sleep with obvious pleasure)

vážit si (to respect, esteem)

věřit si (to believe in one's self)

vybírat si/vybrat si (to choose, select for one's self)

zapomínat si/zapomenout si (to go and forget some personal effect)

zkoušet si/zkusit si (to try something on)

zpívat si (to sing for one's own enjoyment)

žít si (to live and enjoy it)

Berte si, prosím, máme všeho dost.
(Help yourself, please, we have enough of everything.)

Dlužíme si ještě jednu kávu.
(We owe ourselves another cup of coffee.)

Kdykoli ho vidím, vždycky si vesele zpívá.
(Whenever I see him, he's always singing happily.)

To nevadí, já si počkám.
(That doesn't matter, I won't mind waiting.)

Děláte si sám oběd?
(Do you make your own lunch?)

Verbs permitting objects in the dative case may also be used as reciprocal reflexives if their semantic content is appropriate. The following list of verbs includes two whose only object is dative; all the other have both a direct and an indirect object. They are used exclusively in the plural.

pomáhat si (to help each other)
posílat si (to send to each other)
povídat si (to tell each other)
psát si (to write to each other)
půjčovat si (to lend each other)
rozumět si (to understand each other)
slibovat si (to promise each other)
ukazovat si (to show each other)
vypravovat si (to narrate to each other)

Most of these same verbs may be used in both singular and plural to express the joint reflexive. Just as in the case of joint reflexives using se, those in si express one of the participants by means of the prepositional phrase s + Instr. Study the following verbs and accompanying examples.

posílat si + s + Instr. (to send to each other)
povídat si + s + Instr. (to tell each other)
psát si + s + Instr. (to write to each other)
půjčovat si + s + Instr. (to lend each other)
rozumět si + s + Instr. (to understand each other)
vypravovat si + s + Instr. (to narrate to each other)

Marie si s Pavlem dobře rozumějí.
(Marie and Pavel understand each other well.)

Než odjel do Ameriky, psal jsem si s ním každý měsíc.
(Before he left for America, I used to correspond with him every month.)

Když jsme je měli, půjčovali jsme si s nimi peníze.
(When we had it, we used to lend each other money.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the employment of reflexive verbs with indirect objects.

1. Every day after work he enjoys sitting in front of the window and smoking.
2. I said to myself that I would never do that again (Use už).
3. They promised each other that they would meet here again next spring.
4. He and I used to tell each other anecdotes (Use joint reflexive).
5. The parents are watching the children playing in the yard.
6. Make a selection for yourself and tell us what you have taken.
7. During the war I corresponded with her once a month (Use joint reflexive).
8. Our cat lies in the sun and enjoys sleeping.
9. What a pity! You've forgotten your book at home again.
10. I am amazed that he has little money, and yet he lives (Use si) so well.
11. We were enjoying a stroll in the meadow near the river.
12. Those girls used to get together and tell each other all the important events from their lives (Use singular).
13. If you don't feel well, buy yourself a new dress.
14. Every young person must learn to believe in himself.
15. Jiří and his friends are constantly lending each other (Add navzájem) clothes (Use joint reflexive).

Reflexiva tantum

The technical term "reflexiva tantum" refers to verbs that are only reflexive, verbs for which there exist no nonreflexive counterparts. Since the latter do not exist in the language, it is idle to speculate about the genesis of these reflexives. We want only to observe that a close historical study of these verbs would reveal that they too have undoubtedly arisen in the same ways as have all the other reflexives discussed in this lesson, whether corresponding nonreflexive verbs existed at one time in the language or not. The following two lists recapitulate for the student the reflexiva tantum with both se and si he has studied this far.

bát se (to fear, be afraid)

dít se (to happen, go on)

dívat se/podívat se (to look at, watch)

divit se/podivit se (to wonder, marvel)
líbit se (to be pleasing to, like)
loučit se/rozloučit se (to part, take leave)
ptát se/zeptat se (to ask)
smát se (to laugh)
snažit se (to strive)
starat se (to take care of)
stávat se (to become, happen)
tvářit se/zatvářit se (to make a face)
účastnit se/zúčastnit se (to take part in)
zabývat se (to be busy with)

pamatovat si/zapamatovat si (to remember)
sedat si/sednout si (to sit down)
vzpomínat si/vzpomenout si + na + Acc. (to recall)
všímat si/všimnout si (to take note of, pay attention to)

Independent Reflexive Pronouns

The student should be aware of the fact that the reflexive pronouns se and si used in the formation of reflexive verbs are enclitic or dependent pronominal forms. The reflexive pronoun also has longer independent forms that are used in much the same way as the independent forms of the other personal pronouns. Learn these independent forms of the reflexive pronoun from the table below.

Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Instr.	Loc.
sebe	sobě	sebe	sebou	sobě

As expected, the reflexive pronoun in general is used when the object expressed by the pronoun is identical to the subject of the clause or sentence. The student has already seen that the dependent forms of the reflexive pronoun are used with reflexive verbs. There are two situations where the independent forms are employed, one is obligatory and the other is optional under emphasis.

The long or independent forms are obligatory in any syntactic situation where the reflexive pronoun is not a direct or indirect object, in other words, in the genitive and instrumental cases and after prepositions. Study the illustrative sentences below.

Podívej se na sebe jak vypadáš.
(Take a look at how you look.)

Váží si jen sebe a nikoho jiného.
(He esteems only himself and no one else.)

Zeptej se na to sebe sama.
(Ask yourself about that.)

Zabýval se pořád sám sebou.
(He was constantly occupied with himself.)

Mluvili o tom jen mezi sebou.
(They spoke about that just among themselves.)

The independent forms are also used for emphasis in the case of reflexive verbs whose nonreflexive counterparts take either animate direct or animate indirect objects and whose meanings are not in the least figurative or passive. This means that one cannot use phrases like the following in Czech: vracet/vrátit sebe, dělat/udělat sebe, zlobit/rozzlobit sebe, vážit sobě, uvědomovat/uvědomit sobě. In addition, the independent forms cannot be used with reflexiva tantum. Pay close attention to the uses of the independent reflexive pronouns in the following sentences.

Mohu věřit někomu jinému než sobě?
(Can I trust anyone but myself?)

Zdržuješ nejen nás, ale také sebe.
(You are detaining not only us, but also yourself.)

Nikdy nezapomněl pochválit i sebe.
(He never forgot to praise himself.)

Sobě kupuje samé drahé věci, ale Marii nekoupil ještě ani kapesník.
(For himself he buys nothing but expensive things, but for Marie he still hasn't bought even a handkerchief.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences using the independent forms of the reflexive pronoun.

1. We all think that he sent that letter to himself.
2. He likes to emphasize that he never has any doubts about himself.
3. Can these glasses fit into each other?
4. She won't find that out for us, but she'll find it out for sure for herself.
5. My brother visits all his acquaintances, but he never invites anyone to his place.
6. He talked so much that in the end he confused us as well as himself.
7. The children got me dirty, but they didn't get a bit dirty.
8. Just recall yourself and what you yourself used to do.
9. You perhaps can convince yourself about that but not me.
10. I see you've got the children ready; haven't you forgotten to get yourself ready?

11. They are rushing back to their own place.
12. You are holding up me as well as yourself.

DIALOGUE

Nedávno jsme si s Pavlem prohlíželi fotografie, které jsme za posledních deset let udělali při různých příležitostech. Protože se navzájem často fotografujeme, viděl jsem se na Pavlových fotografiích v celé řadě obvyklých i neobvyklých situací: na kole, u moře, bez brejlí, při četbě, v autě vpředu, v autě vzadu, venku na zahrádce, uvnitř v bytě, atd. Celkem jsem se přitom bavil, protože mi ty fotografie znovu připomněly některé lidi a události, na které jsem už mezitím zapomněl.

Pavel and I were recently looking over the photographs that we have made in the last ten years on various occasions. Since we often take pictures of each other, I saw myself in Pavel's photographs in a whole series of usual and unusual situations; on a bicycle, at the seashore, without glasses, while reading, in the front seat of the car, in the back seat of the car, out in the yard, indoors in the apartment, etc. In general I enjoyed it because these photos reminded me again of some people and events that I had forgotten about in the meantime.

S jednou fotografií jsem si však nejdřív nevěděl rady. Dokonce jsem se na ní nepoznal, ačkoli mi Pavel říkal, že tam na ní někde jsem. Viděl jsem skupinu lidí, kteří bud' seděli nebo stáli v trávě mezi nějakými stromy. Všiml jsem si toho, že nikdo nebyl příliš veselý. Naopak, všichni vypadali spíš unaveně. Kromě toho každý nesl něco na zádech. Až na několik neznámých tváří jsem všechny hned poznal--byli to naši společní známí z kanceláře--ale nechápal jsem, o co jde. Pavel mi to musel vysvětlit. Tehdy prý jsme šli na výlet do hor k jednomu jezeru a tahle fotografie nás ukazovala na zpáteční cestě.

But I was puzzled at first by one photograph. I didn't even recognize myself in it although Pavel told me that I was in it someplace. I saw a group of people who were either sitting or standing on the grass among some trees. I noticed that no one was overly happy. On the contrary, every one was looking kind of tired. Besides that, each one was carrying something on his back. Except for a few unfamiliar faces I recognized everyone immediately--they were our mutual acquaintances from the office --but I didn't understand what was going on. Pavel had to explain it to me. At that time, he said, we were going on an outing into the mountains to a lake, and this picture showed us on the way back.

Jen to řekl, okamžitě jsem si na ten dávný letní den a na ten namáhavý výlet vzpomněl. Hned jsem si také uvědomil, že to bylo tenkrát, kdy jsem neměl s sebou žádný klobouk a kdy mi slunce spálilo celý obličej. Bylo to tehdy tak špatné, že jsem musel jít druhý den k lékaři. Ještě dlouho potom jsem musel na sebe dávat pozor a nesměl jsem chodit na prudké slunce.

No sooner had he said it, I immediately recalled that summer day long ago and that strenuous trip. I also realized immediately that that was the time when I didn't have any hat along and when the sun burned my whole face. It was so bad then that I had to go to the doctor the next day. For a long time afterwards I had to be careful, and I didn't dare be out in strong sunlight.

Na té samé fotografii mě zaujalo ještě něco jiného. Pavel totiž na ní měl na sobě zelenou košili. To mě překvapilo, protože vím, že Pavel nemá rád zelenou barvu a nenosí žádné zelené věci. Za celou tu dobu, co se známe, jsem ho snad neviděl v ničem zeleném. Pavla samotného to překvapilo, když jsem ho na ten zajímavý fakt upozornil. Chvíli se tvářil jako že o něčem přemýšlí, ale pak se jen zasmál a řekl: Jsou jen dvě možnosti; bud' to byla bílá košile, která se zelenala nebo bílá košile, která zezelenala.	Something else caught my attention in the same picture. In it Pavel had on a green shirt. That surprised me because I know that Pavel doesn't like green and doesn't wear anything green. In all the time we've known each other, I'd say I've never seen him in anything green. Pavel himself was surprised when I called this interesting fact to his attention. For a while he looked as if he was pondering something, but then he just laughed and said: there are only two possibilities; either it was a white shirt that appeared green or a white shirt that turned green.

* * *

Píše se "dohromady" zvlášť' nebo dohromady?	Is "dohromady" written as two words or as one word?
Co je to za otázku? "Dohromady" se ovšem píše "dohromady" a ne "zvlášť'."	What kind of question is that? "Dohromady" is naturally written "dohromady" and not "zvlášť'."
Jak to víš? Podíval ses do slovníku?	How do you know? Did you take a look in the dictionary?
Není to logické psát slova tak, jak se vyslovují? Piš jak slyšíš. Slyším "dohromady," píši tedy "dohromady." Proč mám psát "zvlášť'?" Nikdo mě k tomu zvlášť' nenutí.	Isn't it logical to write words the way they are pronounced? Write it the way you hear it. I hear "dohromady," therefore I write "dohromady." Why should I write "zvlášť'?" No one is particularly forcing me to do that.
Nedělej si ze mne legraci. Píše se "dohromady" jako dvě slova nebo jen jedno? Skládá se přece ze dvou slov.	Don't make fun of me. Is "dohromady" written as two words or as only one? It consists of two words, doesn't it?
Proč chceš rozdělovat co patří k sobě? "Dohromady" ovšem vzniklo ze dvou slov, ale píše se dohromady. Žádá to smysl a funkce obou částí. Nemyslíš? Žádá se to také v posledním vydání Pravidel českého pravopisu, jak se o tom sám můžeš přesvědčit. Ale to není tak důležité. Důležitější je umět dobře vyslovit tu skupinu "hr." Cizinci s ní někdy mají potíže. Hrát si s "hr" je hrozná hra. Není?	Why do you want to separate what belongs together? Naturally "dohromady" arose from two words, but it is written as one. The meaning and function of both parts require it. Don't you think so? It is also required in the latest edition of the Rules of Czech Orthography, as you can convince yourself. But that is not so important. More important is to know how to pronounce well the group "hr." Foreigners sometimes have trouble with it. To play around with "hr" is an awful game. Isn't it?

Tím spíš, že tu hru hrajeme spolu. Ale na tom dohromady nezáleží. Hlavně, že se vždycky nakonec dohodneme.	The more so as we are playing this game together. But that hardly matters. The main thing is that we always agree in the end.

* * *

Jak to, že si čistíš zuby až teď? Už jsme dávno po večeři.	How come you're brushing your teeth only now? It's long after supper.
Podívej se, já vím, že se u nás čistí zuby hned po jídle, ale já si zuby nečistím. Já si jen zjišťuji, jak dobrý nebo špatný je můj nový kartáček, který jsem si asi před měsícem koupil, a kterého jsem dosud nepoužil.	Look, I know that at our house we brush our teeth immediately after eating, but I'm not brushing my teeth. I'm just finding out how good or bad my new toothbrush is, which I bought about a month ago and which I haven't used yet.
Ukaž. To je opravdu pěkný kartáček na zuby. Kde se takové kartáčky prodávají?	Let me see. That's really a nice toothbrush. Where do you get toothbrushes like that?
Tenhle jsem dostal tady u nás v drogerii. Ale byl poslední tohohle druhu, který měli. Neměli jich mnoho a hned prý se prodaly. Jestli se však o něj opravdu zajímáš, jdi se tam podívat. Možná, že jim mezitím přišly nové.	I got this one in our neighborhood drugstore. But it was the last one they had like that. They didn't have many of them, and I'm told they went fast. But if you're really interested in it, go and take a look. Maybe new ones have come in in the meantime.
Jestli nějaký dostanu, pochybuji, že bude přesně takový jako tenhle. Dnes se móda ve všem rychle mění. Sotva si stačíš uvědomit, že se objevily nové šaty, nová auta, nové kartáčky na zuby a už kolem sebe vidíš zase jiné šaty, jiná auta, jiné kartáčky na zuby. Kdo se tomu může tak rychle přizpůsobit? Nedivím se, že jsou z toho někteří lidé zoufalí. Loni mi přestalo psát kuličkové pero. Chtěl jsem si koupit stejné pero jako bylo to staré, protože jsem na ně byl už zvyklý, ale v celém městě jsem je nemohl najít. Začal jsem tedy psát na různá místa. A musím říci, že jsem se hodně napsal--snad pět dopisů--než jsem se konečně dověděl, že se ten druh, o který jsem se zajímal, už nedělá. Dělají prý místo něho něco docela nového. Docela nové kuličkové pero! Co to může být? Nakonec jsem se rozhodl, že si koupím psací stroj.	If I should get one, I doubt that it'll be exactly like this one. Today all fashions change rapidly. You barely come to the realization that new clothes, new cars, new toothbrushes have appeared when around you again you see different clothes, different cars, different toothbrushes. Who can adjust to that sort of thing so quickly? No wonder that some people are desperate because of that. Last year my ball-point pen stopped writing. I wanted to buy a pen similar to the old one because I was already used to it; but I couldn't find it anyplace in town. So I started to write to various places. And I must say that I wrote a lot--some five letters--before I finally learned that the kind I was interested in is no longer made. They say that instead of it they're making something quite new. A quite new ball-point pen! What can it be? In the end I decided

Jsem s ním spokojen, ačkoli má jednu nevýhodu: nemůže se nosit v kapse kabátu jako mé staré kuličkové pero.

to buy a typewriter. I am satisfied with it although it has one disadvantage: it can't be carried in a coat pocket like my old ball-point pen.

* * *

Právě jsme se vrátili z ekologického sjezdu na universitě v Brně. Co jsme tam dělali? To, co se na sjezdech obyčejně dělá: snažili jsme se všechno a všechny vidět a slyšet, všude být a všeho se zúčastnit. A to bylo víc než dost. Ačkoli to byl klidný sjezd--ekologie je sice předmět plný problémů a složitých otázek, ale přátelé přírody jsou kupodivu mírní lidé, kteří nedělají mnoho hluku, jak jsme se o tom v Brně přesvědčili--byl velmi aktivní. Na jeho programu byla skoro stovka přednášek a celá řada společenských záležitostí jako slavnostní večeře, opera, výlety, a tak. Každý den jsme se se sešli už v osm třicet ráno a poslouchali pak přednášky, které trvaly většinou až do pěti odpoledne. Potom jsme se rozešli na večeři. Po večeři program ovšem ještě nekončil. Šlo se obyčejně ještě někam do města, na návštěvu ke známým, do divadla, a podobně.

We have just returned from an ecological convention at the university in Brno. What did we do there? What's usually done at conventions: we tried to see and hear everything and everyone, to be everywhere, and to take part in everything. And that was more than enough. Although it was a quiet convention--ecology, it is true, is a subject full of problems and complex questions, but friends of nature are surprisingly gentle people who don't make much noise, as we convinced ourselves in Brno--it was very active. There were almost one hundred lectures on its program and a whole series of social events such as a gala supper, an opera, outings, etc. Every day we gathered at eight thirty in the morning and then listened to lectures that for the most part lasted until five in the afternoon. Then we broke up for supper. After supper the program still was not over. We ordinarily went someplace else downtown, on a visit to acquaintances, to the theater, and so forth.

Měli jsme pochopitelně potíže s přednáškami. Bylo jich tolik a všechny vypadaly tak zajímavě, že člověk nevěděl, kterou si má vlastně vybrat. Na každý den jsme si tedy udělali předem plán a potom jsme se snažili toho plánu držet. To ovšem nebylo lehké, protože se přednášky konaly v několika budovách, které byly dost daleko od sebe. Než jsme se v tom ovšem vyznali, přicházeli jsme na mnohé přednášky pozdě. A kdo chodil pozdě na tak dobré přednášky jako byly v Brně, ten byl pochopitelně sám proti sobě; přišel většinou o mnoho užitečných informací.

We naturally had difficulties with the lectures. There were so many of them and they looked so interesting that one didn't know exactly which one to choose. So we made a plan ahead of time for each day and then tried to keep to this plan. That wasn't easy, of course, because the lectures were taking place in several buildings which were some distance from each other. Before we were able to cope with this, we came late for many lectures. And whoever came late to such good lectures as there were in Brno was naturally the loser; in most cases he missed much valuable information.

Vedle téhle potíže jsme měli ještě jednu: špatně jsme bydleli. Ale to byla naše vlastní vina, protože jsme se rozhodli, že do Brna pojedeme až na poslední chvíli a oni v tu dobu už neměli nic lepšího. Bydleli jsme v jedné místnosti, do které se vešlo pět postelí. Protože nás bylo šest, a protože jsme chtěli zůstat spolu, musel jeden z nás vždycky spát na podlaze. Ale to nebylo to nejhorší. Nejhorší bylo to, že jsme si kvůli nedostatku místa byli pořád v cestě.

Besides this difficulty we had still another one: the housing was bad. But that was our own fault because we decided to go to Brno at the last moment, and at that time they no longer had anything better. We stayed in a room that had five beds. Since there were six of us and since we wanted to stay together, one of us always had to sleep on the floor. But that wasn't the worst. The worst thing was that on account of the lack of room we were constantly in each other's way.

Zvlášť' ráno byl proto u nás opravdový zmatek. Vstávalo se obyčejně trochu pozdě, protože se obyčejně šlo trochu pozdě do postele, a to znamenalo, že se pak muselo pospíchat. Člověk se sotva umyl, oblékl, rychle se trochu najedl a už byl nejvyšší čas jít na první přednášku. Podobný zmatek se pak opakoval ještě dvakrát za den, v poledne a večer. A tak to šlo každý den celý ten týden, co jsme v Brně byli. To víte, za takových okolností jsme si tam příliš neodpočinuli. Ale nakonec jsme se přece jen neradi rozcházeli. Sjezd byl totiž tentokrát zajímavější než kdykoli předtím. Až si pořádně odpočineme a hlavně až se pořádně vyspíme, povíme vám o něm více.

Especially in the morning, therefore, we had real confusion. We usually got up a little late because we usually went to bed a little late, and that meant we had to hurry then. One had hardly washed, dressed and had a quick bite to eat when it was high time to go to the first lecture. Then a similar confusion was repeated twice more a day, at noon and in the evening. And so it went the whole week that we were in Brno. You know, under such circumstances we didn't get too much rest there. But in the end we nevertheless hated to leave. It's just that the convention was more interesting this time than ever before. After we have rested properly and particularly after we have had a good night's sleep, we'll tell you more about it.

READING SELECTION

Co se stalo s Valouchem? V poslední době ho nemohu poznat. Docela se změnil. Koupil si nové auto, dal si do pořádku dům,chodí si do nejlepších restaurací, dává se do rozhovoru s lidmi a kdykoli ho vidím, tak si zpívá. Vypadá prostě jako dokonale šťastný muž. Předtím byl úplně jiný. Nehnul se z domu, nikoho si nevšímal a ačkoli byl bohatý, seděl si, jak se říká, na penězích. Celá léta nosil jedny a ty samé staré šaty a jezdil v jednom a tom samém starém autě. Lidé o něm také říkali, že není přátelský. Já sám jsem si to myslel. Když mne, například, potkal na ulici, tvářil se často jako že mne nevidí. A najednou se to všechno změnilo. Nevíte proč?

Já vím proč nebo si aspoň myslím, že to vím, ale chci vám nejdřív říci, že znám Valoucha o něco déle než vy a že si nejsem jist, že je opravdu takový, jak ho někteří lidé vidí. Podle mého názoru Valouch je, a vždycky byl, velmi jemný a laskavý muž. Tak mírných,slušných a přitom schopných lidí jako je on je málo.

Máte však pravdu, Valouch si nikdy nevěděl rady se svými penězi, kterých měl vždycky dost. Kromě toho se vždycky bál lidí a když nemusel, nescházel se s nimi. Proto si mnozí moji známí mysleli, že mu na ostatních nezáleží a že je trochu zvláštnější než normální lidé. V tom se ovšem mýlili. A ted' vám povím, co se stalo. Je to vlastně dost obyčejná událost. Valouch se nedávno sešel s jednou mladou ženou, která na něho udělala hluboký dojem a která se mu hrozně líbí. Co je na tom trochu neobvyklé je to, že se ti dva asi brzo vezmou. Nic takového jsem od Valoucha nečekal. Vždycky se dlouho a těžko rozhodoval, i v těch nejjednodušších záležitostech, a ted' najednou pospíchá. Jak vím, znají se sotva měsíc. Valouch zřejmě už nechce být sám. Snad dokonce začíná věřit lidem. V každém případě se oba už rozhodli, že se milují a že bez sebe nemohou žít. Jak jste se sám o tom mohl přesvědčit, mělo to všechno velký vliv na Valouchovo jednání.

Jaká vlastně je ta slečna, která bude brzo paní Valouchovou? Viděl jste ji někdy?

Ovšem. Několikrát. Myslím, že měl Valouch štěstí. Není ani příliš bohatá, ani příliš hezká, ani příliš rozumná a přitom jí nechybí nic, co dělá ženu zajímavou. Můžete o ní a s ní mluvit obyčejnými slovy a přitom cítíte, že to stačí. Nevím, jak vám to mám říci. Její příjemný obličej, její prostá slova a její jednoduché způsoby mají něco do sebe. Snad je to správná míra všeho nutného. Nebo také nutná míra všeho správného.

Vidím, že jste si jí dobře všiml, protože toho o ní můžete tolik říci. Když vás o ní slyším mluvit, nepochybuji o tom, že si Valouch nemohl vybrat zajímavější ženu. Nebo si vybrala ona jeho?

Jak jste se vyspal?

Pavle, prosímvás, neptejte se. Už dlouho jsem se tak dobře nevyspal. Spal jsem víc než devět hodin. Spal jsem jako malé dítě a když jsem vstal, okamžitě jsem si uvědomil, že jsem spal tak neobvykle dobře, že se za to na sebe budu muset zlobit. Podívejte se kolik je hodin. Je za pět minut tři čtvrtě na devět. Víte, co to znamená? To znamená, že nejsem tam, kde mám být. V tuhle dobu totiž už obyčejně sedím v kanceláři za psacím strojem a píši, přemýšlím, jsem aktivní--nebo se aspoň k tomu nutím. Ale dnes? Vidíte sám. Dnes jsem si ještě ani neudělal svoji ranní kávu. Co horšího, nechce se mi vůbec do práce. Je to smůla nebo štěstí? Mám špatný nebo dobrý den? Vidíte, že mám opravdové problémy. Můj bratr, který se v takovýchhle věcech vyzná, vždycky říká: na problémy je nejlepší se vyspat; když má člověk potíže, to nejhorší co může udělat je pospíchat. Dát něco opravdu do pořádku--to chce čas. Ale můj případ je trochu složitější. Mým problémem je, že jsem se dobře vyspal. Kvůli tomu se přece nemohu vrátit zpátky do postele. Řekněte, může mít někdo méně snadný život než já?

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Both groups are composed of active people. 2. We won't be thinking about all possibilities now, especially since we have little time. 3. Pavel, have

you learned what happened to the two photographs (Use *s* + Instr.)? 4. Draw his attention to it without delay. 5. At that time there were two kinds of music on the program; and, unfortunately, both were bad. 6. So far I've met few foreigners (Use *sejít se*). 7. It doesn't matter whether it's logical; it depends on whether it's a fact. 8. In that shirt he reminded me of my brother Jiří. 9. Will you (pl.) be able to cope with those rules? 10. Her (Use dative of the personal pronoun) face turned green with pain. 11. How was your night's sleep? 12. Some trees around a lake appeared green in the distance. 13. Nothing will make us do that. 14. Our first meeting will take place in Number six not in Number three. 15. On the whole all this information was useful. 16. Jarmila, clean both dresses properly. 17. The room in which we were taking pictures of each other was full of noise and movement. 18. Watch out and hold onto me; otherwise we both will fall. 19. When do we go (Use impersonal construction) on the next outing? 20. I always carry with me one of my two ball-point pens. 21. Whose fault is it that we can't reach an agreement? 22. Don't (2pl.) force him; it's pointless. 23. This year I don't like the summer fashions (Use singular) at all. 24. It's too bad that he doesn't know how to adjust himself to the circumstances. 25. We'll ask for the older edition on some other occasion. 26. We come together twice a month. 27. He was far more desperate than I thought. 28. I am informing you (2sg.) in advance that that won't suffice. 29. What kind of brush did you select for yourself? 30. Václav, whose dictionary are you examining? 31. Again I (fem.) burned my hand. 32. Don't forget to send her your return address. 33. What happened, why do you all have such solemn faces (Use *tvářit se*)? 34. No event attracted him like this one. 35. They asked me alone at least three times. 36. Look at that confusion inside. 37. What do you know about ecology? 38. First, please have a good meal. 39. That time they were still helping one another. 40. Until we come to a decision, we won't be able to change the program. 41. In what drugstore did you (pl.) lose it? 42. In April the sun doesn't burn yet. 43. Each orthography has its advantages as well as its disadvantages. 44. Do you know your way around in this building? 45. I will do (Use *vykonat*) for them what is in my power (Use pl.). 46. He was lying on his back with his hands in his pockets. 47. They are doing that for themselves. 48. One of the functions of literature is to amuse people. 49. It will be enough if you will remind them about it. 50. On the floor, as was usual at their place, there were lying the most varied objects. 51. I've just found out that this year no congress will take place in Brno. 52. He assumed (Use zatvářit se) a friendly expression and divided the money into two equal parts. 53. How that situation arose, I can't tell you (Add to here), possibly from a lack of information. 54. When I was visiting at their place the last time, she was still a child; she had red cheeks, white teeth, and quiet (Use mírný) ways. 55. On both sides of the lake there was high grass; in front we saw some bushes, in back a deep forest.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Co kupujete v drogerii?
2. Proč je ekologie důležitá?
3. Kam voláte, když potřebujete informace?
4. Výlety.
5. Auta, města a nedostatek místa.
6. Co říkáte dnešní módě?
7. Slovníky a jejich chyby.
8. Pravidla slušného jednání.
9. Váš poslední sjezd.
10. Co všechno nosíte v kapsách?
11. Zájímá vás fotografie?
12. Výhody a nevýhody anglického pravopisu.
13. Zmatek před návštěvou.
14. Je dobrá rada drahá?
15. Známé obličeje.
16. Jak jste se dnes vyspal?
17. Nedávné události.
18. Místnosti ve vašem domě.
19. Drží se vás štěstí?
20. Do čeho se musíte nutit?
21. Už jste se rozhodl, co budete dnes večer dělat?
22. Na čem vám vůbec nezáleží?
23. Scházíte se často se známými?
24. Děláte si někdy ze sebe legraci?
25. Stačí vám peníze na všechno, co potřebujete?

LESSON XV

VOCABULARY

angličtina (f)	English (language)
babička (f)(Gen.pl. babiček)	grandmother
barevný	colored, colorful, color
centrum (n)(See Grammar Analysis)	center
čeština (f)	Czech (language)
četný	numerous
dědeček/dědečk- (m)	grandfather
děvče (n)(like zvíře, Lesson XIII)	girl
dodat (I,p)(See dodávat)	to add, deliver
dodávat (I,i)(See dodat)	to add, deliver
dokud (conj.)	up to the time when, so long as
dokud ne-	until, before
domácí úkol (m)	homework
dospělý (adjective and noun)	grown-up, adult
dovést[1](Va,p)	to be able to, know how to
dovolit (II,p)(See dovolovat)	to allow, permit, let
dovolovat (VII,i)(See dovolit)	to allow, permit, let
drama (n)(See Grammar Analysis)	drama
houska (f)(Gen.pl. housek)	roll, twist
chlapec/chlapc- (m)	boy
chodit	
chodit do společnosti	to go out (socially)
chodit/jít se podívat na + Acc.	to drop in on
jakmile (conj.)	as soon as
jazyk[2](m)	tongue, language
jenom (See jen)	only, merely
jestliže	if
kéž	would that, if only
kousek/kousk- (m)	bit, small piece
křída (f)	chalk
kurs (m)	course, rate of exchange

kus (m)	piece
lekce (f)	lesson
máslo (n)	butter
Morava (f)(Loc. = na Moravě)	Moravia
nakoupit (II,p)(See nakupovat)	to shop, make purchases
nakupovat (VII,i)(See nakoupit)	to shop, make purchases
navštěvovat (VII,i)(See navštívit)	to visit
navštívit (II,p)(See navštěvovat)	to visit
nazdar	hello, good-bye
obložený chlebíček/chlebíčk- (m)	sandwich
obracet se (III,i)(See obrátit se)	to turn (around)
obrátit se (II,p)(See obracet se)	to turn (around)
obracet/obrátit se (k + Dat.)	to turn to, address
obracet/obrátit se (na + Acc.)	to have recourse to
omyl (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	error, mistake
opravit (II,p)(See opravovat)	to correct, repair, mend
opravovat (VII,i)(See opravit)	to correct, repair, mend
otrávit se (II,p)(See otravovat se)	to take poison, be bored
otravovat se (VII,i)(See otrávit se)	to take poison, be bored
pas (m)	waist
pečivo (n)	baked goods
plakat^{3}(IX,i)(See zaplakat)	to weep, cry
poprosit (II,p)(někoho o něco)(See prosit)	to ask (for), request (from), beg (for)
posluchač (m)	listener, hearer, student
posluchárna (f)(Gen.pl. poslucháren)	lecture room
postěžovat si (VII,p)(někomu + na něco/někoho)(See stěžovat si)	to complain (to someone about some-one/something)
povinnost (f)	duty, obligation
pravidelný	regular
prosit (II,i)(někoho o něco)(See poprosit)	to ask (for), request (from), beg (for)
představit si (II,p)(See představovat si)	to imagine
představovat si (VII,i)(See představit si)	to imagine

překlad (m)	translation
přerušit (II,p)(See přerušovat)	to interrupt
přerušovat (VII,i)(See přerušit)	to interrupt
přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek)	interval, break, pause, intermission
příklad (m)	example
revma (n)(See Grammar Analysis)	rheumatism, arthritis
role (f)	part, role
hrát roli	to play a part, role
rytmus (m)(See Grammar Analysis)	rhythm
růst[4](Va,i)(See vyrůst, vzrůst)	to grow, increase, rise
řeč (f)(Instr.pl. řečmi)	speech, language
salám (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	salami, sausage, Bologna (sausage)
samozřejmě	naturally, you bet, it goes without saying, go ahead, feel free
samozřejmý	natural, self-evident
sen/sn- (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	dream
sladký (Adv.=sladce, Compar.=sladší)	sweet
slza (f)	tear
stěžovat si (VII,i)(někomu na něco/někoho)(See postěžovat si)	to complain (to someone about someone/something)
studium (n)(See Grammar Analysis)	study
sýr (m)(Gen.sg.-a; Loc.sg.-u)	cheese
šetřit (II,i)(něčím)	to use sparingly, economize
tabule (f)	blackboard, board, panel
telefonní	telephone (adj.)
téma (n)(See Grammar Analysis)	theme, topic
téměř (adv.)	almost, nearly
televize (f)	television
televizor (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	television set
televizní	television (adj.)
třeba (adv.)	even, if necessary, for instance
je třeba	it is necessary
třebaže	although, though
třída (f)	class, classroom; avenue
tu (See tady)	here
ukazovat se (VII,i)/ukázat se (IX,p)	to show off

úloha (f)	exercise, composition, role
úvaha (f)	consideration, essay
vlas (m)	hair
všelijaký	all sorts of
vycházet (III,i)(See vyjít)	to go out, come out, rise (of sun)
vyjít(Va,p)(like jít)(See vycházet)	to go out, come out, rise (of sun)
výkladní skříň (f)	shop window
vyrůst[4](Va,p)(See růst)	to grow
vytrvalý	persevering, relentless, diligent
významný	significant, meaningful
vzrůst[4](Va,p)(See růst)	to grow, increase, rise
zabránit (II,p)(+ Dat. or někomu v tom) (See zabraňovat)	to prevent (something or somebody from doing something)
zabraňovat (VII,i)(+ Dat. or někomu v tom)(See zabránit)	to prevent (something or somebody from doing something)
zaplakat (IX,p)(See plakat)	to weep, cry
zarazit se (II,p)(See zarážet se)	to pause, hesitate, stop (doing something)
zarážet se (III,i)(See zarazit se)	to pause, hesitate, stop (doing something)
zároveň (adv.)	at the same time
zastavit se (II,p)(See zastavovat se)	to stop (while in motion)
zastavovat se (VII,i)(See zastavit se)	to stop (while in motion)
zbavit se (II,p)(+ Gen.)(See zbavovat se)	to get rid of, dispose of
zbavovat se (VII,i)(+ Gen.)(See zbavit se)	to get rid of, dispose of
zda (conj.)	whether
zdali (conj.)	whether
zdát se (I,i)(+ Dat.)	to seem, appear
zdá se mi	it seems to me

---

1 This verb, which has obviously acquired a figurative meaning, is perfective only. The use of the perfective can be understood here in the sense that this verb implies the attainment of a state. It also illustrates the fact that the perfective present may occasionally refer to the actual present.

2 The genitive singular of this word is jazyka when its meaning is "language." In either meaning the locative singular may be jazyce or jazyku.

3 Note the long vowel in the present tense: pláči, pláčeš, etc.

3 Only the infinitive has the -ů- alternate in the root; all other verbal forms exhibit -o-. Note the forms in the imperative.

Present:	rostu, rosteš, roste, etc.
Imperative:	rost', rost'me, rost'te
Perf.Part.:	rostl, rostla, rostlo, etc.

The future of the verb růst resembles that for most of the determinate verbs:

either: porostu, porosteš, poroste, etc.
or: budu růst, budeš růst, bude růst, etc.

Of the two perfectives for růst, vyrůst is used in the concrete sense, but vzrůst is used figuratively.

Mé naděje vzrostly.
Cena mýdla vzrostla.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

The Conditional: General Definition and Formation

All languages seem to have adopted special means for the expression of actions that are not viewed by speakers as facts. Such actions are those about whose reality speakers are compelled to feel some doubt or hesitation. In Czech, the verbal category that carries this important connotation is termed the conditional. As the student will see below, this general statement provides a semantic framework that can accommodate all of the specific usages of the Czech conditional.

The conditional is a compound verbal form and usually consists of two elements (a slightly more complex variety will be discussed below under the past unreal conditional): the perfect participle, with which the student is already familiar, and an enclitic or dependent form of the verb být (to be) that historically was used to express a past tense. The solidly past tense character of the conditional should not surprise the student; languages frequently apply a category remote in time (past tense) to a concept removed from reality (conditional). All the být forms used in the conditional are illustrated in the following partial paradigm for vědět:

věděl bych	věděli bychom
věděl bys	věděli byste
věděl by	věděli by

In the case of reflexive verbs, the -s used in the second person singular is attached to the reflexive pronouns:

smál by ses   koupil by sis

In the hierarchy of enclitics within any given sentence these forms of být occupy the same relative position as the present forms jsem, jsi, je, etc. Note this one example.

Nestalo prý by se mu to...
(That allegedly wouldn't have happened to him...)

Uses of the Conditional: The Conditional Proper

The phrase "Conditional Proper" will be confined here to the use of the conditional in complex sentences containing a subordinate "if" clause, which expresses a condition, and a main clause, which expresses a result or a conclusion. In a manner of speaking, of course, the conditional proper represents the classic use of the conditional forms of the verb. Before this category is approached, however, it will be convenient to discuss conditional sentences in which the actions are regarded by speakers as facts. These are usually discussed in grammars under the label "real conditions."

Real Conditions

The student has already learned the word jestli (if, whether) and has already seen and used some real conditions expressed by means of this word. It remains only to make more explicit the few facts relative to the formation of real conditions. The subordinate conjunction "if" may be rendered into Czech in several ways. Jestli and když are colloquial forms of the conjunction, and jestliže and the particle -li (attached directly to the present tense or the participial form of the verb, both of which must appear initially in the clause) are strictly literary ways of expressing "if." Real conditions fall conveniently into two groups. The first of these groups has either the present indicative or the past indicative in both the conditional clause and the result clause. Complex sentences of this nature are statistically infrequent and require special semantic circumstances for their formation. English will always be a reliable guide for the student in forming such sentences. Do not confuse these "if" clauses with "when" or "whenever" clauses. Study the following examples.

> Jestliže to děláme dobře, proč se smějete?
> (If we do that well, why do you laugh?)
>
> Jestli si myslí něco takového, nemohu mu pomoci.
> (If he thinks something like that, I can't help him.)
>
> Jestliže měla zájem o tu záležitost, nikdo mě na to neupozornil.
> (If she had an interest in that affair, no one called my attention to it.)
>
> Jestliže tam byl, když jsem přijel, neviděl jsem ho.
> (If he was there when I arrived, I didn't see him.)

The second group of real conditions is statistically frequent in the language. These conditions in most cases use the two Czech expressions for the future in both the conditional clause and the result clause; but the conditional clause may also have the present, and the result clause may also contain an imperative form. Even though the actions in both clauses are regarded as future, their likelihood or possibility of taking place is very high; and the indicative is used. The student should observe in the following examples how English handles these conditions and how they appear in English when they are incorporated into indirect speech. Note particularly that the English auxiliary verb "should" in the second sentence below denotes less likelihood; no such subtlety is possible in Czech.

Dám vám tu knihu, když ji nepůjčíte nikomu jinému.
(I'll give you the book if you won't lend it to anyone else.)

Přijde-li k nám na návštěvu, nedělejte si z něho legraci.
(If he should come to visit us, don't make fun of him.)

Jestliže dnes nemáš čas, uděláme to až zítra.
(If you don't have time today, we won't do it until tomorrow.)

Řekl jste, že mi dáte vědět, jestliže se o tom dovíte.
(You said you would let me know if you found out about that.)

Když ho uvidím, řeknu mu, že jste ho také hledali.
(If I see him, I'll tell him that you too were looking for him.)

Budete-li se na mne vždycky zlobit, přestanu k vám chodit.
(If you're always going to get mad at me, I'll stop coming to see you.)

Since the student is bound to make careful comparisons with English in the area of conditional sentences, he may wonder how the English conjunction "unless" fits into the picture. Strictly speaking, the conjunction "unless" has the meaning "except in the case that," and has the Czech equivalent ledaže, which will be introduced in a subsequent lesson. This specific meaning is, however, very close in effect to the phrase "if not" in English and jestliže ne- in Czech, and there are many sentences in both languages where "if not" and "unless," on one hand, and jestliže ne- and ledaže, on the other hand, seem synonymous.

Nepůjde tam, jestliže ho nepozvete.
(He won't go there if you don't invite him.)

Nepůjde tam, ledaže ho pozvete.
(He won't go there unless you invite him.)

Unreal Conditions: Present

It is only in the unreal conditions that the student will see for the first time the application of the conditional mood, for this is one of the situations where the speaker is in doubt as to the realization of the action. Once again we have a conditional clause and a result clause, but in this case the conjunction "if" associated with the conditional clause is kdy, to which the conditional enclitic is directly attached: kdybych, kdybys, kdyby, etc. The conditional is usually found also in the result clause, but if the speaker feels that this action is very likely to result if the action of the conditional clause is fulfilled, then he may also use the periphrastic form of the future or the perfective present. In the illustrative sentences below note how English handles the same syntactic problem: straight past tense or "were to" in the conditional clause and "would" in the result clause. The "were to" construction in English conveys the connotation of "less likelihood" than the simple past tense in the conditional clause.

Kdybyste více spal, byl byste spokojenější.
(If you slept more, you would be more relaxed.)

Kdyby jí její muž nepřipomněl, že je má přinést, zapomněla by šálky a sklenice doma.
(If her husband were not to remind her that she was supposed to bring them, she would forget the cups and glasses at home.)

Kdybyste se najedl, cítil byste se lépe.
Kdybyste se najedl, budete se cítit lépe.
(If you ate your fill, you'd feel better.)

Kdybychom si trochu odpočinuli, byli bychom pak v lepší náladě.
Kdybychom si trochu odpočinuli, budeme pak v lepší náladě.
(If we were to rest a bit, we'd be in a better mood.)

Czech speakers may also use just the infinitive in the conditional clause without any subordinating conjunction. When the infinitive is used in this way, either the subjects in the conditional and result clauses must be identical or one of the clauses must have an impersonal subject. If the subject is expressed in the infinitive clause, it is either for emphasis or for greater clarity. Here too, if the speaker feels that the result follows from the condition with great likelihood, the Czech equivalents for the future indicative may be used. Study the following sentences closely.

Já být vámi, nevybírala bych si takový klobouk.
(If I were you, I wouldn't choose that kind of hat.)

Žít v Praze, naučili by se česky hned.
(If they were to live in Prague, they'd learn Czech right away.)

Zůstat Karel tady, viděl by nás všechny.
Zůstat Karel tady, bude nás všechny vidět.
(If Karel remained here, he would see us all.)

Mít peníze, tak bych to koupil.
Mít peníze, tak to koupím.
(If I had money, then I'd buy it.)

Být lepší počasí, stromy by už byly zelené.
(If the weather were better, the trees would be green already.)

Být tu maminka, nestalo by se to.
Být tu maminka, nestane se to.
(If mother were here, that wouldn't have happened.)

Unreal Conditions: Past

Past unreal conditions express actions presented by the speaker as if they had occurred before the moment of utterance. Such actions are therefore incapable of being fulfilled. Past unreal conditions in English are usually rendered in the format found in the following sentence: "If he had come on time, he would have found us at home." Czech too has its own way of distinguishing past from present unreal conditions, but the student must realize that this method is primarily literary although discriminating speakers may still use the past conditional to make the nice distinction it affords, and all speakers will use it when a serious ambiguity arises. In conversation the present conditional suffices for both present and past conditions, and context or appropriate adverbs will make clear in most cases whether the condition is to apply before or after the moment of utterance. Past conditions also utilize the conjunction kdy, then both clauses, the conditional clause and the result clause, may use the perfect participle of být or of bývat (the iterative form of "to be")or the perfect participle of both verbs together plus the perfect participle of the main verb in each clause. The same choice of alternatives is maintained in both clauses:

1) Kdyby ses byl zeptal, byl by sis to zapamatoval.
2) Kdyby ses býval zeptal, býval by sis to zapamatoval.
3) Kdyby ses byl býval zeptal, byl by sis to býval zapamatoval.

When any one of the clauses is negated, the negative particle ne- may be attached to any one of the perfect participles. Just as in the case of present unreal conditions, the infinitive may be used in the conditional clause, then only the result clause can indicate the time of the action. Study carefully the sentences listed below. Note especially in sentences 3 and 4 below that Czech cannot mix present and past conditionals in the same sentence as English can.

Byl bych tě pozval na další hru, kdyby se ti byla líbila ta první.
(I would have invited you to another play if you had liked the first one.)

Kdybych byl věděl, jaké to město bylo, nebyl bych tam strávil ani den.
(If I had known what that city was like, I wouldn't have spent even a day there.)

Kdyby byl dobře znal češtinu, byl by včera snadno pochopil tu anekdotu.
(If he knew Czech well, he would have easily understood that story yesterday.)

Kdybyste mi bývali půjčili ty peníze, býval bych ted' jezdil autem.
(If you had loaned me that money, I'd be driving around in a car now.)

Kdyby se byla bývala začala hodina včas, byli bychom bývali skončili celé cvičení.)
(If the class had started on time, we would have finished the whole exercise.)

Byl bych se na tebe nebýval rozzlobil, kdybys mi byl nebýval slíbil, že přijdeš na večeři.
(I wouldn't have got mad at you if you hadn't promised me that you would come to supper.)

Mít peníze, tak bych to byl koupil.
(If I had had money, then I would have bought it.)

Být mladší, tak bych tam byl jel.
(If I had been younger, then I would have gone there.)

The regular past indicative composed of the present tense enclitic forms of the verb být and the perfect participle may be used in the result clause in a more colloquial style. The conditional clause may contain the past conditional, the present conditional, or an infinitive. If the past conditional is not used in the conditional clauses, the past indicative in the result clause has the advantage of specifying the past conditional nature of the whole sentence. The use of the past indicative does not, however, carry any nuance of greater likelihood.

Kdybych to byl věděl, nedělal jsem to.
(If I had know that, I wouldn't have done it.)

Kdyby na mne nekřičela, přinesl jsem jí to.
(If she hadn't shouted at me, I would have brought it to her.)

Být bohatší, tak jsem ti to dal.
(If I had been richer, I would have given it to you.)

It is reasonable to extend the coverage of the conditional to include "even if" sentences. As the student knows from his native English, the combination "even if" is merely the subordinate conjunction "if" preceded by the emphatic particle "even." Exactly the same situation obtains in corresponding Czech sentences, where the emphatic particles i or ani precede the conjunction kdyby. In real conditional clauses Czech uses the emphatic conjunction když, preceded by i or ani. Note that English uses "even if" in future real conditions, but tends to employ "even when" in present and past real conditions. The alternative ani is used in both real and unreal conditions when the result clause is negated.

Pomohl bych ti, i kdybys nebyl můj přítel.
(I'd help you even if you weren't my friend.)

Nemohl bych ti pomoci, ani kdybys byl můj přítel.
(I couldn't help you, even if you were my friend.)

Byl bych přišel, i kdybys mě o to byl nežádal.
(I would have come, even if you hadn't asked me to.)

Nebyl bych přišel, ani kdybys mě o to byl žádal.
(I wouldn't have come even if you had asked me to.)

Půjdu tam, i kdyby pršelo.
(I'd go there even if it rained.)

Nepůjdu tam, ani kdyby nepršelo.
(I wouldn't go there even if it didn't rain.)

Začneme, i když tady Milena není.
(We'll start even if Milena isn't here.)

Koupím ti ten psací stroj, i když zjistím, že stojí sto korun.
(I'll buy that typewriter even if I learn that it costs 100 crowns.)

Neudělám to, ani když mi za to zaplatí.
(I won't do that even if he pays me for it.)

Nezlobila se, ani když jsme přišli o hodinu pozdě.
(She didn't get angry even when we came an hour late.)

Since the student now has two Czech synonyms for "although," *ačkoli* and *třebaže*, and since the semantic notions conveyed by "although" and "even if" may seem to him at times to be very much alike, it will be useful to attempt a further definition of these two expressions. The expressions "even if" and *i kdyby* merely present an emphatic condition, whereas "although" and *ačkoli/třebaže* may be paraphrased as "in spite of the fact that." Since the latter conjunctions present actions as facts, they are used only with the indicative in both Czech and English. In the next section (page 317), however, the student will observe a very special use of the conditional after *ačkoli* or *třebaže*. As the student knows, "although" becomes emphatic in the combination "even though." The same effect can be attained in Czech only by the use of the phrase *i když*. This means that Czech has no direct means of expressing the difference between "even if" and "even though."

> Necítím se dobře, ačkoli jsem zdráv.
> (I don't feel well although I am healthy.)
>
> Třebaže není nejmladší, vypadá mladě.
> (Although he's not the youngest person, he looks young.)
>
> Ačkoli říkal, že ho ekologie zajímá, vůbec nám nepomáhal.
> (Although he sadi that ecology interested him, he didn't help us at all.)
>
> Četl to, i když ho to nezajímalo.
> (He read it even though it didn't interest him.)
>
> Je silná, i když vypadá slabá.
> (She is strong even though she looks weak.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the conditional proper in all its variety.

1. If you feel bored, why don't you go to the movies?
2. It seems to me that you could find that out for yourself if you tried.
3. If you had assured me that he would bring it, I would have stayed at the station and waited for him.
4. She wouldn't have hesitated if you hadn't got angry at her.
5. If you'll tel me when you'll be at home, I'll repair your television set myself.
6. If they hadn't stopped by to see me (Use *zastavit se* + *u*), I would never have known that.
7. If he should visit you tomorrow, draw his attention to that new edition.
8. If something like that were in my way, I would try to get rid of it.
9. That tree would grow too close to the house if we were to plant it here.
10. If you turn around, you will see a picture (photograph) of the village where you were born.
11. Although he has made many mistakes (Use *chyba*), I know he can cope with this particular situation.
12. I want to stress that even if adults do study modern dramas, we cannot say that they always understand them.
13. Although I shall be living in the country, I won't be far from the center of Brno.

14. If the students pay close (Use dobrý) attention, the task of the teacher is much easier.
15. Would you have gone home during the intermission if you had left the light on in the apartment?
16. If we were to interrupt her now, she would get angry and start to cry.
17. Tell me what would happen if they were to turn up at the last moment.
18. Even though we conform to everything they ask for, they are still not satisfied.
19. If those six scientists had been there, we could have shown them where (Use v čem) they were wrong.)
20. If you don't like the lecture, why are you staying here?

Uses of the Conditional: Other Conditions

All other uses of the conditional mood where an actual condition is either stated or implied break down into two separate categories: 1) sentences where the conditional clause is present, but the result clause is only implied; 2) sentences where the result clause is present, but the conditional clause is merely implied. In all sentences of these types both the present and the past conditional may be used, but the latter is usually found in more elegant speech and in literature. The first type of sentence is semantically restricted to the expression of a wish in an exclamatory sentence; in English the same type of sentence is always introduced by the combination "if only...!" The particles už and tak often accompany such sentences.

Kdybys nemluvil, Karle!
(If only you wouldn't talk, Karel!)

Kdybych tak byl odejel na dovolenou!
(If only I had gone on my vacation!)

Kdyby už byl býval konec!
(If only it had been the end!)

In a purely literary style the conjunction kéž may perform the same function.

Kéž by to byla pravda!
(If only that were true!)

Kéž bych už byl býval zdráv!
(If only I had been well!)

A rather special case is presented by so-called conditional clauses of comparison introduced in English by the phrase "as if" and in Czech by jako by. In this type of clause the result clause is missing in its entirety, and the conditional clause is present except for the conjunction kdy. All Czech sentences can be analyzed like the following English sentence with the one exception that English preserves the conjunction "if." "He speaks as (he would speak) if he were an authority on the subject." Both present and past conditional may be used in comparison clauses.

Nedělejte, jako byste to nevěděl.
(Don't act as if you didn't know that.)

Nedělejte, jako byste to byl nevěděl.
(Don't act as if you hadn't known that.)

Jako bychom byli schopní takového jednání!
(As if we were capable of such behavior!)

Much more numerous in the language are sentences of the second type above, where only a result clause is expressed. The student should have no trouble with such sentences since they correspond closely to their English counterparts. Careful inspection of all the sentences below should convince the student that there really is a missing conditional clause in each case. Sentences of this type that carry some special connotation, e.g., the expression of a mild wish or a modest statement (confined to the first persons) or of a polite request (confined to the second persons), seem to be distinct from the others in that they do not permit the use of the past conditional. This distinction is not vital, however, because one would not expect either connotation to refer to an action before the moment of utterance. Note that a greater degree of diffidence can be attained in Czech by negating the conditional in phrasing a polite request.

Spal bych.
(I feel like sleeping.)

Řekl bych, že to tak není.
(I'd say that wasn't so.)

Chtěl bych se naučit česky.
(I'd like to learn Czech.)

Mohl byste mi říci, kde bydlí?
(Could you tell me where he lives?)

Půjčil byste mi tu knihu?
(Would you lend me that book?)

Vysvětlil byste mi to?
Nevysvětlil byste mi to?
(Would you explain that to me?)

Byl byste tak laskav, a ukázal mi, kde mám čekat?
Nebyl byste tak laskav, a neukázal mi, kde mám čekat?
(Would you be so kind as to show me where I should wait?)

The other types of result clauses without their implied conditional clauses are straightforward conditional statements with no affective overtones. Both past and present conditionals may be used here. Note in the first and second sentences below that part of the conditional clause may be expressed as a prepositional phrase.

Bez nás by to neudělali.
(They wouldn't do that without us.)

Bez nás by to byli neudělali.
(They wouldn't have done that without us.)

Za těch okolností byste to nenašel.
(In those circumstances you wouldn't find it.)

Já bych mu nevěřil.
(I wouldn't trust him.)

Já bych mu byl nevěřil.
(I wouldn't have trusted him.)

Neměl bys to dělat!
(You shouldn't do that!)

Koho bych se na to zeptal?
(Who would I ask about that?)

Nešel byste tam?
(Wouldn't you go there?)

Byl byste tam nešel?
(Wouldn't you have gone there?)

In the discussion above about "although" clauses it was mentioned that the conditional can be found in a special case after that conjunction. That special case belongs at this point in the over-all presentation. Both English and Czech utilize the conditional after the conjunction "although" to express the idea that something happens in spite of the presence of a given condition. Both languages express the result clause, but supress the conditional clause. Again both present and past conditional are possible.

Studuje, ačkoli by raději dělala něco jiného.
(She studies although she would rather do something else.)

Studovala, ačkoli by raději byla dělala něco jiného.
(She studied although she would rather have done something else.)

Piji kávu, třebaže bych neměl.
(I drink coffee although I shouldn't.)

Pil jsem kávu, třebaže bych byl neměl.
(I drank coffee although I shouldn't have.)

Udělám to, třebaže bych nemusel.
(I'll do it although I wouldn't have to.)

Udělal jsem to, třebaže bych byl nemusel.
(I did it although I wouldn't have had to.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following conditional sentences featuring missing conditional or result clauses.

1. Even though (Use ačkoli) she would like to go to the theater with me, she would rather spend the evening with him.
2. He looks as if he had just written (Use udělat) a difficult examination.
3. Would you show me how that's done?

4. I'd prefer to sit down here rather than there.
5. I wouldn't pronounce that word like that.
6. That kind of television program would bore them.
7. Would you say that the homework (Use pl.) in (Use z + Gen.) in Czech is difficult?
8. He looks (Use tvářit se) as if someone were forcing him to work.
9. Would you remind me about that before we go home this evening?
10. If only his mother could have seen him play that role!
11. I wouldn't have changed anything.
12. Although he would have known how to correct that sentence, he didn't even say a word.
13. Would you call me as soon as the train leaves?
14. I would complain about that to the teacher.
15. He acts as if we were making fun of him.
16. Now I feel like resting!

Uses of the Conditional: The Expression of Goal

A significant number of subordinate clauses in Czech express the broad concept of goal toward which the action or state or object of the main clause is directed. Since in each case the action of the goal clause is unfulfilled, the reality of this action comes into question, and it is expressed in the conditional mood. As the student can convince himself, only the present conditional is possible in this type of usage. It will be useful for the student to distinguish here three structurally different types of sentences. The first type includes goal clauses following verbs of wishing, ordering, inviting, advising, requesting, etc., goal clauses expressing purpose, and goal clauses after nouns like "reason," "opportunity," "possibility," and "right." Study the following illustrative sentences very carefully.

Rád bych, abyste se dnes večer bavili.
(I'd like you to have a good time this evening.)

Neradi bychom, aby přišla pozdě.
(We wouldn't like her to come late.)

Dovolila mi, abych jí koupil šálek kávy.
(She let me buy her a cup of coffee.)

Kdo tě prosil, abys jim ukázal novou třídu?
(Who asked you to show them the new classroom?)

Řekl jsem ti, abys nelhal.
(I told you not to tell a lie.)

Pozvali ho, aby tady příští měsíc přednášel.
(They invited him to lecture here next month.)

Ta schůzka nám zabránila, abychom se poznali.
(That appointment prevented our meeting each other.)

Učitel chystá cvičení, aby děti měly něco dělat.
(The teacher is preparing exercises so the children have something to do.)

Bud'te ticho, abychom slyšeli přednášku.
(Be quiet so that we can hear the lecture.)

Prostudujte to pečlivě, abyste to dobře znali.
(Study this carefully so that you know it well.)

Mluvili jsme česky, aby nám nerozuměla.
(We were speaking Czech so that she wouldn't understand us.)

Měl jste tam příležitost k tomu, abyste studoval?
(Did you have an opportunity there to study?)

Goal clauses after verbs of communication like telling, writing, calling, etc., may also be rendered in Czech by clauses introduced by the conjunction at' and containing verbs in the indicative mood. In comparison with corresponding aby clauses this type of construction bears the strong imprint of the colloquial language. The student has already encountered at' in Lesson XI used to express the Czech equivalent for the English "let/have him/them..." construction. The student can now see that this latter construction differs from the goal sentences to be exemplified below only in that the main clause is not expressed.

Řekli jí, at' dává pozor.
(They told her to be careful.)

Napiš mu, at' mi pošle peníze.
(Write him to send me money.)

Volala, at' na ni počkáme.
(She called and told us to wait for her.)

In this first type of sentences there are several alternative syntactic possibilities that require mention. The first of these is only an apparent alternative possibility and concerns the use of either the indicative or the conditional after the verb bát se. The indicative reports facts, while the conditional records a negative goal clause after this verb expressing, as it were, a negative wish.

Bojím se, že přijde.
(I fear he will come.)

Bojím se, že nepřijde.
(I fear he won't come.)

Bojím se, aby nepřišel.
(I fear lest he come.)

Since the infinitive itself may express the goal of another action, there are syntactic situations where a speaker may use either an infinitival phrase or an aby clause. The first of these alternatives open to the speaker occurs always when the subjects of the main clause and of either the infinitival phrase or the aby clause are the same and then specifically 1) when the verb of the main clause is an action that the subject may readily direct to himself, such as wishing, liking, trying, allowing, fearing, 2) when a subordinate structure expressing purpose follows a verb of motion, or 3) when the subordinate structure follows a noun expressing reason, opportunity, possibility, etc.

Chtěli bychom, abychom měli víc času.
Chtěli bychom mít víc času.
(We'd like to have more time.)

Snažili jsme se nezmýlit.
Snažili jsme se, abychom se nezmýlili.
(We were trying not to make a mistake.)

Bál se přijít pozdě.
Bál se, aby nepřišel pozdě.
(He was afraid of coming late.)

Vy jste tam běžel podívat se na to zblízka?
Vy jste tam běžel, abyste se na to podíval zblízka?
(Did you run there in order to look at it up close?)

Vzal mě s sebou ukázat mi svůj psací stroj.
Vzal mě s sebou, aby mi ukázal svůj psací stroj.
(He took me along to show me his typewriter.)

Neměl ještě možnost si to prohlédnout.
Neměl ještě možnost, aby si to prohlédl.
(He hasn't yet had an opportunity to examine it.)

The second situation where a speaker may use an infinitival phrase or an aby clause appears when the subject of the main clause and the subordinate structure are different and the main verb expresses allowing, requesting, ordering, forcing, inviting, and preventing. The student, however, must be aware of the fact that communication verbs like "telling, writing, or calling a person to do something" cannot take an infinitival phrase in Czech--an aby clause must be used in these specific cases.

Prosil nás, abychom to nedělali.
Prosil nás nedělat to.
(He asked us not to do it.)

Dovolil mi, abych to zkusil ještě jednou.
Dovolil mi to zkusit ještě jednou.
(He let me try it again.)

Pozvali mě, abych u nich strávil noc.
Pozvali mě strávit u nich noc.
(They invited me to spend the night at their place.)

Otec ho nutil, aby se učil česky.
Otec ho nutil učit se česky.
(Father made him study Czech.)

The second structural type of sentences containing a goal clause embraces all sentences featuring various relative clauses of characteristic, clauses that define a quality or characteristic of an indefinite antecedent. Such clauses are clearly of the goal variety because they define a quality that the antecedent should fulfill. In some cases this relationship is obscured because the antecedent is missing, as in the fourth and fifth examples below. If we may assume that the missing antecedent in the fourth sentence is the concept "quality" and in the fifth sentence the concept "manner," then we can understand the subordinate clauses as relative clauses expressing a goal.

> Nebyl tam nikdo, kdo by nám to vysvětlil.
> (There was no one there to explain it to us.)
>
> Hledali jsme člověka, který by mluvil česky dobře.
> (We were looking for someone who spoke Czech well.)
>
> Potřebuji slovník, který by byl větší.
> (I need a dictionary that's bigger.)
>
> Přemýšlíme o tom, jaká by moderní literature měla být.
> (We are thinking about what modern literature should be like.)
>
> Mysleli jsme na to, jak by se to udělalo.
> (We were thinking about how that might be done.)

The third and last structural type of sentences exhibiting goal clauses is that in which aby-clauses are found after certain impersonal phrases. More will be said about impersonal constructions in Lesson XVII; at this point the student should learn only three such expressions that call for goal clauses. As the student will see in the following examples, they have their close counterparts in English.

> Je třeba, abychom byli hotovi včas.
> (It's necessary for us to be ready on time.)
>
> Není možné, abych ti to přinesl už zítra.
> (It's impossible for me to bring that to you tomorrow.)
>
> Je nejvyšší čas, aby ses podíval do té knihy.
> (It's high time you took a look at that book.)

The infinitive may also express goal in this kind of sentence but only when there is no specific personal subject in the subordinate infinitival phrase.

> Je třeba to zdůraznit.
> (It's necessary to emphasize that.)
>
> Je možné to přeložit několika způsoby.
> (It's possible to translate that in several ways.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating all possible types of goal clauses. Write two versions of sentences that can tolerate an infinitival phrase as well as a conditional clause.

1. He allows his son to spend every afternoon in his office.
2. We are looking for somebody who uses words sparingly.
3. Who prevented you from answering that question about duty?
4. It will be necessary for him to use the blackboard when he lectures.
5. She shouted to me to watch out for the cars.
6. We all told him not to complain incessantly about everything.
7. After all, this isn't any reason to cry.

8. That student wants to work alone, not together with us.
9. She rushed (Use běžet) down the hall to tell me about the role she got in the new play at the university.
10. I reminded him about how we might (Use moci) get dictionaries for all the students in the class.
11. Is it really possible to reach a decision so quickly?
12. They wouldn't like us to take a picture of that new building.
13. He asked about that in order to call attention to his problem.
14. Was there an opportunity for you to get a good sleep?
15. He wrote me to get ready for our trip and that he would arrive on the 15th of December.
16. We're thinking about what kind of course we should take.
17. There is no medicine to help me get rid of my arthritis.
18. Why did you force him to doubt our views?
19. Would you ask them to note all those errors?
20. She went out of the room quickly in order not to have to answer your last question.
21. Can you tell us what prevents you from finishing that work?
22. Is it necessary that we know when this is supposed to be done?
23. If you will permit him to help you, he will give you good advice.
24. We are doing this to emphasize the importance of your studies.
25. Will we really have the possibility of choosing?
26. We were thinking about how he might lose weight.
27. Several students invited me to meet with them last week, but I just didn't have the time.
28. Karel interrupted her to point out the difficulties of that alternative.
29. He turned around to add that that drama didn't appeal to him.
30. She wrote him not to worry.

Uses of the Conditional: After Negative Verbs

A rather limited application of the conditional appears in noun clauses governed by negated verbs of believing, thinking, knowing, recalling, saying, understanding, etc. It is obvious that the reality of such actions is placed in doubt and that this fact may evoke use of the conditional mood. The student should use the conditional here with some caution because the indicative can be readily used after such negative expressions and there are critical and subtle differences between the uses of the conditional and the indicative. The problem here is to decide whether one is dealing with a fact (requiring the indicative) or with a supposition (demanding the conditional). Study the following sentences. Note that both present and past conditional may be used here.

Nepamatoval si, že by mu byl něco půjčoval.
(He didn't remember having loaned him anything.)

Nevíš, co by to mělo být?
(Don't you know what that's supposed to be?)

Neříkal, čím by to bylo?
(Didn't he say what that might be?)

Nezdá se ti, že bychom měli už jít?
(Doesn't it seem to you that we should go now?)

Pochybuji, že by už byla zdráva.
(I doubt that she may be well.)

Neviděl jsem, že by se něco bylo změnilo.
(I didn't see that anything might have changed.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the use of the conditional after negative expressions.

1. He doubted that that could ever have happened.
2. I wouldn't say that his examples are believed (Use impersonal reflexive).
3. None of us recalled his being afraid of dogs.
4. It doesn't seem to me that he would have painted that picture of the house on the hill.
5. I'm not saying that he should have grasped that immediately.
6. No one believed that they would be capable of such behavior.
7. I don't understand why he wouldn't thank you for that.
8. She didn't think she could ever 'Use kdy) bear such pain.
9. Say (Use prosímtě), don't you know what might have been said on such an occasion?
10. I didn't imagine that I would be the first one here.

Declension of Borrowed Nouns

The last general statements that can be made about the Czech declensional system concern the declension of certain masculine and neuter nouns of Greek and Latin origin. As the student will learn, there are other irregularities, but these are best explained when individual vocabulary items are introduced. In this lesson we shall treat neuter nouns ending in -um and -ma in the nominative singular and masculine nouns ending in -us in the nominative singular. The stem of neuter nouns ending in -um is obtained by removing this ending, e.g., centrum = centr-. Note, however, that when the orthography seems to reveal a stem ending in a vowel, e.g., studium = studi-, there is actually a stem-final -j- between the two vowels studij-; and it is this -j- that causes the soft endings in the plural forms below.

	Singular	Plural
N	centrum	centra
G	centra	center
D	centru	centrům
A	centrum	centra
I	centrem	centry
L	centru	centrech

	Singular	Plural
N	studium	studia
G	studia	studií
D	studiu	studiím
A	studium	studia
I	studiem	studii
L	studiu	studiích

Neuter nouns in -ma are somewhat the reverse of the above type. In this case the stem is obtained by the addition of -t- to the nominative case form. As in the above patterns, all the endings are typical of neuter nouns except that for the genitive singular. A few of these nouns are indeclinable like the noun revma, which has exactly the same form for all cases and both numbers.

	Singular	Plural
N	drama	dramata
G	dramatu	dramat
D	dramatu	dramatům
A	drama	dramata
I	dramatem	dramaty
L	dramatu	dramatech

Masculine nouns in -us form their stems by removing the ending -us of the nominative singular. The noun rytmus is typical of the class.

	Singular	Plural
N	rytmus	rytmy
G	rytmu	rytmů
D	rytmu	rytmům
A	rytmus	rytmy
I	rytmem	rytmy
L	rytmu	rytmech

DIALOGUE

Nechtěl bys ještě kousek něčeho? Housku s máslem, například? Jestli chceš, mám tady taky sladké pečivo. Ber dokud dávám.	Wouldn't you like a bit more of something? A roll with butter, for example? If you want, I also have some pastries here. Take some while you can.

Ne, děkuji. Mám dost. Kromě toho už opravdu musím jít. Kolik je hodin? Čtvrt? Tak to je nejvyšší čas, abych letěl. Za čtvrt hodiny mi začíná česká hodina.	No, thank you. I've had enough. Besides, I really must go now. What time is it? A quarter past? So it's high time I was rushing along. My Czech class starts in a quarter of an hour.
Já tě nechci nutit, abys tu zůstával, když máš jiné věci na práci, ale co by se stalo, kdybys jednou na češtinu nešel?	I don't want to force you to stay here when you have other things to do, but what would happen if you didn't go to Czech once?
Nestalo by se nic hrozného, ale přišel bych o kus lekce patnáct a o hodinu legrace, přesněji o padesát minut, počítám-li přestávku. Dosud jsem se totiž na češtině ještě nikdy neotravoval.	Nothing terrible would happen, but I'd miss some of Lesson Fifteen and an hour of fun, more precisely fifty minutes, if I consider the break. So far I haven't been bored in Czech yet, you know.
Kolik je vás ve třídě?	How many of you are there in the class?
Deset. Občas, když se na nás přijdou podívat posluchači z jiných kursů, i víc. Minulý čtvrtek jsem si všiml, že nás v posluchárně bylo čtrnáct, a to jsem nepočítal profesora.	Ten. Occasionally, when students from other courses look in on us, even more. Last Thursday I noticed that there were fourteen of us in the lecture room, and I wasn't counting the professor either.
Jaké domácí úkoly dostáváte? Pavel si loni stěžoval, že museli každý den psát dlouhá cvičení. Prý celé desítky všelijakých vět.	What kind of homework do you get? Last year Pavel was complaining that they had to write long exercises every day. He said, just dozens of all kinds of sentences.
Obyčejně dostáváme nějaký překlad z angličtiny do češtiny. Na rozdíl od Pavla však nemám důvod k tomu, abych si stěžoval. Naše úlohy nejsou nejhorší. Rozhodně nejsou příliš dlouhé. Neříkám, že délka úloh nehraje při studiu žádnou roli, ale nevadí mi, když si občas musím s nějakým cvičením chvíli hrát. Aby ses[1] naučil cizímu jazyku, je třeba, abys vážně studoval. A to znamená, že musíš pracovat pravidelně a vytrvale, i když se to někdy zdá zbytečné.	Usually we get a translation from English into Czech. In contrast to Pavel, however, I have no reason to complain. Our exercises aren't the worst. They are certainly not too long. I'm not saying that the length of exercises doesn't play a role in studying, but I don't mind when I occasionally have to be occupied with some exercise for a while. In order to learn a foreign language, it's necessary to study seriously. And that means that you must work regularly and persistently, even though it sometimes seem superfluous.
Chodí k vám také Jarmila Krámská?	Is Jarmila Krámská also in your class?
Slečna Krámská? To děvče s vlasy až do pasu? Samozřejmě. Sedí někdy vedle mne a často spolu mluvíme.	Miss Krámská? The girl with the hair down to her waist? You bet. Sometimes she sits next to me, and we often talk

Nikdy mě nezapomene opravit, když něco špatně vyslovím. Studuje spoustu řečí a občas dělá jako by všemu v lingvistice rozuměla. Nevím ovšem, zdali nějaký jazyk dovede dokonale.[2]

together. She never forgets to correct me when I mispronounce something. She studies a lot of languages, and sometimes she pretends as if she understood everything in linguistics. Of course, I don't know whether she knows how to speak any language perfectly.

To také nevím. Vím jen, že považuje za významné jen ty, kdo mluví nějakým cizím jazykem. Každého se ptá, kolik řečí zná. Předevčírem jsem se s ní sešel a ona se mě téměř slavnostně zeptala (škoda, že se nedovedu tvářit jako ona, ukázal bych ti jak to řekla): Jakými jazyky mluvíte? Tak jsem jí stejně slavnostně odpověděl: Nikdy nepoužívám jiný, než svůj vlastní.

I don't know either. I only know that she considers as important only those people who speak some foreign language. She asks everyone how many languages he knows. The day before yesterday I ran into her, and she asked me almost in a formal tone (It's too bad that I don't know how to make a face as she did, I would show you how she said it): What tongues do you speak? So I answered in the same formal tone: I never use any but my own.

Ano, to je celá ona. Její řeč má takový zvláštní rytmus. Jako by spívala, spíš než mluvila. Všiml sis také jak se ráda ukazuje? Té nemusí profesor nikdy říkat at' se nebojí a jde k tabuli něco napsat. Jakmile má tu nejmenší příležitost, udělá to sama. Každou hodinu je dvakrát třikrát u tabule a píše na ní barevnými křídami různé příklady nebo pravidla. Ale ted' už se opravdu nedá nic dělat. Musím jít. Mít čas, zůstal bych tu třeba do rána a hovořil o Jarmile nebo o čem bys chtěl, ale povinnost volá. Kdy tě zítra uvidím? V osm? Tak nazdar.

Yes, that's her all over. Her speech has such a special rhythm. As if she were singing rather than speaking. Have you also noticed how she likes to show off? The professor never needs to tell her not to be afraid to go to the board and write something. As soon as she has the least opportunity, she does it herself. Each class period she's at the board two or three times and writes various examples and rules on it in colored chalk. But I can't talk any more now. I must go. If I had the time, I'd stay here, if necessary, until morning and talk about Jarmila or about anything you'd want, but duty calls. When will I see you tomorrow? At eight? So long then.

* * *

Povím vám anekdotu, která je vlastně malým dramatem na téma dospělí a děti nebo také na téma jak zabránit tomu, aby nevznikl omyl.

I'll tell you a story that is actually a small drama on the topic, grown-ups and children, or also on the topic how to prevent an error from arising.

Jde pán po mostě a vidí malého chlapce, který pláče. Pán má dobré srdce, proto se zastaví[3] a ptá se: Prosímtě, proč pláčeš?

A gentleman is walking along a bridge and sees a small boy who is crying. The gentleman is good-natured; therefore he stops and asks: Tell me, why are you crying?

Chlapec odpoví[3] s očima plnýma slz: Upadl mi do vody chleba[4].	The boy answers with his eyes full of tears: My sandwich fell in the water.
Chleba? diví se pán. To není žádné neštěstí. Kvůli tomu nemusíš plakat.	Sandwich? The gentleman is surprised. That's no misfortune. You needn't cry because of that.
Ano, ale...říká chlapec a snaží se, aby pánovi svou potíž vysvětlil.	Yes, but...says the boy and tries to explain his trouble to the gentleman.
Pánův zájem roste, proto chlapce přerušuje: To musel být nějaký zvlášť' dobrý obložený chlebíček. Byl se sýrem?	The gentleman's interest grows; therefore he interrupts the boy: That must have been an especially good sandwich. Did it have cheese?
Ne.	No.
Byl se salámem?	Did it have sausage?
Ne.	No.
Tak s čím, prosímtě byl?	Tell me, what did it have then?
S bratrem!	My brother!

* * *

Včera jsem se po práci zastavil u jedné výkladní skříně v centru města. Viděl jsem v ní totiž knihu, která mě zajímala. Podíval jsem se na ni a řekl jsem si: Mít u sebe peníze, koupím si ji. Ale hned jsem se zarazil. Opravdu? Je to pravda? Koupil bych si tu knihu, kdybych měl peníze? Neříkal jsem si dopoledne, že bych měl penězi šetřit, protože když nebudu šetřit, sotva budu mít v létě dost peněz, abych mohl jet na dovolenou na Moravu? A dovolená na Moravě je mým dávným snem.	Yesterday after work I stopped in front of a store window downtown. The thing was that I saw a book in it that interested me. I took a look at it and told myself: If I had money on me, I'd buy it. But I hesitated immediately. Really? Is it true? Would I buy that book if I had money? Wasn't I saying to myself this morning that I should use money sparingly because, if I don't economize, I scarcely have enough money in summer to be able to go on a vacation in Moravia? And I've been dreaming for a long time of a vacation in Moravia.
Chvíli jsem tam tak stál a přemýšlel, co bych byl dělal, kdybych byl měl peníze, které jsem neměl. Netrvalo to však dlouho, než jsem si uvědomil, že další takové úvahy nemají smysl. Všechno záleželo na penězích, a ty jsem v kapse neměl. Obrátil jsem se tedy a šel domů. Dodal bych jenom, že se	For a while I just stood there and thought about what I would do if I had money, which I don't have. It didn't take long, however, before I realized that any more thoughts like this would have no meaning. Everything depended on money, and that I didn't have in my pocket. So I turned around and went

ta kniha, o kterou šlo, jmenovala *Dlouhá dovolená za málo peněz*.	home. I'd just like to add that the book in question was called *A Long Vacation for Little Money*.

* * *

Kéž by tu už Milena byla! Bojím se, aby zase nepřišla pozdě. Nezavolal bys ji? Máš její telefonní číslo?	If only Milena were here! I'm afraid she's going to be late. Would you call her up? Do you have her phone number?
Ne, bohužel nemám. Řekls jí vůbec, aby přišla v šest?	No, unfortunately, I don't. Are you sure you told her to come at six?
Samozřejmě. Řekl jsem jí velmi jasně, že tady na ni budeme v šest čekat. Kdybych byl býval věděl, že se zdrží, byl bych pro ni přijel autem.	No question about it. I told her very clearly that we would be waiting here for her at six. If I had known that she'd be detained, I would have picked her up in my car.
To by bývalo zbytečné. Odpoledne bys ji doma stejně nenašel. Ona odpoledne obyčejně chodí nakupovat. Bojím se, že v tuhle chvíli ještě chodí po obchodech.	That would have been useless. In the afternoon you wouldn't have found her at home anyway. In the afternoon she usually goes shopping. I'm afraid that at this moment she is still making the rounds of the stores.
O tom pochybuji. Jestliže nezapomněla, bude už určitě na cestě. Ale jak by mohla zapomenout? Ví přece, že potřebujeme někoho, kdo by nám s tím překladem ještě dnes pomohl. Nevím, zda jsem ti to řekl, ale prosil jsem ji také, aby nám dovolila, abychom si půjčili její nový anglický slovník. Nejsem si však jist, že jej bude moci vzít s sebou. Je velký, těžký a špatně se nosí. Jen kdyby tak už přišla! Mohli bychom se hned dát do práce. Začínám být trochu neklidný.	I doubt that. If she didn't forget, she'll certainly be on her way. But how could she forget? She knows, doesn't she, that we need somebody to help us with the translation today yet? I don't know whether I told you this, but I also asked her to let us borrow her new English dictionary. I'm not sure, however, that she'll be able to take it along. It's big, heavy, and hard to carry. If only she would come! We'd be able to set to work immediately. I'm beginning to get a little uneasy.

* * *

Rád bych věděl, kolik mám vlastně v Praze příbuzných. Představ si, včera jsem tu objevil dalšího—bratra babičky s maminčiny strany. Kdo by to řekl, že tady bydlí? Celý život jsem myslel, že ten starý pán, kterému všichni říkáme dědeček z Brna, žije někde v Brně.	I wonder exactly how many relatives I have in Prague. Imagine, yesterday I discovered another one—the brother of my grandmother on my mother's side. Who would have said that he lived here? My whole life I thought that the old gentleman, whom we all call our grandfather from Brno, lived somewhere in Brno.

Kdybych si chtěl dělat legraci, řekl bych, že to není vůbec těžké zjistit. Jestliže chceš vědět, kolik příbuzných a dobrých známých na světě máš, kup si barevnou televizi--nějaký velký a drahý televizor. Zároveň to pověz aspoň jednomu z lidí, které znáš. Během dvou tří týdnů tě navštíví celá Praha. Sám se budeš divit, kolik lidí se považuje za tvoje blízké přátele a jak četná je tvá rodina. Tohle se totiž stalo mně. Dokud jsem neměl barevnou televizi, byl jsem muž bez rodiny a bez přátel. Od té doby, co ji mám, mám hosty kdykoli chci a často i když nechci. Stává se, že se jich někdy nemohu zbavit, ani když se o to snažím. Byly večery, kdy jsem raději nevycházel z bytu a dělal jako že nejsem doma, abych měl pokoj. Jednou jsem dokonce musel dělat jako že jsem nemocný, že mám revma a že se nemohu hnout z postele.	If I wanted to joke, I'd say that it wasn't hard at all to find that out. If you want to know how many relatives and good friends you have in the world, buy color television--some big and expensive television set. At the same time tell at least one of the people you know. In the course of two or three weeks you will be visited by the whole of Prague. You yourself will be surprised how many people consider themselves your close friends and how numerous your family is. That's just what happened to me. So long as I didn't have color television, I was a man without family and without friends. Since the time that I've had it, I have guests whenever I want and frequently even when I don't. It happens that sometimes I can't get rid of them even when I try. There were evenings when I preferred not to leave my apartment and to pretend that I wasn't at home in order to be left alone. Once I even had to pretend that I was sick, that I had arthritis, and that I was unable to leave my bed.
Ale prosímtě. Nevěřil bych ti, ani kdybys mě prosil, abych ti věřil. Třebaže si stěžuješ, jsi jistě rád, že máš ty své televizní známé a že k tobě často chodí. Ještě nedávno jsi mi říkal, že jsi pořád doma sám, že být sám není dobré, že bys raději chodil do společnosti i kdyby to byla občas otrava, a tak. Pamatuješ?	Come on, now. I wouldn't believe you even if you were to ask me to believe you. Although you complain, you are surely glad that you have those television acquaintances of yours and that they come to see you often. Just recently you were telling me that you are home alone all the time, that to be alone is not good, that you'd prefer to go out even if it were boring at times, and so on. Do you remember?

---

1 Note that Czech uses the second person singular as a generalized pronoun of address.

2 The infinitive *mluvit* has been omitted in this sentence.

3 When a sequence of events is removed from the ordinary temporal framework of speech and is used in a more vivid narrative style employing the so-called historical present, both aspects will be used in their normal meaning (completion vs. noncompletion) with the perfective rendering the more central crucial events and the imperfective expressing the secondary accompanying actions.

4 The colloquial language uses the form *chleba* in the nominative.

READING SELECTION

Kdybys mi byl něco řekl, byl bych ti pomohl. Bývalo by stačilo vzít telefon a zavolat. Mám teď' dost času a býval bych včera odpoledne k tobě hned přišel a mohli jsme to udělat spolu. Vozit televizory z jednoho konce města na druhý není žádná jednoduchá ani lehká práce. Jak dlouho ti to vlastně trvalo, než jsi ten televizor dostal do svého malého auta? Nebyl právě nejmenší ani nejlehčí. A proč ses ho vůbec zbavoval? Pokud vím, fungoval dobře. Dělals to opravdu jenom kvůli tomu, žes chtěl mít něco většího? Já nevím, ale já bych řekl, že na tom, jak je televizor velký, příliš nezáleží. Podle mne jde hlavně o to, aby měly hodnotu televizní programy.

* * *

Jan chodil před léty na češtinu. Už jsem zapomněl z jakého důvodu tam začal chodit, mohu však říci, že to byl kurs, který Jan měl velice rád a který měl na něho vliv. Především v té třídě tenkrát byli samí chytří žáci; kromě toho měli inteligentního učitele. A pak, a to hlavně, všichni ti posluchači měli zájem na tom, aby se naučili česky. Sám jsem poznal několik Janových kolegů z toho kursu. Byla u nás párkrát na návštěvě celá třída. Jan je totiž k sobě rád zval, protože to byla vždycky legrace. Při takových příležitostech se obyčejně mluvilo většinou česky, nebo se o to aspoň každý snažil. To víte, nebyl byste při nich slyšel nejlepší češtinu, ale určitě byste se býval neotravoval. Nemluvil bych o tom, kdybych nemohl dodat, že se Jan tehdy naučil docela dobře česky a zároveň se začal zajímat také o českou literaturu. Když se brzo potom pokusil o překlady z české literatury, vůbec mě to nepřekvapilo. Od té doby překládat nepřestal. Zabývá se hlavně díly z nejnovější doby. V téhle chvíli pracuje na překladu jedné hry, která vyšla teprve před několika měsíci. Nebyl bych si myslil, že ho bude zajímat drama, protože obyčejně dává přednost filmu před divadlem. Ale s tím má zřejmě něco společného čeština. Tím chci říci, čeština té hry. Čím je jazyk nějakého díla těžší a složitější, tím Jana více zajímá. Až ten překlad bude hotov, myslím, že by se Jan měl snažit jej dát vytisknout. Skoro všechny jeho překlady se mi zdají dobré a účinné a neměly by proto zůstat neznámé.

* * *

Ačkoli je už polovina dubna, dni jsou pořád velmi chladné. Stromy se dosud nezelenají, nebe se nemodrá a celé týdny vytrvale prší. Co je to za jaro? Bojíme se, aby to letos nebylo stejné jako loni. Minulý rok jsme také dlouho čekali na jaro a ono vlastně nikdy nepřišlo. Jednoho dne skončila zima a pak po několika ošklivých měsících najednou začalo léto. Jako by se v posledních letech něco stalo s počasím. Člověk čeká na to, co se pravidelně stává a samozřejmě se toho nikdy nedočká. A to platí nejen o počasí, ale i o událostech. Nesmíme si však příliš stěžovat. Je-li jaro hrozné, zima byla krásná. Plno jasných, i když studených dní, výletů do bílé přírody a všelijakých, celkem příjemných návštěv. Byli u nás hlavně dědeček s babičkou, kteří se na nás přijeli podívat koncem ledna. Nebylo by tedy správné, kdybychom si mysleli, že by věci byly nutně lepší, kdyby byly jiné.

* * *

Ještě mi nikdy nechutnal obložený chlebíček tak dobře jako včera v poledne. Dostal jsem od Jarmily kus jejího oběda. Byl to obyčejný chléb s máslem a se sýrem, ale měl zvláštní, nezvykle jemnou chuť'. A víte čím to bylo? Chlebem. Jarmila si totiž dělá chléb sama a opravdu to umí. Ví přesně, co je třeba do chleba dát, aby byl dobrý. Takový chléb by měli dělat všude. Dovedete si představit, jak voňavý musí být Jarmilin byt, když se ten chléb dělá? Chtěl bych přitom někdy být.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. If only he would forget (Use tak)! 2. Come even if you might be able to stay
only an hour. 3. Until it stops raining, we can't do anything else. 4. I have
read all of Shakespeare's dramas in English. 5. Every evening we watched some
television program with them. 6. Would you wait for me in front of the lecture
room after class? 7. Then we lived a rather long time in Moravia. 8. She is
laughing although she would rather cry. 9. I wouldn't sell it to them even if
they begged me to. 10. If only (Use kéž) he had a little more feel (Use smysl)
for language! 11. Please take a look in the telephone book. 12. As soon as
she realized that he wasn't kidding, she laughed pleasantly (Translate "sweetly").
13. How many sandwiches did you make for yourself? 14. They visited us more out
of duty thatn out of interest. 15. We'll stop there at the earliest (Use "nearest")
opportunity. 16. If I didn't knowchow to, I wouldn't be asking you. 17. Has
the doctor already allowed you to go out? 18. For homework we got two short
translations from English to Czech. 19. Use the butter sparingly, we haven't
much of it. 20. Can (omit) you see the blackboard (Use na + Acc.) well? 21.
don't complain (pl.);you'd be bored even more at their place. 22. On the second
page you will find numerous other examples. 23. It seems that they will not be
able to prevent it. 24. Bring rolls, even. 25. I'd like to read some more (Use
ještě kus) of this play; but, unfortunately, I have to return it to Marie
tomorrow. 26. We worked the whole afternoon without a break in order to finish

at least the first part. 27. Feel free (Use samozřejmě) to have recourse to my brother, he'll be glad to help. 28. Would you have (Use negative) a piece of chalk here someplace? 29. If I hadn't watched out for myself, I'd have had arthritis for a long time now. 30. Do you like grandmother's cookies? 31. We have to have (Use dát) our television set repaired soon, don't you think? 32. I haven't yet seen anyone who would like that picture. 33. Why would we invite them if it isn't necessary for us to meet with them? 34. Is television an art; and, if it is, what role does it have in the life of society? 35. If you're not sure, better (Use raději) not tell her anything. 36. Ideas (Use úvahy) about rythm play a significant role in his book. 37. While studying languages it is necessary to pay attention even to the simplest rules. 38. My interest grew as soon as he began to lecture on this topic. 39. Klára has hair (Use pl.) reaching (Use "long" in position after the noun) almost to her waist. 40. They didn't stop interrupting me even when they drew their attention to the fact that they weren't supposed to talk unless it was their turn. 41. Are any students from last year also in the Czech course this year? 42. Out of all those boys only Pavel studies regularly and diligently. 43. I'm afraid that's (Use aby) an error. 44. In each lesson there are at least fifty new words. 45. He hesitated and after a moment added that he didn't know whether Jarmila was the same girl he'd gone to school with years ago. 46. The store window was full of all kinds of cheeses and sausages. 47. We were running from one classroom to another, but we didn't find a single one empty. 48. Grown-ups wouldn't be bad if they had all really grown up. 49. I imagine it this way, that we won't say anything to grandfather because he'd be angry anyway. 50. Do trees grow even in winter? 51. Prague is the most important (Use významný) of all the centers of Czech culture. 52. With tears in her eyes she was telling him that she had lost all hope. 53. Incidentally, have you ever had a dream that you understood (Use conditional) completely? 54. Václav (Use s + Instr.) and I finished that at the same time. 55. Hello, Valouch, doesn't it seem to you that we should go someplace to have a good meal (Use najíst se)?

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Chutná vám pečivo?
2. Čím musíte šetřit?
3. Naše třída.
4. Studium jazyků.

5. Chodíte do společnosti?
6. Na co si studenti stěžují?
7. Televize a její vliv.
8. Dospělí a děti.
9. Angličtina a čeština.
10. Před výkladní skříní.
11. Co je to povinnost?
12. Kursy na universitě.
13. Překlady a cvičení.
14. Lidé, káva a přestávky.
15. Děláte si sám obložené chlebíčky?
16. Telefonní rozhovory.
17. Jít se na někoho podívat.
18. V centru města.
19. Opravujete si sám svůj televizor?
20. Co je třeba a co třeba není?
21. Dobré téma k úvaze.
22. Babička a dědeček.
23. Z koho si berete příklad?
24. Jaké televizní programy máte nerad?
25. Příležitost k dovolené v Praze.

LESSON XVI

VOCABULARY

aniž (conj.)	without...-ing
bouře (f)	storm
Bratislava (f)	capital of Slovakia
břeh (m)	shore, bank
dělat/udělat zkoušku[1]	to take/pass an examination
deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek)	board, plate, tablet
(gramofonová) deska	record
dešt'[2](m)	rain

dokázat (IX,p)(See dokazovat)	to prove, demonstrate
dokazovat (VII,i)(See dokázat)	to prove, demonstrate
doporučit (II,p)(See doporučovat)	to recommend
doporučovat (VII,i)(See doporučit)	to recommend
doslova (adv.)	literally
fakulta (f)	college of a university
filosofický	philosophical
filosofická fakulta	college of arts and sciences
forma (f)(Gen.pl. forem)	form
hruška (f)(Gen.pl. hrušek)	pear
charakter (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	character, moral character
jablko (n)(Gen.pl. jablek, Loc.pl. jablkách)	apple
jaksi (adv.)	somehow, kind of, to a certain extent
jednotlivý	single, separate, individual
kdysi (adv.)	once, in the old days
klepat[3](IX,i)(See zaklepat)	to knock
knihovna (f)(Gen.pl. knihoven)	library, bookcase
kudy (adv.)	which way
kůň/koň-[4](m)(irreg.)	horse
ledaže (conj.)	unless
Leoš Janáček	Czech musical composer, 1854-1928

letošní	this year's
minulost (f)	the past
mísa (f)(Gen.pl. mis/mís)	dish, bowl
moc (f)	power
moc[5](adv./quantifier)	very, very much; rather
nábytek/nábytk- (m)	furniture
náměstí (n)	square, plaza
následek/následk- (m)	consequence
navrhnout (VI,p)(See navrhovat)	to propose, put forward, suggest
navrhovat (VII,i)(See navrhnout)	to propose, put forward, suggest
nedorozumění (n)	misunderstanding
nehledě k + Dat. (adv.)(See Grammar Analysis)	apart from, regardless of, notwithstanding
nemluvě o + Loc. (adv.)(See Grammar Analysis)	not to speak of
neočekávaný	unexpected, unlooked-for
očekávat (I,i)	to expect
odchod (m)	departure, leaving
ostatně (adv.)	after all
otvírat (I,i)(See otevřít)	to open
otevřít[6](Vb,p)(See otvírat)	to open
ovoce (n)(Singular only)	fruit
ozvat se (Vc,p)(See ozývat se)	to make oneself heard, resound, respond, break the silence
ozývat se (I,i)(See ozvat se)	to make oneself heard, resound, respond, break the silence
pacient (m)	patient (male)
pacientka (f)(Gen.pl. pacientek)	patient (female)
písmeno (n)	letter
tiskací písmeno	printed letter
pokládat (I,i)(See položit)	to lay, put
pokládat někoho/něco za někoho/něco	to consider someone/something as someone/something
položit (II,p)(See pokládat)	to lay, put
pomoc (f)	help, aid, assistance
poněvadž (conj.)	since
popisovat (VII,i)(See popsat)	to describe, give an account of

popřát[7](VIII,p)(někomu něco)(See přát)	**to wish a person something**
popsat (IX,p)(like psát)(See popisovat)	**to describe, give an account of**
porazit (II,p)(See porážet)	**to knock down, upset, defeat**
porážet (III,i)(See porazit)	**to knock down, upset, defeat**
poskytnout (VI,p)(See poskytovat)	**to give, provide**
poskytovat (VII,i)(See poskytnout)	**to give, provide**
potom co (conj.)	**after**
pravděpodobný	**probable, likely**
promlouvat (I,i)(See promluvit)	**to have a talk with; deliver a speech**
promluvit (II,p)(See promlouvat)	**to have a talk with; deliver a speech**
přát[7](VIII,i)(někomu něco)(See popřát)	**to wish a person something**
přát si[7](VIII,i)	**to wish**
přechodník (m)	**adverbial participle**
překvapení (n)	**surprise**
přihláška (f)(Gen.pl. přihlášek)	**application, registration**
přijímací zkouška (f)	**entrance examination**
přijímat (I,i)(See přijmout)	**to receive, accept, take**
přijmout (Vb,p)(like zaujmout) (See přijímat)	**to receive, accept, take**
při nejmenším (adv.)	**at least**
připravit (II,p)(See připravovat)	**to prepare, get a thing ready**
připravovat (VII,i)(See připravit)	**to prepare, get a thing ready**
přítomnost (f)	**the present, presence**
příznivý	**favorable, lucky**
psaní (n)	**letter, writing**
republika (f)	**republic**
román (m)	**novel**
Slovensko (n)	**Slovakia**
na Slovensku	**in Slovakia**
směr (m)(Loc.sg.-u)	**direction, trend, line**
sníh/sněh-[8](m)	**snow**
soudě podle + Gen. (adv.)(See Grammar Analysis)	**judging by**
souviset(III/IV,i)(+ s + Instr.)	**to be connected (with)**

stránka (f)(Gen.pl. stránek)	aspect, point of view; page
švestka (f)(Gen.pl. švestek)	plum
trvalý	lasting, enduring, permanent
tvořit (II,i)(See utvořit, vytvořit)	to form, create, make
upřímný	sincere, whole-hearted, frank, honest
utvořit (II,p)(See tvořit)	to form, make
uvážit (II,p)(See uvažovat) (+ o + Loc.)	to consider, look into, deliberate
uvažovat (VII,i)(See uvážit) (+ o + Loc.)	to consider, look into, deliberate
vánoce (m)(Plural only)(Gen.vánoc, Instr. vánoci/vánocemi)	Christmas
o vánocích	at Christmas
včerejší	yesterday's
vítr/větr-[8](m)	wind
vonět (III,i)(See zavonět)	to smell good, have a pleasant smell
vůz/voz-(m)	car, wagon, van
vystoupit (II,p)(See vystupovat)	to get out, ascend, climb
vystupovat (VII,i)(See vystoupit)	to get out, ascend, climb
vytvořit (II,p)(See tvořit)	to create, make
zaklepat[3](IX,p)(See klepat)	to knock
zaklepat/klepat na dveře	to knock at the door
zápisník (m)	notebook, memorandum book
záplava (f)	flood, deluge, spate
zasáhnout (VI,p)(See zasahovat)	to influence, affect
zasahovat (VII,i)(See zasáhnout)	to influence, affect
zasahovat/zasáhnout + do + Gen.	to interfere in, meddle in
zavírat (I,i)(See zavřít)	to close, shut
záviset (III/IV,i)(+ na + Loc.)	to depend (on)
zavonět (III,p)(See vonět)	to smell good, have a pleasant smell
zavřít[6](Vb,p)(See zavírat)	to close, shut
zde[9](adv.)(See tady)	here
známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek)	trace, postage stamp, mark, grade, symbol, sign
způsobit (II,p)(See způsobovat)	to bring about, cause
způsobovat (VII,i)(See způsobit)	to bring about, cause

1 The imperfective form can mean only "to take an exam" while the perfective form has both meanings "to take/pass an exam."

2 This noun has the alternate form déšt' only in the nominative and accusative singular.

3 This verb may also have present tense forms like those of Class I, but the imperative must always be: klepej, klepejme, klepejte.

4 This is a typical soft-stem masculine noun, but there are some competing forms in the plural: Gen. koňů/koní, Dat. koňům/koním, Instr. koni/koňmi. Note that the plural is treated grammatically as an inanimate noun: Ty koně byly bílé.

5 This is a colloquial word and should be used sparingly in the spoken form of SČ. It replaces mnoho.

6 The false theme vowel is -í- in the infinitive and -e- elsewhere:

otevřel, etc.	otevřev, etc.	otevřen, etc.
zavřel, etc.	zavřev, etc.	zavřen, etc.

7 This verb has a vowel change in the present tense but retains the long vowel in the perf. part.:

přeji/popřeji, přeješ/ popřeješ, přeje/popřeje, etc.
přál, přála, etc.

8 These are the first examples of the alternation -í-/-ě- among the nouns. As usual, the -í- appears only before the zero ending.

9 The form zde is the SČ word, and the form tady is the OČ word.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Present Active Participles: Formation

The present active participles in Czech correspond in general to the -ing participial forms in Egnlish. Strictly speaking, these participles can be produced from the present tense form of any verb, including perfective verbs, although the latter are highly literary and quite rare. In addition, these forms can be used both adjectivally and adverbially with appropriate endings for both parts of speech. Historical accidence has caused the present active participle to resemble very closely the third person plural form of the present tense. The student should take advantage of this fact and use at least the stem form of the third person plural as the base form to which he should add the following endings.

Adjectival Forms			Adverbial Forms	
-ouc -íc	+	soft adjectival endings	-a -e	(masc. sg.)
			-ouc -íc	(neut./fem.sg.)

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{-ouc}\\ \text{-íc}\end{array}\right\} + \text{e} \quad \text{(all pl. forms)}$$

The adjectival forms are declined like cizí in all cases, genders, and numbers, while there are only three adverbial forms. The -a/-e adverbial forms are actually closely related to the -ouc/-íc forms, but only a historical discussion could clarify the relationship. The alternate forms -e/-íc (as opposed to -a/-ouc) have been caused by the influence of a stem final -j or by the presence of the present theme -í-. Note that this -e ending causes palatalization where possible, i.e., after labial and dental stops, and therefore may be written also as -ě. Study the following section and learn how to form present active participles from all verbal classes.

	Stem	Adjectival	Adverbial
Class I:	dáv-aj	dávající dávajícího dávajícímu, etc.	dávaje dávajíc dávajíce
Class II:	pros(-í)	prosící, etc.	prose, -íc,-íce
Class III:	sáz-ej	sázející, etc.	sázeje, -íc,-íce
Class IV:	trp(-í)	trpící, etc.	trpě, -íc,-íce
Class Va:	nes	nesoucí, etc.	nesa, -ouc,-ouce
Class Vb:	vezm	vezmoucí, etc.	vezma, -ouc,-ouce
Class Vc:	ber	beroucí, etc.	bera, -ouc,-ouce
Class VI:	tiskn	tisknoucí, etc.	tiskna, -ouc,-ouce
Class VII:	děk-uj	děkující, etc.	děkuje, -íc, -íce
Class VIII:	pij	pijící, etc.	pije, -íc, -íce
Class IX:			

As the student has already learned, Class IX exhibits not only a tendency toward Class I forms in the present tense but also a vacillation between -í and -ou in the third person plural. The present active participle is not organized along the same lines. If there is any evidence of palatalization of the stem-final consonant or cluster, then the participle exhibits -íc; otherwise it will have a typical Class I ending -ajíc. The only exception is lhát below.

maž	mažící, etc.	maže, -íc, -íce
cháp	chápající, etc.	chápaje, -íc, -íce
lž	lhoucí, etc.	lha, -ouc,-ouce

Note the short root vowel in all forms except the masc.sg.!

pláč   plačící, etc.   pláče, plačíc, plačíce

The following six verbs do not fit into the nine-class system: být, chtít, jíst, mít, spát, vědět. In all these cases the participial stem can be obtained from the third person plural, but whether the ending will be -íc or -ouc is not always apparent.

js:	jsoucí	jsa	chtěj:	chtějící	chtěje
	jsoucího	jsouc		chtějícího	chtějíc
	jsoucímu, etc.	jsouce		chtějícímu, etc.	chtějíce
jed:	jedoucí	jeda	maj:	mající	maje
	jedoucího	jedouc		majícího	majíc
	jedoucímu, etc.	jedouce		majícímu, etc.	majíce
sp(-í):	spící	spě	věd:	vědoucí	věda
	spícího	spíc		vědoucího	vědouc
	spícímu, etc.	spíce		vědoucímu, etc.	vědouce

Present Active Participles: Use

Both the adjectival and adverbial forms of the present active participles are almost exlusively literary forms and will be heard only rarely in conversation. It is true, however, that some of the adjectival forms have become adjectives and may appear frequently in conversational style. The adverbial forms really do function as adverbs in sentences, and, even though they frequently function as adverbs of time (an action simultaneous with that of the main clause), they may display any of the other adverbial meanings: manner, cause, condition, purpose, and concession. Study the following sentences containing present active participles used adverbially.

Dověděli jsme se to, jsouce na návštěvě v Praze. (time)
(We learned that while visiting in Prague.)

Vcházel pomalu do mého pokoje, nesa v ruce šálek kávy. (time)
(He entered my room slowly carrying a cup of coffee in his hand.)

Nemajíce peníze na cestu, musíme zůstat doma. (cause)
(Not having money for the trip, we have to stay home.)

Nevědouc co dělat, obrátila se na mne o radu. (cause)
(Not knowing what to do, she turned to me for advice.)

Psal dopis, používaje kuličkového pera. (manner)
(He was writing a letter using a ball-point pen.)

Člověk může vidět mnoho věcí, stoje na rohu ulice v centru velkého města. (condition)
(One can see many things standing on a street corner downtown in a big city.)

Znaje češtinu dobře, přece ji často nepoužívá. (concession)
(Although he knows Czech well, he nevertheless doesn't use it often.)

Jeho sestra mi napsala, děkujíc mi za pomoc. (purpose)
(His sister wrote me a letter thanking me for my help.)

As the student will see in the examples below, the adjectival forms of the present active participles replace relative clauses. The same results obtain in English, where the participial phrase "The man driving the car..." is derived from "The man who is driving the car..." Study the following examples:

Všichni rádi vidíme návštěvníky zajímající se o naši universitu.
(We are all happy to see visitors interested in our university.)

Lidé chodící často do společnosti nemají obyčejně čas na práci.
(People who go out a lot usually don't have time for work.)

Nemohu snést plačící děti.
(I can't stand crying children.)

Tatínek sám zasadil ten strom rostoucí u tamtoho okna.
(Father himself planted that tree growing by that window over there.)

Jeden z těch studentů vycházejících ven je můj přítel.
(One of those students going out is my friend.)

Viděla jste toho člověka sedícího u okna a kouřícího cigaretu?
(Did you see that man sitting by the window and smoking a cigarette?)

In sentences like the last one above the student must be careful to distinguish between bona fide participial phrases demonstrated above and whole sentences following verbs of perception, as discussed in Lesson VI. The latter express "what someone does" whereas participial phrases correspond to relative clauses. The last sentence above expressed in the form of an entire action perceived directly would be:

Viděla jste, jak ten člověk sedí u okna a kouří cigaretu?

In Czech, just as in English, "dangling participles" (where the adverbial form of the participle and the main clause have different subjects) are frowned upon. Both languages, however, have a small number of fixed participial expressions like:

soudě podle	+	Gen.	judging by...
nehledě k	+	Dat.	regardless of...
nemluvě o	+	Loc.	without mentioning...

where these may or may not be related to the subject of the main clause. If they can not be linked to the main subject, then they have a generalized animate subject that is unexpressed. Note the following sentences:

Nehledě k tomu, co se říká, provoz na ulicích tohohle města je pořád větší a větši.
(Regardless of what they say, traffic in the streets of this city has become constantly greater.)

Soudě podle toho, jak nás pozdravil, byl rád, že jsme přišli.
(Judging by how he greeted us, he was glad that we came.)

Jeho jednání nám dělá jen samé potíže, nemluvě o tom, co nám udělal loni.
(His behavior has been causing us nothing but problems, not to mention
what he did to us last year.)

As the student has observed, all preceding sentences have employed present active participles formed from imperfective verbs. Both adverbial and adjectival uses of present active participles from perfective verbs may be found, but even in literature these are rare. The student is advised, therefore, not to attempt to use these perfective participles. When they are used, they refer exclusively to future actions occurring prior to the future action of the main clause. Merely take note of the following four examples.

Přečtouce noviny, dáme vám je.
(After reading the newspaper, we'll give it to you.)

Skončíc práci, vrátí se domů.
(After finishing work, she'll return home.)

Ten z nich, vezmoucí si knihu, vám ji pozítří vrátí.
(The one who will take the book will return it to
you the day after tomorrow.)

Až tam přijdeš, uvidíš mladého muže v klobouku,
přinesoucího nějaké dopisy.
(When you get there, you will see a young man in
a hat, who will have brought some letters.)

Exercise

1) Form both adjectival and adverbial present active participles from the following verbs.

zajímat se
krýt
platit
půjčovat
prohlížet si

mrznout
psát
starat se
vézt
bát se

plakat
moci
plést se
kupovat
zvát

2) Convert the following sentences into participial phrases, e.g.:

Karel pije mléko. { Karel, pijící mléko...
Pije mléko, Karel...

1. Milena vyslovuje těžká slova.
2. Profesoři mají schůzi ve dvě hodiny.
3. Má sestra tráví každý den na universitě.
4. Ženy se vracejí do bytu.
5. Děti studují do oběda.
6. Naši přátelé přicházejí k nám na návštěvu.
7. Naši rodiče snídají venku na zahrádce.
8. Milan sedí a vzpomíná si na narozeniny.
9. Má matka si neví rady s tou situací.
10. Můj přítel se těší na dovolenou.
11. Karel si vybírá nový klobouk.
12. Otec jí zabraňuje chodit do společnosti.

3) Translate the following sentences into Czech using present active participles wherever possible.

1. Marie always smokes while dressing in the morning.
2. Not understanding what we wanted from her, Milena just stood there and cried.
3. You're not supposed to interrupt a man who is lecturing.
4. If I had listened to her while getting ready for my trip, I wouldn't be having trouble now.
5. Don't believe a man who always exaggerates.
6. I can't forgive a man who constantly worries about everything.
7. I'm afraid my brother made a lot of mistakes while taking that examination.
8. What can we do with a student who constantly poses questions to his teachers?
9. She stopped me on the street promising me that she would never do that again.
10. Realizing that that had been a misunderstanding, they didn't want to interfere again in his affairs.

Past Active Participles: Formation

The past active participles in Czech correspond roughly to the English phrase "having + past participle." Because of their time reference they are formed from the nonpresent stem of the verb. This stem form can be most conveniently obtained by dropping the -l suffix in the perfect participle. They are formed exclusively from perfective verbs; the only exception is provided by the past active participle from the verb být. Just as in the case of the present active participles, there are both adjectival and adverbial forms for the past active participle. In the display below the endings with the element -v- are used when the nonpresent stem ends in a vowel.

Adjectival Forms

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{-vš}\\ \text{-š}\end{array}\right\}$ + soft adjectival endings

Adverbial Forms

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{-v}\\ \text{-}\varnothing\end{array}\right\}$ (masc.sg.)

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{-vši}\\ \text{-ši}\end{array}\right\}$ (neut./fem.sg.)

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{-vše}\\ \text{-še}\end{array}\right\}$ (all pl.forms)

The following lists will show the student how to form the past active participles from each verbal class.

	Stem	Adjectival	Adverbial
Class I:	u-děl-a	udělavší udělavšího udělavšímu, etc.	udělav udělavši udělavše

Class II:	po-pros-i	poprosivší, etc.	poprosiv,-ši, -še
Class III:	po-rozum-ě	porozuměvší, etc.	porozuměv,-ši, -še
Class IV:	s-trp-ě	strpěvší, etc.	strpěv,-ši, -še
Class Va:	při-nes	přinesší, etc.	přines,-ši,-še

And note the irregular forms for derivatives of jít:

		vyšedší, etc.	vyšed,-ši, -še
Class Vb:	vz-a	vzavší, etc.	vzav,-ši, -še
Class Vc:	po-zv-a	pozvavší, etc.	pozvav, -ši, -še

Class VI:

This is the only class where the perfect participle minus its -l ending will not always yield the past active participle. All participles here are formed from a stem ending in -nu regardless of whether the root ends in a consonant or a vowel.

	z-hub-nu	zhubnuvší, etc.	zhubnuv, -ši, -še
	mi-nu	minuvší, etc.	minuv, -ši, -še
Class VII:	po-děk-ov-a	poděkovavší, etc.	poděkovav, -ši, -še
Class VIII:	vy-pi	vypivší, etc.	vypiv, -ši, -še
Class IX:	u-maz-a	umazavší, etc.	umazav, -ši, -še

The following verbs are three of those that stand outside of the nine-class system. Only three are given here because the student has not yet had perfective forms for all the irregular verbs. Remember that být alone has an imperfective past active participle.

by:	the adjectival form does not exist!	byv byvši byvše	po-věd-ě:	pověděvší pověděvšího pověděvšímu,etc.	pověděv pověděvši pověděvše

vy-sp-a se:	vyspavší se vyspavšího se vyspavšímu se, etc.	vyspav se vyspavši se vyspavše se

Past Active Participles: Use

The past active participles too are used practically exclusively in literature and may function both as adverbs and adjectives. They always express actions occurring before that of the main verb. As a result of this fact, the element of time is very prominent in the adverbial usage of those participles, but they also may have fairly strong connotations of cause, manner, and concession. Study the following sentences containing adverbial past active participles. As the last example shows, the adverbial form for být can be used only in conjunction with past passive participles.

Vrátiv se domů, zavřel všechny dveře. (time)
(Having returned home, he shut all the doors.)

Vyčistivši si zuby, oblékla se a odešla. (time)
(After brushing her teeth, she got dressed and left.)

Cítili se šťastnější, rozdělivše všechny ty věci mezi své děti. (cause)
(They felt happier having divided all those things among their children.)

Vyspav se dobře, cítil se úplně jiným člověkem. (cause)
(After having slept well, he felt like a completely different person.)

Uvědomivše si co se stalo, rodiče souhlasili. (time)
(After finding out what happened, the parents agreed.)

Přizpůsobivše se jeho jednání, lépe jsme mu porozuměli. (manner)
(By adapting ourselves to his behavior, we understood him better.)

Přečetši si tu větu pečlivě, pořád ještě nemohla pochopit její význam. (concession)
(Having read the sentence carefully, she still wasn't able to grasp its significance.)

Byv upozorněn, opravil se. (cause)
(Having been informed, he corrected himself.)

Like present active participles, past active participles in their adjectival usage replace relative clauses. Study the following examples.

Co uděláme s tím stromem vyrostším tamhle u dveří?
(What shall we do with that tree that has grown up over there by the door?)

Ta paní vyznavší se v divadle, tady zase včera večer byla.
(The lady, who was an expert on the theater, called here again last night.)

Viděl jste toho člověka přerušivšího ji při přednášce?
(Did you see the person who interrupted her during the lecture?)

Podívej se, ten chlapec vyšedší z domu má na sobě tvůj kabát.
(Look, that boy who left the house is wearing your coat.)

Exercise

1) Form both adjectival and adverbial past active participles from the following verbs.

prostudovat
napsat
přestat
uvidět
přijít
zaplakat
zopakovat
použít
zavřít

zapomenout
zavolat
začít
hnout
zaujmout
obléknout se

2) Convert the following sentences into participial phrases, e.g.:

Karel vypil mléko. { Karel, vypivší mléko...
Vypiv mléko, Karel...

1. Profesor si postěžoval na jednoho studenta.
2. Matka se zastavila před výkladní skříní.
3. Milan se zbavil všech těch věcí.
4. Jarmila vyšla z domu.
5. Ten hoch si vyčistil zuby.
6. Karel se sladce zatvářil.
7. Učitelé se podívali do nového slovníku.
8. Ty stromy na zahrádce zezelenaly.
9. Hudebníci si prohlédli různá místa.
10. Jiní hoši si udělali z něho legraci.

3) Translate into Czech the following sentences and use past active participles wherever possible.

1. Having doubted that I would come, he simply wasn't ready.
2. Having emphasized all those things in his lecture, he wanted us to learn them.
3. He showed me the man who found that out first.
4. I recognized my friend immediately who hadn't changed at all over the years.
5. Since he waited for his daughter and missed her (Use only dočkat se), he felt unhappy.
6. After resting for a while by the road, the girls got up and moved on.
7. Ask the teacher who just announced the results of the examination.
8. Having invited all his friends to his house for the 24th of February, he still didn't know what kind of dish he would make for them.
9. Did you recognize the manager who sold us his old car?
10. After taking leave of each other that night a month ago, they didn't come together again until the middle of last week.

Past Passive Participles: Formation

The past passive participles in Czech correspond to the past participle forms in English such as "raised, known, written, done, etc." They can be formed from any transitive verb whether it be imperfective or perfective. Their suffixes are added to the nonpresent stem of the verb; the perfect participle minus its -l suffix is frequently a reliable guide to the proper form of the required nonpresent stem, but the student must learn the class-by-class mode of formation given below. Past passive participles, like regular adjectives, have either attributive or predicative forms. The endings for these two varieties are added to the specific endings for the participles: -t-/-n-.

Attributive Forms		
-n -t	+	all hard adjectival endings

Predicative Forms			
-n -t	+	-ø	(masc.sg.)
		-a	(fem.sg.)
		-o	(neut.sg.)
		-i	(masc.pl.)
		-y	(fem.pl.)
		-a	(neut.pl.)

The attributive forms are declined like dobrý in all cases, genders, and numbers. The distribution of -n- vs. -t- over the nine verbal classes can be learned from the table below.

Class I:(-n-)

Note the long form of theme vowel in the predicative forms!

Participial Stem	Attributive	Predicative
(u-)děl-a-n	(u-)dělaný (u-)dělaná (u-)dělané, etc.	(u-)dělán (u-)dělána (u-)děláno, etc.

Class II:(-n-)

A -e- (sometimes written as -ě- to show palatalization) appears irregularly in this class between the nonpresent stem and the participial -n. Before this -e- the -i- of the stem changed to -j and was absorbed by the stem-final consonant. Today the effect of the -j can be seen only in the following changes in stem-final consonants: s > š, z > ž, sl > šl, st > št', t > c, d > z.

Participial Stem	Attributive	Predicative
(po-)pros(-i-)-e-n	(po-)prošený, etc.	(po-)prošen,-a,-o,etc.
(za-)plat(-i-)-e-n	(za-)placený, etc.	(za-)placen, etc.
(po-)zdrav(-i-)-e-n	(po-)zdravený, etc.	(po-)zdraven, etc.
(vy-)čist(-i-)-e-n	(vy-)čištěný, etc.	(vy-)čištěn, etc.
(z-)měn(-i-)-e-n	(z-)měněný, etc.	(z-)měněn, etc.
(s-)pál(-i-)-e-n	(s-)pálený, etc.	(s-)pálen, etc.

The student will find some irregularities where palatalization is not carried out. Only two such cases appear among the verbs studied so far.

Participial Stem	Attributive	Predicative
cít(-i-)-e-n	cítěný, etc.	cítěn, etc.
vod(-i-)-e-n	voděný, etc.	voděn, etc.

Class III:(-n-)

Participial Stem	Attributive	Predicative
sáz-e-n	sázený, etc.	sázen,-a,-o, etc.

Class IV:(-n-)

Participial Stem	Attributive	Predicative
(s-)trp-ě-n	(s-)trpěný, etc.	strpěn,-a,-o, etc.

Class Va:(-n-)

There is no theme vowel in the nonpresent stem; therefore an -e- is inserted between the stem and the -n- ending. The -e- palatilizes h > ž and k > č.

(pře-)čt-e-n	(pře-)čtený, etc.	(pře-)čten,-a,-o, etc.
ob-lek-e-n	oblečený, etc.	oblečen, etc.

Class Vb:(-n-/-t-)

There is a false theme vowel in the nonpresent stem. If the stem final consonant is -ř, the ending is -n; otherwise it is -t-.

za-vře-n	zavřený, etc.	zavřen,-a,-o, etc.
za-ča-t	začatý, etc.	začat, etc.
za-u-ja-t	zaujatý, etc.	zaujat, etc.

Class Vc:(-n-)

Note the lengthened theme vowel in the predicative forms!

(po-)zv-a-n	(po-)zvaný, etc.	(po-)zván,-a,-o, etc.

Class VI:(-t-/-n-)

Most verbs here use -t-, added to the stem in -nu. Some verbs (only verbs whose roots end in consonants but these must be learned) use -n-, added to the root (minus the thematic element -n) and separated from the final consonant of the root by an inserted -e- that, as usual, palatalizes h > ž, k > č, sk > šť. The student has seen only two verbs like this: obléknout and tisknout.

mi-nu-t	minutý, etc.	minut,-a,-o, etc.
ob-lek-e-n	oblečený, etc.	oblečen, etc.
tisk-e-n	tištěný, etc.	tištěn, etc.

Class VII:(-n-)

Note the long theme vowel in the predicative forms!

(z-)opak-ov-a-n	(z-)opakovaný, etc.	(z-)opakován,-a,-o,etc.

Class VIII:(-t-/-n-)

The ending -t- is the proper one; -n- appears only sporadically; so far in only one verb (za-)hrát.

(při-)bi-t	(při-)bitý, etc.	(při-)bit,-a,-o, etc.
(za-)hrá-n	(za-)hraný, etc.	(za-)hrán, etc.

Class IX:(-n-)

Note the long theme vowel in the predicative forms!

(u-)maz-a-n	(u-)mazaný, etc.	(u-)mazán,-a,-o, etc.

Past Passive Participles: Use

Past passive participles are true passive forms and, as such, they are stative forms signalling that the object or person to which they refer is in a state or condition of "being subjected to" or "having been subjected to" a given action. The predicative forms, occurring in the predicate after various forms of the verb být, are the basic forms of these participles. The attributive forms may be considered to be derived from relative clauses containing predicative forms. While past passive participles are literary forms, especially those formed from imperfective verbs; they are vastly more important in both literary and colloquial Czech than are the active participles.

The effect of the past passive participle formed from imperfective verbs can be gained by translating them via the English progressive form such as, "being done, being written, being published." There is really no competition between imperfective reflexive passives and this past passive participle. The former is not a true passive, bears merely a passive connotation, and is used to refer to repeated, regular, or typical actions. The student will recall that all reflexive verbs with underlying inanimate direct objects featured this kind of general application. The participle, on the other hand, refers to an action in progress at a specific time in the past, present, or future. In addition, this true passive permits the expression of the agent, i.e., the subject of the underlying active sentence. As the student should expect, this agent is usually expressed in the instrumental case; but, more colloquially, it may also appear after the preposition od + Gen. Compare the following two sentences using the reflexive passive and the real passive:

> Takové věci se v novinách neoznamují.
> (Such things are not announced in the newspaper.)
>
> To, co je v dnešních novinách oznamováno, není úplná pravda.
> (What is being announced in today's newspaper is not the complete truth.)

Study the following examples of the use of the imperfective past passive participles.

> Ani jeden z těch obrazů, které jsou zde malovány, se mi nelíbí.
> (Not one of those pictures that are being painted here appeals to me.)
>
> Všiml sis někdy těch právě vysvětlovaných problémů?
> (Did you ever notice those problems just being explained?)
>
> Aby měli úspěch, studenti musí být vedeni učitelem.
> (In order to be successful, students must be led by the teacher.)
>
> Které knihy jsou dnes studentům půjčovány?
> (What books are being loaned to the students today?)

Všechny věty byly několikrát opakovány.
(All the sentences were repeated several times.)

Věci,kupované dnes, budou zítra dvakrát tak drahé.
(Things purchased today will be twice as expensive tomorrow.)

Děti jsou chváleny, protože poslouchaly.
(The children are being praised because they obeyed.)

Perfective past passive participles can be translated by just the past participle in English and clearly represent the state attained by the object as the result of a preceding action. Note that this participle in the predicate after the present tense of the verb "to be" renders the English "has been done, has been written, etc." These perfective participles are much more common than their imperfective counterparts. Study the following sentences containing attributive and predicative perfective past passive participles.

Jsem vděčen za každou minutu s vámi strávenou.
(I am grateful for every minute spent with you.)

Studenti,zaujatí neobvyklým tématem, dávali pozor na každé jeho slovo.
(The students, captivated by the unusual topic, paid attention to his every word.)

Jsou dveře v kuchyni zavřeny?
(Is the door to the kitchen closed?)

Tady nahoře už jsou všechna okna umyta.
(Up here all the windows have been washed already.)

Doufám, že schůze nebude tentokrát nikým přerušena.
(I hope that the meeting won't be interrupted by anyone this time.)

Byl tvůj bratr mezi těmi pochválenými?
(Was your brother among those praised?)

Exercise

1) Produce past passive participles, both attributive and predicative, from the following verbs.

držet
přinést
brát
vyfotografovat
poslat

uklízet
prominout
umýt
ukázat
navštívit

vzít
rozhodnout
zjistit
uklidit
přikrýt

2) Transform the following active sentences into passive sentences using past passive participles.

1. Učitelé srovnali různé metody.
2. Všichni přijali ten román rozpačitě.
3. Jeho rodiče ho k tomu donutili.
4. Náš doktor doporučil tenhle lék.

5. Práce je zdržela v kanceláři.
6. Vedoucí si prohlédl ty dva velké vozy.
7. Přizpůsobila ty metody svému problému.
8. Kdo rozdělil ty věci mezi rodiče a děti?
9. Učitel ho upozorňuje na všechny omyly studentek.
10. Kdo vybral to místo?

3) Translate the following sentences into Czech and use past passive participles wherever possible.

1. Our television set, repaired just last week, isn't working again.
2. The visitors were being asked (Use žádat) to leave.
3. All lessons were finished several months ago.
4. Our colleagues, captivated by what they saw, turned to us with a number of questions.
5. Every student praised by the teacher was invited to the meeting.
6. His violent words have already been excused by all his acquaintances.
7. Were the books being printed last summer?
8. Even though those rules were explained several times by the teacher, the students still did not grasp them all.
9. Was that ever proved by anyone?
10. Why have such people been forgotten by everyone?
11. The lesson begun yesterday will be finished today.
12. The television play put on (Use hrát) this evening will be repeated next summer.
13. These summer dresses are being bought by all the women I know.
14. The drugstore on the corner will be opened as soon as the manager returns from his vacation.
15. That alternative will be studied carefully at the next meeting.
16. The roses brought from their place were prettier than those that grew in father's (Use dative) yard last year.
17. Will these typewriters be loaned to the students every year?
18. Those automobiles are usually sent by train from Prague to Brno.
19. This sentence isn't correctly formed.
20. Hasn't any such way been suggested yet?

Verbal Nouns: Formation

Czech verbal nouns bear a strong resemblance to the English gerund forms in -ing. They are neuter nouns formed from the past passive participles, i.e., after the -t/-n suffixes of the participle is found a set of endings identical with those for nouns like nádraží. In fact, the word jednání is itself a verbal noun. Theoretically, verbal nouns may be formed from any verb, imperfective or perfective, transitive or intransitive (the latter are formed just like the former even though no passive participles exist), nonreflexive or reflexive (in the latter case the se pronoun is rarely used). Note the details of their formation below.

	Participial Stem	Verbal Noun
Class I:		
Note the long theme vowel except in monosyllabic stems!		
	(u-)děl-a-n	(u-)dělání
	pta-n	ptaní
But an exception:	da-n	dání
Class II:	(po-)pros(-i-)-e-n	(po-)prošení
	plat(-i-)-e-n	placení
	cít(-i-)-e-n	cítění
Class III:	sáz-e-n	sázen
Class IV:	strp-ě-n	strpění
Class Va:	(pře-)čt-e-n	(pře-)čtení
Class Vb:	za-vře-n	zavření
Note that the -a- of the root changes to -e- before a soft -t-!		
	za-ča-t	začetí
	za-u-ja-t	zaujetí
Class Vc:		
The theme vowel is lengthened unless the stem is monosyllabic!		
	bra-n	braní
Class VI:		
The distribution of -t- and -n- is identical to that for the past passive participles.		
	h-nu-t	hnutí
	tisk-e-n	tištění
Class VII:		
The theme vowel is lengthened!		
	o-pak-ov-a-n	opakování
Class VIII:		
The same distribution of -t- and -n-! The -a- before -n- in monosyllabic stems is short.		
	kry-t	krytí
	hra-n	hraní

Class IX:

The stem vowel is long except in monosyllabic stems.

(na-)maz-a-n	(na-)mazání
ps-a-n	psaní

Verbal Nouns: Use

Even though the verbal nouns correspond in most cases to the English gerunds in -ing, there are numerous instances where they correspond to other types of nouns in English. In some cases too there has been a considerable shift in meaning, even to include the product of an action. Inspect the examples given below.

hledání (search/searching)
narození (birth)
opakování (review)
pití (drink/drinking)

přesvědčení (conviction)
psaní (letter/writing)
vidění (apparition/seeing)
umění (art/knowing how)

znění (version/sounding)

The student must exercise caution in using verbal nouns because in the case of many verbs their verbal nouns are just not employed. It is best for the student to learn from careful observation just which verbal nouns are acceptable. Frequently no verbal noun is used because another type of noun already exists, as in the following instances:

bát se (strach)
jíst (jídlo)
končit (konec)

odpovídat (odpověď)
věřit (víra)
zajímat (zájem)

As the student has learned, verbal nouns can be formed from both imperfective and perfective verbs, and the resulting nouns will differ in aspect just as their original verbs do. Sometimes the usual English equivalent will suggest which verbal noun is to be used, as in the following cases:

použití	(use)	překvapení	(surprise)
používání	(using)	překvapování	(surprising)
poznání	(knowledge)	ujištění	(assurance)
poznávání	(perception)	ujišťování	(assuring)

In most cases, however, the choice of aspect in the verbal noun is just as great a problem as the choice of aspect for the underlying verb.

Přesvědčili jsme ho teprve po dlouhém vysvětlování.
(We convinced him only after a long explanation.)

Najednou přestal číst, vstal a bez vysvětlení vyšel z pokoje.
(Suddenly he stopped reading, got up and left the room without explanation.)

As stated previously, verbal nouns from reflexive verbs ordinarily do not use the se. The reflexive pronoun is used only in rare instances to avoid ambiguity, as in the following sentence.

Je učení opravdu těžší než učení se?
(Is teaching really more difficult than learning?)

Pay very close attention to the way in which verbal nouns are employed in the following sentences.

Čtení při elektrickém světle nedělá dobře mým očím.
(Reading under an electric light isn't good for my eyes.)

Brzo budeme mít opakování všech důležitých gramatických pravidel.
(We're soon going to have a review of all the important grammatical rules.)

To dnešní překládání nás všechny zajímalo.
(Today's translation interested all of us.)

Strávili celou neděli uklízením bytu.
(They spent all day Sunday cleaning up the apartment.)

Takové dlouhé čekání mě nebaví.
(Such long waiting doesn't amuse me.)

Poslední hubnutí mu trvalo celý rok.
(His last reducing bout lasted a whole year.)

Exercise

1) Give the verbal nouns for the following list of verbs:

dávat
mluvit
trvat
prostudovat
přibíjet

hlásit
chystat
poděkovat
slyšet
chápat

doporučit
tloustnout
vést
bít
přát si

2) Translate the following sentences into Czech and use verbal nouns wherever possible.

1. After a long farewell they finally parted.
2. How long did counting your books take you?
3. I can't stand his lying any more.
4. I had a lot of trouble with the measuring of all those rooms.
5. Flying at a high altitude (Use v + výška) appealed to him very much.
6. Putting on weight has become one of his biggest problems.
7. It is impossible to learn Czech without understanding (Use porozumět) the grammar.
8. Living in the city has always bored him.
9. Their decision was accepted after careful deliberation.
10. Don't leave without permission.

Adjective of Purpose

When we use the term "hunting dog" in English, we usually mean a "dog for hunting." Czech has a special adjectival form to express this notion of purpose. They are formed exclusively from the nonpresent stems of imperfective verbs by means of the ending -cí; they are therefore soft adjectives. In most cases they can be obtained by removing the -l- of the perfect participle and adding -cí.

	Stem	Purpose Adjective
Class I:	pře-klád-a	překládací
Class II:	měř-i	měřicí
Class III:	sáz-e	sázecí

Class IV:

No verbs in this class introduced so far form purpose adjectives regularly. Two, however, have irregular formations:

	vis-e	visací
	st-a	stojací

Class V:

Note the -a- between the stem and the ending!

	plet	pletací

The following adjective is irregular:

	čt	čtecí

Class VI:

Note the -a- between the stem and the ending!

	tisk	tiskací
Class VII:	fotograf-ov-a	fotografovací
Class VIII:	my	mycí
Class IX:	ps-a	psací

This is another area where the student will have to learn gradually which purpose adjectives can be legitimately formed and which have gained wide acceptance in the language. As the student can see from the following examples, many such adjectives produce technical terms.

čtec[illegible]da (reading method)	pletací drát (knitting needle)
fotografovací aparát (camera)	počítací stroj (computer)
krycí barva (priming coat)	psací stroj (typewriter)
mycí stůl (washing table)	stojací lampa (floor lamp)
oznamovací způsob (indicative mood)	srovnávací studium (comparative study)

Resultative Adjectives

Czech makes rather extensive use of attributive adjectives formed from perfect participles from intransitive verbs. The meaning of such adjectives is generally that of a state resulting from the action. This meaning is very clear in the case of perfective verbs, but it is obscured in the case of imperfective verbs. Examine the following such adjectives formed from perfective and imperfective verbs.

Perfective	Imperfective
minulý (past)	jedlý (edible)
padlý (fallen)	rodilý (native)
sešlý (worn out)	rostlý (grown)
spadlý (fallen)	smělý (audacious)
vzniklý (arisen)	trvalý (lasting)
zhublý (emaciated)	umělý (artificial)
zmrzlý (frozen)	znalý (informed)
ztloustlý (plump)	znělý (voiced)

DIALOGUE

V dnešních novinách se píše, že v Československu je v posledních dnech neobyčejně špatné počasí. Bouře, déšt', vítr a na horách už dokonce i první sníh. Na jihu prý pršelo tolik, že některé řeky vystoupily z břehů. Zvláště těžké byly škody způsobené deštěm na jižní Moravě. Záplavy jsou také hlášeny z několika míst na Slovensku. V Bratislavě byl kvůli několik hodin trvajícímu prudkému dešti zastaven všechen provoz na ulicích. Mnoha lidem jedoucím autem musela být poskytnuta pomoc. Protože je teprve začátek října, nikdo nebyl na tak nepříznivé počasí připraven. Přitom prý to není to poslední překvapení, které počasí lidem v Československu přichystalo. Očekává se, že ještě před koncem týdne bude republika zasažena řadou dalších bouří. Soudě podle všech známek, bude prý letos dlouhá a studená zima.

It says in today's newspaper that lately there's been unusually bad weather in Czechoslovakia. Storms, rain, wind, and in the mountains already even the first snow. In the south, they say, it rained so much that some rivers overflowed. Particularly heavy was the damage caused by the rain in southern Moravia. Floods have also been reported from several places in Slovakia. In Bratislava on account of the violent rain storm lasting for several hours, all traffic on the streets was halted. Assistance had to be given to many drivers. Since it is only the beginning of October, no one was prepared for such inclement weather. At the same time, they say, this is not the last surprise that the weather has prepared for the people in Czechoslovakia. It is expected that even before the end of the week the republic will be hit by a series of other storms. Judging by all indications, this year there will allegedly be a long and cold winter.

* * *

Vzpomínáte si ještě, jak vypadaly byty, v kterých jste v minulosti bydlel? Kdyby vás o to někdo požádal, dovedl byste je popsat? Třeba nábytek z toho bytu ve Spálené ulici. Kde stály jednotlivé kusy? Stůl, židle, postele, lampa? Na které stěně visel ten obraz, na kterém byl namalován pár bílých koní? Vzpomínáte si také na ten šálek nevypitého studeného čaje, stojící v pokoji na stole po matčině odchodu o vánocích před deseti léty? Nebo na ty dvě gramofonové desky s Janáčkovým *Zápisníkem zmizelého*, které se ztratily ten první den kdy byly koupeny a pak se asi za rok našly mezi Klářinými knihami?

A co ty staré hrací hodiny, které už jsou dávno prodány a které byly každému v cestě at' stály kdekoli? Nepřejete si, abyste je ještě jednou mohl slyšet hrát? Víte ještě kudy se šlo do koupelny? Směrem z kuchyně, byly to druhé dveře nalevo nebo napravo?

Jednou na konci léta (bylo to léto jiné než ostatní nebo stejné jako ostatní?) jste se neočekávaně vrátil domů v pátek v poledne. V kuchyni byla mísa čerstvě umytého ovoce, které vonělo. Jablka, hrušky a švestky. Po tom dnu nezůstalo nic jiného, než právě tahle vzpomínka a ta vás vrací do kdysi známého a dnes skoro zapomenutého bytu. Co se s tím bytem stalo potom, co jste odešel? Chtěl byste vidět, jak vypadá ted' v přítomnosti? Nebo vás to nezájímá? Bud'te upřímný. Nejste aspoň trochu zvědav? Řekněte mi proč má minulost nad námi takovou moc? Proto, že věci spolu prostě souvisejí nebo proto, že na ní jaksi příliš závisíme?

Do you still recall how the apartments looked in which you have lived in the past? If someone were to ask you, would you be able to describe them? For instance, the furniture in the apartment on Spálená Street. Where did the individual pieces stand? The table, the chairs, the beds, the lamp? On which wall was that picture hanging, the one in which a couple of white horses were painted? Do you also recall that cup of untouched cold tea standing on the table in the living room after mother's departure at Christmas time ten years ago? Or those two records of Janáček's *Notebook of the Man Who Disappeared* which were lost the day they were bought and then after about a year were found among Klára's books?

And how about that old musical clock which has long since been sold and which was in everyone's way no matter where it stood? Don't you wish you could hear it play once again? Do you still know the way to the bathroom? Going from the kitchen was it the second door on the left or on the right?

One day at the end of summer (was that summer different from the others or just like the others?) you returned home unexpectedly on a Friday afternoon. In the kitchen there was a bowl of freshly washed fruit, that smelled wonderful. Apples, pears, and plums. Nothing else remains of that day except just this remembrance, and that returns you to that once familiar and today almost forgotten apartment. What happened to that apartment after you left? Would you like to see how it looks now at the present time? Or doesn't that interest you? Be honest. Aren't you at least a bit curious? Tell me, why does the past have such a power over us? Because things are simply interrelated or because we somehow depend on it too much?

* * *

Pane doktore, pacient z jednadvacítky se konečně začíná cítit lépe.	Doctor, the patient in Room 21 is finally beginning to feel better.
Který? Ten malý tlustý, který byl poražen svým vlastním vozem?	Which one? That short fat one who was knocked down by his own car?
Ano, ten. Byl přijat v úterý a za celé ty tři dny, co je zde neřekl ani jediné slovo. Dnes ráno poprvé promluvil.	Yes, that one. He was admitted on Tuesday and all the three days he has been here, he hasn't said a single word. This morning for the first time he said something.
Co říkal?	What did he say?
Že se ještě nikdy tak špatně necítil.	That he never felt so bad.

* * *

Už jste dostali oznámení o tom, kdy bude přijímací zkouška do češtiny?	Have you already go the announcement about the time of the entrance examination for Czech?
Ne, nikdo z nás ještě nic nedostal.	No, not one of us has got it yet.
Jak to? Mně to už dávno oznámili. Lépe řečeno, já jsem dostal včerejší poštou psaní, v kterém se říká, že to bude ve středu. Ostatně, tadyhle je mám. Stojí v něm doslova: "Přijímací zkouška do letošního kursu češtiny se bude konat ve středu 5. října v budově Filosofické fakulty na Karlově náměstí v jednu hodinu odpoledne. Všichni studenti vykonavší zkoušku, budou výsledku uvědoměni do tří dnů." Co tomu říkáte?	How come? I was notified a long time ago. Rather, I got a letter in yesterday's mail in which it said that it would be on Wednesday. After all, I've got it right here. It says here literally: "The entrance examination for this year's course in Czech will take place on Wednesday, the 5th of October in the building of the College of Liberal Arts in Charles Square at one o'clock in the afternoon. All students who take the examination will be notified of the results within three days." What do you say to that?
Jsme samozřejmě překvapeni. Že by na nás na fakultě zapomněli? Moc bych se tomy divil. Dali jsme jim přece všichni adresy už nejméně před týdnem, když jsme jim tam nechávali přihlášky na tu zkoušku. Ledaže je ovšem někdo někde v kanceláři ztratil. Ale to je dost nepravděpodobné. Jak to, že neztratili také tvoji adresu? Byli jsme tam přece všichni najednou.	We are naturally surprised. Wouldn't it be possible that they forgot about us at the College? I would be greatly surprised at that. After all we all gave them our addresses at least a week ago when we left the applications for the examination there for them. Unless, of course, someone has lost them somewhere in the office. But that's rather improbable. How come they didn't lose

Nehledě k tomu, že si naši adresu mohou lehce najít i v jiných pramenech. Sám jsem svou adresu napsal krásnými tiskacími písmeny asi na tři další přihlášky. Už vidím, že se nedá nic dělat; budeme je muset na fakultě navštívit a zjistit si, o co vlastně jde. Navrhuji, aby se šlo hned. Zdržování by mohlo mít za následek trvalou škodu. Kvůli nějakému nedorozumění by nás nakonec nemuseli do toho kursu přijmout.	your address too? After all, we were all there together. Disregarding the fact that they can easily find our address in other sources too. I myself wrote my address in beautiful capital letters on about three other applications. I can already see that it can't be helped; we'll have to see them at the College and find out what's going on. I suggest that we go immediately. A delay could result in permanent damage. As a result of some misunderstanding they might not accept us in that course.

* * *

Co bys řekl, kdybys ode mne slyšel třeba takovéhle vypravování?	What would you say if you were to hear just such a story from me?
"Zaklepal na dveře. Pak zaklepal ještě jednou. Po třetím zaklepání, když se konečně ozvala, otevřel dveře a vešel do pokoje. Viděl ji, jak sedíc u otevřeného okna, četla. Lehce kašlaje, zavřel okno a obrátiv se k ní řekl:	"He knocked on the door. Then he knocked once again. After the third attempt when she finally responded, he opened the door and entered the room. He saw her reading as she was sitting by an open window. Coughing slightly, he closed the window and, having turned to her, he said:
Když potřebuješ peníze, jsi na mne milá a laskavá.	When you need money, you're nice and kind to me.
Ale já jsem na tebe vždycky milá a laskavá, odpověděla, lhouc trochu.	But I'm always nice and kind to you, she replied, lying a bit.
O to právě jde, řekl, aniž uvažoval."	But that's the whole point, he said, without reflection."
Co bych řekl? Řekl bych, že jsi právě studoval české přechodníky a že mi chceš dokázat, že je znáš a že je pokládáš při nejmenším za zajímavé.	What would I say? I'd say that you've just been studying Czech participles and that you want to prove to me that you know them and that you at least consider them interesting.
Máš celkem pravdu. Právě čtu jeden román napsaný v minulém století, a ten je přechodníků plný. Na každé stránce je jich několik. Dodává to jazyku té knihy zvláštní charakter.	On the whole you are right. I've just been reading a novel written in the last century, and it is full of participles. There are several of them on every page. This gives the language of the book a

Poněvadž mě jazyk literárních děl vždycky zajímal, trochu jsem se těmi přechodníky dnes odpoledne zabýval. Ale ne hluboce, jen jsem si zjišťoval, jak se tvoří. Mohu ti ten román, mimochodem, doporučit. Je to docela dobré čtení, nemluvě o tom, že se přes všechny ty přechodníky a jiné literární formy velmi lehce čte. Nechceš si jej půjčit, než jej vrátím do knihovny?

peculiar character. Since I've always been interested in the language of literary works, I was working with these participles a little this afternoon. But not in depth. I was only trying to find out how they are formed. Incidently, I can recommend that novel to you. It's quite good reading to say nothing of the fact that it reads very easily in spite of all those participles and other literary forms. Don't you want to borrow it before I return it to the library?

READING SELECTION

Nedávno vyšel na Slovensku román Jak chutná moc. Byl očekáván s velkým zájmem, protože některé jeho části byly už předtím tištěny v novinách a měly opravdový úspěch. Když vyšel jako kniha, mnozí lidé říkali, že čekání na něj nebylo marné. Všude byl přijímán se slovy chvály: je prý dobrý nejen jako literatura, ale také jako obraz dnešního člověka a přítomnosti vůbec. Po tak příznivém přijetí byl přirozeně velmi čten. V prvních čtyřech týdnech po jeho vyjití bylo prodáno asi pět tisíc kusů. Kromě toho byl brzo přeložen do češtiny. A krátce potom se objevil i anglický překlad. Očekává se, že se bude překládat také do jiných cizích jazyků.

Hlavním tématem románu Jak chutná moc je otázka moci a jejího vlivu na charakter člověka. Moc je v něm ukazována jako síla, která nutně dělá člověka slabým, jestliže není používána rozumně. To znamená hlavně, není-li přizpůsobena jiným hodnotám, které jí dávají smysl. Je-li sama sobě důvodem, moc nakonec poráží i tu nejsilnější vůli a ten nejopravdovější charakter. Aby člověk, který má moc, dovedl něco užitečného vykonat, musí se naučit na ní nezáviset. Jak bylo někde chytře napsáno: moc chutná moc, jde o to, aby na ni lidé přestali mít chuť dřív, než je jim dána.

* * *

Otvírám okno a vidím před sebou zahrádku plnou stromů s ovocem. Modrající se švestky, červenající se jablka, zelenající se hrušky. Něco silně a příjemně voní. Snad vlhká tráva. Ano ovšem, to musí být vonící tráva. Před chvílí trochu pršelo. Vypadalo to jako že bude bouře, ale nakonec byl ze všeho jen mírný déšť. Zahrádka ještě nese známky toho právě se skončivšího deště -- na keřích, na trávě, na kamenech, všude zůstalo trochu vody. Pod stromy leží několik spadlých listů. Také na nich je voda. A soudě podle nebe, brzo přijde další déšť. Vítr, hrající si s vlasy přes ulici jdoucího děvčete, nikdy nepřestal a je naopak silnější než předtím. Co nebylo, může být. Nechci být pesimista, ale řekl bych, že dnes ještě uvidíme opravdovou záplavu.

* * *

Letní odpoledne. Park. V parku plno lidí. Na jedné lavičce sedí mladý muž. Vedle něho je volné místo. Je to jediné volné místo v celém parku. Na tom volném místě však leží klobouk. Kolem jde jiný mladý muž. Minuv lavičku, udělá pár kroků, pak se vrátí. Dívaje se trochu nejistě na sedícího mladého muže a na klobouk ležící vedle něho, říká: Promiňte, je to váš klobouk? Ten sedící se ani nehne a nechávaje oči na novinách, které čte, říká krátce a jednoduše: Ne. Pak čte dále. Ten vrátivší se je v rozpacích a nevěda, co by ještě řekl nebo udělal, odchází. Není si totiž nyní jist, co ten klobouk na lavičce znamená. Je to klobouk někým tam zapomenutý? Nebo tam byl položen proto, že ten, komu patří, na chvíli odešel, aby se znovu vrátil na své místo? Jak jde, najednou za sebou slyší někoho běžet. Obrací se a vidí toho samého mladého muže, který byl před okamžikem tak zaujat svými novinami. Slyší, jak na něho volá: Prosím vás, nezlobte se, já jsem si právě něco uvědomil. Já jsem si uvědomil, že jste si asi chtěl ke mně sednout na tu lavičku tamhle (ukazuje rukou) a že jste to neudělal kvůli mému klobouku.

Dovolte, abych vám všechno vysvětlil. Já nenosím klobouky, proto žadný nemám. Dnes se však nedalo nic dělat, musel jsem si jeden půjčit, kvůli slunci (ukazuje k nebi na pálící slunce). Bohužel si na ten půjčený klobouk nemohu zvyknout; necítím se v něm dobře. Proto jsem jej položil vedle sebe, když jsem tamhle seděl. A když jste se mne ptal, jestli ten klobouk patří mně, byl jsem tak zaujat čtením, že jsem si v první chvíli neuvědomil, že říkaje pravdu mohu způsobit zmatek. Ten klobouk neměl žádný zvláštní smysl. Jestliže byl známkou něčeho, pak toho, že někdy nedávám pozor na to, co se kolem mne děje. Chcete-li, vrat'me se. To místo je ovšem volné.

Oba mladí mužové se smějí, potom se obracejí a jdou zpátky směrem k lavičce. Ale co vidí? Na lavičce sedí dvě starší tlustší paní v živém rozhovoru. Je jasné, že na tu lavičku se už nikdo jiný nevejde.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Everyone can easily cope with Czech adverbial participles. 2. I suggest that we meet once every two weeks (Use za + Acc. but omit "every"). 3. Have you heard that the closing of additional libraries is being considered? They say because of lack of money. 4. Should somebody knock on the door, don't open (it). 5. We'd like (Use prát si) you to stay here with us at least until Christmas. 6. Your case is different from (Use než) his. 7. In each century at least one bad novel was written. 8. Describe (pl.) her to me a bit more carefully. 9. If I were you (Use the infinitive), I wouldn't expect any help from them. 10. Put the bowl on the floor if you have to (Use třeba). 11. Jiří's departure was the result of not one, but a whole series of misunderstandings. 12. How (Use kudy) does one actually go there? 13. Has

that question been put (Use položit) properly? 14. At one time he was recommending that I become a teacher. 15. The noise coming (Use ozývat se) from the hall was increasing. 16. The voice that came (Use ozvat se in the participial form) from the telephone sounded strange. 17. Has Václav already passed the entrance examination we (Use the impersonal reflexive) talked about here a week ago? 18. Her silence (verbal noun!) seems to me to be a sign of hesitation. 19. They left without examining everything. 20. Applications will be accepted (Imperfective) only after the holidays. 21. During (Use za + Acc.) yesterday's storm great damage (Use pl.) was caused in several cities in southern Bohemia. 22. Don't ask too much; you might get an answer. 23. Everything changed after Marie found permanent work for herself in Prague. 24. I wouldn't be honest if I didn't mention his drinking to you. 25. They came on horseback (horses), sleepless (Use nevyspalý) and tired. 26. He didn't consider her perfect but he knew that she had character. 27. Do you know how to make also the remaining forms of this unusual (Use zvláštní) word? 28. She was somewhat unwilling (Use nerada) to meddle in their conversations. 29. Judging by his actions, I'd have to be very much mistaken if he didn't give us any help. 30. Get ready (pl.); in a moment everybody (Use impersonal reflexive) is leaving. 31. The boy standing behind him was writing something on the wall in (Use Instrumental) large printed letters. 32. What is connected with what? 33. The grass appeared green on both banks. 34. Having got up, he asked her for a cigarette. 35. Since no one else wants to talk, I'll have to deliver the speech myself. 36. It shouldn't (Use mít in the conditional) last long unless of course some unexpected difficulties turn up. 37. He fell and knocked me down at the same time. 38. To (Use k) her surprise two more girls got out of the car. 39. Is it likely that there would be floods at this time in Slovakia? 40. This year there's far more snow in the mountains than last year. 41. The shorter the letter will be, the more favorable impression it will make. 42. Were (Use už) you also at the College of Arts and Sciences? 43. The whole city met in the square. 44. I'm telling you that it's pointless, regardless of the fact that it doesn't matter. 45. You shouldn't be constantly preoccupied with what has happened in the past; the present is more important. 46. On which record is that composition of Mozart's? 47. Having brought two glasses, she placed them on the table in front of her guests. 48. How many plums and apples will we still need? 49. He said literally nothing. 50. I don't want to take care of her; it's just that she's quite an unpleasant patient. 51. Yesterday's rain wouldn't have been bad if there hadn't also been a wind. 52. Each individual piece of furniture will have to be repaired. 53. In which direction (Instr.) will we actually go? 54. That play today was bad, not to speak of the fact that I didn't at all like the leading (Use hlavní) role. 55. While crying (adverbial participle), she complained to him about the lack of understanding (verbal noun of pochopit).

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Chodíte pravidelně do knihovny?
2. Jaké je naše století?
3. Dělal jste někdy nějakou přijímací zkoušku?
4. Dnešní román.
5. Vánoce.
6. Jíte rád ovoce?
7. Přátelé a pomoc.
8. Nedorozumění a jejich následky.
9. Nábytek ve vašem pokoji.
10. Desky, které si nejraději hrajete.
11. Zápisníky a notýsky na vašem stole.
12. Lidé s charakterem.
13. Popište jednoho ze svých známých.
14. Které knihy můžete doporučit? Proč?
15. Na co z minulosti nikdy nezapomenete?
16. Bouře v horách.
17. Jaký pacient jste?
18. Uvažujete někdy o přítomnosti?
19. Co byste si přál k narozeninám?
20. Ozvete se vždycky, když se vám něco nelíbí?
21. Co očekáváte od sebe a od druhých?
22. Na co byste nebyl připraven, kdyby se to stalo?
23. Pokládáte se za dobrého studenta češtiny?
24. Naměstí, která vás zaujala.
25. Co byste chtěl navrhnout lidem, kteří se pořád otravují?

LESSON XVII

VOCABULARY

autor (m)	author
autorka (f) (Gen. pl. autorek)	authoress
běžet o + Acc. (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to be a question of
běžný	usual, customary
blýskat se (I,i) (See zablýsknout se) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to be lightning
být do smíchu (+ Dat.) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to feel like laughing
být s to + Infinitive	to be able
čtenář (m)	reader
čtenářka (f)	reader
čtvrtletí (n)	quarter (of a year)
dar (m) (Loc. sg. -u)	gift
dařit se[1] (II,i) (See podařit se)	to be getting on, to succeed in something or in doing something
dávat se/dát se	to turn, make a turn
dialog (m)	dialogue
dík (m) (Used in sg. or pl.)	a word of thanks, thanks
doprava (f)	transport, transportation; traffic
foukat (I,i) (See zafoukat)(Personal and impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to blow
hodit se (II,i) (k + Dat.)	to be suitable
hodit se (+ Dat.)	to suit
hořet (IV,i)	to burn, be on fire
hřmět (IV,i)/hřmít (II,i)[2] (See zahřmět/zahřmít) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to thunder
jenže (conj.)	only

knížka (f) (Gen. pl. knížek)	book, small book
konec konců (adv.)	after all, in the long run
led (m)	ice
lít[3] (VIII,i) (Personal and impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to pour (liquids)
líto[4] (Impersonal Predicate Adjective) (See Grammar Analysis)	sorry
litovat (VII,i) (+ Gen.)	to be sorry
lze[5] (adv.) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	it is possible
Markéta	Margaret
mimo + Acc.	past, by; except, in addition to, outside
mráz/mraz- (m) (Used in pl. also)	frost
mrazit (II,i)	to chill
nadšení (n)	enthusiasm
nadšený (+ Instr.)	enthusiastic (about)
název/nazv- (m) (Loc. sg. -u)	name, title
nechávat/ nechat + Gen.	to leave off doing something, drop something
několikrát (adv.)	several times
nelze[5] (adv.) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	it is impossible
nemocnice (f)	hospital
není zač	don't mention it
noční	night (adj.)
oblíbený	popular, favorite
odkládat (I,i) (See odložit)	to put off, postpone, take off (clothes)
odložit (II,p) (See odkládat)	to put off, postpone, take off (clothes)
odvážet (III,i) (See odvézt)	to take/carry away, take to a place
odvézt (Va,p) (See odvážet)	to take/carry away, take to a place
operace (f)	operation
osobní	personal
Ostrava	city in Moravia
pěšky (adv.)	on foot
pilný	hard-working, diligent

počátek/počátk- (m)	**beginning**
počet/počt- (m) (Loc. sg. -u)	**number (quantity)**
podařit se[1] (II,p) (See dařit se)	**to succeed in something or in doing something**
pomník (m)	**monument, memorial**
poprchávat (I,i) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	**to drizzle**
poradit (II,p) (někomu něco/aby)(See radit)	**to advise**
poschodí (n)	**floor, story**
pouhý	**mere, bare**
pouze (adv.)	**merely**
prach (m)	**dust, powder**
především (adv.)	**above all**
předpokládat (I,i)	**to anticipate, assume**
přestože (conj.)	**though, although**
přestoupit (II,p) (z něčeho do něčeho) (See přestupovat)	**to change (train, bus)**
přestupovat (VII,i) (z něčeho do něčeho) (See přestoupit)	**to change (train, bus)**
psychologie (f)	**psychology**
radit (II,i) (někomu něco/aby)(See poradit)	**to advise**
radost	
mít radost z + Gen.	**to be pleased by**
rukavice (f) (Gen. pl. rukavic)	**glove**
setmět se (IV,p)/setmít se (II,p)[2] (See stmívat se) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	**to grow dark**
silnice (f) (Gen. pl. silnic)	**road, highway**
služba (f) (Gen. pl. služeb)	**service**
souhlasit (II,i) (s + Instr.)	**to agree (with)**
spolubydlící (m/f)	**roommate**
srdečný	**cordial, hearty**
stanice (f) (Gen. pl. stanic)	**stop, station**
stát za to	**to be worth it**

stmívat se (I,i) (See setmět se/ setmít se) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to grow dark
svazek/svazk- (m)	volume, bunch, bond
svítat (I,i) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to dawn
též (adv.)	also
tramvaj (f) (Nom./Acc.pl. -e, Dat. pl. -ím, Instr.pl. -emi, Loc. pl. -ích)	street car
trpělivý	patient (adj.)
uprostřed (prep./adv.) (+ Gen.)	in the middle of
ve dne v noci (adv.)	day and night
věnovat (VII,i) (někomu něco)	to present, donate
věnovat se něčemu	to devote one's self (to)
věnovat pozornost + Dat.	to pay attention (to)
vrstva (f) (Gen.pl. vrstev)	layer, stratum
vzdálený (od + Gen.)	distant (from)
vstah (m)	relation, relationship
vždyt' (adv.)	well, to be sure, it should be noted
zablýsknout se (VI,p) (See blýskat se) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to be a flash of lightning
zafoukat (I,p) (See foukat) (Personal and Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to blow
zahřmět (IV,p)/zahřmít (II,p)[2] (See hřmět/hřmít) (Impersonal, see Grammar Analysis)	to thunder
zásoba (f)	reserve, store, supply
zbýt (Va,p) (Like být) (See zbývat)	to be left, remain
zbývat (I,i) (See zbýt)	to be left, remain
zdejší	of this place, local
značný	considerable, substantial
zůstat viset	to get stuck, stranded

1 This verb may be used both personally and impersonally. The person involved in the action is expressed in the dative case.

Jak se vám daří?
(How are you getting along?)

Karlovi se zase daří špatně.
(Karel is doing poorly again.)

Ještě se nám to nepodařilo najít.
(We still haven't succeeded in finding it.)

Nic se mu nedaří.
(He's not successful in anything.)

2 The infinitives may be either hřmět/setmět se or hřmít/setmít se, the perfect participles are only hřmělo/setmělo se.

3 This verb may have the root-vowel -e- in the present- tense forms:

Present: liji/leji, liješ/leješ, etc.

Imperative: lij/lej, etc.

Pres. Act. Part.: lije/leje, lijíc/lejíc, etc.

4 The person affected by the emotion expressed in this adjective appears in the dative case. The object of the emotion is in the genitive case.

Je mi jí líto
(I am sorry for her.)

Mileně bylo líto všech těch ubohých dětí.
(Milena felt sorry for all those poor children.)

Nebude vám líto toho, že se s nimi už neuvidíte?
(Won't you be sorry that you won't see them anymore?)

5 Neither of these two predicate elements takes je in the present tense, but they do take bude and bylo in the future and past. Note also that nelze is used only in the present; the negative forms for future and past are nebude lze and nebylo lze. Both expressions are followed by infinitive phrases, but they do not take personal nouns or pronouns in the dative case.

Lze to vidět.

Nelze to vidět.

Nebylo lze to vidět.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Impersonal Sentences

Impersonal sentences contain no expressed subject, only a predicate consisting always of a verb and possibly other parts of speech like adjectives, adverbs, and nouns. In Lesson XIV we already encountered some impersonal sentences whose predicates contained reflexive verbs. In this lesson we shall introduce you systematically to all types of impersonal sentences. The classification of impersonal sentences we will follow in the discussion will be based on the principal part of the predicate, the verb. There will be two large groups: one for all verbs except být, the other exclusively for the verb být. In all cases impersonal sentences have arisen in languages either because speakers find it difficult to assign a subject to a given action or because they feel no need to assign it a subject. In most cases you will see that English has exact counterparts to Czech impersonal sentences. The only difference lies in the fact that English uses the impersonal subject pronoun "it," as in: "It is snowing." "It hurts in my left leg." "It is difficult for me to understand." "It depends on what you want." etc.

Verbal Predicates Excluding být

We want to split impersonal sentences with this kind of predicate into two parts, into nonreflexive verbs and reflexive verbs, because reflexive verbs have some special applications. Both the nonreflexive and reflexive verbs may, however, refer to the usual semantic areas giving rise to impersonal sentences: natural phenomena, perceptual phenomena, mental and physical states, and a few other situations.

Verbal Predicates Excluding být (Nonreflexive verbs)

We list below all verbs from the vocabularies that may be used impersonally and an illustrative sentence for each verb. In most cases the agreement between English and Czech is perfect.

běžet o + Acc.
foukat/zafoukat
hořet
hřmít/zahřmít
jít o + Acc.
lít
mrazit
poprchávat
pršet
sněžit
svítat
záležet na + Loc.

Běželo o všechno.
(Everything was at stake.)

Dnes odpoledne už zase fouká.
(It's blowing again this afternoon.)

Kde hoří?
(Where's the fire?)

Slyšela, jak hřmí.
(She heard it thundering.)

O nic jiného tady nejde.
(It isn't a question here of anything else.)

Venku leje.
(It's pouring outside.)

Mrazilo ji a nemohla spát.
(She was chilled and couldn't sleep.)

Od rána poprchává.
(It's been drizzling since morning.)

Pršelo dva dny a dvě noci.
(It rained for two days and two nights.)

Bude zítra sněžit?
(Will it snow tomorrow?)

Když jsme vstávali, ještě nesvítalo.
(When we got up, it still wasn't light out.)

Záleží na tom, co chcete.
(It depends on what you want.)

Verbal Predicates Excluding *být* (Reflexive verbs)

Reflexive verbs appearing in impersonal sentences fall easily into three natural categories. *The first of these* embraces reflexive verbs used exactly as nonreflexive verbs above, that is, to refer to natural and perceptual phenomena, mental and physical states, etc. Only three such verbs have appeared so far in the vocabularies:

blýskat se dařit se stmívat se

Blýská se, bude asi bouře.
(It's lightening, perhaps there will be a storm.)

Po dlouhé době se mu zase dobře daří.
(After a long time things are going well for him again.)

Pomalu se stmívalo.
(It was slowly growing dark.)

The second category of reflexive verbs used impersonally has already been discussed in Lesson XIV, and, as you will recall, such verbs state merely that a given action is going on in a given situation with no reference to a possible subject. Since English does not have a similar grammatical device, such Czech sentences will usually have a generalized indefinite subject like "one," "they," or "we" in English translations.

Only verbs that can be used easily and naturally without a direct object can form such impersonal reflexives. Several different kinds of verbs are therefore eligible: absolutely intransitive verbs like bydlet and odpočívat; essentially intransitive verbs that may be used transitively with a few nouns like pít and psát; intransitive verbs that take an object in a case other than the accusative like rozumět and šetřit; and essentially transitive verbs that may be readily used intransitively like upozorňovat + na + Acc. and prosit + o + Acc. A list of the verbs from your vocabularies that can be easily used in this type of impersonal sentence follows. The perfective counterparts of these verbs may also be used impersonally, but they are uncommon.

běhat
běžet
bydlet
čekat
fotografovat
hovořit
hrát
chodit
jet
jezdit
jíst
jít
kouřit
létat
letět
malovat
mlčet
mluvit
obědvat
odcházet
odpočívat

pít
platit
pracovat
prosit o + Acc.
přicházet
psát
rozumět
snídat
spát
studovat
svítit
šetřit
upozorňovat na + Acc.
uvažovat o + Acc.
věřit
vcházet
vstávat
vycházet
zpívat
zůstávat
žádat o + Acc.

Study the additional examples of this type of impersonal reflexive verbs that appear below.

V moderních domech se přirozeně dobře bydlí.
(One naturally lives well in modern houses.)

V novinách se o tom mlčet nebude.
(They won't be silent about that in the newspapers.)

V téhle knize se upozorňuje ještě na jeden případ.
(In this book attention is called to one other case.)

Po namáhavé práci se příjemně odpočívá.
(One rests pleasantly after strenuous work.)

Uvažuje se také o jiných možnostech.
(We are considering other possibilities too.)

Žádá se prý o druhé vydání jeho románu.
(They say they are requesting another edition of his novel.)

The third category of reflexive verbs used impersonally is constructed like the preceding category and makes use of practically the same verbs as the preceding category, but sentences containing it differ in one important respect: they must have in addition a personal noun or a pronoun in the dative case referring to someone affected by the action of the verb. In other words, here too the impersonal verb conveys only that some action is taking place, but the noun or pronoun in the dative case adds the information that this person is affected by the action. Only imperfective verbs are used in such sentences, and it is practically mandatory that they contain some adverb of time, place or manner, as in the following sentence.

Spí se mi tu dobře.
(I really get a refreshing sleep here.)

Such sentences seldom have exact English equivalents and can be variously translated into English. Note how this may be done in the illustrative sentences below.

Pod touhle lampou se mi dobře čte.
(It's easy for me to read under this lamp.)

Chce se vám ještě jít do biografu?
(Do you still feel like going to the movies?)

Jak se vám dnes pracuje?
(How is your work going today?)

Nejlépe se mu vždycky píše po večeři.
(He always writes best after supper.)

Jak se vám odpočívá po tak dlouhém dni?
(How do you rest after such a long day?)

Verbs that introduce other sentences like the following:

Říkal, že se o tom dověděl před rokem.

Doporučoval, aby se všichni sešli hned.

may appear to form impersonal reflexives:

Říkalo se, že se o tom dověděl před rokem.

Doporučovalo se, aby se všichni sešli hned.

but the sentences introduced by že and aby are actually the subjects of the verb forms říkalo se and doporučovalo se. These are merely cases of the formation of reflexive verbs from transitive verbs with inanimate direct objects (the subordinate sentences) that happen to be neuter gender. Only imperfective verbs are possible here; their perfective counterparts are past passive participles, as will be explained later in this lesson. For your convenience we have collected verbs of this type in the following list.

dokazovat
doufat
doporučovat
dovolovat
mluvit
myslet
navrhovat
očekávat
odpovídat
oznamovat
povídat
prosit
připomínat
říkat
vypravovat
zabraňovat
zapomínat
zdát se
zdůrazňovat

And here are some more sentences illustrating these pseudo-impersonal sentences.

Očekávalo se, že se nám aspoň některé svazky budou hodit.
(It was expected that at least some volumes would be useful to us.)

Navrhovalo se, aby se schůze po hodině skončila.
(It was suggested that the meeting end in an hour.)

Zdůrazňovalo se, že nic jiného nezbývá.
(It was emphasized that nothing else could be done.)

Nedovolovalo se, aby tam návštěvníci chodili sami.
(It was not allowed that visitors go there alone.)

Myslelo se, že s tím nebudou souhlasit.
(It was thought that they wouldn't agree to that.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the impersonal use of various reflexive and nonreflexive verbs except the verb být.

1. Did you succeed in finding him?
2. I think I'm getting a cold; I'm beginning to feel chills.
3. It depends on whether he gets an apartment on the fifth floor.

4. It's blowing out; I just don't feel like (use chtít se) going for a walk today.
5. We used to rest after lunch every day.
6. It was presumed that it was high time that they agree to that.
7. It was already daybreak when he closed his books and went to bed (Use jít spát).
8. This year in our office they are asking for (Use žádat + o) longer vacations.
9. It was snowing when they took (Use vézt) the patient to the hospital.
10. From Wednesday on we'll be getting up at 6:30 A.M.
11. How is your studying going this quarter (Use v + Loc.)?
12. It's a question of how much time he can devote to his studies.
13. Let's go home; it's thundering and lightening and it's beginning to rain.
14. During the war one economized in everything.
15. I always find it pleasant to lie in the sun.
16. Today I just don't feel like either working or thinking.
17. It was hoped that we could postpone it.
18. We must get ready for the trip back; it's growing dark.
19. People went out into the street through this door.
20. How is life treating you (Use žít)?
21. Attention was being called to the unusual title of the book.
22. People travel comfortably by highways in Czechoslovakia.
23. If there were more light here, one could read better here.
24. First it drizzled, then it poured; we had to postpone our picnic.
25. It's not permitted to walk on this side of the square.

Impersonal Sentences (Predicates Containing the Verb být)

Impersonal sentences containing the verb být may be classified according to the structures accompanying být in the predicate. These structures include almost any part of speech that may be found in sentences after the verb "to be": adjectives, adverbs, nouns, pronouns, infinitives, and past passive participles.

Adjectives after být

Short neuter adjectives (and occasionally adverbs formed from qualitative adjectives) are frequently used to express some state in nature or the environment, some physical or mental state. Most of these words end in -o and, except for the fact that they are used impersonally, can be clearly linked to the short adjectives studied in Lesson XIII. The following is an exhaustive list of such adjectives gleaned from your vocabularies.

blízko
čisto
daleko
dávno
draho
hluboko
hlucho
horko
chladno
jasno
klidno
lacino
lehko
líto
milo
možno
mrtvo
nutno
ošklivo
patrno
prázdno
přirozeno
smutno
snadno
studeno
špinavo
teplo
těžko
ticho
úzko
veselo
vlhko
volno
zajímavo
zbytečno
zřejmo
živo

Some of these words may have the form of adverbs:

dobře
hezky
hrozně
pěkně
příjemně
špatně
trapně
zle

Note also that these same predicate adjectives may appear in their corresponding neuter comparative and superlative forms. Observe that these are exclusively adverbial forms: *blíže*, *chladněji*, *ošklivěji*, *nejtepleji*, *nejveseleji*, *nejlépe*.

Words from the above lists can be used alone in the predicate, or they may be used together with personal dative nouns or pronouns, infinitives, and noun clauses. Each one of these will be illustrated below.

Neuter predicate adjectives or adverbs used alone or along with various adverbs.

Venku je jasno.
(It's clear out.)

V pokoji bylo čisto.
(It was clean in the room.)

Tak horko jako dnes ještě letos nebylo.
(It hasn't been as hot as today so far this year.)

Je zle.
(Things are bad.)

V Praze je nejtepleji v srpnu.
(It's warmest in Prague in August.)

Zítra bude hezky.
(It'll be nice tomorrow.)

Brzo zase bude dobře.
(It'll soon be all right again.)

Celý den bylo ošklivo.
(It was nasty the whole day.)

Neuter predicate adjectives or adverbs used with personal dative forms.

Bylo mi opravdu trapně.
(It was really embarrassing for me.)

Ještě dlouho po matčině odchodu jí bylo úzko.
(She was in anguish still long after her mother's departure.)

Je mi hrozně špatně.
(I feel perfectly lousy.)

Je vám dobře?
(Are you all right?)

Je mu líto Karla.
(He feels sorry for Karel.)

Ještě nikdy mi nebylo hůře.
(I've never been worse.)

Neuter predicate adjectives used with infinitives and with aby clauses. Note carefully that some adjectives may be used with infinitives, some may be used with aby clauses and some may be used with both constructions.

Nebylo ho možno poznat v jeho novém kabátě.
(It wasn't possible to recognize him in his new coat.)

Nebylo možno, abychom vám to dříve poslali.
(It wasn't possible for us to send it to you earlier.)

Bylo příliš chladno něco dělat.
(It was too cold to do anything.)

Bylo příliš chladno, abychom něco dělali.
(It was too cold for us to do anything.)

Není těžko to pochopit.
(It isn't difficult to understand that.)

Je nutno mu pomoci.
(It is necessary to help him.)

Je nutno, abychom mu pomohli.
(It is necessary for us to help him.)

Je lehko/snadno se smát.
(It's easy to laugh.)

Je zbytečno se starat.
(It's pointless to be concerned.)

Je zbytečno, abychom se starali.
(It's pointless for us to be concerned.)

Je dobře chodit každý den na procházku.
(It's good to go for a walk every day.)

Neuter predicate adjectives used with noun clauses. This kind of construction is strictly speaking not impersonal since the following noun clause is the subject.

Je zřejmo, že dnes už nikdo nepřijde.
(It's obvious that no one will come today.)

Bylo mi jasno, že ničemu nerozuměl.
(It was clear to me that he understood nothing.)

Bylo patrno, že nevěděla, kde je.
(It was apparent that she didn't know where she was.)

Je mi smutno, že všichni odešli.
(It saddens me that everyone has left.)

Není přirozeno, že chce, abychom mu poradili?
(Isn't it natural that he wants us to advise him?)

We may find the long form of the neuter predicate adjective in -é (or the comparative or superlative form in -í) used in the latter two cases above, i.e., with the infinitives, with aby forms, and with noun clauses. The use of the long form is to be preferred when the infinitive phrase comes first in the sentence.

Je ovšem jasné, že běží o někoho jiného.
(It's clear, of course, that someone else is involved.)

Šetřit je nutné.
(It is necessary to economize.)

Je milé, že jste přišel.
(It's nice that you have come.)

Předpokládat, že se všechno udělá samo, je lehké.
(It is easy to assume that everything will get done by itself.)

Je zbytečné, abyste tam šel.
(It's pointless for you to go there.)

Je příjemnější dávat než dostávat.
(It's nicer to give than to receive.)

Nejhorší je nespat.
(The worst thing is not to sleep.)

Miscellaneous Parts of Speech after být

There is a wide variety of useful impersonal expressions included here. The key words here may be nouns, adverbs, and prepositional phrases. From the examples below you will see that some of these predicate elements permit other constructions like personal dative forms, infinitives, and aby clauses.

Je vám také zima?
(Are you cold too?)

Nikomu nebylo do smíchu.
(No one felt like laughing.)

Bude třeba, abychom na příští stanici přestoupili.
(It'll be necessary for us to change cars at the next stop.)

Včera bylo pátého října.
(It was the fifth of October yesterday.)

Bylo už po osmé, když odešel.
(It was already after eight when he left.)

Nelze si to ani představit.
(It's impossible even to imagine it.)

Some constructions that involve quantitative expressions may seem to belong here, but they are actually not impersonal. In all these cases the subject is a quantifier that requires a neuter predicate.

Jelo jich tam spoustu.
(A lot of them went there.)

Je na tom trochu pravdy.
(There is a little truth in that.)

Je mu pět let.
(He is five years old.)

Je nás tu více než dost.
(There are more than enough of us here.)

Je jí přes dvacet.
(She is over twenty.)

Infinitives after být

Infinitives of verbs of perception like slyšet, vidět, and cítit may be used after the impersonal form of být. Such constructions always bear the meaning: "It is possible to hear, see, etc." but they may be translated passively into English: "Something can be seen, heard, etc."

Z náměstí je slyšet hudbu.
(One can hear music from the square.)

Je tu cítit kávu.
(There's the smell of coffee here.)

Odtud není dobře vidět.
(We can't see well from here.)

Interrogative-Relative Pronouns and Adverbs after být

These structures are always accompanied by an infinitive phrase and are the counterparts of English sentences like the following: "There is no one to talk to." "There is something to read." "There is no place to sit." Just as in English, the infinitive expresses a purpose for which the person, thing, place, or time is to be used. Note that the case of the pronoun is determined by the infinitive. Study the following sentences carefully.

Není kde sedět.
(There is no place to sit.)

Za války nebylo co jíst.
(There was nothing to eat during the war.)

Nejhorší je, že není komu pomáhat.
(The worst is that there is no one to give help to.)

Je ještě kdy ho zavolat?
(Is there still time to call him?)

When the subject is involved in this kind of sentence, then Czech resorts to clauses of characteristic that we studied in Lesson XV.

Nebyl tam nikdo, kdo by nám pomohl.
(There was no one to help us.)

Bohužel tady není nic, co by fungovalo.
(I'm afraid there's nothing here that works.)

Past Passive Participles after být

Passive sentences formed by means of past passive participles are impersonal in Czech when the verb of the sentence is intransitive, or when it is transitive and is followed by an infinitive phrase. Only perfective past passive participles may be used here. Study the following examples carefully.

Bylo nám opravdu porozuměno?
(Were we really understood?)

Bylo mu tím pomoženo?
(Was he helped by that?)

Všemi jim bylo za jejich trpělivou práci poděkováno.
(They were thanked for their patient work by everyone.)

Bylo jí zabráněno na té schůzi mluvit.
(She was prevented from speaking at that meeting.)

Později vám bude ukázáno, jak to zavřít.
(Later you'll be shown how to close it.)

A somewhat restricted impersonal use of past passive participles is found among a few verbs like otevřít, uklidit, umýt, vyčistit, and zavřít when their action is directed towards some place or location. The place must be stated in the impersonal sentence.

V pokoji nahoře je uklizeno.
(The room upstairs has been tidied up.)

V knihovně je dnes zavřeno.
(The library is closed today.)

V celém domě je umyto.
(The whole house has been washed.)

V drogerii bude zítra zase otevřeno.
(The drugstore will be open again tomorrow.)

This same type of sentence can be made personal by including an appropriate form of the verb mít as follows:

Mám v pokoji nahoře uklizeno.
(I have the room upstairs tidied up.)

V knihovně mají dnes zavřeno.
(They have the library closed today.)

Máme v celém domě umyto.
(We have the whole house washed.)

V drogerii budou mít zítra zase otevřeno.
(They'll have the drugstore open again tomorrow.)

Just as we have seen elsewhere in this lesson, past passive participles have a pseudo-impersonal usage in sentences containing a noun clause or an aby clause that in reality functions as the subject of the participle. Remember that these are the perfective counterparts to the use of the imperfective reflexive verbs with the same subordinate clauses.

Bylo mu řečeno, aby neměl starosti.
(He was told not to worry.)

Bude vám včas oznámeno, kdy se bude zkouška konat.
(You will be informed in time when the exam will take place.)

Po operaci mu nebylo dovoleno, aby kouřil.
(After the operation he wasn't allowed to smoke.)

Bylo dokázáno, že tam tehdy nebyl.
(It was proved that he wasn't there at that time.)

Bylo nám také navrženo, abychom tam poslali svou přihlášku.
(It was also suggested to us that we send our application there.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating all kinds of impersonal sentences using být plus other predicative elements.

1. It's too hot; I'd like to lie under this tree.
2. The whole family feels sad.
3. There were eight of us on the outing.
4. But will there be time to change trains?
5. Don't worry, it's been cleaned there now.
6. We all feel sorry for your mother.
7. He was told to leave the country as soon as possible.
8. It's clear that he won't stop meddling in my affairs.
9. It's easy to say that you don't feel like writing.
10. Is it far from Prague to Ostrava?

11. It would be interesting to read how the author describes that situation.
12. It was dead there; there was nothing to do.
13. It was awkward for me to hear them speak about her.
14. He was over 50 when he wrote his first novel.
15. What can be seen in her face?
16. It was just before Christmas when we were informed that he had disappeared.
17. Do you think that he will be believed?
18. It was always frightfully dirty there.
19. Is there some place to hang my coat?
20. Is it really proper for us to ask about that?
21. It was impossible (Use lze) to trust him.
22. From here we can hear someone knocking on the door.
23. No one was allowed to take part in their dialogue.
24. All the buildings were closed yesterday.
25. Finally I've got my room cleaned up today.
26. We were told that he was mostly (Use většinou) with her.
27. It's nice (Use milo) to meet him again.
28. We were prevented from looking through everything.
29. He was informed that they wouldn't complain about anything.
30. It will be the 23rd of February tomorrow.

The Pronoun to

Our discussion of impersonal sentences leads us naturally to consider the neuter demonstrative and anaphoric (referring back to something previously mentioned) pronoun to, which is widely and variously used in the Czech language. Since it corresponds to the English "that" or "it," you are already familiar with its use to refer to some unspecified entity, some idea, or some circumstance. We recapitulate some of these usages in the sentences below.

To bych neřekl.
(I wouldn't say that.)

To se mi na ní nelíbilo.
(I didn't like that about her).

Věděli to už dávno.
(They knew that long ago.)

To je zajímavé.
(That is interesting.)

Je to kočka.
(It's a cat.)

Tomu nevěř!
(Don't believe it!)

Tomu se nelze divit.
(One shouldn't be puzzled at that.)

Tím přece šetřit nebudeme.
(After all we won't economize in that.)

Na tom nezáleží.
(It doesn't depend on that.)

In some cases the pronoun to seems not to play any syntactic role in the sentence. It refers to a previous statement; and, if it is to be translated, it may be rendered by the parenthetical phrase "that means...."

Podívej se, Karel sedí na zahrádce. To on asi má dovolenou.
(Look, Karel is sitting out in the yard. He must be on vacation.)

Vítr se obrací. To bude brzo pršet.
(The wind is shifting. That means it'll rain soon.)

To as Emphatic Particle

There are several types of sentences where to merely plays the role of an element added to emphasize a given word or phrase, or to add an emotional coloring to the whole sentence. In the first type of sentence we find to used in conjunction with relative-interrogative pronouns. In this case we have a near English equivalent in "What is it that you want?"

Co to máte na hlavě?
(What is it you have on your head?)

Kdo to nahoře zpívá?
(Who's that singing upstairs?)

Víš, kam to vlastně pojedeme?
(Do you know just where it is we're going to go?)

Jak to vypadáš?
(How is it that you look like that?)

To may also be found in a variety of exclamatory sentences where it bears the full emotional force of the sentence.

To leje!
(Is it pouring!

To se budete bavit!)
(You're going to have a great time!)

To jsme se najedli!
(Did we ever have a meal!)

To se bude Milena divit!
(Will Milena be surprised!)

To may be added for emphasis to sentences already containing a to that has a legitimate syntactic function. In such cases the first to in the sentence is the emphatic particle.

To se to zelená.
(My, isn't it green.)

To to bylo dobré.
(My, that was good.)

To jsme si to uvařili.
(Boy, did we cook ourselves a meal.)

To to mrzne.
(Is it ever freezing.)

The Pronouns on/ona/ono/oni

The pronouns on/ona/ono/oni may also be employed as particles with an emotional coloring. In this case they imply a confidential tone directed toward the person spoken to. In addition, we should note that these pronouns meant "that one yonder" at an older stage of the language and this flavor can still be maintained in English translation, as you will see in the sentences below.

On můj spolubydlící chodí spát už v osm.
(And, you know, that roommate of mine goes to bed at eight.)

Ona Jarmila je ještě mladá.
(After all, you know, that Jarmila is still young.)

Neměj starosti, ono se něco najde.
(Don't worry, we'll find something.)

Nechodí tam často, oni ji její příbuzní nemají rádi.
(She doesn't go there often, you know, those relatives of hers don't like her.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences where to or some form of on is used.

1. How can you tolerate that?
2. Well, you know, those people just (Use právě) aren't enthusiastic about my conduct.
3. Boy, what a pleasure to walk today (Use chodí se)!
4. How was it that you answered them?
5. Boy, did we get rid of them (add dobře)!
6. That Karel, you know, didn't pass that exam on Monday.
7. People don't stop coming; that means we're going to have trouble again.
8. That was the mere beginning of that entire affair.
9. Look, it's raining?!
10. What is it that's going on here?

DIALOGUE

Mohl byste mi říci, kde je Spálená ulice? Je tam daleko?	Could you tell me where Spálená Street is? Is it a long way there?
Je mi líto, ale já nevím. Nejsem z Prahy. Přijel jsem sem na krátkou návštěvu z Brna. Sám hledám Karlovu ulici. Chtěl jsem jít na oběd do jedné restaurace, kterou znám, ale tam je dnes zavřeno. Někdo mě poslal do Karlovy ulice, tam prý je víc než pět restaurací, kde se dobře jí. Ted' běží o to, zdali se tam včas dostanu. Mám totiž v půl druhé s někým schůzku.	I'm sorry, but I don't know. I'm not from Prague. I came here from Brno for a short visit. I myself am looking for Karlova Street. I wanted to go for lunch to a restaurant I know, but they're closed today. Someone sent me to Karlova Street; he said that there were more than five restaurants there where one can eat well. Now it's a matter of whether I'll get there on time. You see, I have an appointment with someone at one thirty.
Měl bych být s to vám povědět, jak se do Karlovy ulice jde. V posledních třech dnech jsem tam totiž několikrát byl. Musím si však nejdřív přesně uvědomit, kde jsme. Já také nejsem zdejší, jsem z Ostravy, a také se ještě pořád snažím vyznat se v Praze. Už vím. Podívejte se. Vrat'te se, protože kdybyste šel dále tímhle směrem, šel byste špatně. Na příštím rohu se dejte napravo. Pak jděte pořád stejným směrem až přijdete na malé náměstí s nějakým pomníkem uprostřed. Tam se znovu zeptejte, protože odtud to začíná být trochu složité. Mohl byste také jet tramvají, jsou to pouze čtyři	I should be able to tell you how to get to Karlova Street. After all I've been there several times in the last three days. But first I have to find out exactly where we are. I'm not from around here either; I'm from Ostrava, and I'm still trying to find my way around in Prague. Now I know. Look. Go back because, if you were to go on in this direction, you'd be going the wrong way. At the next corner turn to the right. Then keep on going in the same direction until you come to a small plaza with a statue in the middle. Ask again there because from there on it starts to get a bit complicated. You could also go there by

stanice, ale to by možná zbytečně dlouho trvalo, protože se musí přestupovat. Nejlepší je jít pěšky. Víte co, já půjdu kousek s vámi. Ono se nemůže nic stát, když se trochu projdu.	streetcar. There are only four stops, but that might take unnecessarily long because one has to transfer. It's best to walk. You know what, I'll go a little ways with you. After all, nothing can happen if I take a short walk.
Děkuji vám srdečně. Je to od vás moc hezké.	Thank you very much. It's awfully nice of you.
Není zač. Vždyt' to nic není. Aspoň mi po cestě povíte, jak se vám v Praze líbí nebo nelíbí.	Don't mention it. It's nothing at all. Perhaps you'll tell me on the way whether you like it or not in Prague.

* * *

Jak je ti?	How are you?
Děkuji, není mi zrovna do smíchu, ale daří se mi lépe než včera. Trochu to bolí, když se obracím a občas mě mrazí, ale jinak si nemohu stěžovat. Za daných okolností to snad ani lepší být nemůže. Jsem konec konců teprve třetí den po operaci. Co je nového doma?	Thank you, I'm not quite up to laughing, but I'm doing better than yesterday. It hurts a little when I turn around, and from time to time I feel a chill; but otherwise I can't complain. Under the circumstances it can't possibly be better. After all it's only the third day after the operation. What's new at home?
Celkem se toho málo změnilo. Markéta i já pilně studujeme, protože bude brzo konec čtvrtletí. Tatínka je málo vidět; jak víš, má tenhle měsíc noční službu. Maminka byla smutná, když tě odvezli do nemocnice, ale potom, co tě včera navštívila a co mluvila s tvým doktorem, je zase veselejší. Má v tvém pokoji pečlivě uklizeno a netrpělivě čeká, až se vrátíš. Janovi, Jiřího spolubydlícímu, bylo předevčírem dvacet let, tak byl u nás na večeři a dostal od každého z nás darem knížku. Byl těmi knížkami nadšen a když odcházel, říkal: Oni mě ti lidé tady opravdu mají rádi. Abych nezapomněl, na fakultě mi bylo řečeno, že je nutno, abys jim do tří neděl oznámil, zda	On the whole there's been little change. Both Markéta and I are studying hard because the end of the quarter is coming soon. We see little of father; as you know, he works nights this month. Mother was sad when they took you to the hospital; but, after she visited you yesterday and talked with your doctor, she's more cheerful again. She's got your room all cleaned up and is waiting impatiently for your return. Jan, Jiří's roommate, was twenty the day before yesterday; so he came to supper at our place and got a book from each one of us as a present. He was enthusiastic about the books; and, as he was leaving, he said, Boy, these people here really like me. Lest I forget, I was told at the college that

si chceš odložit zkoušky nebo ne. Nezáleží prý na tom, jestli jim to napíšeš nebo řekneš osobně. Radil bych ti však, abys jim napsal. Je to jistější.	it's necessary for you to notify them whether you want to postpone your examinations or not. It doesn't matter, they said, whether you write to them or tell them in person. I would advise you, however, to write to them. It's safer.
Dík za připomenutí. Budu o tom přemýšlet. Ale někdy jindy, ne dnes. Dnes se mi opravdu nechce. Kromě toho se mi špatně píše. Ráno jsem zkoušel napsat pár vět, ale musel jsem toho brzo nechat. Jsem ještě dost slabý. Jak je venku? Jsem tu na šestém poschodí tak vysoko, že ani nevidím, co se venku děje.	Thanks for reminding me. I'll think it over. But some other time, not today. I really don't feel like it today. Besides I'm not up to writing. In the morning I tried to write a couple of sentences, but I had to drop that soon. I'm still quite weak. What's it like outside? I'm so far up here on the sixth floor that I can't even see what's going on outside.
Raději se neptej. Je tam hrozně. Nic takového už jsem dlouho neviděl. Když svítalo, poprchávalo. Kolem snídaně lilo. Pak přestal dešt' a začalo foukat. Ted' mrzne a trochu sněží. Nedivil bych se, kdyby, než se setmí, také ještě hřmělo a blýskalo se. To víš, brzo bude zima--zbývá už jen několik dní podzimu--a člověk se musí připravit na to, že to nyní s počasím nebude nejlepší. Pamatuješ, jaké byly loni mrazy hned na počátku zimy?	It's better not to ask. It's awful out there. I haven't seen anything like it for a long time. When it was getting light, it drizzled. Around breakfast time it poured. Then the rain stopped, and it started to blow. Now it's getting cold, and it's snowing lightly. I wouldn't be surprised if, before it gets dark, there'll also be thunder and lightning. You know, it'll soon be winter -- there are only a few days of autumn left -- and one must face the fact that from now on we won't have the best weather. Do you remember what those cold spells were like last year right at the beginning of winter?
Mně mráz nevadí. Ale nerad vidím, když ve dne v noci padá sníh. Kvůli dopravě. Každou zimu jsou s tím problémy. Aspoň já je mám. Především, když se na silnicích utvoří led. Loni jsem několikrát zůstal viset na silnici mimo město. A to není legrace.	I don't mind freezing weather. But I hate to see it when the snow falls day and night. On account of traffic. Every winter we have problems with this. At least I have them. Particularly, when ice forms on the highways. Last year I got stuck several times on the highway outside the city. And that's no fun.
To máš pravdu. Bud' proto rád, že jsi tady a že nemusíš v takovém počasí chodit ven. Tady je teplo,	You're right. Be glad that you're here and don't have to go out in that kind of weather. Here it's warm, dry, neat,

sucho, čisto, ticho, příjemně. Co chceš víc?	quiet, pleasant. What more do you want?
Souhlasím. Být v nemocnici, to má opravdu některé dobré stránky. Je tady pěkně a příjemně. Všichni se o tebe starají a pomáhají ti. Ale je tady též často smutno a prázdno, protože jsi tu příliš vzdálen od normálního života, od práce, od běžných zájmů. Zdá se mi, že je lepší být nemocen mezi zdravými než mezi nemocnými.	I agree. Being in a hospital, that really has some advantages. It's nice and pleasant here. Everyone is taking care of you and helping you. But it's also often sad and empty because here you are too far removed from normal life, from work, from everyday activities. It seems to me that it's better to be ill among healthy people than among sick people.

* * *

Je vidět, že jste student psychologie a čtenář románů. Názvy knih, které máte v knihovně, to ukazují. Některé ty věci sám znám a o mnohých autorech jsem aspoň slyšel. Moc zajímavé. Co je tohle? Je to psáno formou dialogu.	It's clear that you are a student of psychology and a reader of novels. The titles of the books in your library show that. I myself know some of these things, and I've at least heard of many of the authors. Very interesting. What's this? It's written in the form of a dialogue.
Tohle? To jsou rozhovory o vztahu mezi psychologií a literaturou. Byly přeloženy z angličtiny. Koupil jsem ten svazek před lety v Praze, a už jsem zapomněl, co v něm vlastně je. Pokud si vzpomínám, četl jsem jej tehdy se značným nadšením. Jak vidíte, v některých částech knihovny nebylo už dlouho ničím hnuto. Na některých knihách leží vrstva prachu. Nemám bohužel na čtení tolik času, kolik bych chtěl.	This? These are conversations about the relationship between psychology and literature. They were translated from English. I bought that volume years ago in Prague, and I've already forgotten exactly what's in it. As far as I recall, I read it at that time with considerable enthusiasm. As you see, in some parts of the library nothing has been touched for a long time. There's a layer of dust lying on some books. Unfortunately, I don't have so much time for reading as I would like.
Se mnou je to stejné. Jsem rád, když mohu čtení věnovat hodinu denně. Přitom počet knih, které bych měl číst, roste. Má knihovna je tak plná, že už není kam co dát.	In my case it's the same. I'm glad if I can devote an hour a day to reading. At the same time the number of books that I ought to read is growing. My library is so full that there's no place to put anything.

Přestože vím, že máte velkou zásobu svých vlastních knih, kdybyste si chtěl půjčit některou z mých, vyberte si co se vám líbí nebo hodí. Mohl bych vám doporučit celou řadu svých oblíbených svazků.	Although I know that you have plenty of your own books, if you wanted to borrow some of mine, pick out what you might like or might be of use to you. I could recommend to you a whole lot of my favorite volumes.
Děkuji. Rád bych, jenže já opravdu nevím, kdy bych se k nim dostal. Snad někdy jindy, až bude jasné, že budu mít spoustu volného času.	Thank you. I'd like to, but I really don't know when I could get to them. Perhaps some other time when it'll be clear that I'll have a lot of free time.

* * *

Právě jsem viděl Jana. Běžel kolem jako by někde hořelo.	I've just seen Jan. He ran by as if there was a fire some place.
Tomu se nelze divit, za dvě minuty mu začíná přednáška.	No wonder, in two minutes his lecture starts.
Jak to víš?	How do you know?
Já jsem sem s ním přijel. A to v jeho novém autě. To se to, člověče, jezdí. Lehce, tiše, pohodlně. Jezdit takovým vozem je opravdová radost.	We came here together. And that was in his new car. Man, what a ride that is! Soft, quiet, comfortable. It's a real pleasure to ride in such a car.
Proč jste mě nevzali s sebou?	Why didn't you invite me along?
Kdo může vědět, že budeš ráno chtít jet na universitu? Obyčejně sem chodíš až kolem poledne. Kromě toho lze předpokládat, že to pro tebe není tak těžké přijít k nám a zeptat se. Bydlíme ve stejném domě. Kdybys chtěl, můžeš s námi jet zpátky.	How could we know that you would want to go to the university in the morning? Usually you don't come here until around noon. Besides it's reasonable to assume that it's not that difficult for you to come to us and ask. We live in the same building. If you wanted, you could go back with us.
Dobře. Já ti dám odpoledne vědět. Nevím totiž, kdy budu se vším hotov. Mám dnes dost práce.	O.K. I'll let you know in the afternoon. It's just that I don't know when I'll be ready with everything. I'll be quite busy today.
Co tamhle leží?	What's that lying over there?
Je to možné, že to je moje rukavice? Ano, ta rukavice patří mně. Děkuji	Is it possible that it's my glove? Yes, that glove belongs to me. Thanks

za upozornění. Určitě bych si byl nevšiml, že jsem ji ztratil. Tak ty říkáš, že jsi měl z Janova vozu radost? To rád slyším.	for calling my attention to it. I certainly wouldn't have noticed that I had lost it. So you're saying that you were delighted with Jan's car? I'm glad to hear that.
Já toho sice o autech moc nevím, ale je jasné, že to není žádný laciný vůz. A opravdu dobře běhá. Už dlouho se mi žádné auto tak nelíbilo.	I don't know much about cars, it's true, but it's clear that that's no cheap car. And it really runs well. I haven't liked any car so much for a long time.
Kolik za ně Jan zaplatil?	How much did Jan pay for it?
To nevím. Zdá se mi, že hodně. Ale nemusí toho litovat. To auto za to stojí.	I don't know. A lot, it seems to me. But he shouldn't begrudge it. That car is worth it.

READING SELECTION

Když jsme ráno vyšli z domu, vypadalo to jako že bude pěkně. Bylo jasno a ne příliš horko. Ted' kolem poledne se však zdá, že by mohlo později pršet. Slunce pálí a je možné, že odpoledne přijde bouře. Začíná trochu foukat a objevují se také jiné známky změny v počasí. Vzduch, který byl ráno čistý a čerstvý, je nyní těžký a vlhký. Chodíme právě ulicemi jednoho starého města na jihu republiky. Jsme tu na návštěvě a prohlížíme si je od jednoho konce k druhému. Protože tady lze vidět četné zajímavé věci, jako budovy, pomníky, a parky, jsme od rána do večera na nohou. Stojíme právě na náměstí v centru města. Protože je tu plno obchodů, je tu živo. Z otevřených dveří jedné restaurace je slyšet hudbu. Mimo nás jde skupina lidí, kteří se na nás zvědavě dívají. Jsou to zřejmě také návštěvníci. Snažíme se rozhodnout, co nyní uděláme. Chtěli bychom jít někam nakupovat. Jde o to kam. Názory na to se však rozcházejí. Ale pozor, začíná poprchávat. To není ani trochu příjemné. Je docela možné, že budeme muset změnit svůj původní plán. Nebudeme přece chodit po městě v dešti. Nepřestane-li brzo pršet a neuvidíme-li všechno, co jsme chtěli vidět, mohli bychom tu zůstat ještě zítra. Vždyt' máme dost času. Stojí za to být trpělivý. V tomhle městě se na každém kroku najde něco zajímavého a nevíme, kdy budeme mít další příležitost se sem vrátit.

* * *

Tak ještě jednou. Je všechno připraveno? Máme všude zavřeno a uklizeno? Nesvítí někde světlo? Co voda v kuchyni a v koupelně? Máš klíče a peníze? Adresy? Panu Hrdinovi jsme řekli, aby se nám staral o poštu. Ví přesně, kdy se vrátíme a kde nás může najít, kdyby se stalo něco neočekávaného. Co to tamhle leží? To je přece ta kniha o horách na Slovensku. Tu si musíme vzít s sebou. Prosímtě, nezapomeň ji tu. Ta se nám totiž bude moc hodit. Ještě tohle: kde se bude vlastně přestupovat? V Ostravě nebo někde jinde? Nejsem s to si to zapamatovat. Co říkáš? Není ti rozumět. V Ostravě. Tak to je v pořádku. Vyznám se na nádraží v Ostravě dost dobře. Nic nám tedy už nechybí? Zdá se, že jsme opravdu udělali všechno, co jsme měli udělat a že je čas myslet na odchod. Je čtvrt na osm. Lze očekávat, že na nádraží budeme nejpozději za dvacet minut. Ono to není daleko. Jinými slovy: nemůžeme přijít pozdě. Ale já bych se i tak příliš nezdržoval. Co kdybychom měli smůlu a zůstali po cestě někde viset. Sám víš, jaké štěstí někdy máme. Tak raději pojď'.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Who is that lady? That's Mrs. Krámská. 2. We have before us several days of patient waiting. 3. Even though he was not well acquainted with her, he felt sorry for her. 4. Both of my roommates had to be taken to the hospital. 5. Doesn't it seem to you that it's thundering? 6. We returned a week (Use o + Acc.) earlier because it was pouring day and night there. 7. I never assumed that all of you would agree with that. 8. Unfortunately, Thursday is not convenient for me; I'm going to the dentist. 9. Which way did you drive back? 10. He began to do better only after three months. 11. Nothing has changed; Markéta constantly feels chills. 12. Do you go on foot or do you prefer (Use raději) to ride? 13. If it were only a question of money, it wouldn't be bad; but, you know, it's a question of how much (Use daleko) more. 14. If I were you (Use infinitive), I wouldn't postpone that operation for long. 15. We got stranded in the middle of the square. 16. We should be there before it gets dark; otherwise we won't see anything. 17. Yesterday it froze again after a long time. 18. If I knew that book were worth (Use stát za) reading (Use perfective), I'd buy it for myself. 19. Take your coat; it's blowing hard (Use silně) out. 20. They received from her as a gift a picture of two black horses. 21. Are you sure we won't have to transfer in Bratislava? 22. She wasn't able (Use být s to) to grasp that there were also other possibilities. 23. You know what, let's take the streetcar; I don't feel like walking anymore. 24. I'm greatly pleased with your success (pl.). 25. Do you still recall the name of the author of that drama? 26. Next quarter I'll be working (Use mít službu) only three times a week.

27. There were several flashes of lightning, and then it began to drizzle. 28. I have in my pocket a mere two crowns. 29. Are you personally acquainted with them (Use the joint reflexive)? 30. I owe you my heartfelt thanks for everything. 31. Would you devote an hour of your time to me? 32. What's that on fire over there on the other bank? 33. This year I have lost two pairs of gloves, and the winter has hardly begun. 34. He didn't begrudge anything, not even the fact that illness prevented him from going out. 35. He's been studying psychology a long time now, but, it seems to me, without great enthusiasm. 36. Is it at all possible (Use lze) to prove that? 37. I advise you to have a talk with them immediately. 38. Dust was lying on all objects in the room; it could be seen (Don't use možno) that no one had straightened things up there for a long time (Use už). 39. On what floor do you live? 40. Is it possible that you've already returned? After all (Use vždyt') you just left a while ago. 41. A distant relative of hers sings in the local opera. 42. Our supply of paper is slowly but surely disappearing. 43. I wouldn't be a bit surprised if you were to find a considerable number of errors in that volume. 44. Although she's intelligent, it is not easy to reach an agreement with her. 45. I can't recall the title of her favorite poem. 46. You'll see that,as soon as the cold spells begin, the traffic on highways will come to a halt (Use zastavit se). 47. Get ready; we're getting off at the next stop. 48. I'm not too enthusiastic about the new monument at the theater. 49. A thick layer of ice formed on the window. 50. His nightly conversations with Pavel cease to amuse me. There's nothing at all interesting in their dialogues. They would do better if they went to bed early. 51. Besides her and Karel no one knows about that. 52. I never said that I'm a reader of novels; it's true I read assiduously (Use pilný), but not this kind of literature. 53. There's the odor of fruit here. 54. First of all (Use především) I have to correct you; their relationship wasn't too deep; I'd say, on the contrary, that they didn't know each other well. 55. That's true. Such misunderstandings are common; but that, after all, isn't the point.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Vaši spolubydlící.
2. Návštěva v nemocnici.
3. Doprava v zimě.
4. Ztrácíte často rukavice nebo jiné věci?
5. Jak se vám právě daří?
6. Čemu se věnujete po práci?
7. Pomníky a budovy ve vašem městě.
8. Zůstal jste někdy viset na silnici?
9. Tramvaje a autobusy v centru města.
10. Chodíte spát, když se stmívá a vstáváte, když svítá?
11. Jste trpělivý?
12. Chodíte rád pěšky?
13. Jste čtenář novin? Čtete je pravidelně?
14. Co byste rád dostal darem?
15. Vadí vám mráz?
16. Kdo jsou vaši oblíbení autoři románů? Proč?
17. Zajímáte se o psychologii?
18. Odkládáte věci, které vám dělají starosti?
19. Jste rád, když vám lidé radí?
20. Čeho je vám v téhle chvíli líto? Z čeho máte radost?
21. Pamatujete si dobře názvy knih a jména lidí?
22. Čím jste ve své práci opravdu nadšen?
23. Na co vám nezbývají peníze?
24. Myslíte, že se vám bude hodit všechno, čemu se učíte?
25. Stojí to za to být vždycky upřímný?

LESSON XVIII

VOCABULARY

aha (interjection)	I see! aha!
Alík (m)	dog's name
bolet (IV,i)(See zabolet)	to ache, hurt, give pain
bolí mě hlava	I have a headache.
bota (f)	shoe, boot
cesta	
být s cesty	to be out of the way
cvičit (II,i)(See vycvičit)	to train, exercise
čelo (n)	forehead, brow; front
v čele něčeho	at the head of
dávat/dát někomu pokoj	to leave someone alone
docházet (III,i)(See dojít)	to go, come to (a place)
dojít (Va,p)(Like jít)(See docházet)	to go, come to (a place)
domnívat se (I,i)	to suppose, assume, be of the opinion
házet (III,i)(See hodit)	to throw, cast
hlídat (I,i)(See ohlídat)	to watch, guard, take care of
hodit (II,p)(See házet)	to throw, cast
hodný	good, kind, nice
chytat (I,i)(See chytit)	to catch, grab
chytit (II,p)(See chytat)	to catch, grab
koleno[1] (n)	knee
král (m)(Nom.pl. králové)	king
královna (f)(Gen.pl. královen)	queen
láska (f)(Gen.pl. lásek)	love, affection, fondness
lézt (Va,i)(See vylézt)	to crawl, creep, climb
lístek/lístk- (m)	ticket, card, slip
mapa (f)	map
maso (n)	meat, flesh
měkký (Comparative: měkčí)	soft
nasadit (II,p)(See nasazovat)	to put (on), mount; plant
nasázet (III,p)(Distributive; see Grammar Analysis)	to plant (one after another)

nasazovat (VII,i)(See nasadit)	to put (on), mount
nenávist (f)	hate, hatred
nikoli (negative adv.)(See ne)	no, not
objednat (I,p)(See objednávat)	to order
objednávat (I,i)(See objednat)	to order
odmítat (I,i)(See odmítnout)	to refuse, reject, decline
odmítnout (VI,p)(See odmítat)	to refuse, reject, decline
ohlídat (I,p)(See hlídat)	to watch, guard, take care of
omlouvat se (I,i)(někomu za něco) (See omluvit se)	to apologize, excuse one's self
omluvit se (II,p)(někomu za něco) (See omlouvat se)	to apologize, excuse one's self
pevný	firm, solid, strong
pohádka (f) (Gen.pl. pohádek)	tale, fairy tale, fable
pokoušet se (III,i)(o něco)(See pokusit se)	to attempt, try, make an effort
pokud (conj.)	as far as, as long as
pokud jde o + Acc.	as far as...is concerned
pokud možno	if possible
pokusit se (II,p)(o něco)(See pokoušet se)	to attempt, try, make an effort
pomocí + Gen.	by means of
posbírat (I,p)(Distributive; see Grammar Analysis)	to collect, gather (one after another)
postupný	gradual
poštovní	mail, post (adjective)
pot (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	sweat, perspiration
pozavírat (I,p)(Distributive; see Grammar Analysis)	to close, shut (one after another)
pozorovat (VII,i)(See zpozorovat)	to watch, observe
prášek/prášk- (m)	powder, pill
prázdniny (f) (plural only)	holidays, vacation
přestěhovat se (VII,p)(See stěhovat se)	to move (change residence)
přibližný	approximate
rovný	straight, even, level, upright
rušit (II,i)	to trouble, bother
sbírat (I,i)(See sebrat)	to collect, gather

sebrat (Vc,p)(See sbírat)	to collect, gather
sever (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	north
seznam (m)	list
schránka (f) (Gen.pl. schránek)	box
schránka na dopisy/poštovní schránka	mail box
skákat[2] (IX/I,i)(See skočit)	to jump, leap
skočit (II,p)(See skákat)	to jump, leap
skočit někam pro něco	to run and fetch something
soused (m) (Nom.pl. sousedé/sousedi)	neighbor
sousedka (f)(Gen.pl. sousedek)	neighbor (feminine)
spadat (I,p)(Distributive; see Grammar Analysis)	to fall down (one after another)
stále (adv.)	all the time
stěhovat se (VII,i)(See přestěhovat se)	to move (change residence)
stín (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	shade, shadow
střední	central, middle, mean
světový	world, world-wide
světová strana	point of the compass
trhat (I,i)	to gather, pick
trvat na + Acc.	to insist on
třást[3] (Va,i)(+ Instr.)(See zatřást)	to shake
tvrdý (Comparative: tvrdší)	hard
umírat (I,i)(See umřít)	to die
umřít[4] (Vb,p)(See umírat)	to die
úmysl (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	intention
určit (II,p)(See určovat)	to determine, establish
určovat (VII,i)(See určit)	to determine, establish
utéci[5] (Va,p)(See utíkat)	to flee, run away
utíkat (I,i)(See utéci)	to flee, run away
utírat (I,i)(See utřít)	to wipe, dry
utřít[4] (Vb,p)(See utírat)	to wipe, dry
včetně + Gen.	including
většina (f)	greater part, majority
vchod (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	entrance, front door
Vltava (f)	the Vltava river (Moldau)

vůči + Dat. (prep.)	towards
vycvičit (II,p)(See cvičit)	to train, exercise
východ (m)	exit, way out; east; sunrise
vylézt (Va,p)(See lézt)	to climb
vyskakat (I,p)(Distributive; see Grammar Analysis)	to jump out (one after another)
výtah (m)	elevator
význam (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	meaning, importance
vzpomínka (f)(Gen.pl. vzpomínek)	memory, recollection, remembrance
vždy (adv.)(See vždycky)	always
zabolet (IV,p)(See bolet)	to ache, hurt, give pain
zahrada (f)	garden, orchard
západ (m)	west, sunset
zařídit (II,p)(See zařizovat)	to arrange, fix, take care of
zařizovat (VII,i)(See zařídit)	to arrange, fix, take care of
zásada (f)	principle
zatřást[3] (Va,p)(+ Instr.)(See třást)	to shake
zavazadlo (n)(Gen.pl. zavazadel)	(piece) of luggage
zelenina (f)	vegetables
zpozorovat (VII,p)(See pozorovat)	to notice, note
zralý	ripe, mature
zvyk (m)	habit

[1] The alternate old dual form kolenou may be used in the genitive and locative plural.

[2] The only imperative forms are skákej, skákejme, skákejte.

[3] The present stem is třes-, and the stem-vowel in the nonpresent stem remains long:

třesu, třeseš, třese, etc.
třásl, třásla, třaslo, etc.

[4] These are verbs like otevřít and zavřít:

umřu, umřeš, umře, etc. utřu, utřeš, utře, etc.
umřel, umřela, umřelo, etc. utřel, utřela, utřelo, etc.

[5] This is a typical Class Va verb where the stem-final consonant is -k:

uteku, utečeš, uteče, utečeme, utečete, utekou
utekl, utekla, uteklo, etc.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Indefinite Pronouns and Adverbs

Czech forms a variety of indefinite pronouns and adverbs by adding prefixes and suffixes to the whole inventory of relative-interrogative pronouns and adverbs: *kdo*, *co*, *jaký*, *který*, *čí*, *jak*, *kde*, *kam*, *odkud*, *kudy*, *kdy*. The whole display of these forms is found on page 404. Refer to this table constantly as you read the following paragraphs.

Indefinite Forms from *ně-* and *-si*

Indefinite pronouns and adverbs formed from the prefix *ně-* and the suffix *-si*: *něco/cosi*, *něčí/čísi*, *někam/kamsi*, *někdy/kdysi*, etc., are the most basic and the most frequent of all the indefinite forms. You have already learned some of these indefinite forms and are aware of the fact that the *ně-* forms are always translated by the corresponding English "some-" or "any-" forms, usually depending on whether they are used in statements (some-) or questions (any-). More precisely, the Czech *ně-* forms refer to some person, thing, or adverbial circumstance that is known to the speaker but cannot be recalled or is merely not mentioned.

The person, thing, or adverbial circumstance referred to by the *-si* forms, on the other hand, is *not known* to the speaker, and this one feature of meaning consistently distinguishes the two sets of indefinite forms. You have already become acquainted with two *-si* forms: *jaksi* and *kdysi*. Review the meanings of these two words in Lesson XVI because of all the forms in both sets these two have the most idiomatic usages. The most general translation for all the *-si* forms is "some-." It is very important to note that the *-si* forms cannot be used in questions. Since these two sets of forms are close in meaning, we provide below contrasting sentences for each pronoun or adverb.

At' to udělá někdo z vašich známých.
(Have someone from among your friends do that for you.)

Kdosi vysoký vešel do pokoje.
(Some tall person entered the room.)

Mluvili o něčem, čemu jsem nerozuměl.
(They were talking about something I didn't understand.)

V jeho očích bylo cosi smutného.
(There was something sad in his eyes.)

Vezmi si nějakou knížku ke čtení.
(Take some book to read.)

Během schůze prý došlo k jakémusi nedorozumění.
(They say that some misunderstanding developed in the course of the meeting.)

Někteří z nich měli peníze, ale ne mnozí.
(Certain among them had money, but not many.)

Poznal se tam také s kterousi studentkou.
(He got acquainted there also with some girl student.)

Budu si muset půjčit něčí auto.
(I'll have to borrow someone's car.)

Jsou tady čísi brejle, ale nevím čí.
(Somebody's glasses are here, but I don't know whose.)

Nějak to uděláme, neboj se.
(We'll do that somehow, never fear.)

Nemohli jsme je jaksi přesvědčit.
(We couldn't convince them somehow or other.)

Zastavme se někde a odpočiňme si.
(Let's stop someplace and rest.)

Četl jsem kdesi, že se stal učitelem.
(Somewhere or other I read that he became a teacher.)

O prázdninách musíme někam jet.
(We have to go somewhere during the vacation.)

Kamsi se přestěhoval; rád bych věděl kam.
(He moved someplace or other; I'd like to know where.)

Odněkud mi napiš; budu se na tvůj dopis těšit.
(Write to me from someplace; I'll look forward to your letter.)

Přijel odkudsi ze střední Moravy.
(He arrived from somewhere or other in central Moravia.)

Někudy se tam dostaneme.
(We'll get there by some route.)

Chodili k němu kudysi, ale zapomněl jsem už kudy.
(They used to go to his place by some route or other, but I've forgotten which.)

Byl jste někdy v Praze?
(Were you ever in Prague?)

Kdysi prý tam stál nějaký dům.
(They say some house stood there at one time.)

Indefinite Forms from -koli(v)

You have already seen one example of this type in kdykoli, "whenever." These forms are used when the speaker is indifferent as to who or what or how or when, etc.; and, therefore, they correspond to the English "any- at all"

or "-ever." The alternative suffix -koliv is frequently used before a following vowel.

Zeptej se kohokoli; řekne ti to samé.
(Ask anybody at all; he'll tell you the same thing.)

Kamkoli se podíváte, není vidět nic než sníh.
(Wherever you look, there's nothing to be seen but snow.)

Udělej to jakkoli; jen když to skončíš.
(Do it any old way; just get it done.)

Náš dům je vidět odkudkoli.
(Our house can be seen from any direction.)

Dej mi jakoukoli velkou knihu; já si chci na ní jen sednout.
(Give me any kind of large book; I only want to sit on it.)

The English phrases "no matter who...," "no matter when...," "no matter how...," etc., are most accurately rendered by Czech prases introduced by the conjunction at' and containing corresponding -koli forms. The following sentences illustrate how such phrases are constructed.

At' jdu kamkoli, všude je potkávám.
(No matter where I go, I meet them everywhere.)

At' je jakkoli inteligentní, nemůže vědět všechno.
(No matter how intelligent he is, he can't know everything.)

At' je to číkoli, nemůžeme to tady nechat.
(No matter whose it is, we can't leave it here.)

Negative Indefinite Forms

As we pointed out in Lesson VIII, these negated indefinite pronouns and adverbs must accompany the phenomenon of sentence negation (where the particle ne- is used with the main verb of the sentence). These double negatives are correct and proper in Czech, and they do not produce a positive statement, as occasionally happens in English. Refer to the table on page 404 and note that neither jaký nor který have negative forms and that the form žádný substitutes for both of them. (The form nijaký does exist, but it has the meaning "mediocre, nondescript.")

Minulý týden nás nikdo nenavštívil.
(No one came to visit us last week.)

Nic jim nezabraňovalo, aby se věnovali studiu.
(Nothing prevented them from devoting themselves to their studies.)

Tak ty jsi tam neviděl ničí hodinky?
(So you didn't see anyone's watch there?)

O prázdninách jsme nikdy nikam nechodili.
(We never went anyplace during the holidays.)

Jeho rodiče neměli žádnou naději, že je živ a zdráv.
(His parents had no hope that he was alive and well.)

Indefinite forms from lec-/leda- or všeli-

There is no distinction in meaning among these indefinite pronouns and adverbs; they all signify "many, but not all." The English expression "many a --" frequently translates these forms satisfactorily. Refer to the table on page 404 and note the severe restrictions on the use of všeli-. In practically every instance either leda- or lec- may be used. And observe that a final -s may be attached to the co- forms.

Leckdo se bude snažit, aby ti radil, ale neměl bys jim všem věřit.
(Many a person will try to advise you, but you shouldn't believe them all.)

Může se to udělat lecjakým způsobem.
(There's many a way that can be done.)

Ledakdy jsem ho chtěl pozdravit, ale on si mne nikdy nevšiml.
(Many a time I've wanted to greet him, but he hever noticed me.)

Lecčí štěstí se změnilo kvůli tomu.
(Many a person's luck has changed as a result of that.)

Všelicos bych ti o ní mohl říci.
(I could tell you many things about her.)

Chtěl jsem si koupit všelijaké knihy, ale neměl jsem žádné peníze.
(There's been many a book I wanted to buy, but I didn't have any money.)

Leckterý z našich studentů by jel rád do Československa.
(Many of our students would like to travel to Czechoslovakia.)

Ledakdo se o to snažil, ale bez úspěchu.
(Many a person tried to do that, but without success.)

Indefinite Forms from málo- (skoro ni-)

This series of indefinite pronouns and adverbs is the opposite in meaning to the preceding series and translates most frequently into English via the expression "hardly any --." The same meaning can be expressed by the adverb skoro plus the negative forms in ni-. Both types of forms are displayed in the table on page 404. Note carefully where one or the other or both types are deficient.

Dnes málokdo chodí, většinou všichni jezdí.
(Hardly anyone walks nowadays, most of the time everyone rides.)

Když jsem ten byt viděl, nebyl v něm skoro žádný nábytek.
(When I saw the apartment, there was hardly any furniture in it.)

Málokdy někam se svou ženou chodil.
(He hardly ever went anywhere with his wife.)

Nemůže se to skoro nijak odmítnout.
(There's hardly any way it can be refused.)

Málokde jsem viděl tak zajímavou knihovnu.
(Hardly anywhere have I seen such an interesting library.)

Nebyla s to nám skoro nic říci.
(She could hardly say anything to us.)

Málokterý z nich mi píše.
(Hardly anyone of them writes to me.)

Indefinite Forms from jin-

The root jin-, which renders the English "-else," is already familiar to you as an adjectival form jiný and as the indefinite adverbs jindy, jinde, jinam, and jinak. The table on page 404 will show you that jin- forms one-word adverbs but that the adjectival form jiný must be used for the indefinite pronouns. Note particularly that jiný may combine with any one of the already discussed types of indefinite pronouns and that the genitive case form jiného must be used with the co series. Note also that jiný cannot be used with čí, but that the genitive case forms of the kdo series plus jiný serve as a substitute.

Dejte mi nějaký jiný příklad.
(Give me some other example.)

Kdokoli jiný by se za to byl omluvil.
(Anybody else at all would have apologized for that.)

Myslím, že tenhle pokoj by mohl být pokojem málokoho jiného kromě Pavla.
(I think that this room could be the room of hardly anyone else except Pavel.)

Nikdo jiný z našich kolegů na tom sjezdě nebyl.
(No one else from among our colleagues was at the congress.)

Cokoli jiného o tom uslyšíš, neříkej mu to.
(Whatever else you hear about that, don't tell him.)

Ten druhý návštěvník byl odjinud.
(The other visitor was from somewhere else.)

Objednáme to někdy jindy.
(We'll order that at some other time.)

Leckomu jinému se daří hůře než tobě.
(Many another person is doing worse than you are.)

Alíkovi můžete dát jakékoli jiné maso.
(You can give Alík any other kind of meat at all.)

Nikdo jiný nepřišel, aby nám pomohl.
(No one else came to help us.)

Indefinite Forms from vš-/každ-

You are already familiar with practically every one of these pronouns and adverbs referring to the usual concepts of "every" and "all." You have only to turn to the table on page 404 and note where no corresponding form is possible.

Lidé přišli odevšud, aby si poslechli jeho přednášku.
(People came from all over in order to hear his lecture.)

Všude byl a všechno zná.
(He has been everywhere and knows everything.)

Každý o tom bude muset přemýšlet sám.
(Each person will have to think that through himself.)

Každý překlad bude čten všemi profesory.
(Every translation will be read by all the professors.)

Indefinite Pronouns from kde-

No adverbial forms are permitted here. The pronominal forms are very close in meaning to the každ-/vš- series, but they add the semantic feature "all without exception." Accordingly, the English expression "absolutely every" will translate most of these adequately. Use these forms with some caution; no modifiers are permitted after them.

Ztratí kdeco.
(He loses absolutely everything.)

Kdekdo by to přeložil.
(Absolutely everyone would translate that.)

Bydlel už v kdejakém domě.
(He has lived in absolutely every kind of house.)

Zná kdekteré drama.
(He knows absolutely every drama.)

Table of Indefinite Pronouns and Adverbs

Learn all the forms in this table and think of possible English equivalents for each one of them.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

Basic Pronouns and Adverbs	-ně (some-/ any-)	-si (some- (unknown))	-koli (any-at all/ ever)	ni- (negative)	lec- leda- (všeli-) (many a)	málo- (skoro ni-) (hardly any)	jin- (-else)	každ- všech- (every-, all-)	kde- (absolutely every-)
kdo	někdo	kdosi	kdokoli	nikdo	leckdo ledakdo	málokdo skoro nikdo	někdo jiný kdosi jiný kdokoli jiný nikdo jiný leckdo jiný málokdo jiný	každý všichni (pl.)	kdekdo
co	něco	cosi	cokoli	nic	lecco(s) ledaco(s) všelico(s)	máloco skoro nic	něco jiného cosi jiného etc.	všechno	kdeco
jaký	nějaký	jakýsi	jakýkoli	(nijaký) žádný	lecjaký ledajaký všelijaký		nějaký jiný jakýsi jiný etc.		kdejaký
který	některý	kterýsi	kterýkoli	žádný	leckterý ledakterý	málokterý skoro žádný	některý jiný kterýsi jiný etc.		kdekterý
čí	něčí	čísi	číkoli	ničí	lecčí ledačí	skoro ničí	někoho jiného kohosi jiného kohokoli jiného nikoho jiného leckoho jiného málokoho jiného		
jak	nějak	jaksi	jakkoli	nijak	lecjak ledajak všelijak	skoro nijak	jinak		
kde	někde	kdesi	kdekoli	nikde	leckde ledakde	málokde skoro nikde	jinde	všude	
kam	někam	kamsi	kamkoli	nikam	leckam ledakam	málokam skoro nikam	jinam	všude	
odkud	odněkud	odkudsi	odkudkoli	odnikud	odleckud	skoro odnikud	odjinud	odevšud odevšad	
kudy	někudy	kudysi	kudykoli	nikudy	leckudy ledakudy	málokudy			
kdy	někdy	kdysi	kdykoli	nikdy	leckdy	málokdy skoro nikdy	jindy	vždycky vždy	

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences illustrating the various kinds of indefinite pronouns and adverbs.

1. I was told that at one time during the Second World War.
2. Many a softer chair is less comfortable than this one.
3. Someone else has also noted that.
4. These principles were emphasized long ago by some famous scientist or other.
5. I'm sure that he knows absolutely everything about that.
6. It's a rare king who would attempt something like that.
7. As a young man he always had the intention of running away somewhere.
8. No matter where I try to work, she always bothers me.
9. There's something crawling on somebody's coat on the bed.
10. Hardly any kind of apples is ripe at this time.
11. They say some patient died in the hospital last night.
12. No matter which direction we go in, we'll reach the main highway from here.
13. There are few stores where one can buy such fresh vegetables.
14. Will anyone ever have time to help me tidy up the house?
15. There's many a person's habits that I can't stand.
16. Let me see anybody else's map at all; I just don't want to look at his.
17. Absolutely everyone would apologize to you in such circumstances.
18. Somehow or other I feel chilled; do you think I'm getting a cold?
19. He has some sort of list in one of his desk drawers.
20. You can shake any tree at all, and ripe apples will fall from it.
21. Do you insist on my going everywhere with you?
22. I would be surprised if there were any other tickets left.
23. I don't like to wear anyone else's clothes at all.
24. Boy, is it raining out! I've got to dry my head with something.
25. Ask anybody at all, and he will tell you approximately when that happened.
26. It's a rare place where one can eat as well as in this restaurant.
27. Whoever turned to him, he helped each one.
28. You can write about anything at all, but it must be interesting.
29. Pavel wants to have a talk with you (sg.) about something or other.
30. We're going to go to the mountains; so we can't take just anything (Use leda- form) with us.
31. Merry voices could be heard from all sides.
32. I never heard anything like that.
33. Since Christmas we've hardly been going anyplace; we simply haven't time.
34. It wasn't anybody's fault; it happened by accident.
35. Many a person emphasized that it was necessary to do something, but in the end no one helped us; everybody stayed home.
36. Milan was the friendliest; he gave us all kinds of (Use všeli- form) good information.
37. Marie is an excellent student; absolutely everyone praises her.
38. He was somehow or other irresolute; he didn't know how to answer her.
39. I'd call anybody; after all, one of them must be free.
40. Take care of it any old way; it's important that you be ready soon.

Iterative Aspect (Formation)

We already know that all verbs in Czech belong either to the imperfective or to the perfective aspect. This is the main aspectual classification: perfective vs. imperfective. There are in addition, however, some subsidiary aspects that are possible only with some imperfective verbs. We have already studied one of these subsidiary aspectual oppositions in the determinate-indeterminate verbs, characteristic only of imperfective verbs. Another aspect characteristic of imperfective verbs is the iterative aspect, which expresses the iteration or repetition of an action. Note carefully the following points about the formation of the iterative.

1) The specific formant is *-va-* (Class I).

2) The formant is added to the nonpresent stem.

3) The stem or root vowel preceding the *-va-* is lengthened (an *-ě-* becomes *-í-*).

4) The following specific restrictions hold in the formation of the iterative.

    a) No verbs in *-nout* form iteratives.

    b) No consonant stem forms an iterative; therefore no verbs in Class Va do so.

    c) No determinate verbs form iteratives, but indeterminates do.

    d) No verbs ending in *-ávat*, *-ívat*, or *-ývat* (where the long vowel is not part of the root) form iteratives; therefore no iterative is possible from *nechávat* or from *srovnávat*.

Now study the way in which iteratives are formed from each one of our verbal classes.

	Nonpresent Stem	Iterative
Class I:	děla-	dělávat
	díva- se	dívávat se
	vola-	volávat
	poznáva-	poznávávat
Class II:	bavi-	bavívat
	prosi-	prosívat
	vozi-	vozívat
Class III:	mize-	mizívat
	sáze-	sázívat
	voně-	vonívat
	zkouše-	zkoušívat
Class IV:	bá- se	bávat se
	křiče-	křičívat
	hoře-	hořívat
	stá-	stávat

Class Va:	None!	
Class Vb:	The false stem vowel in this subclass does permit the formation of iteratives, but we have not yet had any basic imperfective verbs here.	
Class Vc:	bra- zva-	brávat zvávat
Class VI:	None!	
Class VII:	děkova- kupova- studova- představova-	děkovávat kupovávat studovávat představovávat
Class VIII:	bi- hra- my-	bívat hrávat mývat
Class IX:	klepa- maza- psa-	klepávat mazávat psávat

There are two kinds of irregularities in the formation of the iterative: one for verbs that do not fit into our nine-class system and the other for regular verbs that form iteratives either irregularly or unexpectedly. Learn these irregular iteratives, which all belong to Class I.

být > bývat
jíst > jídat
mít > mívat
spát > spávat

číst > čítat
ležet > léhat
sedět > sedat
slyšet > slýchat
vidět > vídat

Iterative Aspect (Usage)

As you have seen in the preceding section, iterative forms may be produced and used from most simple (unprefixed) imperfectives and most derived (prefixed) imperfectives. Iteratives are not often used even in the spoken language. The same semantic effect can be obtained from regular imperfective verbs plus an appropriate adverb such as často. Iteratives should be used with caution and should be reserved for emphasis, for vividness, or for greater emotional coloring; they are used most frequently in the past and in the present. Study the following examples.

Tehdy jsme jezdívali domů po té druhé silnici.
(At that time we used to drive home along the other highway.)

V sobotu obyčejně míváme volno.
(We are usually free on Saturday.)

Můj soused rád odpoledne pracovává na zahrádce.
(My neighbor likes to work in his yard in the afternoon.)

Maminka už většinou bývá doma, když přicházím ze školy.
(Mother is usually at home when I arrive from school.)

Karel někdy trvává na tom, že je třeba pravidelně cvičit.
(Karel sometimes insists on the necessity of exercising regularly.)

Milenin bratr prý obvykle při snídani čítá noviny a nemluvívá se svou ženou.
(They say that Milena's brother habitually reads the newspaper at breakfast and doesn't talk to his wife.)

Chodívali jsme do biografu každou středu večer.
(We used to go to the movies every Wednesday evening.)

Říkává tyhle věci, kdykoli je zoufalý.
(He says these things whenever he is desperate.)

Occasionally iteratives may be produced by doubling the ending -va- to yield -váva-. This process strengthens the meaning in a very special way; such iteratives can be used only to refer to a repeated action in the distant past. Note the following sentences.

Kdysi se obchody otvírávávaly v sedm a zavírávávaly v jedenáct.
(At one time all stores used to open at seven and close at eleven.)

Jako dítě byl zvědavější; ptávával se na všechno možné.
(As a child he was more curious; he used to ask about everything possible.)

Před válkou bývávalo lépe.
(Things used to be better before the war.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences using the iterative aspect wherever possible.

1. All day long she sits at the telephone and calls her acquaintances.
2. I remember that family; they were habitually (Omit this word) moving from one place to another.
3. Our manager habitually (Omit this word) insists on his own way (Translate na svém).
4. When the apples were ripe, we used to pick them from morning until night.
5. Father used to exercise for forty-five minutes every morning before breakfast.

6. I remember how his children used to throw things around on the floor anywhere at all in the house.
7. The neighbors' children used to walk by our house at six thirty every morning.
8. Even though he had plenty of money, he used to wear old worn-out clothes.
9. No matter when she left, she would always return at exactly the same time.
10. Whenever he was in our city, he would always spend at least a day with us.
11. When I recall all the things (Translate co všechno) we used to buy at one time, I have to laugh.
12. On Sunday she used to sleep until nine or ten in order to get her rest.
13. How that Milan has changed; formerly he used to be quiet, now he talks all the time (Add jen for emphasis).
14. I also used to read whatever came into my hands; now, unfortunately, I haven't enough time for reading.
15. When I was twenty, I used to wash only with cold water.
16. I used to be afraid of him (Use mít strach).
17. Whenever he would tell about his children who had died, he would cry.
18. We liked most of all to sit at their table because we always had fun with them.
19. Was it you or someone else who used to go with us to the opera in Brno?
    It didn't used to end (Use impersonal) until (Use až) midnight.

Distributive Verbs

Distributive verbs are extremely limited in the language. Such verbs are only perfective and signify that the action is, in a manner of speaking, distributed in succession over a plurality of subjects or a plurality of objects. In other words, distributive verbs allow one to express the fact that one person performs an action on several objects in succession or that several persons in succession perform a given action. These verbs do not constitute an aspectual difference since a few special prefixes or a small group of basic stems confer this meaning. The prefix and the stems give us two different groups of distributive verbs.

In the first group prefixes play the major role. The prefixes po- (frequently), s- (occasionally), may be used with a fairly broad spectrum of prefixed verbs to form distributives.

zavírat > pozavírat (to close (doors) one after another)
sbírat > posbírat (to pick up (things) one after another)
sbírat > sesbírat (" " " " " " ")

The second group features a limited number of Class I or Class III stems that can combine with a number of prefixes to form distributives.

padat > spadat (to fall one after another)
sázet > nasázet (to plant one after another)
skákat > vyskákat (to jump out one after another)

Note the following examples and those occurring in the dialogue.

Poplatil mi, co mi dlužil, za krátkou dobu.
(He paid me what he owed me in instalments in a short time.)

Kam jste letos nasázel růže?
(Where did you set out the roses this year?)

The Pronouns jenž and tentýž

We include in this lesson for your information only the paradigms for the relative pronoun jenž (Used just like který) and the intensifying pronoun tentýž ("the same," used just like ten samý). These are purely literary forms and will be encountered only in writing. Except for the genitive "whose" forms discussed below, we do not recommend their use to you; learn merely to recognize them.

	Singular				Plural			
	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine
	Anim.	Inan.			Anim.	Inan.		
Nom.	jenž		jež	jež	již	jež	jež	jež
Gen.	jehož			jíž	jichž/jejichž			
Dat.	jemuž			jíž	jimž			
Acc.	jehož	jejž	jež	již	jež			
Instr.	jímž			jíž	jimiž			
Loc.	němž			níž	nichž			

Note that an initial ň- is used before the above forms when they are governed by a preposition: do něhož, k níž, u nichž. Several examples of the use of this relative pronoun follow.

Autor, o němž se v knize mluví, už nežije.
(The author spoken about in the book is no longer living.)

Nedorozumění, jež z toho vzniklo, bylo brzo vysvětleno.
(The misunderstanding that arose from that was soon clarified.)

Známí, jimž jsme napsali, nám ještě neodpověděli.
(The acquaintances whom we wrote to still haven't answered.)

	Singular				Plural			
	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine	Masculine		Neuter	Feminine
	Anim.	Inan.			Anim.	Inan.		
Nom.	tentýž/týž		totéž	tatáž/táž	titíž/tíž	tytéž	tatáž/táž	tytéž
Gen.	téhož			téže	týchž			
Dat.	témuž			téže	týmž			
Acc.	téhož	tentýž	totéž	touž	tytéž		tatáž/táž	tytéž
Instr.	týmž			touž(e)	týmiž			
Loc.	témž(e)			téže	týchž			

Below you will find several examples of the use of this particular pronoun.

> Zařídili jsme to ještě tentýž den.
> (We took care of that the very same day.)
>
> Všiml si týchž chyb.
> (He noticed the same mistakes.)
>
> Běží o touž zásadu.
> (The same principle is at issue.)

Czech Equivalents of the Relative Pronoun "whose"

We have not yet learned how to express the Czech equivalent of "whose" or "of which" in relative clauses. The relative pronoun který may not be used for this purpose. The words that fulfill this function are the indeclinable jehož and jejichž referring to masculine singular and plural antecedents, respectively, and the completely declinable jejíž (inflected exactly like the possessive pronoun její plus -ž) referring to a feminine singular antecedent. Note the following sentences.

> Přítel, jehož zavazadlo tu hlídám, si šel koupit cigarety.
> (My friend, whose luggage I'm watching here, went to buy cigarettes.)
>
> Ta dívka, s jejíž sestrou se znáš, bydlí naproti.
> (The girl with whose sister you are acquainted lives across the way.)
>
> To jsou ti dva [illegible]ci, jejichž fotografie byla včera v novinách.
> (Those are the two scientists whose photograph was in the paper yesterday.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences using the Czech relative pronouns for "whose."

1. That's the neighbor whose mother has just been taken to the hospital.
2. Do you know any modern authors in whose books love wouldn't be spoken of (Use impersonal)?
3. Who are those two with whose point of view you don't agree?
4. At the head of the group there walked a tall man on whose shoulders sat a laughing girl, obviously his daughter.
5. He turned to some young woman in whose eyes there was still something childish.
6. I'll try to find someone whose principles it'll be possible to accept.
7. The lady, with whose brothers you are surely acquainted, moved yesterday.
8. One entered (Use reflexive) the room, on the walls of which there hung numerous pictures, by means of a low door.

DIALOGUE

Promiň, mohl bych tě o něco poprosit? Nemáš tady nějaký prášek proti bolesti hlavy?	Excuse me, could I ask you for something? Do you have anything here for a headache?
Pojd' dále. Domnívám se, že mám. Bolí tí hlava?	Come on in. I think I have. Do you have a headache?
Ano, začala mi bolet před hodinou a dosud nepřestala. Naopak, je to stále horší. Možná, že jsem někde chytil rýmu, protože mi začíná také bolet v krku.	Yes, it started to ache about an hour ago, and it hasn't stopped yet. On the contrary, it's getting worse and worse. It's possible that I caught a cold somewhere because my throat is getting sore too.
Co bys chtěl? Aspirin?	What would you like? Aspirin?
Cokoli, jen když to pomůže.	Anything at all, just so it helps.
Tak tedy aspirin. Bohužel nic jiného nemám. Kolik si jich chceš vzít, jeden nebo dva?	In that case, aspirin. Unfortunately, I have nothing else. How many do you want to take, one or two?
Jeden je pro mne málo. Potřebuji vždy dva.	One is not enough for me. I always need two.
Tady jsou. Pozor, jeden ti vypadl z ruky! Kde je? Aha, tady. Počkej, seberu ho.[1] Máš ho?	Here they are. Be careful, one has fallen out of your hand! Where is it? Aha, here it is. Wait, I'll pick it up. Do you have it?

Ano, dík. A ještě jednou se omlouvám. Neměl jsem v úmyslu tě rušit.	Yes, thanks. And once again I apologize. It was not my intention to bother you.
Vůbec o tom nemluv. Doufám, že ti bude brzo zase dobře. Dej mi večer vědět jak ti je.	Don't mention it. I hope you'll get well again soon. Let me know in the evening how you are doing.

* * *

Když už jdeš ven, hodil bys, prosímtě, tenhle dopis do schránky na dopisy? Chtěl bych, aby jej Milan pokud možno brzo dostal.	Since you are going out, would you please drop this letter into the mail box? I'd like Milan to get it as soon as possible.
Samozřejmě. Rád to zařídím. Musíš mi ale říci, kde ta schránka je.	Of course, I'll be glad to take care of that. You'll have to tell me, however, where the mail box is.
Ty nevíš? Je na sever odtud. Asi čtyři minuty.	Don't you know? It's north of here. About four minutes.
Na sever odtud? Doufám, že nebudu potřebovat mapu, abych to našel. Světové strany pro mne v téhle chvíli mnoho neznamenají. Vím, že jsem na Malé straně a že jsem tedy na západ a nikoli na východ od Vltavy. Ale to je tak všechno. Málokdy se snažím určit, kde jsem, pomocí světových stran. Stačí, když mi řekneš, co mám udělat, až vyjdu z domu.	North of here? I hope I won't need a map to find it. Right now the points of the compass mean little to me. I know that I'm in the Little Quarter and therefore west and not east of the Vltava. But that's about all. I rarely try to find out where I am by the points of the compass. It's enough if you'll tell me what I'm supposed to do when I leave the house.
Dobře. Když vyjdeš z hlavních dveří, dej se nalevo. Jdi pořád rovně a přibližně za čtyři minuty dojdeš k tomu malému parku, kde jsme letos na jaře často sedali. U vchodu do toho parku je poštovní schránka. Jiná schránka je na druhé straně u východu, ale tam tě nechci posílat, nechceš-li se ovšem projít.	O.K. When you go out the front door, turn to the left. Continue straight ahead, and in about four minutes you'll come to the small park where we frequently sat in the spring. The mail box is at the entrance to that park. Another box is on the other side at the exit, but I don't want to send you there unless you want to take a walk.
Ne, děkuji, na tak velké procházení nemám právě chut'. Kromě toho je to trochu s cesty. Nezapomeň, že chci jít do města. Chci si koupit pár bot a také bych si rád objednal nějaké knížky z toho nového seznamu, který jsme předevčírem dostali. Možná, že se i pokusím dostat lístek do opery na příští středu. Uvidíme.	No, thanks; I just don't feel like such a long walk. Besides, it's a bit out of my way. Don't forget that I want to go downtown. I want to buy a pair of shoes, and I'd also like to order some books from the new list that we received the day before yesterday. I may even try to get a ticket to the opera for next Wednesday. We'll see.

* * *

Znal jsi mého dědečka z Brna?	Did you know my grandfather from Brno?
Toho, co[2] umřel asi před třemi léty? Ano, trochu jsem ho znal. Vídal jsem ho, když sem přijížděl na návštěvu. Pokud si pamatuji, vozil s sebou spoustu zavazadel a míval ve zvyku chodit na dlouhé procházky, ať' bylo jakékoli počasí.	The one who died about three years ago? Yes, I knew him slightly. I used to see him when he came here for a visit. As far as I remember, he used to take along a lot of luggage and was in the habit of taking long walks no matter what the weather was like.
Nevím, jestli sis toho všiml, ale on byl muž pevných--leckdo by řekl zvláštních--zásad. Nejedl maso, rád pracoval rukama a pravidelně cvičil. Věřil ve význam pohybu pro zdraví a všude chodil jen pěšky. Nevzpomínám si, že bych ho kdy byl viděl jet autem. Když tady býval, skoro nikdy nepoužíval výtahu.	I don't know whether you noticed it, but he was a man of certain--many people would say peculiar--principles. He didn't eat meat, he like to work with his hands, and exercised regularly. He believed in the importance of exercise for health, and he went everywhere on foot. I don't recall his ever riding in a car. When he was here, he hardly ever used the elevator.
Ano, slýchal jsem o něm různé věci. Léhal prý jen na tvrdé posteli, čas od času prý jídal jen ovoce a zeleninu, a píval mléko nebo obyčejnou vodu. Také prý vytrvale odmítal dívat se na televizi. Ledaco z toho, co se o něm povídalo, bylo zřejmě přehnané, ale i tak to musel být neobyčejný člověk.	Yes, I used to hear different things about him. People said he used to lie on a hard bed; from time to time he would eat only fruits and vegetables, and drink milk or plain water. They say he also stubbornly refused to watch television. Many things that people said about him were obviously exaggerated, but even so he must have been an unusual man.
Byl zvláštní, to je pravda, ale přitom byl inteligentní a hodný. Většina jeho sousedů a lidí, kteří s ním byli v úzkém styku, ho měla ráda. Zvlášť' děti.	He was peculiar, it's true, but at the same time he was intelligent and kind. Most of his neighbors and people who were in close contact with him liked him. Children in particular.
Zdá se, že dětem opravdu rozuměl a že to s nimi dobře dovedl. Čítal jim pohádky. To léto, když tady byl naposled, měl kolem sebe vždycky skupinu malých posluchačů. Jako bych ho viděl. Sedával tamhle pod tím stromem na zahrádce. Nejdřív si našel místo ve stínu, pak si utřel pot s čela, nasadil si brejle a začal číst svým hlubodkým hlasem o nějakém králi nebo královně v nějaké daleké zemi.	It seems that he really understood children and that he knew how to get along easily with them. He used to read them fairy tales. That summer when he was here for the last time, he always had around him a group of small listeners. I can see them now. He used to sit over there under that tree in the yard. First he would find a place in the shade, then he would wipe the sweat from his forehead, put on his glasses and start reading in his deep voice about some king or queen in some distant land.

Když jsem byl malý chlapec, jezdili jsme k dědečkovi často na prázdniny. Tehdy--to bylo předtím, než se přestěhoval do Brna--ještě bydlel v jedné vesnici na střední Moravě. Měl velký dům a velkou zahradu a my děti jsme bývaly od rána do večera na té zahradě.	When I was a small boy, we often went to grandfather's for our summer vacation. At that time--that was before he moved to Brno--he was still living in a village in central Moravia. He had a large house and a large garden, and we children used to be in that garden from morning until night.
O té zahradě jsem už všelicos slyšel od tvého bratra. Vyprávěl mi o stromech, které tam rostly, o zvířatech, která jste tam pozorovali, i o chlapcích z vesnice, s nimiž jste se tam poznali.	I've heard lots of things about that garden from your brother. He told me about the trees that grew there, about the animals that you watched there, and also about the boys from the village with whom you became acquainted there.
Vyprávěl ti o tom? Na tu zahradu nikdy nezapomenu. Mám na ni mnoho krásných vzpomínek. Právě dnes jsem si vzpomněl, jak jsme chodívali koncem léta na jablka a hrušky.	Did he tell you about that? I'll never forget that garden. I have many pleasant memories of it. Just today I recalled how we used to go picking apples and pears at the end of summer.
Měli jste dovoleno trhat ovoce sami?	Were you allowed to pick fruit by yourselves?
Ne, dokud nám dědeček nedovolil, nesměli jsme se na nic ani podívat. Ale jakmile zjistil, že na některém stromě jsou už jablka nebo hrušky zralé, zavolal nás a pak se šlo společně. Dědeček třásl stromem tak dlouho, až všechna jablka spadala a my jsme je potom pečlivě posbírali. Někdy jsme museli lézt po kolenou ve vysoké trávě, abychom je všechna našli. To to chutnalo jíst takové sladké jablko, které právě spadlo se stromu!	No, until grandfather gave his permission, we didn't dare even look at anything. But as soon as he discovered that the apples or pears on a tree were already ripe, he called us, and then we went all together. Grandfather used to shake the tree until all the apples fell down, and then we would pick them up carefully one after another. Sometimes we had to crawl on our knees in the tall grass in order to find them all. Boy, did a sweet apple like that which had just fallen from the tree taste good to eat!
Neříkej mi, že jste vždycky čekali, až jste dostali dědečkovo dovolení. Znám přece děti.	Don't tell me that you always waited until you were given grandfather's permission. I know children, after all.
Netrvám na tom, že jsme vždycky byli hodní hoši. Někdy jsme si nějaké to jablko vzali i bez dovolení, ale většinou jsme dědečka poslouchali. Jak říkám, měli jsme ho rádi. Děti, jak víš, berou lásku nebo nenávist vážněji než dospělí.	I don't insist that we were always good boys. Sometimes we would take an apple or so even without permission, but most of the time we obeyed grandfather. As I say, we liked him. Children, as you know, take love or hatred more seriously than adults.

* * *

Mohl bych u tebe na chvíli nechat Alíka? Musím si někam skočit a nemohu ho vzít s sebou.	Could I leave Alík with you for a while? I've got to run someplace, and I can't take him along.
To jsi mi neměl dělat. Jak každý ví, Alík je neobyčejný pes, ale ze všech psů, které znám, je jediný, s nímž si nevím rady.	You shouldn't do this to me. As everyone knows, Alík is an unusual dog, but of all the dogs I know, he's the only one I don't know how to handle.
Proč? Já bych řekl, že jste s Alíkem velmi dobří přátelé. Měl jsi s ním snad nějaké potíže, když jsi mi ho posledně hlídal?	Why? I would have said that you and Alík were very good friends. Did you perhaps have any difficulties with him when you took care of him the last time?
Můj problém je, že Alík je v poslední době vůči mně přátelštější, než bych si přál. Dříve dělával jako by o mne neměl zájem. Ted', kdykoli tady je, stále se mě snaží bavit. Běhá, skáče, nosí věci.	My problem is that lately Alík has been more friendly towards me than I would like. Previously he used to act as if he had no interest in me. Now, whenever he's here, he constantly tries to amuse me. He runs, jumps, fetches things.
Prosímtě, nic mu neházej. Nechci, aby se naučil nosit věci. On by mi totiž nedal pokoj.	Please, don't throw things for him. I don't want him to learn to fetch things. It's just that he wouldn't let me alone.
Myslím, že už je pozdě. Alík už se tomu naučil. A to velmi dobře.	I think it's too late now. Alík has already learned that. And very well, at that.
Já vím, Alík se postupně naučí leccemu. I tomu, čemu by se naučit neměl.	I know, Alík will gradually learn many things. Even what he shouldn't learn.
Mám měkké srdce. Nedovedu tě odmítnout. Tak s Alíkem přijd'. Já mezitím pozavírám všechny dveře, aby mi to tvé zvíře odtud někudy neuteklo.	I am soft-hearted. I don't know how to refuse you. So get Alík. In the meantime I'll close all the doors so that animal of yours won't escape from here some way.
Než půjdu, řekni mi ještě kolik má Němec dětí?	Before I go, tell me also how many children Němec has.
Němec? Dvě.	Němec? Two.
Chlapce nebo děvčata?	Boys or girls?

Dvě děvčata. Proč se ptáš?	Two girls. Why do you ask?
To je zvláštní. Právě před domem zastavilo Němcovo auto. Vystoupila z něho paní Němcová a za ní z dveří vyskákali jeden za druhým čtyři chlapci. To přece nemohou být její děti.	That's strange. Němec's car has just stopped in front of the house. Mrs. Němec has got out, and after her four boys have jumped out one after the other. Don't tell me those are her children.
At' jsou číkoli, doufám, že nevyskákali přímo na mé květiny. Vidíš tam před vchodem to volné místo, o které se nikdo nikdy nestará? Nasázel jsem tam včera pár květin; chtěl jsem, aby tam rostlo také něco jiného než tráva. Doufám, že si jich sousedé, včetně tebe, všimnou a že na ně budou dávat pozor.	No matter whose they are, I hope they didn't jump right on my flowers. Do you see the empty space before the house, the one that no one ever takes care of? I planted a few flowers there yesterday; I wanted something else besides grass to grow there. I hope that the neighbors, including you, will notice them and will keep an eye on them.
Zdá se, že tvá práce byla marná. Žádné květiny před vchodem nevidím. Zato tam sedí čísi kočka.	It seems that your work has been in vain. I don't see any flowers in front of the entrance. Instead, someone's cat is sitting there.
To není možné. Co se mohlo stát? Ukaž.	That's impossible! What could have happened? Let me see.
Ne, já si dělám legraci. Neboj se. Tvé květiny jsou odtud dobře vidět a zřejmě se jim dobře daří. Vypadají zeleně a spokojeně. Nikdo jim nic neudělal.	No, I'm kidding. Don't get upset. Your flowers can easily be seen from here, and apparently they are doing well. They look green and happy. No one has done anything to them.
Jsem zvědav, jestli to budeš moci říci také za týden nebo za měsíc.	I wonder whether you'll be able to say the same thing in a week or in a month.

1 The OČ ho is used here instead of the SČ jej to indicate the highly colloquial nature of the conversation.

2 In colloquial Czech co is often used instead of který. This will be explained in the OČ appendix.

READING SELECTION

Od čtvrtka se pokoušíme zjistit, kam se přestěhoval náš přítel Jiří. Dosud jsme neměli žádné štěstí, ačkoli se dost snažíme. Jiří nenechal ve starém bytě svoji novou adresu a málokdo z jeho ostatních známých vůbec věděl o tom, že se stěhoval. Kdosi nám říkal, že se Jiří původně chtěl stěhovat na Malou stranu, ale že si to v poslední chvíli rozmyslel kvůli tomu, že by to bylo daleko od university. Tahle informace nám ovšem příliš nepomohla. Volali jsme už několik kolegů Jiřího, ale ti o něm také nic nevěděli. Je nám jasno, že ho nakonec někde nějak najdeme, ale je nám nepříjemné, že se nám mohl takhle ztratit. Ještě před týdnem jsme s ním mluvili a tehdy nám neřekl ani slovo o tom, že by měl v úmyslu hledat si jiný byt. Naopak, chtěl, abychom k němu brzo přišli na návštěvu. Protože jsme se však nemohli dohodnout, kdy by to bylo pro každého nejlepší, odložili jsme tu návštěvu na příští měsíc. Mezitím se muselo stát něco, o čem nevíme, a co donutilo Jiřího, aby se přestěhoval. Mohlo se ovšem stát všelicos. Cokoli to bylo, doufáme, že to nebylo nic vážného. Rádi bychom byli zase pokud možno brzo s Jiřím ve styku z jednoho dost důležitého důvodu: zve ho k sobě na prázdniny jeden náš společný přítel z Bratislavy. Poněvadž nezná Jiřího přesnou adresu, psal nám a prosil nás, abychom dali Jiřímu okamžitě vědět. Přitom trval na tom, že musí vědět během deseti dnů, zda Jiří bude moci jeho pozvání přijmout. Kdyby prý totiž Jiří nemohl do Bratislavy přijet, jel by na pár týdnů k moři. To by však znamenalo, že by se musel na cestu k moři včas připravit. Jsme tedy v těžké situaci. Nenajdeme-li Jiřího do tří dnů, není naděje, že by trávil letošní prázdniny v Bratislavě. Je ovšem také možné, že Jiří nebude mít o pozvání do Bratislavy zájem. Ale o to už nemusíme mít starosti, to už na nás nezáleží. Nám jde hlavně o to, abychom ho brzo někde objevili a řekli mu o psaní z Bratislavy.

* * *

Co sbíráte? Neříkejte, že nesbíráte nic, že na takové zbytečné záležitosti nemáte čas nebo že vás to nebaví. Je přece známo, že každý člověk někdy něco nějak sbírá, ať' jsou to známky, obrazy, peníze nebo přátelé. Sbírat totiž lze leccos. Ovšem ne všichni lidé o svém sbírání mluví a někteří si dokonce ani neuvědomují, že něco sbírají. Ale to nic nemění na tom, že lidé sbírají rádi, že to je jaksi v jejich charakteru. Člověk se cítí důležitější a významnější, když něco patří jen jemu a nikomu jinému. Je mu lépe, když si může říci: kdekdo může mít to a to, ale jen já jediný mám tohle. Proto si to, co už má, hlídá, stará se o to, a snaží se, aby toho bylo stále více. Kromě toho chce, aby to bylo také lepší a krásnější. Je pravda, a není to třeba připomínat, že někteří lidé sbírají všelijaké věci především proto, že jim sbíraní dovoluje ztrácet čas. Ale lze se tomu divit? Člověk někdy potřebuje zapomenout, aspoň na chvíli, na starosti a povinnosti. Rád se také cítí volný. Sbírání mu k tomu dává do jisté míry příležitost. Protože ten, kdo sbírá si myslí, že dělá to, co chce a ne to, co musí. A to je myšlenka, která může udělat leckoho šťastným.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. Who are your neighbors? 2. We won't get (reach) there before noon. 3. Eat (pl.) vegetables; they're good for your health (Use zdravý). 4. We both collect postage stamps. 5. Many Czech kings died young. 6. Something like that can only happen in a fairy tale. 7. Where will you go during

your vacation (Use o + Loc.)? 8. Make an attempt at it as soon as possible. 9. It was hot even in the shade. 10. Although he lived in the same (Use stejný) house, I used to see him only on rare occasions (Use an indefinite adverb here). 11. There are someone's gloves in the car. 12. Why should you (pl.) take care of that (Use conditional)? Let Václav do it. 13. What kind of pills do you use when you (sg.) have a headache? 14. I assume that he will let us alone now. 15. Whatever you order, order it from this first list. 16. Even though I insist on change, it doesn't mean that I want everything to be rejected (Use refelxive). 17. Would you wipe off the table? There's a little water on it. 18. If we plant (Use distributive) the flowers now, we'll be able to pick them in May. 19. She quickly closed the windows one after another because it had begun to blow. 20. He's always sitting (Use iterative) there in the corner. 21. As soon as they noticed us, they ran away immediately. 22. They live somewhere in central Slovakia. 23. I hope you haven't lost my ticket too. 24. Hardly anyone was satisfied. 25. Do you exercise every day including Sunday? 26. It cost approximately twenty crowns. 27. Is it possible to determine which TV set is better? 28. He was endeavoring to explain something or other to him. 29. Above the closet there hung a large map of Czechoslovakia. 30. Don't throw anything out the window. 31. I bought my last (Use the adverb naposled) pair of shoes a year ago. 32. No matter where he is, I must talk with him. 33. She was shaking with fear and hatred. 34. It's necessary for you to apologize to him today yet. 35. We used to take walks even if it was pouring or freezing. 36. Unfortunately the elevator doesn't work, we'll have to use the stairs (translate: "go on foot"). 37. Some courses are taught now by means of television. 38. He was in the habit of lying down (Use iterative) fully clothed (do not translate "fully"). 39. When we entered the garden, Alík recognized us and began to jump up and down with joy. 40. Most of the people are sitting most of the time. 41. You can move out anytime, but don't (Use nesmět) let me know at the last minute. 42. His will was weaker than his intentions. 43. Carefully she picked up (Use distributive) the letters that had fallen out of her hand and threw them one after another into the mail box. 44. Are you sure that the entrance is on the other side? 45. Which meat did you (sg.) choose? None. 46. If my playing should bother you, tell me. 47. I feel chilled, I have surely caught a cold somewhere. 48. Her small son, who did not yet know how to walk, was crawling about on the floor and was playing with many kinds (Use všelijaký) of objects. 49. In many places there is only talk (Use reflexive) of love for (Use k + Dat.) others. 50. It's a rare person who is as nice as Pavel. 51. Who will watch your suitcases? 52. We had no firm plan; we tried to arrange everything gradually. 53. Karel and (Use s + Instr.) Jan were laughing out loud at something or other. 54. I used to eat this dish many years ago in a restaurant in Prague. 55. It is said that exercise is very important (Translate: "has great significance") for health; it seems to me, however, that relaxation (Use klid) is often equally important.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Vaši sousedé.
2. Pozorujete ptáky?
3. Den stěhování.
4. Prázdniny.
5. Zdraví a pohyb.
6. Dobré a špatné zvyky.
7. Sbíráte něco?
8. Úmysly a nedostatek času.
9. Co byste si objednal, kdybyste měl spoustu peněz?
10. Kdo je na vás hodný?
11. Ke kterým vzpomínkám se rád vracíte?
12. Zásady a život.
13. Účinné a neúčinné prášky.
14. Kdo nebo co vám nedává pokoj?
15. Kupování lístků.
16. Dovedete zařizovat věci?
17. Když musíte odmítnout nějaké pozvání, jak to děláte?
18. Co jste kdysi dělával, co už neděláte?
19. Jíte cokoliv?
20. Vídáte se s někým pravidelně?
21. Umíte číst mapu rychle?
22. Myslíte, že se pohádky líbí jen dětem?
23. O co byste se ještě jednou rád pokusil?
24. Na čem lze trvat a nebýt protivný?
25. Zahrady a zahrádky.

LESSON XIX

VOCABULARY

bod (m)	point, item, dot, spot
brána (f) (Gen.pl. bran)	gate
čekárna (f) (Gen.pl. čekáren)	waiting room
divný	peculiar, odd, curious, funny
drobný	minute, diminutive
drobné (m.pl.)	small change
džem (m) (Loc.sg. -u)	jam
garáž (f)	garage
hnát[1] (Vc,i)(Determinate)(See honit)	to chase, drive, pursue
holub (m) (Gen. sg. -a)	pigeon
honit (II,i)(Indeterminate)(See hnát)	to chase, drive, pursue
chodník (m)	sidewalk
kolem + Gen. (prep.)	around, about; approximately
kravata (f)	necktie, tie
láhev/láhv- (f) (Gen.sg. -e, Nom./Acc. pl. -e, Gen.pl. lahví, Dat.pl. lahvím, Loc.pl. lahvích)	bottle
lehat si (I,i)(See lehnout si)	to lie down
lehnout si (VI,p)(See lehat si)	to lie down
letadlo (n)(Gen.pl. letadel)	airplane
letiště (n)	airport
mlha (f)	fog
množství (n)	quantity, amount
motor (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	engine, motor
mrak (m)	cloud (dark)
nabídnout (VI,p)(Past. pass. part. nabídnut)(See nabízet)	to offer
nabízet (III,i)(See nabídnout)	to offer
nádoba (f)	vessel, container
náhlý	sudden, unexpected
napětí (n)	strain, tension
naplnit (II,p)(See naplňovat)	to fill
naplňovat (VII,i)(See naplnit)	to fill

naštěstí (adv.)	fortunately
naneštěstí	unfortunately
oblak (m)(alternate plural forms are neuter: oblaka, oblak, oblakům, etc.)	cloud (white, light)
obloha (f)	sky, firmament
ochutnat (I,p)(See ochutnávat)	to taste (transitive)
ochutnávat (I,i)(See ochutnat)	to taste (transitive)
okolí (n)	surroundings, neighborhood, environment
pára (f)(Gen.pl. par)	vapor, steam
pivo (n)	beer
plyn (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	gas
pocit (m)	sensation, feeling
podrobný	detailed
politika (f)	politics, policy
pokračovat (VII,i)	to continue, go on
poměrný	relative, comparative
probouzet se (III,i)(See probudit se)	to awake, wake up
probudit se (II,p)(See probouzet se)	to awake, wake up
prst (m)	finger
průmysl (m)	industry
průmyslový	industrial
přivítat (I,p)(See vítat)	to welcome
rozbíjet (III,i) (See rozbít)	to break, smash
rozbít (VIII,p)(See rozbíjet)	to break, smash
rozpor (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	contradiction, antagonism
řídký	thin, rare
setkat se (I,p)(See setkávat se)	to meet, come together
setkávat se (I,i)(See setkat se)	to meet, come together
sklep (m)(Loc.pl. -ích)	cellar, basement
skrze + Acc. (prep.)	through
snídaně (f)	breakfast
sníst[2] (Irreg.,p)(See jíst, Lesson V)	to eat up, consume
střecha (f)(Loc.sg. střeše!)	roof
světlý	light, bright
tahat (I,i)(Indeterminate)(See táhnout)	to pull, tug, draw

táhnout (VI,i)(Determinate)(See tahat)	**to pull, tug, draw**
talíř (m)	**plate**
tmavý	**dark (adj.)**
topinka (f)(Gen.pl. topinek)	**toast, piece of bread**
ubrus (m)	**tablecloth**
uklidnit (II,p)(See uklidňovat)	**to calm (down)**
uklidňovat (VII,i)(See uklidnit)	**to calm (down)**
uvítat (I,p)(See vítat)	**to welcome**
vejce (n)(Gen.pl. vajec)	**egg**
míchaná vejce	**scrambled eggs**
veřejný	**public**
vítat (I,i)(See přivítat and uvítat)	**to welcome**
výrobek/výrobk- (m)	**product**
vzhůru (adv.)	**upwards, up**
zatím (adv.)	**in the meantime, for the time being**
zpráva (f)	**news; report, account**

1 Note the irregular forms of the present and the imperative:

ženu, ženeš, žene, etc.
žeň, žeňme, žeňte

The perfect participle is regular:

hnal, hnala, hnalo, etc.

2 Note the forms of this verb:

sním, sníš, sní, sníme, sníte, snědí
sněz, snězme, snězte
snědl, snědla, snědlo, etc.

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

You already learned in Lesson V that bona-fide aspectual pairs (where the only difference between the members of the pair is one of aspect) are found practically exclusively among verbs derived from simpler verbs by means of prefixes. You have also learned that the imperfective members (called derived imperfectives) of such pairs are formed by adding suffixes to their prefixed perfective counterparts. We have now studied enough verbs so that it is worthwhile recapitulating these perfective-imperfective pairs. This process will be a good review of verbs already studied and will help you to learn and recognize new verbs you will encounter.

We list below the perfective verbs we have had according to their verbal class and show how they form their corresponding imperfectives. Note carefully

that in all cases only three verbal classes are utilized for derived imperfectives: Class I, Class III, and Class VII. Note also that a few unprefixed verbs form their corresponding imperfectives in the same way as prefixed verbs.

Class I

Only Class I is employed here for derived imperfectives. The thematic vowel is lengthened before the suffix, and the suffix itself is -va- (not -a-) after the thematic vowel.

dát/dávat
nechat/nechávat
objednat/objednávat
potkat/potkávat
poznat/poznávat
srovnat/srovnávat

Class II

All three classes are used here for derived imperfectives. Class VII is used most frequently. Observe that the root vowel is always shortened before the Class VII ending.

doporučit/doporučovat
dovolit/dovolovat
koupit/kupovat
nakoupit/nakupovat
nasadit/nasazovat
navštívit/navštěvovat
objevit/objevovat
opravit/opravovat
otrávit/otravovat
oznámit/oznamovat
představit/představovat
překvapit/překvapovat
přerušit/přerušovat
přestoupit/přestupovat
přizpůsobit/přizpůsobovat
půjčit/půjčovat
rozdělit/rozdělovat
slíbit/slibovat
ujistit/ujišt'ovat
upozornit/upozorňovat
určit/určovat
uvážit/uvažovat
uvědomit/uvědomovat
vyslovit/vyslovovat
vystoupit/vystupovat
zabránit/zabraňovat
zařídit/zařizovat
zastavit/zastavovat
zbavit se/zbavovat se
zdůraznit/zdůrazňovat
zjistit/zjišt'ovat
způsobit/způsobovat

Class III is used with a certain set of stems. Note that in this case the root vowel is practically always lengthened and the root-final consonant is palatalized before the Class III ending.

hodit/házet
obrátit se/obracet se
pokusit se/pokoušet se
porazit/porážet
rozmyslit si/rozmýšlet si
vrátit/vracet
zarazit se/zarážet se
zkusit/zkoušet
ztratit/ztrácet

Class I is used in a very few instances. Here too the root vowel may be lengthened before the suffix.

chytit/chytat
omluvit/omlouvat
promluvit/promlouvat
skočit/skákat

Class III

We have had no derived imperfectives from this class as yet, but -ovat is used here.

Class IV

Both Class I and Class VII endings are used here to form derived imperfectives. We have had only two examples.

setmět se/stmívat se
zdržet se/zdržovat se

Class Va

Class I endings are used here. Note the usual lengthening of the root vowel and the -va- form of the suffix used when the nonpresent stem ends in a vowel.

dostat/dostávat
pobýt/pobývat
pomoci/pomáhat
přestat/přestávat
říci/říkat
utéci/utíkat
vstát/vstávat
zbýt/zbývat
zůstat/zůstávat

Class Vb

Class I is used here too. Again we find a long root vowel before these endings.

otevřít/otvírat
umřít/umírat
utřít/utírat
začít/začínat
zavřít/zavírat

Class Vc

Class I appears here too with concomitant lengthening of the root vowel.

ozvat se/ozývat se
přijmout/přijímat
sebrat/sbírat
vybrat si/vybírat si
zaujmout/zaujímat

Class VI

All three classes are used in this case for derived imperfectives. Class I has the greatest currency with lengthening of the root vowel.

hnout/hýbat
obléknout/oblékat
odmítnout/odmítat
odpočinout/odpočívat
sednout si/sedat si
všimnout si/všímat si
vzniknout/vznikat
vzpomenout si/vzpomínat si
zapomenout/zapomínat

Class III is used occasionally, again with lengthening of the root vowel.

minout/míjet
prohlédnout si/prohlížet si
prominout/promíjet

Class VII is fairly widely distributed and exhibits a short root vowel.

dohodnout se/dohodovat se
navrhnout/navrhovat
poskytnout/poskytovat
rozhodnout se/rozhodovat se
zasáhnout/zasahovat

Class VII

We have encountered no derived imperfectives here, but they always have the Class I ending -ovávat.

Class VIII

Both Class I and Class III are applied here. Both cause lengthening of the root vowel and Class I uses the ending -va- after the stems ending in vowels.

použít/používat
přikrýt/přikrývat

Class III derivatives have a -j- before the stem vowel.

přibít/přibíjet

Class IX

Both Class I and Class VII may be used here. Class I, as usual, causes a long root vowel.

poslat/posílat

Class VII shortens the root vowel.

dokázat/dokazovat
popsat/popisovat
ukázat/ukazovat

In several cases different roots are used to form corresponding imperfectives. Here too Class I appears.

odložit/odkládat
přeložit/překládat

And bear in mind the entirely anomalous unprefixed pair:

brát/vzít

Perfective-Imperfective Pairs from Determinate-Indeterminate Verbs

We treat prefixed derivatives from determinate-indeterminate verbs apart from similar derivatives for other verbs for two reasons: 1) their formation is somewhat unique and 2) they produce very useful verbal concepts that illustrate nicely the basic meanings of the verbal prefixes.

Their formation is unique in that the determinate verb is the basis for the prefixed perfective in almost every case, while the indeterminate forms the basis for the prefixed imperfective in every case. You must note, however, in each case how the indeterminate form is modified to produce a Class I, Class III or Class VII derived imperfective. The list below of determinate-indeterminate verbs and their derived stems used with prefixes is exhaustive. Any of the stem varieties for letět/létat may be used.

Det.	Indet.	Derived Perf.	Derived Imperf.
běžet	běhat	-běhnout	-bíhat (I)
hnát	honit	-hnat	-hánět (III)
jet	jezdit	-jet	-jíždět (III)
jít	chodit	-jít	-cházet (III)
letět	létat	-letět -létnout	-lét(áv)at (I) -letovat (VII)
nést	nosit	-nést	-nášet (III)
táhnout	tahat	-táhnout	-tahovat (VII)
vést	vodit	-vést	-vádět (III)
vézt	vozit	-vézt	-vážet (III)

We are now going to introduce you to the important derivatives formed from these basic verbs of motion by means of prefixation. Since the original spatial meanings of the prefixes are usually well illustrated by these verbs, this survey will be a good introduction to the prefixes themselves, a subject that will be continued in the next lesson. Learn to use all of the verbs listed below and treat the illustrative sentences as part of the dialogue.

do- This prefix signifies that the action reaches some goal or gains the interior of some goal. It therefore corresponds to the English "to" or "into." Be careful to distinguish between this prefix and při- discussed below. The prefix do- implies "reaching a predetermined goal."

doběhnout/dobíhat
dohnat/dohánět
(also means "to catch up with")
dojet/dojíždět
dojít/docházet

doletět or dolétnout/
dolétat or doletovat
donést/donášet
dotáhnout/dotahovat

dovést/dovádět
dovézt/dovážet

Prosímtě, doběhni mi s tím dopisem na poštu.
(Please run over to the post office with this letter for me.)

Pochybuji o tom, že bychom je ještě mohli dohnat.
(I doubt that we'd still be able to catch up with them.)

Do Prahy dojedeme za dvě hodiny.
(We'll reach Prague in two hours.)

Jak daleko jste došli?
(How far did you go?)

Docházeli jsme právě k rohu, když se to stalo.
(We were just reaching the corner when it happened.)

Doneste mu také láhev piva.
(Take him a bottle of beer too.)

Donáší vám někdo noviny nebo si je kupujete v městě?
(Does someone deliver the paper to you or do you buy it downtown?)

Měli byste ta zavazadla dotáhnout aspoň ke dveřím.
(You should have dragged that luggage at least to the door.)

Dovedla je až na stanici autobusu.
(She took them right to the bus stop.)

Káva se do Československa dováží.
(Coffee is imported into Czechoslovakia.)

na-

The prefix na- has two basic meanings. It directs the action on, upon, or against some object, or it implies that the action affects a quantity of some object. The abbreviation (quant.) appears after the verbs below where the prefix can also have the quantitative meaning. As you see, these latter are the transitive verbs.

naběhnout/nabíhat
nahnat/nahánět (quant.)
najet/najíždět(quant, najet only)
najít/nacházet
naletět or nalétnout/nalét(áv)at
nanést/nanášet (quant.)
natáhnout/natahovat
navézt/navážet (quant.)

Najel na před ním stojící vůz.
(He ran into the car parked in front of him.)

Včera jsme najeli více než pět set mil.
(Yesterday we drove more than five hundred miles.)

Konečně jsem našel své rukavice.
(Finally I found my gloves.)

Nenacházím v tom nic nového.
(I don't find anything new in it.)

Nenaneste do pokoje sníh na botách.
(Don't carry snow into the room on your shoes.)

Dívali jsme se, jak pečlivě nanášel barvu na obraz.
(We observed how he applied pigment carefully to the painting.)

Než půjdeš spát, nezapomeň natáhnout budíka.
(Before you go to bed, don't forget to wind the alarm clock.)

Natahovala ruku, snažíc se přivřít okno.
(She was extending her arm, trying to close the window a little.)

Celou sobotu naváželi do zahrádky zem.
(All day Saturday they were hauling dirt into the back yard.)

nad-

This prefix confers the meaning that an action proceeds "up over" some object or proceeds "upwards" to a slight degree. The former meaning appears with intransitive verbs usually in the idiomatic sense of "to take a short cut," and the latter meaning appears with transitive verbs.

nadběhnout/nadbíhat

nadjet/nadjíždět

nadejít/nadcházet
(also means "to come up")
nadnést/nadnášet
(also means "to exaggerate")

Chceme-li ho dohnat, musíme mu nadběhnout.
(If we want to catch up with him, we must take a shortcut.)

Mám pocit, že nadešel čas, aby se konečně něco udělalo.
(I have the feeling that the time has come for something finally to be done.)

Kdyby bylo třeba, trochu bych ten televizor nadnesl.
(If it were necessary, I'd lift the TV set a little.)

Všimni si, jak se nadnáší, když jde.
(Notice how she moves up and down when she walks.)

ob-/o-

These two prefixes are related and in the verbs below have identical meanings. They signify that the action proceeds "around" or avoids a given object.

oběhnout/obíhat
(also means "to round up")
objet/objíždět

obejít/obcházet
obletět or oblétnout/
oblét(áv)at or obletovat

Bude třeba oběhnout jen ty kolegy, kteří bydlí v naší ulici.
(It'll be necessary to round up only those colleagues who live on our street.)

Země obíhá kolem slunce.
(The earth revolves around the sun.)

Museli jsme objet celou Malou stranu, než jsme našli to, co jsme chtěli.
(We had to drive around the whole Little Quarter before we found what we wanted.)

Jed'te rovně, tuhle vesnici nemusíte objíždět.
(Drive straight ahead; you don't have to detour this village.)

Pojd'te, ještě jednou to náměstí obejdeme.
(Come on, let's walk around the square once more.)

Jiří prý obchází všechny známé a sbírá na něco peníze.
(They say Jiří is going around to all his acquaintances and is collecting money for something.)

Chcete opravdu oblétnout Čechy a Moravu?
(Do you really want to fly around Bohemia as well as Moravia?)

Letadlo obletovalo letiště více než hodinu; zřejmě nebylo něco v pořádku.
(The airplane was circling the airfield for more than an hour; obviously something was wrong.)

od-

This prefix adds the meaning that the action proceeds "away from" some place or some object.

odběhnout/odbíhat
odehnat/odhánět
odjet/odjíždět
odejít/odcházet
odletět or odlétnout/odlét(áv)at or odletovat
odnést/odnášet
odtáhnout/odtahovat
odvést/odvádět
odvézt/odvážet

Kam ten Alík odběhl?
(Where did that Alík run to?)

Neodbíhejte od hlavního tématu.
(Don't stray from the main topic.)

Odežeňte toho psa; jinak určitě něco porazí.
(Chase that dog away; or else he'll knock something down for sure.)

Děti mi byly pořád v cestě; musela jsem je celé odpoledne odhánět z kuchyně.
(The children were constantly in my way; the whole afternoon I had to chase them out of the kitchen.)

Odjeli, aniž se s námi rozloučili.
(They left without saying good-bye to us.)

Nevíš, kdy odjíždí Jarmila na prázdniny?
(Do you happen to know when Jarmila is leaving for the holidays?)

Neodejdu, dokud mi všechno nepovíš.
(I won't leave until you've told me everything.)

Neodcházejte ještě, vždyt' je teprve deset hodin.
(Don't leave yet; after all, it's only ten o'clock.)

Myslíte, že odletíme včas?
(Do you think we'll take off on time?)

Na podzim mnozí ptáci odlétají na jih.
(In the fall many birds fly south.)

Odnesl někdo ty dopisy na poštu nebo tady ještě jsou?
(Did anyone take those letters to the post office or are they still here?)

Nic neodnášejte; zatím tady všechno necháme.
(Don't take anything away; for the time being we'll leave everything here.)

Chcete, abych odtáhl ten stůl do pokoje?
(Do you want me to drag the table into the room?)

Jiřímu nebylo dobře; musel jsem ho odvést domů.
(Jiří didn't feel well; I had to take him home.)

Kam Punt'u odvádíte?
(Where are you taking Spot?)

Nejdřív odvezeme váš nábytek, pak můj.
(First we'll haul away your furniture, then mine.)

Viděl jsem, jak ji odváželi do nemocnice.
(I saw her being taken to the hospital.)

pod-

This prefix signifies that the action proceeds "under" some object.

podběhnout/podbíhat	podejít/podcházet
podjet/podjíždět	podletět/podlétávat

Můžete to podběhnout?
(Can you run under it?)

Pochybuji o tom, že bychom mohli ten most podejít.
(I doubt that we'd be able to walk under the bridge.)

Kdykoli podjíždíme nějakou bránu, mám strach, že mi něco spadne na hlavu.
(Whenever we drive under a gateway, I'm afraid that something will fall on my head.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing verbs of motion employing prefixes do- through pod-.

1. Jan has to stay home on account of illness; would you take this medicine to him?
2. I'm afraid we'll have to walk around that dense forest.
3. The time has come for us to insist on our rights.
4. Imagine, Karel was standing on the sidewalk yesterday, and a car ran into him.
5. If we had taken a shortcut, we could have caught up with him at the bridge (Use u + Gen.)
6. That new English airplane reached (Use na + Acc.) the main airport at 12:55 A.M.
7. Please try not to bring any grass (Use nanést) into my kitchen.
8. One of Milena's birds flew under the table and then flew against the cupboard on the other side of the room, and nothing happened to it.
9. Somebody came yesterday and hauled away all the old things we had found in the basement.
10. It's very simple; your watch stops all the time because you forget to wind it.
11. He revolves around her like the moon around the earth.
12. What is it that you are applying to the roof?
13. Round up (sg.) all your friends; Valouch has invited us all to his house tonight.
14. His lectures are interesting, but he gets off the subject too frequently.
15. Many varied industrial products are brought in here.
16. Every Christmas he goes around to see all his acquaintances.
17. That plane took off a half hour ago, but another larger and better plane will leave for Prague in two and one-half hours.
18. I was so tired that I was only able to drag that heavy chair up to the main door.
19. Did I tell you that I once drove 800 miles in one day?
20. That old lady chases away every dog and every child that shows up in her yard.

pro-

This prefix means that the action proceeds "through" space or time.

probĕhnout/probíhat
  (also means "to run its course, proceed")
prohnat/prohánět
projet/projíždět
projít/procházet
proletět or prolétnout/
  prolét(áv)at or proletovat
pronést/pronášet
protáhnout/protahovat
provést/provádět
  (also means "to carry out, accomplish")
provézt/provážet

Chodba byla tak úzká, že by skrze ni ani kočka neproběhla.
(The hall was so narrow that not even a cat could run along it.)

Zdá se, že všechno probíhá podle plánu.
(It seems that everything is proceeding according to plan.)

Ten nás prohnal, v životě jsem tak rychle neběžel.
(Did he give us a chase; never in my life have I run so fast.)

Prošel dveřmi, které vedly do tmavého pokoje.
(He walked through a door that led into a dark room.)

Vchodem právě procházela skupina návštěvníků.
(A group of visitors was just passing through the entrance.)

Domem proletěla zpráva, že se paní Krámská ještě dnes vrátí.
(The news that Mrs. Krámská will return today yet spread quickly through the house.)

Tak velkou skříň těmi dveřmi nepronesete.
(You won't get such a big cabinet through that door.)

Protáhl ruku otevřeným oknem a něco hodil do místnosti.
(He reached his arm through the open window and tossed something into the room.)

Schůze se protáhla do půlnoci.
(The meeting dragged on until midnight.)

Měli bychom Markétu provést po Praze.
(We should take Markéta around Prague.)

Každý úkol, který dostal, dokonale provedl.
(He carried out perfectly every assignment he got.)

Chcete-li, provezu vás po městě a ukáži vám některé zajímavé budovy.
(If you want, I'll drive you around the city and show you some interesting buildings.)

pře- This suffix carries the meaning that the action proceeds "across" or "over" some object.

přeběhnout/přebíhat
přehnat/přehánět
přejet/přejíždět
přejít/přecházet
přeletět or přelétnout/ přelét(áv)at or přeletovat
přenést/přenášet
přetáhnout/přetahovat
převést/převádět
převézt/převážet

Přes cestu přeběhl malý černý pes.
(A small black dog ran across the road.)

Nebyla to velká bouře, brzo se přehnala.
(It wasn't a big storm; it blew over quickly.)

Přejeli jsme náměstí a pak jsme pokračovali přes most.
(We crossed the square, and then we continued over the bridge.)

Kudy přejdeme na druhou stranu?
(Which way shall we cross over to the other side?)

Přecházet se může jen na zelené světlo.
(One can cross only on the green light.)

Několik ptáků nám přeletělo nad hlavou.
(Several birds flew over our heads.)

Ten modrý koberec jsme přenesli dolů do Milenina pokoje.
(We carried that blue rug downstairs to Milena's room.)

Přetáhl si košili přes hlavu.
(He pulled his shirt over his head.)

Ještě ten samý den byl převezen do nemocnice.
(He was taken over to the hospital that very same day.)

před- This prefix usually signifies that a position in front of some person or object is gained as a result of the action; it frequently carries the connotation of "overtaking."

předběhnout/předbíhat
předehnat/předhánět
předjet/předjíždět
předejít/předcházet
předletět/předletovat
přednést/přednášet (means only "to recite, lecture")
předvést/předvádět (also used in sense of demonstrating something, e.g. "modeling" clothes)

Nepředbíhej, napřed nám řekni, co se stalo, když jste přijeli.
(Don't get ahead of your story, first tell us what happened when you arrived.)

Jestli budeš trvat na předhánění všech aut na silnici, zůstanu raději doma.)
(If you are going to insist on passing all the cars on the road, I prefer to stay home.)

Před vchod předjela dvě velká auta.
(Two big cars drove up before the entrance.)

Buď rozumný a nikoho nepředjížděj.
(Be sensible and don't pass anyone.)

V Karlově ulici nás předešlo několik mladých mužů, kteří mluvili anglicky.
(On Charles Street we were overtaken by several young men who spoke English.)

Předcházejí se mi hodinky.
(My watch is fast.)

Mohl byste nám přednést také něco od Shakespeara?
(Could you also recite something from Shakespeare for us?)

Profesor Valouch ve středu nepřednáší.
(Prof. Valouch doesn't lecture on Wednesday.)

Počkejte až vám předvedu své nejnovější šaty.
(Wait until I model my latest clothes for you.)

Předváděl nám, jak se rychle a dobře utírají sklenice.
(He showed us how glasses can be quickly and efficiently dried.)

při-

This prefix conveys the meaning that the action proceeds "to" or "towards" a person or object. Be sure to distinguish při- from do-. The former has the connotation of "arriving" or "showing up."

přiběhnout/přibíhat
přihnat/přihánět
přijet/přijíždět
přijít/přicházet
přiletět or přilétnout/
přilét(áv)at or přiletovat
přinést/přinášet
přitáhnout/přitahovat
přivést/přivádět
přivézt/přivážet

Milan přiběhl nahoru celý zoufalý.
(Milan came running upstairs all upset.)

Najednou se přihnala prudká bouře.
(Suddenly a violent storm blew up.)

Přijela Milena s Jarmilou nebo bez Jarmily?
(Did Milena arrive with or without Jarmila?)

Vlak z Brna přijíždí ve tři odpoledne.
(The train from Brno arrives at three in the afternoon.)

Kdy k nám zase přijdete?
(When will you come again?)

Přicházel domů unavený a nešt'astný.
(He was coming home tired and unhappy.)

Na které letiště přiletíte?
(What airport are you flying into?)

Na jaře k nám přilétává množství nejrůznějších ptáků.
(A great number of all kinds of birds arrive here in the spring.)

Přineste mi, prosím, ještě jednu kávu.
(Please bring me one more coffee.)

Přináším bohužel špatné zprávy.
(I'm afraid I'm bringing bad news.)

Přitáhl ke knihovně židli a položil na ni několik svazků.
(He pulled the chair over to the bookcase and put several volumes on it.)

Přived'te s sebou také svého bratra.
(Take your brother along too.)

Právě nám přivezli nový magnetofon.
(They've just delivered a new tape recorder to us.)

roz-

This prefix denotes the idea of dispersal and that the motion takes place in various directions or "apart." Note that the basic intransitive verbs are reflexive.

rozběhnout se/rozbíhat se
rozehnat/rozhánět
rozjet se/rozjíždět se
rozejít se/rozcházet se

rozletět se or rozlétnout se/
rozlét(áv)at se or rozletovat se
roznést/roznášet
roztáhnout/roztahovat

rozvést/rozvádět
(also means "to elaborate, work out" and the reflexive "to get divorced")
rozvézt/rozvážet

Kam se rozeběhli ti ostatni?
(Where did the others run to?)

Ráno byly na obloze mraky, ale vítr je brzy rozehnal.
(In the morning there were dark clouds in the sky, but the wind soon blew them away.)

Moji kolegové se o prázdninách rozjeli po různých částech Čech.
(My colleagues went to various parts of Bohemia for the holidays.)

Auta se rozjížděla všemi směry.
(Cars were going in all directions.)

Rozešli jsme se asi po hodině.
(We broke up after about an hour.)

Jejich názory se vždycky rozcházely.
(Their views have always differed.)

Holubi sedící na střeše se náhle rozletěli.
(The pigeons sitting on the roof suddenly flew away in all directions.)

Tohle oznámení bych chtěl roznést sám; je velmi důležité.
(I'd like to take this announcement around myself; it's very important.)

Roztáhl mapu po stole a prstem ukázal kam se půjde.
(He spread the map out on the table and indicated with his finger where we would go.)

Roztáhla prsty na levé ruce, aby nás upozornila na to, že chce jen pět kusů.
(She extended the fingers of her left hand to let us know that she wanted only five pieces.)

Aspoň jeden z těch příkladů byste měl rozvést trochu podrobněji.
(You should work out at least one of these examples in a slightly more detailed way.)

Slyšel jsem, že Milena a Jan se rozvádějí.
(I heard that Milena and Jan are getting divorced.)

Každé odpoledne po škole rozvážela děti po okolí.
(Every afternoon after school she dropped the children off in the neighborhood.)

s_1-

This prefix with the form s- denotes that the action proceeds "down from" or "down off of" some surface or some object.

sběhnout / seběhnout/ sbíhat
sehnat/shánět
sjet/sjíždět
sejít/scházet
(scházet alone also means "to be missing")
svézt/svážet

sletět or slétnout/ slét(áv)at or sletovat
snést/snášet
stáhnout/stahovat
svést/svádět

Seběhni do sklepa a přines mi něco k pití.
(Run down into the cellar and get me something to drink.)

Po úzké cestě jsme pak sjeli na druhou stranu hor.
(Then we drove down the other side of the mountains along a narrow road.)

Sešel se schodů a přivítal nás několika slovy.
(He came down the stairs and welcomed us in a few words.)

Jeden za druhým scházeli s kopce dolů.
(They were walking down the hill one after another.)

Jsme tu všichni nebo někdo schází?
(Are we all here or is someone missing?)

Se stromu sletěl nějaký pták a sedl si naproti na lavičku.
(Some bird flew down from the tree and settled on the bench opposite.)

Všechno, co je nahoře, se musí snést sem dolů.
(Everything upstairs will have to be brought down here.)

Nejdřív sneseme dolů koberce.
(First we'll take the rugs down.)

Stáhl si čepici s hlavy a položil ji vedle sebe.
(He pulled of his cap and put it down next to him.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing verbs of motion using prefixes pro- through s_1-.

1. Brother promised that he would drive us through the city tomorrow if he doesn't have a class (Use škola).
2. He extended his arms and waited for her to run to him.
3. A very pretty little bird flew down from the tree near the house and lit (Use sednout si) on my window.
4. If you will pull the table up towards you, I'll be able to walk by on the other side.
5. Let's pass that big blue car up ahead (Use před námi), I want (Use conditional) to see who's driving it.
6. He said that as soon as he wakes up, he'd help me transfer all my books from my room to the library.
7. Some girl conducted us through the whole building in order to show us where the offices are.
8. Do you see that young man coming downstairs? I'm sure he came up to me on the street yesterday and tried to talk to me.
9. If the storm had blown over quickly, we'd have been home by 5:00 (Use kolem).
10. Let's catch up to him and find out if he wants to walk with us.

11. If we can go on a picnic tomorrow, the girls have offered (Use reflexive of nabídnout) to bring the food.
12. Why must the views of those two intelligent people always differ?
13. They drive down from that village in the mountains in six and one-half hours.
14. I'd be surprised if the next man (Omit the word "man") who walks through that door were an acquaintance of ours.
15. Don't run across the street until I tell you.
16. He has a good voice, and he likes to recite poems.
17. I fly into (Use na) this airport at least once a month.
18. If you could elaborate on this idea, we could use it at the next opportunity.
19. Don't pull your (Use si) boots off yet; in a moment we're going out.
20. Would you help me spread out the tablecloth on the big table in the living room?

$\boxed{s_2\text{-}}$

This second variety of s- adds the general meaning of "together" or "with" and usually means "coming together" or "accumulating." Note that the basic intransitive verbs are again reflexive.

$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{sběhnout se /}\\\text{seběhnout se/}\end{array}\right.$ sbíhat se$\}$
sehnat/shánět
sjet se/sjíždět se
sejít se/scházet se

sletět se or slétnout se/
slét(áv)at se or sletovat se
snést/snášet
stáhnout/stahovat
svést/svádět

svézt/svážet

Odevšad se začínali sbíhat lidé.
(People were starting to run from all sides.)

Shánim někoho, kdo by mi pomohl při stěhování.
(I'm trying to round up someone who could help me with the moving.)

Sjíždíme se sem vždycky o vánocích.
(We always meet here at Christmas.)

Sejděme se raději až příští týden, co říkáte?
(We'd better not get together until next week, what do you say?)

S kým se vlastně scházíš?
(Just who do you get together with?)

Jak se říká, svedl je dohromady osud.
(As they say, fate brought them together.)

Svezl bys mě dnes do práce?
(Would you give me a lift to work today?)

u-

There are two important meanings here. The first is the meaning of potentiality or the ability of a person to perform the action to a given degree. In this meaning only perfective verbs can be used. The second is the notion of "away," which is to be distinguished from the meaning of od-. The prefix u- implies that the act takes place against someone's will or desire. No information in parenthesis after the verbs below means that both meanings are possible.

uběhnout/ubíhat
ujet/ujíždět
ujít/ucházet
uletět or ulétnout/
ulét(áv)at or uletovat
unést/unášet
utáhnout (ability)
uvézt (ability)

Čas ubíhá rychle.
(Time flies.)

Tenhle týden už mi dvakrát ujel autobus.
(This week I've missed my bus twice already.)

Do večera bychom měli ujet nejméně pět set mil.
(We should cover at least five hundred miles before evening.)

Myslíte, že ujdeme třicet kilometrů za den?
(Do you think we'll be able to cover thirty kilometers a day?)

Poslední dvě slova mi bohužel ušla.
(I'm afraid I missed the last two words.)

Zdá se mi, že uchází plyn.
(It seems to me that the gas is leaking.)

Dejte pozor, aby vám neuletěl klobouk.
(Be careful your hat doesn't blow away.)

Uneseš to? Je to dost těžké.
(Can you carry this? It's quite heavy.)

Dva koně utáhnou víc než jeden.
(Two horses can pull more than one.)

v-

This prefix bears exclusively the meaning of "into."

vběhnout/vbíhat
vehnat/vhánět
vjet/vjíždět
vejít/vcházet
vletět or vlétnout/
vlét(áv)at or vletovat
vnést/vnášet
vtáhnout/vtahovat

Pozor, nevběhni mu do cesty.
(Watch out, don't get in his way.)

Dělala tolik hluku, že se zdálo, jako by do dveří vbíhalo ne jedno, ale deset děvčat.
(She was making so much noise that it appeared as if not one but ten girls were running in through the door.)

Vehnal bys Alíka do zahrádky?
(Would you chase Alík into the yard?)

Plyn byl vháněn motorem do velké nádoby s vodou.
(The gas was being driven by a motor into a large container of water.)

Prosímtě, nevjed' na chodník!
(Be careful, don't drive up on the sidewalk!)

Kdykoli vjíždím do garáže, něco porazím.
(I knock down something whenever I drive in the garage.)

Vznikl zmatek, protože někteří se snažili vejít a jiní vyjít.
(Confusion arose because some tried to get in and others to get out.)

Když jsem odcházel, do čekárny právě vcházela mladá žena s dítětem na ruce.
(When I was on my way out, a young woman with a child in her arms was just entering the waiting room.)

Otevřeným oknem vletěl do kuchyně nějaký pták.
(A bird flew into the kitchen through the open window.)

Všechno, co sem vneseme, musíme nejdřív umýt.
(First we'll have to wash everything we're going to bring in here.)

Jeho poznámky vždycky vnášely do našich rozhovorů něco zajímavého.
(His comments always added something interesting to our conversations.)

Nechtěl bych, aby mě vtáhli do něčeho neočekávaného.
(I wouldn't want them to drag me into something unexpected.)

vy-

All verbs listed below have both meanings of this prefix: motion "out of" some enclosure and motion "upwards."

vyběhnout/vybíhat
vyhnat/vyhánět
vyjet/vyjíždět
vyjít/vycházet

vyletět or vylétnout/
vylét(áv)at or vyletovat
vynést/vynášet
vytáhnout/vytahovat

vyvést/vyvádět
vyvézt/vyvážet
(also means "to export")

Vyběhni nahoru a podívej se, jestli je Milena doma.
(Run upstairs and find out whether Milena's home.)

Vyběhl z posluchárny jako by ho někdo honil.
(He ran out of the classroom as if someone were chasing him.)

Proč vás vlastně odtud vyhnal?
(Just why did he chase you out of there?)

Výtahem vyjedete až do šestého poschodí.
(You can take the elevator up to the sixth floor.)

Sotva jsme vyjeli z domu, zastavil se nám motor.
(We had barely driven away from the house when the engine stopped.)

Vyjdi před dům a podívej se jestli tam někdo není.
(Go out in front of the house and see whether there isn't anyone there.)

První svazek vyšel před dvěma lety.
(The first volume came out two years ago.)

Slunce vychází na východě.
(The sun comes up in the east.)

Už vám lékař dovolil vycházet?
(Has the doctor permitted you to go out already?)

Z okna vyletovaly kousky papíru.
(Bits of paper were flying out of the window.)

Vynesla své tři děti z hořícího domu.
(She carried her three children from the burning house.)

Pomohl byste mi vynést zavazadla do mého pokoje?
(Would you help me carry my luggage up to my room?)

Vytáhl z kapsy nůž, kapesník a nějaké drobné.
(He took a knife, a handkerchief, and some change from his pocket.)

V téhle časti města se nevyznám; budete nás odtud muset vyvést.
(I don't know my way around in this part of the city; you'll have to guide us out.)

Chcete-li, vyvezeme vás až nahoru.
(If you want, we'll drive you up to the top.)

Z Československa se vyvážejí nejrůznější průmyslové výrobky.
(All kinds of industrial products are exported from Czechoslovakia.)

vz-

This prefix denotes motion "upwards," but it has limited use with our present verbs.

vzejít
(means "to come up, arise")
vzletět or vzlétnout/
vzlétat or vzletovat

vznést se/vznášet se
(means "to fly up, soar, hover")
vztáhnout/vztahovat
(means "to reach up")

Z toho nic dobrého nevzejde.
(Nothing good will come out of that.)

Byla tak hustá mlha, že celý den nevzlétlo ani jedno letadlo.
(The fog was so thick that not a single plane took off the whole day.)

Holubi se vznesli do velké výšky.
(The pigeons soared to a great height.)

Ve vzduchu se vznášela lehká pára.
(A light haze was floating in the air.)

Vztahoval ruku po jablku, které viselo nad ním.
(He was reaching up for the apple that hung above him.)

za-

This prefix confers two meanings on the verbs at hand: that the action proceeds behind some object and that the action is turned aside so that it connotes frequently "to drop in/off." No information in parentheses means that the verbs have both meanings.

zaběhnout/zabíhat
zahnat/zahánět
zajet/zajíždět
zajít/zacházet

zaletět or zalétnout/
zalét(áv)at or zaletovat
zanést/zanášet (drop off)
zatáhnout/zatahovat

zavést/zavádět
zavézt/zavážet
(means "to drop off")

K Jiřímu chodit nemusíš; už jsem k němu zaběhl a všechno jsem mu vysvětlil.
(You needn't go to Jiří's; I already ran in to see him and explained everything to him.)

S ní je těžko se dohodnout, zabíhá vždycky do zbytečných poznámek a otázek.
(It's difficult to reach an understanding with her; she always takes refuge in superfluous remarks and questions.)

Zažeň prosímtě Punt'u; pořád mě zlobí.
(Please chase Spot away; he's constantly annoying me.)

Zajela byste za ním a řekla mu, že bych s ním rád mluvil?
(Would you drop in on him and tell him that I'd like to talk with him?)

Viděl jsem, jak zajíždějí za dům.
(I saw them drive behind the house.)

Zajděte k nim pokud možno brzo.
(Drop in on them as soon as possible.)

Zašel za roh dříve než jsme ho dohonili.
(He went around the corner before we could catch up with him.)

Slunce pomalu zacházelo.
(The sun was slowly going down.)

Nezapomeňte, že ještě musíme zanést tu přihlášku na fakultu.
(Don't forget, we'll still have to drop the application off at the college.)

Zatáhla nás do vedlejšího pokoje, protože s námi nechtěla mluvit před svým bratrem.
(She pulled us into the next room because she didn't want to talk to us in front of her brother.)

Zavedli nás do nějaké restaurace, kde měli k pití jen pivo.
(They took us into a restaurant where they had only beer to drink.)

Stačí, když mě zavezete k stanici autobusu.
(It's enough if you'll drop me off at the bus stop.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing verbs of motion using prefixes s_2- through za-.

1. Karel always runs in to see me on the way home from school.
2. Every few minutes (Use každých pár minut) a plane takes off from each large modern airport.
3. Are (Use chtít) you telling me that you pulled all those things out of that small drawer?
4. Could you do something so that the children don't run in here constantly?
5. How much do you think you can carry?
6. After such a long day I'd be glad to give you a lift home.
7. One of our children will drop those plates off at your house some time tomorrow afternoon.
8. Can you name some products that we export to Czechoslovakia?
9. If you should see Alík in your yard, please chase (Use zahnat) him back into our yard.
10. The first day of our vacation we were able to drive 400 miles.
11. If I could round up a few more (Use ještě pár) people, I'd invite them on an outing next Saturday.
12. If you hurry, you can catch him; I just saw him drive around the corner.
13. He fell just as he was reaching up (Use vztahovat ruku) for (Use po) my hand (Omit "hand").
14. I'll never carry their luggage up to the fourth floor.
15. Last night he dragged a group of his friends in here, and they stayed until midnight.
16. If I don't get to the station in (Use do) ten minutes, I'll miss the train.
17. What do scientists talk about when they get together?
18. The sun goes down very early in the winter.
19. He took some pills out of his pocket and examined them.
20. One enters by this gate (Add tam); only this gate is open after 3:00 P.M.

DIALOGUE

Podívej se z okna. Jak je obloha čistá. Vítr po ní žene jen pár řídkých bílých oblaků. Není to krásné ráno? Den začíná dobře. Já jsem už dávno vzhurů.	Look out the window. How clear the sky is. The wind is blowing only a few thin white clouds across it. Isn't it a beautiful morning? It's a good beginning for the day. I've been up for a long time.
Kdy ses probudil?	When did you wake up?
Ještě za tmy.	When it was still dark.
Jako já. Otevřel jsem oči a uvědomil jsem si, že je pondělí a že budu muset jít do práce.	Like me. I opened my eyes and I realized that it was Monday and that I'd have to go to work.
Doufám, že tě ta myšlenka naplnila šťastným pocitem.	I hope that the thought filled you with a happy feeling.
To bych neřekl. Cítil jsem se nevyspalý a trochu mi bolela hlava.	I wouldn't say that. I felt as if I hadn't enough sleep, and I had a slight headache.
Nespal jsi dobře?	Didn't you sleep well?
Šel jsem si pozdě lehnout a pak jsem dlouho do noci četl.	I went to bed late, and then I read far into the night.
Co tě to tak zaujalo?	What was it that interested you so much?
Taková divná věc. Román s nešťastným koncem. Plný napětí, rozporů, a nedorozumění mezi lidmi.	A really strange thing. A novel with an unhappy ending. Full of tension, antagonisms, and misunderstandings among people.
Tak proč jsi to četl? Já se před spaním bavím čtením uklidňujících zpráv o politice, veřejném životě, průmyslu, a tak, a vždycky potom spím jako malé dítě.	So why did you read it? For diversion before going to sleep I read soothing news about politics, public life, industry, and the like, and after that I always sleep like a baby.
To je proto, že jsi jako malé dítě.	That's because you are like a baby.
Jsem rád, že mi rozumíš.	I'm glad that you understand me.
Ale abych se vrátil k tomu románu. Někdo mi jej nedávno doporučil. Kdo to jen byl?	However, to get back to that novel. Somebody recommended it to me recently. Who could that have been?

Nebyl to ten mladý muž z Bratislavy, s nímž jsme se setkali u Jarmily? Udělal na mne dobrý dojem. Měl poměrně dobrý vkus v umění a zajímal se o obrazy. Slyšel jsem ho také mluvit s někým o literatuře.	Wasn't it that young man from Bratislava, whom we met at Jarmila's? He made a good impression on me. His taste in art was relatively good, and he was interested in paintings. I also heard him talk to someone about literature.
Ovšem. To byl on. Ale nebyl tak mladý. Mohlo mu být kolem pětatřiceti. Měl na sobě světlý oblek.	Sure, that was him. But he wasn't that young. He could have been about thirty-five. He was wearing a light suit.
Světlý oblek a tmavou kravatu.	A light suit and a dark tie.
Ano, to je náš muž. Co kdybychom nyní věnovali pozornost dalšímu bodu na programu, totiž snídani.	Yes, that's our man. How about paying attention now to the next item on the program, namely breakfast.
Proti tomu nic nenám. Už jsem ochutnal kávu, kterou jsi uvařil. Abych byl upřímný, moc mi nechutnala.	I have nothing against that. I've already tasted the coffee you made. To be honest, I didn't like it very much.
Mezi námi, mně ještě má káva nikdy nechutnala. Zato dovedu dělat topinky. Co ti mám přinést?	Between us, I've never yet liked my own coffee. On the other hand, I do know how to make toast. What should I bring you?
Dvě míchaná vejce, prosím. A džem, máš-li nějaký.	Two scrambled eggs, please. And jam, if you have any.
Poslední džem jsem bohužel včera snědl.	I'm afraid I ate up the last of the jam yesterday.
V tom případě stačí topinka s máslem.	In that case buttered toast will do.
Co ještě? Mohl bych ti nabídnout ještě něco jiného? Ptej se, žádej.	What else? Could I offer you anything else? Go ahead and ask.
Mám jen jedno přání. Aby ses přestal ptát a pospíchal, protože už je půl osmé.	I have only one wish. That you stop asking and hurry because it's already half past seven.
Už letím. Odnes mezitím tyhle talíře. Ale pozor, táhneš s sebou také ubrus!	I'm all set. Take away these plates while you're at it. Watch out, you're taking the tablecloth along with you too!
Je pozdě. Právě jsem rozbil tvé dva nejlepší talíře. Naštěstí jen dva. Den tedy začíná opravdu dobře.	Too late. I've just broken two of your best plates. Fortunately, only two. So the day has really got off to a good start.

READING SELECTION

Představte si poměrně velkou místnost. Čekárnu. A představte si dále, že v ní sedí několik lidí. Třeba mladý hubený muž s dlouhými vlasy, starší dobře oblečený pán a matka s chlapcem, kterému jsou asi čtyři roky. Všichni trpělivě čekají, až budou na řadě. V místnosti je ticho a klid; skoro nikdo se nehýbá, ani dítě, které maminka stále drží u sebe. Kdykoli se chlapec pokusí odeběhnout, matka, které nemůže být více než dvacet let, se ho okamžitě snaží uklidnit, jako by jí na tom velmi záleželo, aby klid nebyl za žádných okolností rušen. Dveřmi vedoucími do druhé místnosti občas projde slečna v bílém plášti. Je mladá, vážná a mluví tak tichým hlasem, že ji lze sotva slyšet. Za dveřmi, kterými prochází, se také zdá být ticho. Jako by uvnitř nikdo nebyl, jako by se tam nic nedělo. A přece tohle všechno je jen zdání. Kdybyste dával větší pozor, zjistil byste, že lidé, kteří tu čekají, čekají s neklidem. Podívejte se na ně pečlivěji. Nevidíte v jejich obličejích jisté napětí? Vypadají jako by se těšili na to, až je slečna pozve do té druhé místnosti? Je jasné, že to nelze říci. Naopak, většina z nich by tady asi raději nebyla. A kdybyste lépe poslouchal, uslyšel byste, že v té druhé místnosti, kam se pravidelně vrací slečna v bílém plášti, není úplné ticho. Je tam slyšet hlasy. Jakýsi zvláštní dialog, při němž mluví hlavně jeden ze zúčastněných, zatímco ten druhý se bez velkého úspěchu pokouší vyslovit pár nedokonalých a zbytečných slov. Mám ještě pokračovat? Dovedl byste mi podle toho, co jsem vám dosud pověděl, říci o jakou čekárnu jde? Ovšem. Máte pravdu. Takhle to může vypadat snad jen v čekárně u zubaře.

* * *

Sklepy jsou všelijaké. Velké, malé, nízké, vysoké, s okny, bez oken, uklízené, nikdy neuklízené, a ještě mnohé jiné. Ale at' jsou jakékoli, všechny se zdají mít jedno společné: jsou tu proto, aby se do nich snášely věci, které se už nepoužívají. Lépe řečeno, které se nepoužívají, ale o nichž se předpokládá, že by se jednou mohly k něčemu hodit. Proto se během doby každý sklep, i ten největší, naplní. Prázdné nebo poloprázdné sklepy skoro nikdy nevidíte. Naneštěstí se většina těch věcí, které se jednou snesou do sklepa, už nikdy k ničemu nepoužije. Lidé mají rádi změnu, staré věci je nebaví. A v tom je právě problém. Jednoho dne se musí někdo rozhodnout a musí určit, které nepoužívané věci se mají ze sklepa zase vynést, aby se tam mohly přinést nové nepoužívané věci. To ovšem není lehké rozhodnutí. Jak má člověk vědět, co bude jednou potřebovat méně a co více? A tak se nakonec ze sklepa odnášejí věci více méně bez plánu. Odnášejí se hlavně kvůli tomu, že něco musí být vyneseno at' se děje co děje. Jenže pak se pravidelně stává, že jakmile nějaká věc, která ležela ve sklepě dlouhá léta, je ze sklepa pryč, někdo v rodině zjistí, že ji velmi nutně potřebuje. Nutně a hned. Ale bohužel už je pozdě. Předmět, o nějž jde, zmizel. V takovém případě nepomáhá říkat si: kdybych byl jen trochu přemýšlel, nebyl bych to odnesl a nemusel jsem ted' ztrácet čas ani peníze. Myšlení totiž s tím nemá nic společného. Zato štěstí ano. Protože k tomu, aby se cokoli zařídilo, je třeba štěstí více než čehokoli jiného.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

1. If your head aches, lie down and take two aspirin. 2. Would you take these bottles to the basement? 3. Pigeons were flying out of somewhere or other and were lighting (Use sedat si) on the roof of a big house on the square. 4. I'll be back in ten minutes; in the meantime you can continue. 5. The engine suddenly stopped running. 6. Would you taste this vegetable? It seems to me that it's lacking something. 7. One could smell gas in the waiting room. 8. Why did you eat only half a piece of toast (Omit "piece")? Didn't you like it? 9. Who knows how one can (Use lze) get from there to the airport? 10. We'll go (Use do-) to their place immediately after breakfast. 11. You'll need at least six eggs. 12. I can't get rid of the feeling that Milena isn't well although she refuses to talk about her health. 13. They'll run in to see us, they say, around noon. 14. Send her a detailed list of all those who promised that they would come. 15. It's relatively quiet here even though from time to time someone complains about the noise from the nearby (Use zdejší) airport. 16. What do you want me to buy; only butter, jam, cheese, and nothing else? 17. Fortunately, we can offer them anything at all. 18. Such things don't belong in (Use do) in the garage. 19. Do you happen (translate "by chance") to have (Use negative) any change on you (Use u). 20. Please don't drag any more chairs in here. 21. He said he was feeling bad, and because of that he was up the whole night. 22. A considerable number of industrial products is exported from America. 23. How do I know that? It was talked about in public (Use adverb). 24. We would meet with him if we knew that he would be there for sure. 25. According to the latest reports, the tension persists (Translate "lasts"). 26. Snow was falling in the Prague area (Use okolí). 27. Only beer is drunk at their house. 28. One entered the orchard through a wide gate. 29. The first dark clouds appeared in the sky (Use na) soon after noon. 30. Shouting merrily the children were chasing each other (Use reflexive) around the park. 31. I'd advise you to take away the plates first. 32. Every morning a filmy (Translate "rare") haze hung over the river. 33. What tie goes with (Use "to suit") this suit, a light one or a dark one? 34. Welcome to (Use v) Prague. We hope that you will like it here. 35. Somehow we must calm Markéta down. She's angry and refuses to speak to anyone. 36. Can anyone

tell me exactly when our airplane takes off from Bratislava? 37. Only one container had been filled with something; the remaining two were empty. 38. He was lying on his back and watching white clouds passing over us. 39. Would you run downstairs and bring me a tablecloth from the cupboard? 40. We walked through the entire city, but we didn't find anything we wanted to buy. 41. Somebody or other's keys were lying on the sidewalk. 42. For some reason I wake up several times during (Use za + Acc.) the night. 43. It was such a funny affair. No one knew what was to be done. 44. The majority of people from here work in industry. 45. Politics, they say, is an art in which it is a question of what is possible. 46. You are mistaken on (Use v + Loc.) one point; namely, in that you think that it's possible to find an answer for everything. 47. I see no contradiction in that. 48. Don't pull on (Use za + Acc.) that. 49. He had thick black hair that fell over (Use do) his forehead. 50. What can I offer you? 51. A deep silence welcomed us. 52. Please hurry; if we tarry five minutes more, we'll miss (Use ujet) even the last train. 53. Unfortunately, I've forgotten what is to be dropped off where. 54. There was something soothing (Use uklidnit) in her words. 55. He dragged me along with him as far as (Use až na) the other end of the forest.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Muži a kravaty.
2. Drobné a placení.
3. Pivo.
4. Vjíždění do garáže a vyjíždění z ní.
5. Průmysl a město.
6. Neočekávané zprávy.
7. Politika jako předmět rozhovorů.
8. Moderní letadla a doprava.
9. Setkání s někým po mnoha letech.
10. Probouzíte se lehce nebo těžce?
11. Jakým barvám (v oblékání, na obrazech, atd.) dáváte přednost, tmavým nebo světlým?
12. Jaký vliv má na vás vaše okolí?
13. Napětí a práce.
14. Děláte si sám snídani?
15. Čekání v čekárnách.
16. Uvítal byste změnu ve svém životě?
17. Vyznáte se v motorech?
18. Máte zájem o veřejný život?

19. **Mají průmyslové výrobky jen dobře fungovat nebo se také mají líbit?**
20. **Už jste někdy na něco najel?**
21. **Co vás uklidňuje, když jste neklidný?**
22. **Jaký pocit máte, když o sobě přemýšlíte?**
23. **Co má člověk dělat, když mu ujede autobus nebo vlak?**
24. **Dovedete předvádět lidem jak se co dělá?**
25. **Jsou rozpory mezi lidmi nutné nebo přirozené?**

LESSON XX

VOCABULARY

Američan (m)(Nom.pl. -é)	American (noun)
Američanka (f)(Gen.pl. Američanek)	American (female)
čárka (f)(Gen.pl. čárek)	comma, accent mark
časopis (m)	periodical, magazine
dělník (m)	worker
dělnice (f)	worker (female)
hnědý	brown
hranice (f)(Gen.pl. hranic)	frontier, boundary, limit
hrozit (II,i)(See pohrozit)(někomu něčím)	to threaten
jídelna (f)(Gen.pl. jídelen)	dining-room, luncheonette
kalhoty (f)(pl. only)	trousers
lžíce (f)(Gen.pl. lžic)	spoon
mlčky (adv.)	in silence, without a word, tacitly
nebezpečí (n)	danger
nebezpečný	dangerous
okraj (m)	edge, margin
plot (m)	fence
pohled (m)(Loc.sg. -u)	look, sight, view
pohrozit (II,p)(See hrozit)(někomu něčím)	to threaten
polévka (f)(Gen.pl. polévek)	soup
polštář (m)	pillow
postavit (II,p)(See stavět)	to build
pouštět (III,i)(See pustit)	to let go, release
pustit (II,p)(See pouštět)	to let go, release
rádio[1] (n)	radio
stavět (III,i)(See postavit)	to build
sůl/sol- (f)(Dat.pl. -ím, Loc.pl. -ích Instr.pl. -emi)	salt
[illegible] conj.)	so that
[illegible] (m)	purpose, end
vdát se (I,p)(See vdávat se)	to get married
vdávat se (I,i)(See vdát se)	to get married

vedlejší	adjacent, next-door, unessential, irrelevant
výraz (m)	expression
zápalka (f)(Gen.pl. zápalek)	match
zápas (m)	fight, struggle, contest
zbytek/zbytk- (m)	remainder, rest

1 Note that the orthography does not reveal the true stem, rádij-. All case forms are as follows:

Sing.: Nom./Acc. rádio, Gen. rádia, Dat./Loc. rádiu, Instr. rádiem

Pl.: Nom./Acc. rádia, Gen. rádií, Dat. rádiím, Instr. rádii, Loc. rádiích

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

Prefixed Verbal Derivatives

In the last lesson you learned the basic meanings that prefixes confer on verbs as manifested in prefixed derivatives from determinate-indeterminate verbs. In this lesson we want to expand this study of prefixation to include all the principal connotations these prefixes may have when applied to all the other verbs in the language. We have assigned all the prefixed verbs we have studied in this book to their appropriate connotation under each prefix, and for practically every connotation we have supplied new verbs which are underlined and which are to be learned. Study carefully all the verbs, old and new, and, in particular, the sentences illustrating the use of all the new verbs. Verbal derivation is an extremely important part of Czech grammar. Any attention paid to its details now will yield big dividends for you in your subsequent exposure to the Czech language.

do-

This prefix has the following connotations:

1. The notion of "to" or "as far as" a certain point (which could be the interior of some space)

dodat/dodávat

dolézt (Va,p)/dolézat (I,i)
(to crawl, climb as far as)

doskočit (II,p)
(to jump as far as)

2. The attainment of a desired goal or result

dočkat se
dohodnout se/dohadovat se
dokázat/dokazovat

domluvit se (II,p)/
domlouvat se (I,i)(s někým)
(to come to an agreement with)

domnívat se

donutit/nutit

dopadnout (VI,p)/dopadat (I,i)
(to fall to the ground; to turn out)

doporučit/doporučovat
dostat/dostávat
dovědět se/dovídat se

dovést
dovolit/dovolovat

3. Finishing, ending an action

dočíst (Va,p)/dočítat (I,i)
(to finish reading)

dodělat (I,p)/dodělávat (I,i)
(to finish off, bring to an end)

dopít (VIII,p)/dopíjet (III,i)
(to finish drinking)

dopsat (IX,p)/dopisovat (VII,i)
(to finish writing)

4. Finishing off some part of an action left undone

dolít (VIII,p)/dolévat (I,i)
(to fill up a partly filled container)

doplatit (II,p)/doplácet (III,i)
(to pay off the last part of a debt)

dovřít (Vb,p)/dovírat (I,i)
(to close a partly open door or window)

Mileně nebylo ještě sedm měsíců a už dolezla z jednoho pokoje do druhého.
(Milena wasn't yet seven months old, and she was already able to crawl from one room to another.)

Doskočíš tak daleko jako on?
(Can you jump as far as he can?)

Jak se s ní mám domluvit já, když ses s ní nemohl domluvit ty?
(How am I to reach an agreement with her, when you weren't able to do it?)

Tak co, jak to dopadlo?
(Well, how did it turn out?)

Dívali jsme se, jak se sousedova kočka svezla dolů s vysokého plotu a měkce dopadla na zem.
(We watched the neighbor's cat glide down from the high fence and softly fall to the ground.)

Dočetla stránku, zavřela knihu a mlčky se na ně podívala.
(She finished reading the page, closed the book, and looked at them in silence.)

Kdy doděláme ten překlad?
(When will we finish this translation?)

Dopijte; budeme muset už jít.
(Drink up; we'll have to go now.)

Dnes večer bych chtěl dopsat dopis Václavovi.
(Tonight I'd like to finish the letter to Václav.)

Karel má skoro prázdnou sklenici; dolij mu ji.
(Karel's glass is almost empty; fill it up for him.)

Jarmila se opravdu snažila; doplatila zbytek toho, co nám dlužila, o dva měsíce dříve, než měla.
(Jarmila really tried; she paid off the rest of what she owed us two months earlier than she had to.)

Dovřel pootevřené okno, aby nebylo slyšet hluk z ulice.
(He closed the half-opened window so that the noise from the street couldn't be heard.)

na-

The prefix na- has the following connotations:

1. An action proceeding up onto the surface of something

nabídnout/nabízet
napsat/psát
narodit se/rodit se
namazat/mazat

napodobit (II.p)/
napodobovat (VII.i)
(to imitate)

nasadit/nasazovat

nastat (Va.p)/nastávat (I.i)
(to set in, come)

navrhnout/navrhovat
navštívit/navštěvovat

naznačit (II.p)/naznačovat (VII.i)
(to suggest, hint, imply)

2. Carrying out an action extensively, in great measure

načekat se (I.i/p)
(to wait a long time)

najíst se
nakoupit/nakupovat

nalhat (IX.p)/nalhávat (I.i)
(to tell a number of lies)

naslibovat (VII.p)
(to make many promises)

naučit/učit

3. Carrying out an action superficially, incompletely, partially

nabrat (Vc,p)/nabírat (I,i) (to take a part of a larger quantity)	napršet (IV,p) (to shower briefly)

Pavel dovede napodobit kohokoli.
(Pavel knows how to imitate anybody.)

Po jeho slovech nastalo trapné ticho.
(After his words there came an embarrassing silence.)

Mohl byste nám naznačit jaký účel má tohle rozhodnutí?
(Could you give us a hint as to what is the purpose of this decision?)

Mám dojem, že se ještě načekáme, než dojde ke změně.
(I have the impression that we're going to wait a long time yet before things change.)

Nalhali nám sice všelicos, ale nakonec jsme se přece dověděli pravdu.
(It's true they told us all kinds of lies, but finally we did learn the truth.)

Nasliboval nám všechno možné, ale dosud jsme od něho ještě nic nedostali.
(He promised us everything under the sun, but so far we haven't got anything from him yet.)

Nabrala na lžíce trochu polévky a ochutnala ji.
(She took up a little soup in the spoon and tasted it.

Při včerejším dešti nám otevřeným oknem napršelo do bytu.
(During the shower yesterday some rain came into the apartment through an open window.)

o-/ob-

These prefixes have two general meanings. They resemble rather closely the English prefix "be-."

1. The notions of "around," "all around" (affecting all sides of an object or just the surface of an object)

obléknout se/oblékat se obrátit se/obracet se	obsáhnout (VI,p)/obsahovat (VII,i) (to embrace, encompass, contain)
obrůst (Va,p)/obrůstat (I,i) (to grow over)	ohlédnout se (VI,p)/ ohlížet se (III,i) (to turn around and look)

2. Making or causing the root idea of the verb to be realized

objednat/objednávat
objevit se/objevovat se

ocenit (II,p)/oceňovat (VII,i)
(to appreciate, evaluate)

očekávat
ohlídat/hlídat
ochutnat/ochutnávat

omezit (II,p)/omezovat (VII,i)
(to limit, restrict, curtail)

omluvit se/omlouvat se
opravit/opravovat

opustit (II,p)/opouštět (III,i)
(to leave, abandon)

otrávit se/otravovat se
oznámit/oznamovat
ozvat se/ozývat se

oženit se (II,p)/
ženit se (II,i) (s někým)
(to get married (of a man))

Zatímco jsme byli na dovolené, naše zahrádka obrostla vysokou travou.
(While we were on vacation, our yard became overgrown with tall grass.)

Tenhle slovník obsahuje množství zajímavých výrazů.
(This dictionary contains a great number of interesting expressions.)

Proč se pořád ohlížíš? Dívej se raději na cestu.
(Why are you constantly looking around? You'd better watch the road.)

Nikdo z nich bohužel nedovede ocenit dobrou hudbu.
(Unfortunately, none of them knows how to appreciate good music.)

Být vámi, neomezoval bych se na jediné téma.
(If I were you, I wouldn't limit myself to a single theme.)

Cítí prý se tam opuštěn.
(They say he feels lonesome there.)

Problém je v tom, že on by se rád oženil, ale ona se nechce vdávat.
(The problem is that he wants to get married, but she doesn't want to.)

od-

This prefix has three principal connotations:

1. The notions of "away," "off," "getting rid of"

oddělit (II,p)/oddělovat (VII,i)
(něco od něčeho)
(to separate, detach, segregate)

odlišit (II,p)/odlišovat (VII,i)
(něco od něčeho)
(to differentiate)

odložit/odkládat

odpočinout si/odpočívat

odpustit (II,p)/odpouštět (III,i)
(někomu něco)
(to forgive)

odstranit (II,p)/odstraňovat
(VII,i)(něco z něčeho)
(to put away, remove)

2. Discharging some duty or task (frequently indifferently)

odbýt (Va,p)/odbývat (I,i)
(to do indifferently)

odpracovat (VII,p)/
odpracovávat (I,i)
(to work off, put in (time))

3. Responding in kind to some action

odepsat (IX,p)/odpisovat (VII,i)
(to write back)

odmlouvat (I,i)
(to talk back, contradict)

odpovědět/odpovídat

Vedlejší větu oddělujeme od hlavní věty čárkou.
(We separate a subordinate clause from the main clause by a comma.)

Je dost těžké tyhle dvě barvy od sebe odlišit.
(It is fairly difficult to distinguish these two colors the one from the other.)

Říkala, že mu nemůže odpustit, že jí tak dlouho nepsal.
(She said that she couldn't forgive him for not writing to her for such a long time.)

Co dělají ty židle před vchodem do jídelny? Měly by se odtud odstranit.
(What are those chairs doing in front of the entrance to the dining room? They should be removed.)

Je to spolehlivý dělník; málokdy odbude nějakou práci.
(That's a reliable worker; only rarely does he do an indifferent job.)

Tenhle týden musím odpracovat nejméně dvacet hodin; jinak nebudu mít dost peněz.
(This week I have to put in at least twenty hours; otherwise I won't have enough money.)

Už jsi odepsala Marii? Jistě čeká na zprávy od nás.
(Have you written back to Marie yet? I'm sure she's waiting for news from us.)

Kdykoli mu řeknu, aby něco udělal, vždycky odmlouvá.
(Whenever I tell him to do something, he always talks back.)

po-

This prefix has four different connotations:

1. Action proceeding over the surface of something.

polít (VIII,p)/polévat (I,i)
(něco něčím)
(to pour/spill all over)

posypat (IX,p)/posýpat (I,i)
(něco něčím)
(to strew/sprinkle all over)

2. Effecting the attribute expressed in the root

položit/pokládat
porazit/porážet

poškodit (II,p)/poškozovat (VII,i)
(to damage, injure)

potvrdit (II,p)/potvrzovat (VII,i)
(to confirm, corroborate)

3. Carrying out an action to a slight degree

pobýt/pobývat

podat (I,p)/podávat (I,i)
(to hand in/over)

podržet

pohnout (VI,p)/pohýbat (I,i)
(něčím)
(to move slightly, stir)

pokusit se/pokoušet se
pomoci/pomáhat
popsat/popisovat
poskytnout/poskytovat
poslechnout/poslouchat
potkat/potkávat
povědět/povídat
poznat/poznávat

4. Completion

počkat/čekat
podařit se/dařit se
poděkovat/děkovat
podržet se/držet se
pochopit/chápat
pochválit/chválit
poobědvat/obědvat
poprosit/prosit

popřát/přát
poradit/radit
postačit/stačit
postarat se/starat se
postěžovat si/stěžovat si
potrvat/trvat
pozdravit/zdravit
pozvat/zvát

požádat/žádat

Kdo to zase polil mou čistou podlahu?
(Who was it that spilled water all over my clean floor?)

Nejdřív posypejte maso solí.
(First sprinkle salt over the meat.)

Dejte pozor, aby se při převážení nic nepoškodilo.
(Be careful that nothing gets damaged in moving.)

Potvrdil většinu toho, co jsem předtím slyšel.
(He confirmed most of what I had heard before.)

Podej mi, prosímtě, ten druhý časopis.
(Please hand me that other magazine.)

Byli tou zprávou tak překvapeni, že se dlouho nikdo ani nepohnul.
(They were so surprised by the news that for a long time no one even moved.)

pod-

This prefix carries the following four connotations:

1. An action proceeding "below" or "under" something

   podepsat se (IX,p)/podpisovat se (VII,i)
   (to sign one's name)

   podložit (II,p)/podkládat (I,i)
   (to put under, support)

2. A lesser degree of an action

   podcenit (II,p)/podceňovat (VII,i)
   (to underestimate)

3. A secret or improper action

   podvést (Va,p)/podvádět (III,i)
   (to deceive, cheat)

4. Taking under one's obligation

   podniknout (VI,p)/podnikat (I,i)
   (to undertake)

Kde se mám podepsat?
(Where should I sign my name?)

Podložte jí pod hlavu ještě jeden polštář.
(Put one more pillow under her head.)

Podceňovat někoho by v téhle situaci mohlo být nebezpečné.
(To underestimate anyone in this situation could be dangerous.)

Nedovedu si představit, že by nás chtěl podvést.
(I can't imagine that he would want to deceive us.)

Co podnikneme v případě, že nás tam nepustí.
(What will we do if they don't let us in there?)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing new verbs using the prefixes do- through pod-.

1. It showered briefly overnight (Use přes).
2. Milan married the daughter of one of my best friends in Prague in December of 1950.
3. The more you try to help that child, the more he talks back.
4. If you can wait, I'll confirm that for you in a moment.

5. I'm beginning to feel cold; please close the door all the way.
6. Never underestimate the power of women.
7. Do you mean (Use chtít) to imply that everything won't turn out well?
8. I hope you will forgive me for leaving (Use a simple že clause) before you returned from downtown.
9. She would be happy if her children were able to appreciate the value of modern art.
10. Whatever you do, don't imitate that man; he tells a lot of lies, makes a lot of promises and never does anything for you.
11. Who spilled milk all over the new clean tablecloth?
12. Although he puts in forty hours a week, he always does his work indifferently.
13. Would you hand me that blue shirt hanging on that chair?
14. When are you going to finish writing that letter? It's time that we were leaving for the movies.
15. Absolutely everyone should be able to differentiate good behavior from bad.
16. She told him that he would have to study hard before he could undertake such an assignment.
17. Why is it that (Use čím je to, že) many people abandon dogs and cats?
18. If we climb up a little higher, it'll be possible to see the mountains to the west from here.
19. It's impossible to deceive a good teacher; he knows exactly how well each student does his work (Use studovat).
20. As soon as he passed by her (Use kolem), he turned around and looked at her (Do not translate "at her").
21. You can help me by supporting (Introduce the clause with tím, že) her head with your arm.
22. She didn't wait long; she got married when she was seventeen.
23. The room couldn't contain all the furniture.
24. I'll be surprised if we can come to an agreement with him on the points we spoke about yesterday.
25. The number of visitors to that country will be limited, they say.

pro-

This prefix has four main connotations:

1. Action "through" space or time

prodat/prodávat

prominout/promíjet

projevit (II,p)/projevovat (VII,i)
(to manifest, display, demonstrate)

proniknout (VI,p)/pronikat (I,i)
(to penetrate, permeate)

prožít (VIII,p)/prožívat (I,i)
(to live through, experience)

2. Thoroughness of an action

prohledat (I,p)/
prohledávat (I,i)
(to search thoroughly)

promyslit (II,p)/
promýšlet (III,i)
(to deliberate, reflect on)

prohlédnout si/prohlížet si

prostudovat/studovat

3. Indulgence in an action to the point of loss or waste

prohrát (VIII,p)/
prohrávat (I,i)
(to gamble away, lose)

propít (VIII,p)/propíjet (III,i)
(to lose, squander by drinking)

4. Various kinds of public statements

prohlásit (II,p)/
prohlašovat (VII,i)
(to declare, state)

prohodit (II,p)
(to mention casually)

promluvit/promlouvat

Jak se ta nemoc projevuje?
(What are the symptoms of that illness?)

Všem zprávám, které sem pronikají, nelze věřit.
(It's impossible to believe all the news items that come through here.)

Prožili spolu několik šťastných let.
(They spent several happy years together.)

Než začneme, měli bychom si všechno pečlivě promyslit.
(Before we begin, we should think carefully about everything.)

Kolik zápasů jsme letos vlastně prohráli?
(Just how many fights did we lose this year?)

Co uděláme s těmi deseti dolary, které nám zbývají? Propíjeme je?)
(What shall we do with the ten dollars that remain? Shall we drink them up?)

Prohlásil veřejně, že nikomu nehrozí žádné nebezpečí.
(He declared publicly that no danger threatens anyone.)

Nemluvila mnoho, ale kdykoli něco prohodila, bylo to rozumné a zajímavé.
(She didn't talk much, but whenever she dropped a remark, it was reasonable and interesting.)

pře-

This prefix has four basic connotations:

1. An action proceeding "across" or "over" some space or object

přehlédnout (VI,p)/
přehlížet (III,i)
(to overlook, disregard;
look over)

přeložit/překládat
přerušit/přerušovat

přestat/přestávat
přestoupit/přestupovat
přesvědčit/přesvědčovat

převzít (Vb,p)
(to take over, assume)

2. Completeness, thoroughness of an action

přečíst/číst

přemýšlet

převládnout (VI,p)/převládat (I,i)
(to dominate)

3. Carrying an action to excess

přehánět

přejíst se (Irreg.,p)/
přejídat se (I,i)
(to overeat)

překonat (I,p)/překonávat (I,i)
(to surmount, overcome)

překvapit/překvapovat

přeplnit (II,p)/přeplňovat (VII,i)
(to overfill, overcrowd)

4. Repetition or change of an action, "again," "re-"

předělat (I,p)/předělávat (I,i)
(to re-do, re-make)

přehrát (VIII,p)/přehrávat (I,i)
(to re-play)

Dej pozor, abys něco nepřehlédl!
(Be careful not to overlook anything.)

Kdo to po něm převzal?
(Who took it over after him?)

Převládal názor, že nejlépe bude počkat.
(The predominant view was that it would be best to wait.)

Markéta vaří tak dobře, že se u ní obyčejně přejím.
(Markéta cooks so well that I usually overeat at her place.)

Museli jsme překonat všelijaké neočekávané potíže.
(We had to overcome all sorts of unexpected difficulties.)

Posluchárna byla přeplněna; někteří studenti museli stát na chodbě.
(The lecture hall was overcrowded; some students had to stand in the corridor.)

Leccos by se ovšem mohlo předělat; ale na to už nemáme čas.
(Of course, there's many a thing that could be done over, but we no longer have time for that.)

Chtěl bych si tu desku ještě jednou přehrát.
(I'd like to play that record once more.)

před-

This prefix has two primary meanings:

1. The spatial notion of "before"

předčíst (Va,p)/předčítat (I,i)
(to read aloud to someone)

předpokládat
představit si/představovat si

předstírat (I,i)
(to pretend, simulate, feign)

2. The temporal notion of "before"

předplatit (II,p)/
předplácet (III,i)
(to subscribe to, prepay)

předpovědět (irreg., p)/
předpovídat (I,i)
(to foretell, predict)

předvídat (I,i)
(to anticipate)

Ráda nám po večeři předcítala cokoli jí přislo do ruky.
(She liked to read to us after supper whatever came into her hands.)

Nepředstírej, že o tom nic nevíš.
(Don't pretend that you know nothing about that.)

Předplatil jsem si letos dvoje noviny.
(This year I have subscribed to two newspapers.)

Kdekdo mu předpovídá úspěch.
(Absolutely everyone predicts success for him.)

Něco podobného jsem bohužel předvídal.
(I unfortunately anticipated something like that.)

při-

This prefix has four different connotations:

1. Action proceeding "to" or "towards" something

přiblížit (I,p)/
přibližovat (VII,i)
(to bring/draw near)

přijmout/přijímat

připravit/připravovat

přistěhovat se (VII,p)
(to move in)

přiznat se (I,p)/přiznávat se (I,i)
(to confess, acknowledge)

2. Adding, fastening, joining

přibít/přibíjet

přibýt (Va,p)/přibývat (I,i)
(to increase, grow)

přidat (I,p)/přidávat (I,i)
(to add, contribute)

přikrýt/přikrývat
připomenout/připomínat
přizpůsobit/přizpůsobovat

3. Carrying out an action to a slight degree

připálit (II,p)/
připalovat (VII,i)
(to burn slightly, singe, scorch)

přivřít (Vb,p)/přivírat (I,i)
(to close partly, leave ajar)

4. Indulging in an action "a little more"

přikoupit (II,p)/
přikupovat (VII,i)
(to buy some more of something)

přispat si (irreg., p)
(to sleep a bit longer)

Nepřibližujte se příliš blízko k ohni.
(Don't come too close to the fire.)

Do našeho domu se přistěhovali dva Američané.
(Two Americans have moved into our house.)

Přiznám se, že o taková dramata nemám zájem.
(I confess that I have no interest in such dramas.)

Po dlouhých deštích přibylo v řece vody.
(After the prolonged rains the water in the river rose.)

Být vámi, přidal bych do té polévky trochu soli.
(If I were you, I'd add a little salt to this soup.)

Dnes se jí zase podařilo připálit mléko.
(Today she again succeeded in burning the milk.)

Nezavírejte dveře úplně, stačí když je přivřete.
(Don't close the door completely; it's enough if you leave it partly open.)

Chybí nám dvě velké sklenice na vodu, budeme si je muset přikoupit.
(Two large water glasses are missing; we'll have to buy some more.)

Neděle je jediný den, kdy si můžeme přispat.
(Sunday is the only day when we can sleep late.)

roz-

This prefix expresses four basic connotations:

1. Division, an action proceeding in various directions

rozbít/rozbíjet

rozdat (I,p)/rozdávat (I,i)
(to hand out, distribute)

rozdělit/rozdělovat
rozhodnout se/rozhodovat se
rozloučit/loučit

rozmyslet si/rozmýšlet si

rozsvítit (II,p)/rozsvěcet (III,i)
(to light up, illuminate, turn on)

rozšířit (II,p)/rozšiřovat (VII,i)
(to expand, spread, widen)

rozumět

rozvinout se (VI, p)/rozvíjet se (III,i)
(to develop, unfold)

rozzlobit se/zlobit se

2. The onset of an action followed by increasing intensity

rozesmát se (VIII,p)/
rozesmávat se (I,i)
(to burst out laughing)

rozhovořit se (II,p)/
rozhovořovat se (VII,i)
(to start talking)

3. Beginning an action and leaving it unfinished

rozdělat (I,p)/
rozdělávat (I,i)
(to begin doing and leave unfinished)

rozestavět (III,p)/
rozestavovat (VII,i)
(to begin to build and leave unfinished)

4. The resolution of an action

rozřešit (II,p)/řešit (II,i)
(to solve)

rozmluvit (II,p)/rozmlouvat (I,i)
(to dissuade, talk out of)

Zbyly vám nějaké lístky? Ne, všechny jsem je rozdal.
(Do you have any tickets left? No, I gave them all away.)

Rozsvit', prosímtě, není tu vidět.
(Turn on the light, please, we can't see here.)

Kdo to tady rozšiřuje zprávy o tom, že se příští pátek nebude pracovat?
(Who is it that's spreading the information that we won't be working next Friday?)

Nemá sice mnoho svých vlastních nápadů, ale dovede rozvíjet cizí myšlenky.
(It's true he doesn't have many ideas of his own, but he knows how to develop someone else's thoughts.)

Rozesmála se, když slyšela, že dostala první cenu.
(She burst out laughing when she heard that she had got first prize.)

Celý večer neřekl ani slovo a ted' se najednou rozhovořil.
(The whole evening he hasn't said a word, and now all of a sudden he started to talk.)

Mám rozdělány tři přednášky; doufám, že je do konce měsíce dopíši.
(I have three lectures partially done; I hope to finish writing them by the end of the month.)

Tahle budova už je víc než rok rozestavěná.
(This building has stood partially completed for more than a year now.)

Jsme tu od rána a dosud jsme nic nerozřešili.
(We've been here since morning, and we haven't solved a thing yet.)

Rozzlobil se, když slyšel, že to bude trvat ještě hodinu.
(He got angry when he heard that it would take an hour yet.)

s-

This prefix has three distinct connotations:

1. The notion "together"

sebrat/sbírat

sestavit (II,p)/
sestavovat (VII,i)
(to put together, compile, assemble)

setkat se/setkávat se

skládat se
srovnat/srovnávat

svolat (I,p)/svolávat (I,i)
(to call together, summon)

2. Action "down from" or "off of" a surface

seskočit (II,p)/
seskakovat (VII,i)
(to jump down)

setmět se/stmívat se

shodit (II,p)/sházet (III,i)
(to throw/knock down)

skrýt se (VIII,p)/skrývat se (I,i)
(to hide)

spadnout/padat

svléci (Va,p)/svlékat (I,i)
(to take off, undress)

3. Completion

skončit/končit
sníst
spálit/pálit

splnit (II,p)/splňovat (VII,i)
(to fulfill

spočítat/počítat
strávit/trávit
strpět/trpět

Bude třeba sestavit seznam těch, kdo nebudou moci přijet.
(It will be necessary to compile a list of those who will not be able to come.)

Příští schůze bude pravděpodobně svolána na středu.
(The next meeting will probably be scheduled for Wednesday.)

Jakmile nás uviděl, zastavil a seskočil s kola.
(As soon as he saw us, he stopped and jumped off his bike.)

Náhle vstal a přitom shodil se stolu knížku, která tam ležela.
(He got up suddenly and, in doing so, he knocked off a book that had been lying on the table.)

Všimla si, že cosi skrýval v zásuvce.
(She noticed that he was hiding something in the drawer.)

Svlékněte si kabát, je tu horko.
(Take off your coat, it's hot here.)

Co slíbí, to splní.
(Whatever he promises, he fulfills.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing new verbs using the prefixes pro- through s-.

1. After the fight he ran into the park and hid himself under the bushes.
2. Every year the number of patients in the hospital continues (Use stále) to increase.
3. He finally was forced to admit that he had gambled away all his money.

4. The manager called the workers together to explain that they would soon begin (Use impersonal expression) working again on that unfinished building.
5. When did that terrible family move into the apartment next door?
6. Sit down and try to help me solve this problem (Use úloha) the teacher gave us yesterday.
7. It was so hot in the sun that I told him to tak off his coat.
8. I can't seem (Use z nějakého důvodu) to finish this work; I think I'll have to do everything over again.
9. Around here (Use tu) the fear predominates that confusion will arise.
10. Who could have foretold that a car would have run into him on that day?
11. If you can surmount that difficulty, you'll have nothing to worry about.
12. Water penetrated as far as the basement and caused considerable damage.
13. My father really likes to sleep in on holidays.
14. Someone declared that all industries (Use singular) would be taken over by the republic next month.
15. The whole time she sat in silence; suddenly she started to talk.
16. Could you compile a list of all the people who subscribe to our newspaper?
17. When he was lighting his cigarette, he singed his hair.
18. My husband anticipates everything I do (Use perfective); when I emerged from the building, there he was standing in front of the entrance and waiting for me.
19. Our plans are developing slowly but surely; we expect to be in Prague sometime in April.
20. The day has come (Translate "has drawn near") when each one of us will be compelled to be concerned about nature.
21. Why does he continue (Use stále) to pretend that he doesn't like to watch television?
22. I'm sorry, I don't have a single cigarette; I've given them all out.
23. We searched the whole house, but we couldn't find out what he had done with my typewriter.
24. How do deficiencies of that type manifest themselves?
25. I wouldn't say that our expectations (Use verbal noun) were fulfilled; the train was overcrowded and we had a miserable trip.

u-

This prefix exhibits four principal connotations:

1. The notion of "removal," "away from"

ubrat (Vc,p)/ubírat (I,i)
(to take away)

ubýt (Va,p)/ubývat (I,i)
(to decrease, decline, subside)

ukrást (Va,p)/krást (Va,i)
(to steal, pilfer)

umřít/umírat

urazit (II,p)/urážet (III,i)
(to knock off; to offend, insult)

utéci/utíkat
utřít/utírat

2. Bringing about some quality or state

ujistit/ujišt'ovat
ukázat/ukazovat
uklidnit/uklidňovat

umožnit (II,p)/
umožňovat (VII,i)
(to make possible, enable)

upozornit/upozorňovat

určit/určovat

uskutečnit (II,p)/
uskutečňovat (VII,i)
(to bring about, realize)

utvořit/tvořit
uvážit/uvažovat
uvědomit si/uvědomovat si

3. The negative result of constant or repeated action

umluvit (II,p)/umlouvat (I,i)
(to talk someone down/to death)

upracovat se (VII,p)
(to tire oneself by work)

4. Completion

udělat/dělat
umazat/mazat
umýt/mýt
upadnout/padat

uslyšet/slyšet
uvařit/vařit
uvěřit/věřit
uvidět/vidět

uvítat/vítat

Ubrala z talíře trochu polévky, aby nebyl příliš plný.
(She took a little soup from the bowl so that it wouldn't be too full.)

Za poslední týden ubylo v řece hodně vody.
(During the last week the water in the river went down a lot.)

Musím to mít, i kdybych to měl ukrást.
(I've got to have it, even if I have to steal it.)

Spadl mi se stolu budík; přitom se nejen rozbil, ale urazil také kousek židle.
(My alarm clock fell off the table; when this happened, not only was it smashed but it also knocked off a piece of the chair.)

Vaše pomoc jí umožní dokončit studia.
(Your support will enable her to finish her studies.)

Ne všechny z jeho původních plánů se uskutnečnily.
(Not all of his original plans were realized.)

K Jarmile raději nepůjdeme; ta by nás umluvila.
(We'd better not go to Jarmila's; she'd talk us to death.)

Mnoho práce tam nebude; rozhodně se neupracujeme.
(There won't be much work there; we certainly won't tire ourselves working.)

v-

This prefix has essentially only one meaning:

1. Action proceeding "into" something

vniknout (VI,p)/vnikat (I,i)
(to penetrate)

vsadit (II,p)/vsazovat (VII,i)
(to put/set in, implant;
reflexive = to bet, wager)

vstoupit (II,p)/vstupovat (VII,i)
(to step into, enter)

Otevřeným oknem vnikala do pokoje hustá chladná mlha.
(A heavy cold mist was coming into the room through an open window.)

Vsadím se, že to je ta samá hra, kterou jsme už viděli.
(I bet that's the same play we've already seen.)

První vstoupil do místnosti vysoký muž v hnědém klobouku.
(The first to enter the room was a tall man in a brown hat.)

vy-

This prefix has five connotations:

1. The concept of "out" in all its nuances

vybrat si/vybírat si

vydat (I,p)/vydávat (I,i)
(to publish, release, emit)

vyhodit (II,p)/vyházet (III,i)
(to throw out/away)

vyhrát (VIII,p)/vyhrávat (I,i)
(to win, gain)

vypadat
vypadnout/vypadávat
vypravovat
vyskákat
vyslovit/vyslovovat
vyspat se
vysvětlit/vysvětlovat
vystoupit/vystupovat
vyznat se

2. An action proceeding "upwards"

vybudovat (VII,p)/
budovat (VII,i)
(to build up)

vylézt/lézt

3. The concept of "off" (as opposed to za-)

vypnout (Vb,p)/vypínat (I,i)
(to turn off, disconnect)

4. Application of some action to the inner surface of something

vymalovat (VII,p)/malovat
(to decorate an interior)

vyplnit (II,p)/vyplňovat (VII,i)
(to fill out, stuff)

5. Completion

vycvičit/cvičit
vyčistit/čistit
vyfotografovat/fotografovat
vykonat/konat

vypít/pít
vyrůst/růst
vystačit/stačit
vytvořit/tvořit

Během pěti let vydal dvě významné knihy.
(In the course of five years he published two important books.)

Tyhle staré boty budu muset vyhodit, jsou rozbité a kromě toho jsou mi také malé.
(I'll have to throw out these old shoes; they are dilapidated, and,besides, they are also too small.)

Kdo uteče, ten vyhraje.
(He who runs away, wins.)

V posledním roce se v Praze hodně stavělo; byla vybudována celá řada nových moderních domů.
(There's been a lot of building in Prague in the last year; a whole series of new modern houses has been put up.)

Mohl bys vypnout rádio?
(Could you turn off the radio?)

Vymalovali jsme si celý dům sami.
(We decorated the whole house by ourselves.)

Jednu polovinu mísy jsme vyplnili jablky, druhou hruškami.
(One half of the dish we filled with apples, the other with pears.)

Vyplňte jen ty části přihlášky, které se hodí.
(Fill out only those parts of the application which are relevant.)

vz-

This prefix has only one essential meaning:

1. An action proceeding "upwards"

vstát/vstávat

vzdát se (I,p)/vzdávat se (I,i)(něčeho)
(to give up, surrender)

vzdychnout (VI,p)/vzdychat (I,i)
(to sigh)

vzniknout/vznikat

vzpomenout si/vzpomínat si

vzrůst/růst

Nevzdávejte se naděje, nakonec všechno dobře skončí.
(Don't give up hope; in the end everything will turn out well.)

Vzdychala a občas si utírala oči kapesníkem.
(She sighed and from time to time wiped her eyes with a handkerchief.)

za-

This prefix has seven distinct connotations:

1. Action proceeding "behind" some object

zalézt (Va,p)/zalézat (I,i)
(to crawl behind, hide, withdraw)

zastoupit (II,p)/ zastupovat (VII,i)
(to substitute for, take someone's place)

2. Action "into," "penetrating," "fusing," "on" (as opposed to vy-)

zabývat se
zajímat
záležet

zalít (VIII,p)/zalévat (I,i)
(to water)

zamilovat se (VII,p)/ zamilovávat se (I,i)
(to fall in love)

zapamatovat si

zapsat (IX,p)/zapisovat (VII,i)
(to write down, record)

zapnout (Vb,p)/zapínat (I,i)
(to turn on, switch on)

zarazit/zarážet
zařídit/zařizovat
zasadit/sázet
zasáhnout/zasahovat
zaujmout/zaujímat
záviset

3. Action "removing" or "taking away"

zabavit (II,p)/ zabavovat (VII,i)
(to seize, confiscate)

zabít (VIII,p)/zabíjet (III,i)
(to kill, dispatch)

zapomenout/zapomínat

4. Action "protecting," "covering," "concealing," or "isolating" something

zabránit/zabraňovat

zachránit (II,p)/ zachraňovat (VII,i)
(to save, rescue)

zakrýt (VIII,p)/zakrývat (I,i)
(to cover, conceal)

zastavit se /zastavovat se

zavřít/zavírat

5. Action partially effecting the meaning of the root

zabarvit (II,p)/zabarvovat (VII,i)
(to tint)

6. The beginning and limited duration of an action

začít/začínat

zapálit (II,p)/zapalovat (VII,i)
(to ignite, light up)

7. Completion

zablýsknout se/blýskat se
zabolet/bolet
zafoukat/foukat
zahrát/hrát
zahřmět/hřmět
zaklepat/klepat
zalhat/lhát
zaplakat/plakat

zaplatit/platit
zapochybovat/pochybovat
zasmát se/smát se
zatřást/třást
zatvářit se/tvářit se
zavolat/volat
zazelenat se/zelenat se
zazpívat/zpívat

Alík zalezl pod stůl a nechtěl odtud vylézt.
(Alík crawled under the table and didn't want to come out.)

Pojedete tam sám nebo vás bude někdo zastupovat?
(Will you go there yourself or will someone take your place?)

Než odjedeme, budeme muset zalít všechny květiny v domě.
(Before we leave, we'll have to water all the flowers in the house.)

Zamiloval se do ní asi před rokem; byla to láska na první pohled.
(He fell in love with her about a year ago; it was love at first sight.)

Do kterého seznamu jste zapsala mé jméno?
(In what list have you entered my name?)

Byl to stroj, který se zapínal a vypínal sám, takže se o něj nemusel nikdo starat.
(It was a mechanism that turned itself on and off so that no one needed to look after it.)

Neberte si s sebou žádné ovoce, protože by vám je mohli na hranicích zabavit.
(Don't take any fruit along with you because it could be taken away from you at the border.)

Naštěstí se nikdo nezabil.
(Fortunately, no one got killed.)

Z dvaceti se zachránili jen dva.
(Out of twenty people only two were saved.)

Tenhle ubrus je bohužel malý; zakryje jen polovinu stolu.
(I'm afraid this tablecloth is too small; it only covers half the table.)

Myslíte, že okraj bude dobře vypadat, když bude zabarven červeně?
(Do you think that the border will look nice if it is tinted red?)

Zapálil jí cigaretu poslední zápalkou, kterou u sebe měl.
(He lit her cigarette with the last match that he had with him.)

Exercise

Translate into Czech the following sentences containing new verbs using the prefixes u- through za-.

1. In industry it's impossible to build up anything without money.
2. Did someone steal something from you?
3. Enter without knocking.
4. She wrote down carefully every word of the lecturer (Use present active participle).
5. After a few steps he stopped and looked around.
6. This year almost no novels are being published.
7. Do automobiles really make possible fast-moving (Use rychlý) traffic?
8. I'll perhaps never penetrate (Use with do) some of those problems.
9. A misunderstanding actually saved us.
10. I bet (Use second person plural imperative) that she won't get married.
11. Don't throw anything out yet; wait until mother gets back.
12. If I had to do it all by myself, I'd work myself to death.
13. Sighing (Use verbal noun) won't help you; better (Use raději) start working.
14. When did we last water the yard?
15. Professor Němec didn't lecture today; one of his colleagues substituted for him.
16. Could you (2 sg.) explain to me who killed who?
17. Do we have it won (Use past passive participle after mít)?
18. Don't be offended, please; she didn't mean (Use myslit) it seriously.
19. If I were you, I'd decorate this room blue or green.
20. He hated to give up his views even if they weren't correct.
21. Be careful not to set fire to anything.
22. The moon was covered by dark clouds.
23. Would you please turn on the radio?
24. Even if we take away two more (Use další) pieces, half will still be left.
25. Although his strength (Use Gen.pl.) was declining (Use neuter singular) rapidly, he didn't stop working.

READING SELECTION

Včera se mi stala nemilá věc. Chtěl jsem se v poledne rychle najíst a zaskočil jsem si tedy do jedné jídelny blízko kanceláře, kde pracuji. Jen jsem si sedl, objevil se u mého stolu Pavel. Tvářil se jako by byl hrozně překvapen, že mě tam vidí. Bylo mi to divné, nevěděl jsem, jak si to mám vysvětlit, ale než jsem se mohl na důvod jeho překvapení zeptat, Pavel si ke mně přisedl a začal o něčem mluvit. Když jsme dojedli, Pavel si chtěl zapálit cigaretu. Neměl však zápalky. Chtěl jsem mu tedy nabídnout své. Já, jak víte, sice nekouřím, ale zápalky mám u sebe vždycky. Většina mých přátel totiž kouří a, jak jste si jistě všiml, většina lidí, kteří kouří, chodí po světě bez zápalek. A někdy i bez cigaret. Proto mé zápalky často konají užitečnou službu.

Včera se však něco stalo a já jsem své zápalky nemohl najít. V té kapse u kalhot, kde je obyčejně nosím, nebyly. Prohledal jsem tedy ostatní kapsy u kalhot, ale zápalky nebyly nikde. Pak jsem začal hledat v kapsách kabátu. Věc po věci jsem z nich vytahoval, co jsem v nich měl. Kapesník, drobné, notýsek, lístky s všelijakými poznámkami, dopisy. Všechno jsem to pečlivě pokládal před sebe na stůl. Pavel mě celou tu dobu se zájmem pozoroval. Najednou vzal do ruky jeden z dopisů, které jsem vytáhl z kapsy, a mlčky mi jej držel před očima. Bylo vidět, že čeká na nějaké vysvětlení. Pochopil jsem, o co jde, když jsem na dopise uviděl jeho adresu napsanou mou rukou a uvědomil si s trapným pocitem, že to byl dopis, který jsem Pavlovi napsal před týdnem, ale pak zapomněl hodit do poštovní schránky. Bylo to tím trapnější, že jsem v tom neposlaném dopise, který jsem týden nosil v kapse, Pavlovi oznamoval z Brna, kde jsem tehdy byl na návštěvě, že se vrátím do Prahy o čtyři dny dříve, než jsem měl v úmyslu. Jinými slovy, Pavel neměl zdání o tom, že už jsem zase zpátky v Praze. Ted' mi bylo jasné, proč se tak divil, když vstoupil do jídelny a viděl mě tam. Snažil jsem se mu hned všechno vysvětlit, ale on se zasmál a řekl mi: Nic mi nemusíš vysvětlovat. Já nejsem o nic lepší. Podívej se. Včera jsem ti napsal dopis, ale ještě jsem se nedostal k tomu, abych ti jej poslal. Tady je. Vezmi si jej, aspoň nebudu muset platit za známku. A opravdu vytáhl z kapsy svého kabátu dopis pro mne a podal mi jej. Ale abych nezapomněl. Zápalky jsem pochopitelně u sebe neměl. Pavel si je nakonec musel vypůjčit od souseda u vedlejšího stolu.

* * *

Někteří lidé dovedou neobyčejně dobře napodobovat druhé. Předvedou vám, jak kdo chodí, jaký má hlas, zvyky, výraz obličeje, jak mluví, jak se směje. Někdy je to velká legrace pozorovat někoho, kdo to umí. Člověk si přitom především uvědomí, že je nemožné brát všechno úplně vážně. Hlavně sebe a své oblíbené způsoby. Kromě toho jsme přitom upozorněni na některé rysy jednání nebo charakteru druhých, které nám předtím ušly. Je-li to však legrace pro ostatní, při napodobování se zřídka baví ten kdo je napodobován. Lidé totiž dovedou ocenit pravdu, když běží o druhé, ale těžko snášejí pravdu o sobě. To neznamená, že by bylo těžší znát sebe, než znát druhé. Je to prostě jen trapnější.

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1. Které časopisy pravidelně čtete?
2. Čárky a český pravopis.
3. Posloucháte rádio?
4. Vsázíte se rád?
5. Dovedete někoho napodobit?
6. Co všechno si zapisujete?
7. Odepisujete na dopisy okamžitě?
8. Co lze a co nelze předpovědět?
9. Co oceňujete na svých známých a na lidech vůbec?
10. Splněná nebo nesplněná očekávání.
11. Dnešní přeplněný svět.
12. Přispíte si rád, když k tomu máte příležitost?
13. Co zajímavého jste právě prožil?
14. Co vám umožňuje být optimistou?
15. Kde se obyčejně nejvíc načekáte?
16. Jak se projevuje vaše nadšení pro něco?
17. Které nebezpečí vám nehrozí?
18. V jakém podnikání máte štěstí?
19. Myslíte, že literární díla se mají předčítat nahlas?
20. Napětí mezi lidmi a jak je odstranit.
21. Promýšlíte si vždycky to, co máte udělat?
22. Vyhazujete věci, které nepoužíváte, okamžitě?
23. Spíte s polštáři nebo bez polštářů?
24. Co všechno byste dovedl sestavit?
25. Mohou někdy slova zastoupit jednání?

APPENDIX
FOR
COLLOQUIAL CZECH

This section of the textbook is designed to introduce the student to the basic features of Colloquial Czech or Obecná Čeština. For this purpose a total of five lessons have been compiled that present the salient characteristics of Obecná Čeština against the background of Literary Czech or Spisovná Čeština. Of these lessons the first two describe the phonetic and inflectional peculiarities of Obecná Čeština and include conversion exercises for their mastery by the student. The last three lessons concentrate on OČ vocabulary and feature dialogues, more conversion exercises, and reading selections. The reading selections are particularly significant in that they illustrate how OČ and SČ are combined in literature in order to gain subtle stylistic effects.

LESSON I

Most of the differences between SČ and OČ are phonetic differences, differences in individual sounds. For the most part these differences exist because SČ represents the development of the language as arrested several centuries ago, while OČ is the same language today that has naturally undergone some changes. Even though the same sound changes may affect stems as well as inflectional endings, for clarity and convenience changes appearing in stems will be discussed separately from changes affecting inflectional endings. We present first those sound changes that manifest themselves in stems. We have also listed those words from the main body of the textbook where these changes might be expected but do not occur. Usually such words are borrowings or are purely SČ words not used in OČ. In some cases such words represent special problems that will be discussed under the various parts of speech. All changes can be represented by the standard Czech alphabet.

1. é > ý — No change

a. Nouns

délka > dýlka	dešt'	Note the shortening of the stem vowel that occurs in OČ.
haléř > halýř	meno	
mléko > mlýko	leto	
polévka > polývka	lék	
	lékař	

b. Adjectives

None	konkrétní

c. Verbs

létat > lýtat	lézt	See Lesson II of this appendix.
prohlédnout > prohlýdnout	nést	
	utéci	
	vést	
	vézt	

2. ý > ej (and í > ej randomly, especially after c, z)

a. Nouns

mýdlo > mejdlo	rýma
týden > tejden	notýsek
výhoda > vejhoda	
výlet > vejlet	
výsledek > vejsledek	
výška > vejška	

b. Adjectives

domýšlivý > domejšlivej	výborný
	významný

c. Adverbs

zítra	zejtra
pozítří	pozejtří

d. Verbs

No change

blýskat se	>	blejskat se
být	>	bejt
cítit	>	cejtit
hýbat	>	hejbat
krýt	>	krejt
lít	>	lejt
mýlit se	>	mejlit se
rozmýšlet si	>	rozmejšlet si

3. o- > vo-

No change

a. Nouns

oblek	>	voblek
obraz	>	vobraz
odpověď'	>	vodpověď'
okno	>	vokno
otázka	>	votázka

b. Adjectives

obvyklý	>	vobvyklej
obyčejný	>	vobyčejnej
osobní	>	vosobní
ostatní	>	vostatní
ošklivej	>	voškliivej

c. Verbs

oblékat se	>	voblýkat se
očekávat	>	vočekávat
odjet	>	vodjet
oznámit	>	voznámit
ozývat se	>	vozejvat se

d. Adverbs

občas	>	vobčas	ovšem
odtud	>	vodtud	
opravdu	>	vopravdu	

4. ú- > ou-

No change

a. Nouns

účel	>	oučel	únor
úkol	>	oukol	úvaha
úspěch	>	ouspěch	
úterý	>	outerý	

b. Adjectives

úspěšný	>	ouspěšnej	účinný
úzký	>	ouzkej	

c. Verbs	No change
None	účastnit se

We next turn to a series of changes, most of them phonetic changes, that occur among the inflectional endings for nouns, adjectives and verbs. We shall present only the endings that have undergone some change. If an ending is not mentioned, you can assume that it is identical to the SČ form.

1. Masculine Nouns

Only the dative, instrumental, and locative plural endings are involved here.

a. Dative Plural

The long -ů- before the final -m is shortened; this is a general phonetic change, as you will see.

doktorům > doktorum
domům > domum
dopisům > dopisum
keřům > keřum
mužům > mužum
pokojům > pokojum

b. Instrumental Plural

The OČ ending is -ama for hard stems and -ema for soft stems. The -ma portion (an old dual ending) has spread to all types of Czech nouns.

doktory > doktorama
domy > domama
dopisy > dopisama
keři > keřema
muži > mužema
pokoji > pokojema

c. Locative Plural

There are two special developments here. In order to avoid palatalization, stems ending in velar consonants (-h, -ch, -k) use the ending -ách; and OČ shows no concern about the sequence -eCech (where -C- = any consonant).

Češích > Čechách
dialozích > dialogách
kolezích > kolegách
parcích > parkách
hotelích > hotelech
kostelích > kostelech
lesích > lesech
sklepích > sklepech

2. Neuter Nouns

Here too only the dative, instrumental, and locative plural forms are affected.

a. Dative Plural

Both long -ů- and long -í- are shortened before the final -m.

kolům > kolum
městům > městum
perům > perum

mořím > mořim
polím > polim
nádražím > nádražim

b. Instrumental Plural

The ending here is -ama for hard stems, -ema for soft stems, and -íma for nouns in -í.

koly > kolama
městy > městama
pery > perama

moři > mořema
poli > polema
nádražími > nádražíma

c. Locative Plural

Nouns whose stems end in a hard consonant may have either the regular SČ ending -ech or the ending -ách.

kolech/kolách
městěch/městách
perech/perách

3. Feminine Nouns

The dative plural and instrumental plural forms are practically uniformly changed here, and there are a few special considerations for feminine nouns of the type síla/práce and kost/radost.

a. Dative Plural

Long -í- before -m is shortened, -em uniformly changes to -im, and -ám may or may not be shortened.

knihám/kniham
matkám/matkam
pravdám/pravdam
ženám/ženam

chvílím > chvílim
prácím > prácim
zemím > zemim
židlím > židlim

kostem > kostim
nocím > nocim
skříním > skřínim
věcem > věcim

b. Instrumental Plural

All endings, -ami, -emi, -mi, change to -ama, -ema, -ma, but the ending -ma may also appear in the variant -ima.

knihami > knihama
pravdami > pravdama
ženami > ženama

růžemi > růžema
zeměmi > zeměma
židlemi > židlema

básněmi > básněma
kancelářemi > kancelářema
skříněmi > skříněma

pamět'mi > pamět'ma/pamětima
radostmi > radostma/radostima
věcmi > věcma/věcima

c. Locative Plural

The ending -ech has been replaced by -ích.

kostech > kostích
radostech > radostích
věcech > věcích

The locative plural of old duals adds -ch:

nohou > nohouch
rukou > rukouch

d. Nominative and Accusative Singular

Feminine nouns that end in a hard -t in the nominative and accusative singular soften this -t'.

část > část'
kost > kost'
nenávist > nenávist'
radost > radost'

e. Nouns Whose Stem Vowel May Shorten

In OČ, words like brána, chvíle, louka shorten the stem vowel only in the genitive plural just as in SČ. In SČ we encountered only two words that shorten the stem vowel elsewhere, i.e., in the instrumental singular and in the dative, instrumental, and locative plural, práce and síla. This shortening does not occur in OČ.

4. Adjectives

Practically all the developments here too are the result of phonetic changes. We list only those forms where changes have occurred. Study the following partial paradigms and relate the individual forms to the changes already discussed.

a. Hard Adjectives

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All Genders
Nom.	dobr-ej	dobr-ý		dobr-ý
Gen.	dobr-ýho		dobr-ý	dobr-ejch
Dat.	dobr-ýmu		dobr-ý	dobr-ejm
Acc.	dobr-ej/-ýho	dobr-ý		dobr-ý
Instr.	dobr-ym			dobr-ejma
Loc.	dobr-ym		dobrý	dobr-ejch

b. Soft Adjectives

Note that even though there is a hard consonant before the final -í- in cizí, this -í- does not shift to -ej; in other words, the identity of soft adjectives is preserved.

	Singular	Plural
	Masc./Neut.	All Genders
Dat.		cizim/prvnim
Instr.	cizim/prvnim	cizíma/prvníma
Loc.	cizim/prvnim	

5. Verbs (Classes I-IV and Irregular Verbs)

There are two general points to make before discussing the idiosyncracies of Classes I-IV. The perfect participles have only one generalized form in the plural for all genders which we shall write with a -y: dávaly, nosily, sázely, viděly, nesly, minuly, kupovaly, myly, psaly. The only other participles that occur in OČ are the past passive participles and they are found exclusively in the long forms whether they are used in the predicate or attributively before nouns. They are declined just like regular adjectives in OČ.

Only the first singular and third plural forms are affected in Classes I-IV. The familiar shortening of the vowel before -m occurs in the first singular, while several alternatives are possible in the third plural, but shortening or loss of the final -í in the combination -jí is the most consistent development.

a. Class I

First Singular	Third Plural
dávám > dávam	dávají > dávaj/dávaji
dělám > dělam	dělají > dělaj/dělaji
mám > mam	mají > maj/maji

b. Class II

cítím > cejtim	cítí > cejtí/cejtěj/cejtěji
nosím > nosim	nosí > nosí/nosej/noseji
prosím > prosim	prosí > prosí/prosej/proseji

The verb půjčit and its derivatives become pučit, pučim, pučte, pučil, etc. in all cases.

c. Class III

přicházím > přicházim   přicházejí > přicházej/přicházeji
sázím > sázim   sázejí > sázej/sázeji
umím > umim   umějí > uměj/uměji

d. Class IV

slyším > slyšim   slyší > slyšej/slyšeji/slyší
stojím > stojim   stojí > stojej/stojeji/stojí
vidím > vidim   vidí > viděj/viději/vidí

The verb stát becomes stuj, stujme, stujte in the imperative.

e. Irregular Verbs

Observe carefully the various OČ forms found among the following verbs;

být: Present tense: sem, si/seš, je, sme, ste, sou;
First plural perfective present: budem
First plural conditional form: bysme

vědět: Present tense: 1st sg. vim; 3rd pl. ví/věděj

spát: Present tense: 1st sg. spim; 3rd.pl. spí/spěj/spěji

jíst: Present tense: 1st sg. jim; 3rd.pl. jí; Perf.part. jed

chtít: Alternate infinitive, chtět; 3rd pl. chtí/chtěj/chtěji

CONVERSION EXERCISE

On the basis of the sound changes and the morphological changes discussed in Lesson I, convert the following SČ sentences into their OČ equivalents;

1. Zítra odpoledne tam určitě musíme být.
2. Mám takový dojem, že to nezařídí (3rd pl.).
3. Tři obložené chlebíčky, prosím!
4. Bude prý[1] se to konat někde jinde.
5. Člověk s jeho názory musí, pochopitelně, mít potíže.
6. Velká část města je na druhém břehu.
7. Příliš[2] milé jí to nebylo; to je jasné.
8. Až projdete pokoji, podívejte se i do kuchyně.
9. Oni na to nemají náladu.
10. Vám se to říká,[3] ale co mám dělat já?
11. Venku se blýská; děti, nezůstávejte[4] u toho otevřeného okna!
12. Měli tam spoustu všelijakých jiných jídel.
13. Bydlel jsi někdy v tichém domě?
14. Byla tam jen samá děvčata.

15. Přemýšlejí o tom, co by si měli koupit.
16. Pavlovi se líbí jen nová auta.
17. Na rukou měla krásné bílé rukavice.
18. Jak se cítíš?
19. Celá skříň byla plná úplně stejných šatů; jen jedny se lišily od ostatních.
20. Oblékej se, budeme muset brzy jít.
21. Peníze by bral, ale o povinnostech nechce slyšet.
22. Divím se,[5] že nás o to prosí (3rd pl.).
23. S takovými problémy si rady nevím.
24. Myslíte, že nám opravdu dají pokoj?
25. Nemusíte se omlouvat, já vím, že to není lehké.
26. Podle všeho to oznámili jen příbuzným.
27. Neměli bychom si pospíšit?
28. My jsme[6] přišli první, tak proč bychom měli čekat?
29. To je omyl, tady žádní studenti nebydlí.
30. Co máme dělat s židlemi? Na chodbě na ně není místo.
31. Rodiče z tebe příliš velkou radost mít nebudou.
32. Prosím vás, nemáte u sebe drobné?
33. Pane správci,[7] já se vám divím, že můžete být tak nepraktický.
34. Nádražím ve velkých městech obyčejně něco chybí: bud' nejsou hezká nebo nejsou moderní.
35. Dospělým lidem by podobné věci měly být samozřejmé.
36. Šetřete penězi, jednou se vám budou hodit.
37. Ve sklepích se často najdou docela dobré věci.
38. Pane Holane,[8] neměli bychom zavolat lékaře?
39. S Krámským[9] ses tenkrát neznal?
40. Byl celý nešt'astný; běhal[10] sem a tam po bytě a něco zoufale hledal.
41. Víš co jsme nekoupili? Mýdlo.
42. To je otrava. On se tam nikdo neozývá.
43. Chodí oni vůbec někam? Vypadá to jako že celý čas jen sedí doma.
44. Už je úterý a my pořád děláme jako bychom nic nevěděli.
45. Doufám, že si to Valouch s Mrázem nerozmyslí. Protože rozmyslí-li[11] si to, nebudeme mít dost peněz.
46. Ty máš pěkné příbuzné!
47. V jedné scéně měla na sobě dlouhý černý plášt'.
48. Nic takového jsme nečekali.
49. To se mýlíš; nezmínil se o žádných kolezích.
50. Malá písmena by tady tak dobře nevypadala jako velká.
51. Jiří i Pavel vědí, kde to je.
52. Chtějí to vůbec odložit?
53. Mám hlad, od rána jsem nejedl.
54. Neříkali jaké plány mají? Spí u rodičů nebo jinde?
55. Rád bych věděl, proč tady návštěvníci smějí jezdit na kolech.

NOTES

1 Put prý in the initial position.

2 Use moc for příliš.

3 The stem vowel shortens in all forms of this verb: říkat.

4 The vowel of the prefix shortens: zustávat/zustat.

5 Use the emphatic particle to in initial position.

6 Omit the auxiliary here; it is frequently left out when the pronoun is present.

7 Use here the phrase *Pane správec*; note that this type of masculine noun frequently adopts a nominative case form like *otec*. Note also that in OČ combinations with *pane* do not require the vocative of the accompanying noun.

8 See note 7.

9 Personal names are usually not affected by OČ sound changes (*Pane Opatrný, bud'te vopatrnej.*).

10 Use the OČ equivalent for *létat* here.

11 Replace the *-li* particle by the word *jesli*.

LESSON II

This lesson extends the discussion of OČ forms to adverbs, pronouns, the remaining classes of verbs, and to some irregular nouns. Once again the material will be presented in accordance with the parts of speech.

1. Nouns

We have only to account here for some slightly deviant paradigms.

a. Masculine Nouns

All nouns here display the expected changes in the dative and instrumental plural, but the nominative plural constitutes a problem: nouns with an alternate plural in -ové and nouns in -telé shorten the -é, but other nouns in -é change to -i.

den: Dpl dnum, Ipl dnama
tejden: Dpl tejdnum, Ipl tejdnama
rytmus: Dpl rytmum, Ipl rytmama

král: Npl králove, Dpl králum, Ipl králama
muž: Npl mužove, Dpl mužum, Ipl mužema
otec: Npl otcove, Dpl otcum, Ipl otcema
pán: Npl pánove, Dpl pánum, Ipl pánama
syn: Npl synove, Dpl synum, Ipl synama

přítel: Npl přátele, Dpl přátelum, Ipl přátelema
učitel: Np. učitelove (sic!) Dpl učitelum, Ipl učitelema

Američan: Npl Američani, Dpl Američanum, Ipl Američanama
soused: Npl sousedi, Dpl sousedum, Ipl sousedama

hrdina: Npl hrdinove, Dpl hrdinum, Ipl hrdinama
kolega: Npl kolegove, Dpl kolegum, Ipl kolegama
optimista: Npl optimisti, Dpl optimistum, Ipl optimistama
pesimista: Npl pesimisti, Dpl pesimistum, Ipl pesimistama

správce/
správec: Npl správcove, Dpl správcum, Ipl správcema

kamen(sic!): Gsg kamena, D/Lsg kamenu, Dpl kamenum, Ipl kamenama
pramen: Gsg pramena, D/Lsg pramenu, Dpl pramenum, Ipl pramenama

b. Neuter Nouns

Except for nouns of mixed declensional patterns where no alternate forms are allowed in the singular, practically the only changes are the usual ones observed in the dative and instrumental plural.

rameno: Gsg ramena, D/Lsg ramenu, Dpl ramenum, Ipl ramenama
but note G/Lpl ramenouch

---

děvče: Dpl děvčatum, Ipl děvčatama
zvíře: Dpl zvířatum, Ipl zvířatama

---

centrum: Dpl centrum, Ipl centrama
studium: Dpl studiim, Ipl studiema

---

drama: Dpl dramatum, Ipl dramatama

2. Adjectives

There are just a few special remarks about short adjectives and comparatives.

a. Short Adjectives

Only four adjectives have short forms in OČ, but only in the masculine singular.

hotov
zdráv
zvědav
živ

b. Comparative Adjectives

The SČ distribution between -ší forms and -ejší forms is for the most part maintained in OČ with the following several exceptions:

bohatší > bohatější
čistší > čistější
hustší > hustější
prostší > prostější
slabší > slabější
snazší > snadnější
tlustší > tlustější

3. Adverbs (Comparative)

Both adverbs in *-e* and adverbs in *-eji* require some comment. The former lose the final *-e* and the latter substitute the final *-i* with the consonant *-c*.

blíže > blíž
déle > dýl
lépe > lýp
méně > mýň

níže > níž
šíře > šíř
úže > oužejc (note!)
výše > vejš

chytřeji > chytřejc
jasněji > jasnějc
nověji > novějc
pomaleji > pomalejc

raději > rači (note!)
slaběji > slabějc
tišeji > tišejc
ubožeji > ubožejc

4. Pronouns

For the most part pronouns exhibit the same features as the adjectives. Again we list below only those forms that are different from their corresponding SČ forms.

a. Personal Pronouns

The first person singular form in the Genitive/Accusative is only *mě*; in other words, the SČ form *mne* does not exist in OČ.

The instrumental case forms for the first person and second person plural are respectively: *náma*, *váma*.

The third person forms are somewhat more complex. Note that *něj* below is used only with prepositions.

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural
Nom.	von	vono	vona	voni
Gen.	něj (only with prep.)			jich/jejich
Acc.	něj (only with prep.)	ho		
Instr.	jim			jima
Loc.	něm/ňom			

b. Interrogative Pronouns

The instrumental case forms of kdo and co are kym and čim, respectively.

The locative case forms of co may be čem or čom.

c. Possessive Pronouns

	Singular		
	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
Nom.	muj/tvuj/svuj	mý/moje, tvý/tvoje, svý/svoje	
Gen.	mýho/tvýho/svýho		mý/tvý/svý
Dat.	mýmu/tvýmu/svýmu		mý/tvý/svý
Acc.			mou/mojí, tvou/tvojí, svou/svojí
Instr.	mym/tvym/svym		mou/mojí, tvou/tvojí, svou/svojí
Loc.	mym/tvym/svym		mý/tvý/svý

	Plural
	All Genders
Nom.	mý/moje, tvý/tvoje, svý/svoje
Gen.	mejch/tvejch/svejch
Dat.	mejm/tvejm/svejm
Acc.	mý/moje, tvý/tvoje, svý/svoje
Loc.	mejch/tvejch/svejch

	m/n sg	f sg	Plural
Nom.			naše/vaše
Acc.		naší/vaší	
Instr.	našim/vašim		

	m/n sg	Plural
Dat.		čim/jejim
Instr.	čim/jejim	
Loc.	čim/jejim	

d. Demonstrative Pronouns

These pronouns are essentially the same as they are in SČ: ten/ta/to = "that," tendle/tadle/todle = "this" (note the -dle instead of -hle), and tamten/tamta/tamto = "yonder." The changes recorded below for ten/ta/to are the same for the other two pronouns.

	Singular		Plural
	Masc/Neut.	Fem.	All Genders
Nom.			ty
Gen.		tý	
Dat.		tý	
Instr.	tim		těma
Loc.		tý	

e. The Particularizing Pronoun

The pronoun jeden is declined just as ten/ta/to above.

	Singular		Plural
	Masc./Neut.	Fem.	All Genders
Nom.			jedny
Gen.		jedný	
Dat.		jedný	
Acc.			jedny
Instr.	jednim		jednima
Loc.		jedný	

f. The Inclusive Pronoun

The inclusive pronoun všechen features some special complexities. Pay particular attention to the nominative-accusative neuter singular and the nominative plural animate masculine. In the latter case the form všichní is used in isolation unaccompanied by a following noun, všichni is used with nouns that display a change in the final consonant as in vojáci (soldiers), and všechny is used elsewhere.

	Singular			Plural	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc. Anim.	All Genders
Nom.		všecko		všichní/všichni/všechny	všechny
Gen.			všechný		
Dat.			všechný		
Acc.		všecko		všechny	
Instr.	vším		všechnou	všema	
Loc.	všem/všom		všechný		

g. The Relative Pronoun kerej

As a relative pronoun OČ uses both kterej and kerej with the latter predominating. It exhibits the same inflectional changes as a regular adjective.

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All Genders
Nom.	ker-ej	ker-ý		ker-ý
Gen.	ker-ýho		ker-ý	ker-ejch
Dat.	ker-ýmu		ker-ý	ker-ejm
Acc.	ker-ýho	ker-ý		ker-ý
Instr.	ker-ym			ker-ejma
Loc.	ker-ym		ker-ý	ker-ejch

h. The Indefinite Pronoun ňákej

The SČ indefinite pronoun nějaký appears in OČ in the contracted form ňákej. This pronoun too is declined as a regular adjective.

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All Genders
Nom.	ňák-ej	ňák-ý		ňák-ý
Gen.	ňák-ýho		ňák-ý	ňák-ejch
Dat.	ňák-ýmu		ňák-ý	ňák-ejm
Acc.	ňák-ýho	ňák-ý		ňák-ý
Instr.	ňák-ym			ňák-ejma
Loc.	ňák-ym		ňák-ý	ňák-ejch

5. Numerals

There are only a few remarks to be made about the numerals.

a. All forms of the quantifier "both" have the expected prothetic v-: voba/vobě, vobou, voběma, vobou/vobouch, voběma. Likewise "two" has G/L: dvou/dvouch.

b. The instrumental of the numeral tři is the expected třema.

c. The preferred OČ form for "four" reads as follows:

Nom. štyry, Gen. štyr, Dat. štyrem, Acc. štyry, Instr. štyrma, Loc. štyrech.

This means that "fourteen" = štrnáct, "forty" = štyrycet, and "four hundred" = štyry sta.

d. The only forms for "seven" and "eight" are sedum, vosum.

e. The numerals from twenty-one on are the colloquial ones introduced in Lesson XII: dvacetjedna, dvacetdva, dvacettři, dvacetštyry, dvacetpět, etc. The informal literary numerals are also possible.

f. The numeral sto in the singular when followed by a noun is indeclinable. In the plural, however, it is inflected and has two different forms: Dat. stum, Instr. stama.

g. The instrumental plural of tisíc is tisícema.

h. The ordinal numerals require only the following observations:

vosmej, vosumnáctej, vosumdesátej, vosmistej, and tisicátej.

6. Verbs

In Classes Va through IX we have two general remarks. The first is that the personal ending for the first person plural *-me* is reduced to *-m* in these classes where there can be no conflict with the first person singular. We therefore have the following forms in the first plural: *nesem*, *začnem*, *berem*, *tisknem*, *kupujem*, *bijem*, *píšem*. The second remark concerns the past passive participles which here too occur only in the long forms.

a. Class Va

A number of infinitives in this class have undergone changes, particularly if the stem ends in a velar (-k, -h) or in a dental stop (-d, -t). Observe also the changes in length of the stem vowel.

jet > ject
lézt > lezt
moci > moct
nést > nest
obléci > obléct
plést se > plect se
pomoci > pomoct
říci > říct
růst > rost/růst
snést > snest
utéci > utect
vést > vect
vézt > vezt

If the stem ends in a velar (-k, -h), we find the familiar palatalization (k > č, h > ž) in the first singular and third plural forms of the present and throughout the imperative.

moct: můžu, můžou

pomoct: pomůžu, pomůžou
pomož, pomožme, pomožte

utect: uteču, utečou
uteč, utečme, utečte

The masculine singular form of the perfect participle loses its final *-l* if it directly follows a consonant: *čet*, *moh*, *nes*, *plet se*, *řek*, *ved*.

There is no initial *j-* in the present forms of *jít*: *du*, *deš*, *de*, *dem*, *dete*, *dou*; and the imperative forms are: *di*, *děme*, *dete*.

The combination *-ůj-* shortens to *-u-* in *půjdu* *pudu*, *nepůjdeme* *nepudem*, etc. In the imperative of this verb the forms *pojd'*, *pojd'me*, *pojd'te* have become *pod'*, *pod'me*, *pod'te*, and the phrase *pojd' sem* has become simplified to *pocem*.

The combination *-ij-* yields an *-í-*: *přijdu* > *přídu*, *přijdete* > *přídete*; *přijmu* > *přímu*, etc.

b. Class Vb

The first observation here concerns the verb *vzít*. The present tense forms and the imperative forms of this verb have lost the *-z-*: *vemu*, *vemeš*, *veme*, *vemem*, *vemete*, *vemou*; *vem*, *vemme*, *vemte*.

The second remark concerns the verb *začít*. The perfect participles used in OČ are the following: *začel/začal*, *začla*, *začlo*, *začly*.

c. *Class VI*

Our sole remark here deals with the perfect participles of verbs whose stems end in consonants before the -*n*- characteristic of this class. OČ uses such participles both with or without the -*n*-. If the -n- is not used the masculine singular form has no -*l*-.

hub/hubnul, křík/kříknul, sed si/sednul si, tisk/tisknul

d. *Class VII*

The first perons singular and the third person plural present tense are the only forms in question here. The ending -*u* in the first singular and the -*ou* in the third plural have become generalized here.

děkuju, děkujou; kupuju, kupujou; studuju, studujou

e. *Class VIII*

Note particularly the sound changes in the infinitives, present tense forms, and the imperatives of the following three verbs:

krýt	>	krejt:	kreju, kreješ, kreje, krejeme, krejete, krejou krej, krejme, krejte
lít	>	lejt:	leju, leješ, leje, lejem, lejete, lejou lej, lejme, lejte
mýt	>	mejt:	meju, meješ, meje, mejem, mejete, mejou mej, mejme, mejte

Note also the imperatives of verbs like *bít*, *pít*, where the SČ -*ij* has become OČ -*í*:

bí, bíme, bíte; pí, píme, píte; ží, žíme, žíte

f. *Class IX*

This class too exhibits the endings -*u* and -*ou* in the first person singular and in the third person plural.

mažu, mažou; píšu, píšou; ukážu, ukážou

CONVERSION EXERCISE No. 1

On the basis of the sound changes and the morphological changes discussed in Lessons I and II, convert the following SČ sentences into their OČ equivalents:

1. Připravte se na to, že to bude trvat daleko déle než hodinu.
2. Jsem zvědav, co se stane, až jim to sousedé řeknou.
3. Ale ne;[1] Karel je tlustši než Jiří.
4. Pijte, tak dobré mléko všude nedostanete.
5. Hned po poledni začalo pršet a pak pršelo celé čtyři dni.
6. Nám se oběma zdálo, že by se to mohlo udělat rychleji a chytřeji.
7. Myslíte, že budeme moci odjet hned jak přijde Markéta?
8. Oni prý nevědí, co mají dělat s těmihle třemi stránkami.
9. Ti dva ztraceni kolegové seděli na velkém vlhkém kameni a odpočívali.
10. Pojedeme tam až v létě, jaro by mohlo být studené.
11. Jsi hotov? Odcházíme totiž přesně v osm a ani o minutu později.
12. Co říkáte těmhle jeho studiím? Podle mého nejsou tak špatné.
13. S nimi bych se dohromady nedával; oni si s námi nikdy dobře nerozuměli.
14. Píší nám ti tvoji známí z Prahy; nechceme-li[2] se prý u nich pozítří zastavit.
15. O svých chybách nemluvíš, ale mé zdůrazňuješ.
16. Pochybuji, že by se do toho chtěla plést.
17. Je ti zima? Tak se jdi obléci a vezmi si na sebe něco teplého.
18. Před dvěma hodinami jich tam bylo čtyřiadvacet, teď' jich tam zbylo už jen čtrnáct.
19. Sedl jsem si k ní a ona mi začala vysvětlovat, proč si kupují ten dům naproti.
20. Přijde na to, kolika dveřmi budou moci vcházet: čtyřmi nebo pěti?
21. Některým bych nejraději poděkoval dopisem, ale ne všem.
22. Nejvýše vylezl Václav.
23. Budeme potřebovat nejméně pět dalších talířů.
24. Zapomněl jsem jméno toho autora. Mohl by ses, prosím tě, podívat do nějakého pramene, v kterém bychom je mohli najít?
25. Čím je to, že čím snazší ta cvičení jsou, tím déle mi trvají?

NOTES

1 Many speakers of OČ will lengthen this adverb when it is emphatic.

2 See Note 11 of Lesson I.

CONVERSION EXERCISE No. 2

Convert the following OČ sentences into their SČ equivalents.

1. Bud'te bez starosti, někdo se vo něj postará.
2. Neměl by si se zabejvat něčim jinym?
3. Důležitý informace byly na lístkách vytištěný červenejma písmenama.
4. Tady nemá cenu bejt; zbytečně se tu zdržujem.
5. Nemoh sem věřit vlastnim ušim.
6. V Praze rostou v parkách všelijaký zajímavý stromy.
7. S takovejma řečima na mě nechod'; já dobře vim, vo co ti de.

8. A užs s nima pak nemluvil?
9. Nic jinýho si víc nepřeju.
10. Mohla bys nám s tim pomoct?
11. My bysme to bejvali vopravili líp.
12. Neslyšel sem nic ani vo ňom ani vo ní.
13. Kdy se k nám přídete podívat?
14. Vem ho rači s sebou.
15. Kam pudem nejdřív? Na poštu nebo do knihovny?
16. Můžou to všecko sníst?
17. Neni v poslední době zdráv; má ňákej špatnej žaludek.
18. Za měsíc prej se zhubnul vo sedum kilo.
19. Je to jistý, že učitelove dostanou letos přidáno?
20. Až se umeju, vemu si čistou košili.
21. Kam deš s těma všema dopisama?
22. Nemůžu říct, že by všichni z nich byli pesimisti.
23. To je ten samej slovník, na kerej si si už jednou stěžovala.
24. Vode mě nic takovýho nemoh slyšet.
25. Řek bych, že to pravidlo je prostější, než se zdá.

LESSON III

VOCABULARY

copak (particle)	why then, why is it (surprise, puzzlement, annoyance, etc.)
dobrýtro	dobré jitro
dycky	vždycky
dyž	když
eště	ještě
hele (interjection)(= SČ hle/hled')	look!
Honza	familiar form of Jan
jedno	
to je mi jedno	It's all the same to me.
jó/jo (interjection)	ano
kamarád (m)	pal, buddy
kamarádka (f)(Gen.pl. kamarádek)	pal (feminine)
kapca	kapsa
kytka (f)	květina
manžel (m)(SČ forms: Nom.pl. -ové/-é; Acc.pl. -y/-e; Instr.pl. -y/-i; undergo regular changes in OČ)	husband
manželé (pl. only)	a married couple
manželka (f)(Gen.pl. manželek)	wife
muskej (from OČ mužský)	man, male
no (interjection)(= SČ nu)	well, yes, sure, of course
přivotrávit se (II,p)(= SČ přiotrávit se)	to suffer a mild case of poisoning
spolýhat se (I,i)(na + Acc.)(= SČ spoléhat se)	to rely on (someone)
spolehnout se (VI,p)(na + Acc.)	to rely on (someone)
starej mládenec/mládenc- (m)(= SČ starý mládenec)	bachelor
strašnej	frightful, awful
Vašek	familiar form of Václav
včéra/včera	včera
vopatrnej (= SČ opatrný)	careful
vyjít	
to/ono mi nevyšlo	I couldn't make it.
zkušenost (f)	experience
zláštní	zvláštní
zrovna	právě
ztek (m) (= SČ vztek)	anger, fury
mít ztek na + Acc.	to be mad at, angry with
žencká (from SČ ženská)	woman

DIALOGUE

A. Tak co, jak se máš?

B. Ale prosim tě, mam plný ruce práce. Někdy nemůžu samejma starostma spát.

A. No ne. Snad to neni tak špatný. Co se stalo?

B. Manželka vodjela na měsíc k rodičum a já sem na všecko sám. Staram se vo dum, vo psa, vo kočku, vo zahrádku a přitom mam strašnou spoustu práce v kanceláři. Včera sem tam musel zustat až do vosmi večer. Je toho prostě na mě moc.

A. Copak ti někdo nemůže pomoct tady v domě aspoň s těma nejnutnějšíma pracema?

B. Vašek říkal, že mně tendle tejden pomůže, ale ňák mu to nevyšlo.

A. To sem si moh myslet. Tomu to eště nikdy nevyšlo, dyž má někomu pomoct. Já bejt tebou, tak se na něj nespolýham.

B. Proč? Já bych řek, že je Vašek spolehlivej. Co ti udělal?

A. Rači se neptej. Mam na něj hroznej ztek.

B. Vopravdu? Ty seš takovej mírnej člověk; můžeš ty vůbec mít na někoho velkej ztek?

A. Hele, nebud' protivnej. Mně neni zrovna do smíchu. Já sem Vaškovi pučil padesát korun a von mně slíbil, že mně ty peníze hned druhej den vrátí. Vod tý doby sem ho už měsíc neviděl. Přitom tu padesátku potřebuju jako sůl.

B. Nebudeš se přece kvůli ňákejm padesáti korunam zlobit na kamaráda.

A. Vono nejde jen vo těch padesát korun. Sou taky jiný věci, kerý mně na Vaškovi vaděj.

B. Jaký?

A. Třeba to, že se rád plete do věcí, do kerejch mu nic neni. Někdy ho kvůli tomu nemůžu ani cejtit.

B. To je zláštní. Já mam s Vaškem docela jiný zkušenosti. Úplnej vopak toho, co říkáš.

A. Proč bych ti měl lhát? Přesvěč se sám. Že je Vašek nespolehlivej, to říkaj skoro všichni naše známí.

B. Jako kdo?

A. Jako kdo? Jako třeba Honza Krámský. Až ho uvidíš, zeptej se ho.

B. Mně je to jedno jakej Vašek je. Hlavně, že se každej den meje, že nebíje svou ženu a že přechází ulici jen na zelený světlo. Co bysme se vo tom dál bavili. Pověz mi taky vo něčom jinym.

A. Máš pravdu. Pod', pudeme. Nebudem tady přece stát do rána.

* * *

A. Kdo byl ten muskej, co tě zdravil?

B. Pan Hrdina.

A. Neni to manžel tý žencký, co je zrovna v nemocnici — tý, co sme vo ní včéra mluvili?

B. Vo čom nebo vo kom sme to včéra vlastně mluvili?

A. No, vo ňáký pani, kerá se při vaření přivotrávila plynem.

B. Jó, už vim. Tak ta přivotrávená pani nemá s panem Hrdinou nic společnýho. Pan Hrdina ženu nemá.

A. Co se stalo? Von vod ní utek?

B. Né, pan Hrdina je, byl, a zřejmě dycky bude, starej mládenec.

A. Já bejt tebou, tak si nejsem tak jistej.

B. Proč?

A. Viděls, co nes v ruce?

B. Von něco nes? Já sem myslel, že měl ruce v kapcách.

A. Kdepak, nes ňáký červený kytky, zřejmě růže.

B. To eště nemusí nic znamenat.

A. To máš pravdu, ale všimnul sis, co ti řek na pozdrav?

B. Ne, nevšim.

A. Von řek: "dobrýtro pane Novák," — a ted' je vosum večer.

CONVERSION EXERCISE

Convert the following SČ sentences into their OČ equivalents.

1. Ano, mám kočku, ale měl bych spíše[1] říci, že ona má mne.
2. Vypravoval nám o nějakých Češích, kteří přijeli do Ameriky už před první světovou válkou.
3. No ne; tohle se nám dnes[2] nemělo stát.
4. Jsi tu ještě?

5. Odkud[3] voláš? Z divadla[4]?
6. Počkej tu chvíli; skočím si mezitím na kávu.[5]
7. Nemám v kapse ani haléř.
8. Přišla odpoledne nějaká pošta[6]?
9. To mi tedy[7] neříkej.
10. Ten tvrdý sýr[8] mi příliš nechutnal.
11. Před vchodem stálo několik[9] děvčat[10] a chlapců,[11] kteří zřejmě čekali, až jim někdo otevře dveře.[12]
12. Už jsem snědl dvě jablka[13] a mám stále[14] ještě hlad.
13. Milenina bratra[15] přejelo auto. Je už druhý týden v nemocnici.
14. Podívejte se na ty mraky; do večera určitě přijde bouře.[16]
15. Máte také žízeň[17]? Pojd'te na pivo.
16. Já si nyní[18] nemohu vzpomenout[19], byli-li tam oba[20] nebo jen Karel sám.
17. Kdykoli[21] se sejdeme, máme s nimi velkou legraci.
18. Lidé[22] většinou[23] nejsou opatrní.
19. Které oko tě bolí? Tohle? Měl by sis na ně něco dát.
20. Kam to mám odnést, nahoru[24] nebo dolů[25]?
21. Přišli přesně[26] ve tři čtvrtě na jednu.
22. Je vůbec nějaký rozdíl ve vkusu mezi muži a ženami?
23. Právě jsem mu chtěl volat, když zaklepal.
24. Kéž[27] by zítra pršelo a my jsme mohli místo toho výletu zůstat doma.
25. Vždyt'[28] se nic nestane, jestliže[29] to nepřijmeme.

NOTES

1 spíše > spíš

2 dnes > dneska

3 odkud > vodkud'

4 divadlo > dívadlo

5 káva > kafe (n)

6 pošta > počta

7 tedy > teda

8 sýr > sejra (masc., but this form is found only in the nominative and accusative)

9 několik > pár

10 děvče/dívka > holka (f)(Gen.pl. holek)

11 chlapec/hoch > kluk (m)

12 dveře > dvéře

13 jablko > jabko (But Gen.pl. = jablek)

14 stále > pořád

15 bratr > brácha (like hrdina)

16 bouře > bouřka (f)(Gen.pl. bouřek)

17 žízeň > žížeň/žížň-

18 nyní > ted'
19 vzpomenout > zpomenout
20 oba > voba/vobá
21 kdykoli > dycky dyž
22 lidé > lidi
23 většinou > věčinou
24 nahoru > nahóru
25 dolů > dólu
26 přesně > akorát
27 kéž by > dyby
28 vždyt' > dyt'
29 jestliže > dyž

READING SELECTION

"Tak to je blbý," řekl jsem.

"Co?"

"Dyž mě znáš."

"Proč je to blbý?"

"No tak — prostě mě znáš a nemůžu před tebou mít žádný tajemství."

Irena se zasmála.

"To zas tak dobře tě neznám, Danny. To můžeš bejt bez starosti."

"Ale znáš mě dost dobře, co?"

"No — já myslim, že dost."

"A co víš?"

"Jak?"

"Co víš vo mně zvlášt' zajímavýho?"

"Zvlášt' zajímavýho? Že seš hrozně domejšlivej."

"Ale di."

"To seš, Danny."

Udělal jsem, že jsem zvážněl, a podíval jsem se jí do očí.

"Ba ne, Ireno. Domejšlivej nejsem. To ne."

"Myslíš?"

"Určitě."

"Ale seš."

"Nejsem."

"Já myslim, že seš."

"Nejsem, Ireno. Já právě nejsem domejšlivej, protože si vo tobě nemyslim něco, co ty vo mně určitě víš.

Josef Škvorecký, Zbabělci

WORDS

blbej — stupid, absurd, bad

tajemství (n) — secret

zvážnět (III,p)/vážňovat (VII,i) — to grow serious

ba ne — Oh, no! No, no!

to ne — Oh, no! No, no!

* * *

—Nech si to, řekl. —Dělám ti něco? A posadil se na lavičku.

—Ty seš holt mladej, řekl smířlivě, —a hloupej seš taky. A na tu pohádku mládí, —zařval přes park, —si rádi vzpomenem. Pak rozvážně rozkýval ukazováček.

—To teda nevzpomenem. Pohádka mládí je blbost. Nežeň se, kamaráde, řekl plačtivě, —to je tvůj konec. A když se budeš ženit, tak moudře. Hezkejch holek je, řekl světácky, —hezkejch holek je... plno. Čoeče, to bys koukal. No jo, mně můžeš věřit!

Chlapeček se tvářil něžně.

—Ale kdepák, řekl pan Jahoda. —Láska je blbost. To ti je zajímavý, povídal rozjímavě, —já sem nikdy nepotkal hezkou holku s prachama. Já sem viděl hezkou holku, stála na rohu..., zazpíval.

—Jo! Abych nelhal, ňáký peníže byly, ale mi-ni-mum. Takovej kapitálek, to se rozuteče, to je úplně neuvěřitelný. Pff, a je pryč. Pak ti zůstane jen ta láska. A láska, řekl pan Jahoda důrazně, —když nejsou prachy, je jako poklus v plnej výzbroji. To tě nemožně vyčerpá.

Hermína Franková, "Duha," Ženy pod helmou

WORDS

nech si to (idiom) — leave me alone

posadit se (II,p)/posazovat se (VII,i) — to sit down

holt (adv.) — of course

smířlivý — conciliatory

hloupý — stupid

mládí (n) — youth

řvát (Vb,i)/zařvat (Vb,p) — to shout

rozvážný — deliberate

rozkývat (I,p)/rozkývávat (I,i) — to start to wag

ukazováček/ukazováčk- (m) — index finger

blbost (f) — nonsense, drivel

plačtivý — doleful, maudlin

moudrý (adv. = moudře) — wise

světácký — worldly, sophisticated

čoeče — člověče

chlapeček/chlapečk- (m)(dim. of chlapec) — little boy

něžný — gentle, tender, affectionate

kdepák — kdepak

rozjímavý — pensive, meditative

prachy (m)(pl. only) — money

kapitálek/kapitálk- (m)(dim. of kapitál) — sum of money

rozutéci se (Va,p)/rozutíkat se (I,i) — to disappear (in all directions)

neuvěřitelný — unbelievable

Pff! (interjection) — Phht!

důrazný — emphatic

poklus (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — trot, double-time

výzbroj (f) — armament, equipment, munitions

poklus v plné výzbroji — double time with full field pack

nemožně — completely

vyčerpat (I,p)/vyčerpávat (I,i) — to exhaust

LESSON IV

VOCABULARY

fajn (indecl.)	pěkný, příjemný
gramofón (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(= SČ gramofon)	record player
menovat se	jmenovat se
mít votevříno	mít otevřeno
mlačí	mladší
muzika (f)	hudba
muzikant (m)	hudebník
načenej	nadšený
nejni	není
Pepík	familiar form of Josef (masculine name)
průšvih (m)	trouble, unpleasantness
samo	samozřejmě
ségra (f)	sestra
sem tam	občas
suchej	dry

DIALOGUE

A. Vidíš to auto?

B. Jo, vidim ho. Je fajn. Čí je?

A. Mileninýho souseda. Menuje se Mráz. Pepík Mráz. Nevim, jesli ho znáš. Je hrozně načenej pro muziku a taky pro jiný umění. Sem tam se s nim zastavim na kus řeči.

B. Kde si se s nim poznal?

A. U Mileny. Asi před rokem. Nebo před dvouma? Ne, tak dlouho to nemohlo bejt. Už si zpomínam: bylo to před vánocema v devětašedesátym roce. Dyt' tys tam taky musel bejt. No určitě. Měli sme tam tenkrát velkou legraci s Pavlem.

B. Počkej, nenapodoboval von tam tenkrát různý muzikanty a lidi vod opery vůbec?

A. Samo.

B. Tak to sem tam teda byl.

A. Skončilo to menšim průšvihem.

B. Jak to?

A. Sousedi si stěžovali, že děláme kravál.

B. Na to já si nepamatuju. A na Mráze taky ne.

A. Ty si musel brzo vodejít. Pozdějc totiž někdo -- už sám nevim kdo -- začal hrát v druhym pokoji na gramofón a znáš to, pustil to tak nahlas, že probudil celej dum.

B. Takový věci se stávaji i v nejlepších rodinách.

A. Musel sem se smát; když si ty lidi přišli stěžovat, tak zrovna hrál Malou noční hudbu vod Mozarta.

B. Jak je vidět, vono to neni tak těžký udělat velkej kravál s "malou hudbou."

* * *

A. To prší. Moc se mi v takovym dešti nechce ven.

B. Jesli chceš, vem si muj kabát.

A. Možná, že bych měla. Kde je?

B. Ve skříni.

A. Nahóře nebo dóle?

B. Jó, holka, to já nevim. Měl by bejt nahóře, ale vod tý doby, co ho vobčas taky nosí má mladší ségra, už to nejni tak jednoduchý ho najít.

A. Tak víš co, já rači poběžim. Nemá cenu se hledánim kabátu zdržovat. Voni maj votevříno jen do šesti a já bych mohla přijít pozdě.

B. To se teda nesmí stát. Jináč umřem hladem. Nemáme v celym domě ani kousek suchýho chleba.

A. Já to věděla. Co já neudělam, to zustane neudělaný. Co byste beze mě vy dvě -- ty a tvá sestra -- dělaly?

B. Budu vo tom přemejšlet. Nejdřív ale běž nakupovat a až se vrátíš, je možný, že dostaneš vodpověd'.

CONVERSION EXERCISE

Convert the following SČ sentences into their OČ equivalents.

1. Tamhle[1] jde Vašek; jeho bratr je můj dobrý kamarád.
2. Oba[2] dva[2] jsou staří mládenci.
3. Proč by ses tomu nemohl naučit? Vždyt' je to lehké.
4. Kdybys byl o pět centimentrů menší,[3] nepřijali[4] by tě.
5. Koupila jsi také[5] chléb[6]? Myslím, že jej nemáme dost.
6. Chlapci, nedělejte hluk[7] nebo zavolám otce.[8]
7. Ano, ono by se to mohlo dělat jinak,[9] ale my na změny už nemáme čas.
8. Velké množství[10] peněz jsem nikdy[11] neměla.
9. To okno je tak špinavé, že skrze[12] ně není vidět.
10. Kupte jen jednu lahev[13] mléka. U nás je skoro nikdo nepije.[14]
11. Kdy začínají prázdniny?[15]
12. Já se myji jen studenou vodou — i když mám rýmu.
13. Letos nám na zahrádce nechce nic růst.
14. Raději bych tím[16] nehýbal. Mohli bychom to rozbít.
15. Který z nich je správce[17]? Ten s brejlemi?
16. Bude-li zase dnes lít, budu plakat.[18]
17. Tuhle[19] se mi o něm zdálo.
18. Každý čtvrtek[20] se tu scházejí studenti[21] a hrají tu různé skladby.
19. Co na srdci,[22] to na jazyku.
20. Ohlíželi se za námi se zvědavými pohledy.
21. Pečlivě si ji prohlédl.
22. Když jsme šli kolem, Markéta se právě dívala[23] z okna.
23. Skoro[24] jsem zapomněla, že jste tady.
24. Je to velmi[25] protivný člověk,[26] hrozně rád se vytahuje.[27]
25. Nemohu si stěžovat, dosud[28] jsme měli štěstí.

NOTES

1 támdle/tamdle

2 voba dva/vobá dvá

3 menčí

4. nepřímuli Note the familiar -ij- > -í- shift in this form built on the infinitive.

5 taky

6 chleba This form appears only in the nominative and accusative singular; all other forms follow the regular paradigm of chléb.

7 kravál (m)

8 táta (m)(like hrdina)

9 jináč

10 mnoství

11 nikdá

12 skrz

13 flaška (f)(Gen.pl. flašek)

14 nepíje All present tense forms have -í-.

15 prázniny
16 s tim
17 správec
18 brečet (IV,i)
19 túdle
20 štvrtek
21 študent (m)
22 srce
23 koukat se (I,i)
24 málem (adv.)
25 šíleně
26 chlap (m)
27 vytahovat se (VII,i) -- to show off
28 doposavád (adv.)

READING SELECTION

Svědomí se ptá, cos, člověče, dobrýho v životě vykonal?

No jo! Každej máme svý chyby.

Já jsem prchlej —slova nevážím -- ale srdce mám dobrý.

Mařenka má zas tu chybu, že je nemocná a není hezká. Za to vlastně nemůže. To je neštěstí. Je ale máma dobrá, manželka poctivá a má mě ráda....

Řekl jsem si tenkrát v nemocnici: At' mě potká cokoliv -- já slevím -- Mařenka přidá -- podruhé zas obráceně -- a tak se shodnem, děti vychováme a spokojeně budeme moct umřít.

Jaromír John, "Svatozář" *Večery na slamníku*

WORDS

svědomí (n) -- conscience
prchlej (= SČ prchlivý) -- hotheaded, impetuous
Mařenka (f) -- familiar form of Marie
máma (f) -- maminka
poctivý -- honest, conscientious
slevit (II,p)/slevovat (VII,i) -- to give in, yield
podruhé -- the next time
obráceně -- the other way around
shodnout se (VI,p)/shodovat se (VII,i) -- to agree, get on well together
vychovat (I,p)/vychovávat (I,i) -- to bring up, educate

* * *

"Já nemám fotra ani mámu," řekl Čiky.

"To já vím," odpověděl Ervín.

Obloha nad nízkými střechami byla ted' jako docela mělké mrtvé moře. Nahoře poletovali tiše a klouzavě malí černí ptáci. Obloučky kamenné dlažby, na nichž přešlapovali, byly čím dále tím menší a šedě mu unikaly.

"Tak já s tím pak skočím k vám," řekl potom Čiky.

"Dokdy to stihneš?" zeptal se Ervín.

"Do odpoledne," řekl Čiky, "nejpozději do štyr."

"Ale Čiky..."

"Co?"

"Nic u nás neříkej."

"Copak jsem praštěnej?"

Arnošt Lustig, "Sousto," Démanty noci

WORDS

fotr (m) -- otec

Čiky -- man's nickname

mělký -- shallow

poletovat (VII,i) -- to fly around

klouzavý -- gliding

oblouček/oblouček-(m) -- little arch

kamenný -- (of) stone

dlažba (f) -- paving, pavement

přešlapovat (VII,i)/přešlápnout (VI,p) -- to shuffle

šedý -- grey

unikat (I,i)/uniknout (VI,p) -- to escape, fade

dokdy -- until when

stihnout (VI,p)/stíhat (I,i) -- to catch up with, overtake, make

praštěný -- crazy, cracked

VOCABULARY

budoucnost (f)	future
čoveče	člověče
chlapík (m)	chlap
klucí	kluci
muset nechat	
to se mu musí nechat	You've got to hand it to him.
No nazdar!	Oh gosh!
pardon (= SČ promiňte, s dovolením)	pardon me
plzeňský (= SČ plzeňské pivo)	Pilsener beer
pochopitelný	understandable
starej (m)	boss
stejskat se (I,)(= SČ stýskat se)/ zastesknout se (VI,p)	
stejská se mi po tobě	I miss you.
ted'ka	nyní
učit se/naučit se + Acc. (= SČ učit se/ naučit se + Dat.)	
vázat (IX,i)/uvázat (IX,p)	to tie
vlasní	vlastní

DIALOGUE

A. Čoveče, dneska ráno si mě k sobě zavolal starej.

B. Co chtěl?

A. Počkej, až ti to řeknu. Já ze začátku nevěděl vo co de, a dyž mi řek 'pane Valouch, zastavte se u mě asi tak za štvrt hodiny,' tak sem si myslel: 'No nazdar, to se zas něco stalo a von si bude stěžovat.'

B. Moc nepříjemnej pocit, že jo.

A. Co ti mam povídat. Tak k němu pak přídu a von říká: 'Valouchu, co byste tomu řek, dybych vám dal vo tejden víc dovolený.' Já sem hned nevěděl, co mam na to říct, protože sem si nebyl jistej vo co de, tak sem dělal vopatrnýho a povídam 'Mluvíte vo placený nebo neplacený dovolený.' A von na to: 'Samozřejmě vo placený.'

B. Jenže von neřek "vo placený," ale "o placené."

A. Pochopitelně, že ne. Za takovejch okolností to nemoh ani jinak říct.

B. A co pak?

A. Co pak? Von se rozhovořil vo tom, že je s mou prácí moc spokojenej a že by byl rád, dybych byl v budoucnosti aspoň tak dobrej jako sem ted'ka.

B. Nakonec se na tebe významně podíval a významně řek, že máš budoucnost ve vlasních rukouch, že jo. Neříkal sem ti, že náš starej je moc milej chlapík? Ne, vážně, von vopravdu dovede ocenit, dyž se někdo snaží.

A. Milej je, to se mu musí nechat. Bude se mně po ňom vo dovolený stejskat.

B. Ale, prosim tě, nemusíš kvůli tomu mít voči plný slz. Pod', myslim, že je čas, abysme se šli na tu tvou dlouhou dovolenou napít. Nechtěl by si třeba sklenici plzeňskýho? Dneska platim já.

A. Pardon. Dneska je řada na mně. Si pozvanej na něco zvlášt' dobrýho.

B. Tak dobře. Už se nemůžu dočkat.

* * *

A. Nemůžu si pomoct, ale dyž tady tak slyšim křičet Klářiný děti, musim si zpomenout, jaký já sem bejval tichý dítě. Doma i ve škole mě musili nutit do mluvení. Pamatuju se taky, že sem ve škole hrozně nerad zpíval.

B. To se teda změnilo.

A. No prosim. Vobčas řeknu pár slov a vobčas si dokonce i zazpívam v koupelně. Což nemam pěknej hlas? Maminka si myslí, že bych moh zpívat v opeře.

B. To nestačí, co si myslí maminka. Důležitější je, co tomu tvýmu večernímu zpěvu v koupelně řikaj sousedi.

A. Někdy mam strach vylezt z bytu.

B. Až budeš jednou potřebovat pomoct, dej mi vědět, já ti ráda pomůžu.

A. Myslíš při zpívaní nebo při vycházení z bytu.

B. Při vobojim. A kolik vás vlasně bylo doma?

A. Tři.

B. Samí klucí nebo taky holky?

A. Měl sem dva bráchy. Vobá byli starší, jeden vo tři, druhej vo pět let.

B. Tak ty si byl nejmlačí?

A. Nejmlačí a nejmenčí. Možná, že sem byl kvůli tomu takovej tichej a hodnej.

B. To nevim. Podívej se na Klářinýho nejmlačího kluka. Ten je ze všech těch dětí nejživější. Všimla sem si, jak těm druhejm dětem pořád ukazuje, jak a co maji dělat?

A. Těm druhejm dětem? Ráno, dyž sem se voblíkal, přišel za mnou a díval se, jak si vážu kravatu. Chvíli nic neřikal, najednou zatřás hlavou a řek: 'Pocem, já ti ukážu, jak se to má správně vázat.' A víš, kolik je mu? Pět let.

B. Co chceš? Pět let -- to je dlouhá doba. Za pět let se inteligentní dítě může naučit všelijaký věci.

CONVERSION EXERCISE

Convert the following SČ sentences into their OČ equivalents.

1. Upadl a rozbil si o kámen[1] koleno.
2. Byl byste tak hodný a hodil mi tenhle dopis do schránky[2]?
3. Zůstaneme tam nejvýše tak do února.
4. V téhle zásuvce[3] tedy zápalky[4] nejsou.
5. Rozsvítil jsem, ale ona spala dále.
6. Jaké léky sis přinesl?
7. Tobě na tom možná nezáleží,[5] ale mně na tom záleží.
8. Žádné knížky nikomu nepůjčuj. Co když ti je ti lidé nevrátí?
9. To je strašné, co já mám běhání. Dnes jsem se od rána ještě nezastavila.
10. Hledáte telefon[6]? Je vzadu.[7]
11. Nejsou ty kalhoty příliš úzké?
12. Dcera[8] našeho zubaře se zítra vdává. Její budoucí[9] manžel[9] je také zubař.
13. On je milý, ale ona je ještě milejší.[10]
14. Celkem se toho mnoho nestalo, ale potíže[11] z toho byly značné.
15. Vezmi si, například,[12] tuhle[13] Josefa[14]; toho, co je živ, ještě nebolely zuby.
16. V téhle chvíli se mi zdá, že je nemožné,[15] abychom tam do desíti došli.
17. Nu ano, to je celý on; studium[16] ho nebaví, zato hudba ano.
18. Křikl na mne a ukázal na zavřený obchod.[17]
19. Podávala mi talíř čerstvých švestek, jenže já jsem řekl: "Děkuji, jste velmi hodná, já však[18] švestky[19] nejím."
20. S ním není řeč; dělá si ze všeho legraci.[20]
21. Kdyby[21] si tohle myslil každý, tak to s námi špatně dopadne.
22. U nich se nikdy o ničem vážném nemluví; oni většinou jen tak zbytečně[22] mluví.[22]
23. Na něho se můžeš spolehnout, je to výborný[23] člověk.[23]
24. Jste unavení,[24] měli byste si jít lehnout.
25. Z těch dvou nic nebude; ve škole jen nedbale[25] pracují.[25]

NOTES

1 kamen
2 kastlík (m)
3 šuple (n) (like zvíře)
4 sirka (f)(Gen.pl. sirek)
5 tobě to může bejt fuk/jedno
6 telefón
7 vzádu
8 céra
9 nastávající
10 fajnovější
11 průšvih
12. třeba
13 tadydle
14 Pepík
15 vyloučený
16 študium
17 krám (m)
18 ale
19 švesky
20 sranda (f) (= SČ švanda)
21 Omit and use infinitive
22 kecat (I,i)
23 príma chlap
24 utahaný
25 flákat se (I,i)

READING SELECTION

To byl jeden pán, co chodíval do vinárny Est-Est na Malý Straně, a ten měl psa vlčáka, ohromně mazanýho. Když muž rozkázal: "Dej hlas!" vlčák zaštěkal. Ale to nic neni. Von na toho psa mluvil docela jako na dospělýho člověka, žádný hulákání, řvaní, nebo vodsekávaný komanda, ne. Mluvil k němu tiše, skoro mumlal, jak ke kamarádovi, kazuálně. A bylo to tedy otřásající, když se ho ledabyle zeptal: "Máš hlad?" a pes řek "Mám." - No dobře, výslovnost to nebyla pro scénu Národního divadla, ale nebylo nejmenšího sporu o srozumitelnosti tohoto slovesa. Pak dostal pes korunu do huby, pán mu řek: "Dej si karbanátek" - a pes šel přes ulici k řezníkovi, vrátil se s karbanátkem v zubech, cintaje po celém výčepu--a teprve, když pán řek: "No tak, když máš hlad, tak snad abys to sežral" - karbanátek zmizel.

From a personal letter

WORDS

vinárna (f)(Gen.pl. vináren) — "wine bar" (place where wine is served)

vlčák (m) — German shepherd

ohromný — tremendous, enormous

mazaný — clever, wily

rozkázat (IX,p)/rozkazovat (VII,i) — to order

štěkat (I,i)/zaštěkat (I,p) — to bark

hulákat (I,i)/zahulákat (I,p) — to shout, be noisy

odseknout (VI,p)/odsekávat (I,i) — to cut off, snap out, answer abruptly

komando (n) — command

mumlat (I,i)/zamumlat (I,p) — to mumble, mutter

kazuální — casual

otřásající — disturbing

ledabylý — nonchalant, careless

výslovnost (f) — pronunciation

národní — national

spor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — dispute, controversy, argument

srozumitelnost (f) — intelligibility

tento — tenhle

sloveso (n) — verb

huba (f) — animal's mouth, mug

karbanátek/karbanátk- (m) — hamburger

řezník (m) — butcher

cintat (I,i)/pocintat (I,p) — to slaver, slobber, drool

výčep (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — bar, tap-room

žrát (Vc,i)(žeru, žereš, žral)/sežrat (Vc,p)(sežeru, sežereš; sežral) — to eat (of animals)

"Páni, řekl Harýk. "Dnes jsem viděl Uippelta z Mesršmitky, jak někam prchal na kole."

"A co jeho milostpani? řekl Venca.

"Nevim. Prchal sám."

"Vůbec je divný, že tady zůstal tak dlouho, dyž ho tu každej zná a ví, jaká je to svině, řekl Lexa.

"Čeče, měls ho shodit s kola a zajmout," řekl Fonda.

"Seš dobrej. A von vytáhne revolver a umrtví mě, ne?"

"Jo, brachu, sme v revoluci," řekl Lexa. Zezadu se ozval Benno:

"Ta byla vodložená na neurčito."

"Chlapi, myslíte, že něco bude?" zeptal se Fonda.

"No samo," Lexa mluvil zasvěceně, protože jeho otce Němci popravili. Od té doby vždycky věděl víc než my. Ale v téhle věci jsem věděl víc já než on.

"Nebude," řekl Benno. "Copak si myslíš, že se kostelecký páni na něco zmůžou?"

"No — počkej."

"To bych se teda nedočkal. Každej je podělanej strachy. Revoluce bude prostě vodložená na neurčito."

Podíval jsem se na Helenu, ale neříkala nic. Četla si něco v novinách. Řekl jsem:

"Ne, páni. Uvidíte, že něco bude."

Josef Škvorecký, *Zbabělci*

WORDS

Harýk -- man's nickname

Uippelt -- German personal name

Mesršmitka (f) -- Messerschmidt factory

prchat (I,i)/prchnout (VI,p) -- to flee, escape

milostpani (f)(= SČ milostpaní) -- madam

Venca (m) -- familiar form of Václav

svině (f) -- sow, pig, swine

Lexa (m) -- familiar form of Alex

zajmout (Vc,p)(zajmu, zajmeš; zajal)/ zajímat (I,i) -- to capture, take prisoner

Fonda (m) -- familiar form of Alfons

revolver (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- revolver

umrtvit (II,p)/umrtvovat (VII,i) -- to anesthetize ("to kill")

brach (m) -- man, old boy

revoluce (f) -- revolution

zezadu (adv.) -- from behind

Benno (m) -- man's name

odložit na neurčito -- to postpone until further notice

zasvěcený -- authoritative, in the know

popravit (II,p)/popravovat (VII,i) -- to execute

kostelecký -- pertaining to the city of Kostelec

zmoci (Va,p)(like moci)

zmoci se na něco -- to have the stuff to do something

podělaný -- frightened, terrified

516

CZECH-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT AND GLOSSARY

Acc. (A)	accusative
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
coll.	collective
comp.	comparative
conj.	conjunction
Dat. (D)	dative
decl.	declension
det.	determinate
f (fem.)	feminine
Gen. (G)	genitive
i	imperfective aspect
imp.	imperative
ind. obj.	indirect object
indecl.	indeclinable
indef. (pron. or adj.)	indefinite (pronoun or adjective)
indet.	indeterminate
interrog.	interrogative
inf.	infinitive
Instr. (I)	instrumental
irreg.	irregular
iter.	iterative
Loc. (L)	locative
m (masc.)	masculine
n (neut.)	neuter
Nom. (N)	nominative
num.	numeral
p.	perfective aspect
perf. part.	perfect participle
pl.	plural
poss.	possessive
pred. adj.	predicate adjective
prep.	preposition
pron.	pronoun
rel.	relative
quant.	quantifier
sg.	singular

A

a (conj.) — and (1)

a tak dále (atd.) — and so on, etc. (7)

aby (conj.) — so that (expression of goal) (15G)

ačkoli (conj.) — although, though (6)

adresa (f) — address (10)

aha (interjection) — I see! aha! (18)

aktivní — active (14)

ale (conj.) — but, however (1)

Alík (m) — Alík (dog's name) (18)

americký — American (7)

Američan (m)(Nom.pl. -é) — American (noun) (20)

Američanka (f)(Gen.pl. Američanek) — American (female) (20)

Amerika (f) — America (1)

anekdota (f) — joke, anecdote (12)

anglický — English (2)

angličtina (f) — English (language) (15)

ani (negative of i) — not even (2)

ani...ani (conj.) — neither...nor (2)

aniž (conj.) — without ...-ing (16)

ar (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — are (119.6 sq. yds.) (12G)

asi (adv.) — perhaps, about, I suppose (2)

aspoň (adv.) — at least (9)

ať (particle) — let, may (11)

ať...nebo (conj.) — whether...or (13)

auto (n) — car (3)

autobus (m) — bus (1)

autor (m) — author (17)

autorka (f)(Gen.pl. autorek) — authoress (17)

až (conj.) — when, until, not until (5)

až na + Acc. — except (14)

B

babička (f)(Gen.pl. babiček) — grandmother (15)

banka (f) — bank (12)

barevný — colored, colorful, color (15)

barva (f)(Gen.pl. barev) — color (11)

mít...barvu — to be a certain color (11)

být ...barvy — to be a certain color (11)

báseň/básn- (f)(Gen.sg. -ě; Nom.pl. -ě; Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi) — poem (8)

bát se (IV,i)(bojím se, bojíš se; bál se)(+ Gen.) — to be afraid (of) (4)

bavit (II,i)(See pobavit) — to attract, amuse (14G)

bavit se (II,i)(See pobavit se) — to have a good time (2)

běhat (I,i,indet.) — to run (9)

během + Gen. — during, in the course of (10)

bělejší (comp.) see bílý

bez(e) + Gen. — without, minus (11)

bezděčný — involuntary, unconscious (4)

běžet (IV,i,det.) — to run (9)

běžet o + Acc. (impersonal) — to be a question of (17)

běžný — usual, customary (17)

bilion (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — trillion (12G)

bílý (comp. bělejší) — white (11)

biograf (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — movies, motion-pictures, theater (13)

bít (VIII,i)(+ Acc. of animate nouns) — to beat (10)

The letter G after the lesson number indicates that the entry is found in the Grammar Analysis section of the lesson.

bít do (+ Gen. of inanimate nouns) — to beat on (10)

bít se (VIII,i)(s + Instr.) — to hit each other, fight (with) (14G)

blízko + Gen. — near, close (13G)

blízko u + Gen. — close by (8)

blízký (pred.adj. blízko) — near, close (13G)

blíže (comp.adv.) see blízký (13G)

bližší (comp.adj.) see blízký (13G)

blondýnka (f)(Gen.pl. blondýnek) — blonde (4)

blýskat se (I,i)(See zablýsknout se) (impersonal) — to be lightning (17)

bod (m) — point, item, dot, spot (19)

bohatý (comp. bohatší) — rich (13)

bohužel — sorry, I'm afraid, unfortunately (1)

bolest (f) — pain (2)

bolet (IV,i)(See zabolet) — to ache, hurt, give pain (18)

bota (f) — shoe, boot (18)

bouře (f) — storm (16)

brána (f)(Gen.pl. bran) — gate (18)

brát (Vc,i)(beru, bereš)(See vzít) — to take (5)

brát se (Vc,i)(like brát)(See vzít se) — to marry (14G)

brát si (Vc,i)(like brát)(See vzít si) — to help oneself (14G)

Bratislava (f) — capital of Slovakia (16)

bratr (m) — brother (1)

bratrův/-ov- (poss. adj.) — brother's (9G)

brejle (f)(pl. only) — glasses, spectacles (7)

Brno (n) — capital of Moravia (14)

brzký (comp. dřívější) — early (13G)

brzo/brzy (adv.) — early, soon (1)

brzo ráno — early in the morning (1)

břeh (m) — shore, bank (16)

březen/březn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) — March (12G)

buď...nebo (conj.) — either...or (8)

budík (m) — alarm-clock (12)

budova (f) — building (14)

budovat (VII,i)(See vybudovat) — to build (20G)

bydlet (III,i)/bydlit (II,i) — to live, reside (3)

bydlet si (III,i)/bydlit si (II,i) — to reside someplace and derive particular pleasure from it (14G)

byt (m) — apartment (3)

být (irreg.)(jsem, jsi, je, jsme, jste, jsou; budu, budeš; byl, byla) — to be (2G)

být do smíchu (+ Dat.) — to feel like laughing (17)

být s to + inf. — to be able (17)

bývat (I,i)(iter.) — to be (15G,18G)

C

celkem (adv.) — altogether, on the whole, roughly speaking (14)

celý — whole, entire, all of (4)

cena (f) — price, prize (12)

centrum (n)(irreg. decl.) — center (15)

cesta (f) — road, way, trip (5)

být někomu v cestě — to be in one's way (14)

být z cesty — to be out of the way (18)

cigareta (f) — cigarette (3)

cítit (II,i)(See ucítit) — to feel, smell (2)

nemoci + Acc. + ani cítit — not to be able to stand (someone) (5)

cítit se (II,i) — to feel (2)

cizí — foreign, somebody else's (3)

cizinec/cizinc- (m) — foreigner, stranger, outsider (14)

co? — what? (1)

co je to za + Acc. — what kind of ... is that (14)

co nevidět — any minute, any time now (5)

cokoli (indef. pron.) — anything at all/whatever (18G)

cosi (indef. pron.) — something (unknown) (18G)

cvičení (n) — exercise (3)

cvičit (II,i)(See vycvičit) — to train, exercise (18)

Č

čaj (m) — tea (2)

čárka (f)(Gen.pl. čárek) — comma, accent mark (20)

čas (m) — time (3)

časopis (m) — periodical, magazine (20)

část (f) — part (9)

často (adv.) — often (1)

častý — frequent (13G)

Čech (m) — Czech (noun) (10)

Čechy (f)(pl. only) — Bohemia (13)

čekárna (f)(Gen.pl. čekáren) — waiting room (19)

čekat (I,i)(See počkat) — to wait, expect (1)

čekat na + Acc. — to wait for (1)

čekat si (I,i)(See počkat si) — not to mind waiting (14G)

čelo (n) — forehead, brow; front (18)

v čele něčeho — at the head of something (18)

čepice (f) — cap (2)

černý — black (11)

čerstvý — fresh (3)

červen/červn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) — June (12G)

červenec/červenc- (m) — July (12G)

červený — red (11)

Československo (n) — Czechoslovakia (1)

český — Czech (2)

Češka (f)(Gen.pl. Češek) — Czech (feminine) (10)

čeština (f) — Czech (language) (15)

četba (f) — reading (7)

četný — numerous (15)

čí? — whose? (8)

číkoli (indef. pron.) — anyone's at all/whosever (18G)

čím je to, že ...? — what is the reason for...? (10)

čím..., tím... (with comparatives) — the..., the... (13)

čím dál... (with a comparative) — more and more, increasingly... (13)

čísi (indef.pron.) — someone's (unknown) (18)

číslo (n)(Gen.pl. čísel) — number, numeral, size, copy (12)

číst (se) (Va,i)(čtu, čteš; četl, četla) (See přečíst) — to read (5)

číst si (Va,i)(like číst)(See přečíst si) — to read for one's own enjoyment (14G)

čistírna (f)(Gen.pl. čistíren) — cleaner's, dry cleaner's (8)

čistit (II,i)(See vyčistit) — to clean (14)

čistší (comp. adj.) see čistý

čistý (pred.adj. čisto) — clean, pure (10)

člověk (m)(Voc. člověče)(pl., see lidé) — man, human being, person (4)

čtenář (m) — reader (17)

čtenářka (f)(Gen.pl. čtenářek) — reader (17)

čtrnáct — fourteen (12G)

čtrnáctý — fourteenth (12G)

čtvereční — square (12G)

čtverý/-o (coll. num.) — four (12G)

čtvrt (f)(Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -ěmi; Loc.pl. -ích) (8)

čtvrtek/čtvrtk- (m)(Gen.sg. -a) -- Thursday (12G)

čtvrtletí (n) -- quarter (of a year) (17)

čtvrtý -- fourth (12G)

čtyři -- four (2,12)

čtyřicátý -- fortieth (12G)

čtyřicet -- forty (12G)

čtyřka (f)(number noun) -- four (12G)

D

dál(e) (comp.adv.) see daleko (13G)

daleko (adv.) -- far (13G)

daleký (pred.adj. daleko) -- far, distant (13)

dálka (f)(Gen.pl. dálek) -- distance, long way (4)

další -- next, another, further, the following (3)

dar (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- gift (17)

dařit se (II,i)(+ Dat. of person)(See podařit se)(personal and impersonal) -- to be getting on, to succeed in something or in doing something (17)

dát (I,p)(See dávat) -- to give (5G)

  dát do pořádku -- to put in order (11)

dávat (I,i) -- to give (1)

  dávat/dát na + Acc. -- to put on top of (1)

  dávat/dát někomu pokoj -- to leave someone alone (18)

  dávat/dát vědět -- to let know (7)

dávat se/dát se -- to turn, make a turn (17)

  dávat se/dát se do + Gen. -- to set about (14G)

  dávat se/dát se na + Acc. -- to be placed on (14G)

dávno (adv.) -- long ago (13G)

dávný (pred.adj. dávno) -- of long ago, former, ancient (13)

dcera (f)(Dat.sg. dceři) -- daughter (9)

dědeček/dědečk- (m) -- grandfather (15)

deka- (prefix) -- ten (12G)

děkovat (VII,i)(See poděkovat)(+ Dat.) -- to thank (9)

  děkovat někomu za + Acc. -- to thank someone for (9)

dělat (I,i)(See udělat) -- to do, make, work (1)

  dělat pořádek -- to put things in order, straighten up (1)

  dělat někomu dobře -- to be good for someone (9)

  nedá se nic dělat -- nothing can be done, it can't be helped (11)

  dělat starosti (+ Dat.) -- to cause concern (to someone) (7)

  dělat/udělat zkoušku -- to take an exam (imperfective); to pass an exam (perfective) (16)

dělat se (I,i) -- to pretend (14G)

dělat si (I,i)(See udělat si) -- to make/do for oneself (14G)

  dělat/udělat si legraci z + Gen. -- to make fun of (14)

déle (comp. adv.) see dlouho (13G)

dělení (n) -- division (12G)

délka (f)(Gen.pl. délek) -- length (12)

dělnice (f) -- worker (feminine)(20)

dělník (m) -- worker (20)

delší (comp. adj.) see dlouhý

den (m)(Gen.sg. dne; Dat.-Loc.sg. dni; Instr.sg. dnem; Nom.-Acc.pl. dni/dny; Gen.pl. dní/dnů; Dat.pl. dním/dnům; Instr.pl. dny; Loc.pl. dnech) -- day (10)

denní -- daily (2)

desaterý/-o (coll. num.) -- ten (12G)

desátý — tenth (12G)

deset — ten (12G)

desítka (number noun) — ten (12G)

deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek) — board, plate, tablet (16)

(gramofonová) deska — record (16)

dešt' (m)(alternate Nom.-Acc.sg. form déšt') — rain (16)

děti (f.pl.)(Gen. dětí; Dat. dětem, Acc. děti; Instr. dětmi; Loc. dětech) — children (10)

dětský — children's, childish (4)

devadesát — ninety (12G)

devadesátý — ninetieth (12G)

devatenáct — nineteen (12G)

devatenáctý — nineteenth (12G)

devaterý/-o (coll. num.) — nine (12G)

devátý — ninth (12G)

děvče (n)(mixed decl.) — girl (15)

devět — nine (12G)

devítka (number noun) — nine (12G)

dialog (m) — dialogue (17)

dík(y) (m)(Used in sg. or pl.) — a word of thanks, thanks (17)

dílo (n)(Gen.pl. děl) — work (product) (13)

dítě (n)(mixed decl. in sg.; for pl. see děti) — child (13)

dít se (VIII,i)(third person only: děje se, dějí se; dělo se)(See stát se) — to happen, be going on (10)

divadlo (n)(Gen.pl. divadel) — theater (7)

dívat se (I,i)(See podívat se) — to look (1)

dívat se na + Acc. — to look at, watch (1)

dívat se/podívat se do + Gen. — to look into, take a look in (14)

divit se (II,i)(+ Dat.) — to be surprised at, amazed at, marvel at (5)

dívka (f)(Gen.pl. dívek) — girl, young girl (4)

divný — peculiar, odd, curious, funny (19)

divoko (adv.) — see divoký (13G)

divoký — wild (13)

dlouho (adv.) — for a long time (3)

dlouhý — long (7)

dlužit (II,i)(+ Dat.) — to owe, be indebted to (6)

dlužit si (II,i) — to owe to oneself (14G)

dnes (adv.) — today (1)

dnes večer (adv.) — this evening (6)

dnešní — today's (13)

do + Gen. (prep.) — into, to, up to, until, within (time) (8)

doba (f) — time, period of time, age (6)

doběhnout (VI,p)(See dobíhat) — to run to, reach (by running) (19G)

dobíhat (I,i)(See doběhnout) — to run to, reach (by running) (19G)

dobrý (comp.adj. lepší; comp. adv. lépe) — good (3)

dobře (adv.) — well, fine (2)

docela (adv.) — quite, completely (5)

dočíst (Va,p)(like číst)(See dočítat) — to finish reading (20G)

dočítat (I,i)(See dočíst) — to finish reading (20G)

dočkat se (I,p)(+ Gen.) — to wait/live to see someone/something or something happen (13)

dodat (I,p)(See dodávat) — to add, deliver (15)

dodávat (I,i)(See dodat) — to add, deliver (15)

dodělat (I,p)(See dodělávat) — to finish off, bring to an end (20G)

dodělávat (I,i)(See dodělat) — to finish off, bring to an end (20G) dohadovat se (VII,i)(s někým o něčem) (See dohodnout se) — to agree upon something with someone, come to an agreement with someone (14)

dohánět (III,i)(See dohnat) — to reach, catch up with (19G)

dohnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See dohánět) — to reach, catch up with (19G)

dohodnout se (VI,p)(s někým o něčem) (See dohadovat se) — to agree upon something with someone, come to an agreement with someone (14)

dohromady (adv.) — together, all in all; hardly, scarcely (with negation) (14)

docházet (III,i)(See dojít) — to go to, reach (a place) (18)

dojem/dojm- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — impression (8)

dojet (Va,irreg.,p)(See dojíždět) — to go to (by vehicle), reach (19G)

dojít (Va,irreg.,p)(like jít)(See docházet) — to go to, reach (a place) (18)

dojíždět (III,i)(See dojet) — to go to, reach (by vehicle) (19G)

dokázat (IX,p)(See dokazovat) — to prove, demonstrate (16)

dokazovat (VII,i)(See dokázat) — to prove, demonstrate (16)

dokonalý — perfect (11)

dokonce (adv.) — even (2)

doktor (m) — doctor (2)

dokud (conj.) — up to the time when, so long as (15)

dokud ne- — until, before (15)

dolar (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — dollar (6)

dole (adv.) — down, below, downstairs (2)

dolétat (I,i)(See doletět/dolétnout) — to fly to, reach (19G)

doletět (IV,p)(See dolétat/doletovat) — to fly to, reach (19G)

dolétnout (VI,p)(See doletovat/dolétat) — to fly to, reach (19G)

doletovat (VII,i)(See dolétnout/doletět) — to fly to, reach (19G)

dolévat (I,i)(See dolít) — to fill up a partly filled container (20G)

dolézat (I,i)(See dolézt) — to crawl, climb as far as (20G)

dolézt (Va,p)(like lézt)(See dolézat) — to crawl, climb as far as (20G)

dolít (VIII,p)(like lít)(See dolévat) — to fill up a partly filled container (20G)

dolů (adv.) — downstairs ,down (motion) (9)

doma (adv.) — at home, at one's place (1)

domácí úkol (m) — homework (15)

domlouvat se (I,i)(s někým o něčem)(See domluvit se) — to come to an agreement with someone about something (20G)

domnívat se (I,i) — to suppose, assume, be of the opinion (18)

domů (adv.) — homeward, home (3)

domýšlivý — arrogant, conceited (5)

donášet (III,i)(See donést) — to carry to (19G)

donést (Va,p)(like nést)(See donášet) — to carry to (19G)

donutit (II,p)(koho k čemu/do čeho)(See nutit) — to force, compel, make someone do something (14)

dopadat (I,i)(See dopadnout) — to fall to the ground; to turn out (20G)

dopadnout (VI,p)(See dopadat) — to fall to the ground; to turn out (20G)

dopíjet (III,i)(See dopít) — to finish drinking (20G)

dopis (m) — letter (2)

dopisovat (VII,i)(See dopsat) — to finish writing (20G)

dopít (VIII,P)(See dopíjet) — to finish drinking (20G)

doplácet (III,i)(See doplatit) -- to pay off the last part of a debt (20G)

doplatit (II,p)(See doplácet) -- to pay off the last part of a debt (20G)

dopoledne (n) -- forenoon, morning (9:00 A.M. to 12:00 noon)(12G)

doporučit (II,p)(See doporučovat) -- to recommend (16)

doporučovat (VII,i)(See doporučit) -- to recommend (16)

doprava (f) -- transport, transportation; traffic (17)

dopsat (IX,p)(like psát)(See dopisovat) -- to finish writing (20G)

doskočit (II,p) -- to jump as far as (20G)

doslova (adv.) -- literally (16)

dospělý (adj. and noun) -- grown-up, adult (15)

dost (adv.) -- enough, fairly, rather, quite a bit (5)

dostat (Va,p)(dostanu, dostaneš)(See dostávat) -- to get, receive (7)

dostat se (Va,p)(like dostat)(See dostávat se) -- to get into, get involved in (14G)

dostávat (I,i)(See dostat) -- to get, receive (2)

dostávat se (I,i)(See dostat se) -- to get into, get involved in (14G)

dosud (adv.) -- up to now (12)

dotáhnout (VI,p)(See dotahovat) -- to pull, drag to (19G)

dotahovat (VII,i)(See dotáhnout) -- to pull, drag to (19G)

doufat (I,i) -- to hope (6)

dovádět (III,i)(See dovést) -- to lead to, conduct to (19G)

dovážet (III,i)(See dovézt) -- to haul, convey to, import (19G)

dovědět se (irreg., p)(like vědět)(o + Loc.)(See dovídat se) -- to learn, hear of (14)

dovést (Va,p)(like vést)(See dovádět) -- to lead to, conduct to (19G)

dovést (Va,p)(dovedu, dovedeš)(perfective only) -- to be able to, know how to (15)

dovézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See dovážet) -- to haul, convey to, import (19G)

dovídat se (I,i)(o + Loc.)(See dovědět se) -- to learn, hear of (14)

dovírat (I,i)(See dovřít) -- to close a partly open door or window (20G)

dovolená (f) -- vacation, leave, furlough (6)

dovolit (II,p)(See dovolovat) -- to allow, permit, let (15)

dovolovat (VII,i)(See dovolit) -- to allow,permit, let (15)

dovřít (Vb,p)(dovřu, dovřeš; dovřel) (See dovírat) -- to close a partly open door or window (20G)

draho (adv.) see drahý

drahý (pred.adj. draho) -- dear, expensive (3)

drama (n)(special decl.) -- drama (15)

dráže (comp.adv.) see drahý

dražší (comp. adj.) see drahý

drobný -- minute, diminutive (19)

drobné (m.pl.) -- small change (19)

drogerie (f) -- drugstore (14)

druh (m) -- kind, sort, species (11)

druhý -- second, another, other (7)

držet (IV,i)(See podržet) -- to hold, keep (4)

držet se (IV,i)(+ Gen.)(See podržet se) -- to hold on (to something/someone (14)

dříve/dřív (adv.) -- before, once, first (12)

dřívější (comp. of brzký) -- earlier (13G)

duben/dubn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) -- April (12G)

důležitý -- important (7)

dům/dom- (m) -- house (3)

důvod (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- reason, grounds (8)

dva (m), dvě (f,n) -- two (12G)

dvacátý -- twentieth (12G)

dvacet -- twenty (12G)

dvanáct -- twelve (12G)

dvanéctý -- twelfth (12G)

dveře (f.pl.)(Dat. -ím; Instr. -mi; Loc. -ích) -- door (8)

dvojí/dvoje (collective) -- two (12G)

dvojka (f)(number noun) -- two (12G)

džem (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- jam (19)

E

ekologický -- ecological (14)

ekologie (f) -- ecology (14)

elektrický -- electric (12)

F

fakt (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- fact (14)

fakulta (f) -- college of a university (16)

film (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- film, motion picture (13)

filosofický -- philosophical (16)

filosofická fakulta -- college of arts and sciences (16)

forma (f)(Gen.pl. forem) -- form (16)

formální -- formal (13)

fotografie (f) -- photograph, photography (14)

fotografovat (VII,i)(See vyfotografovat) -- to take pictures, photograph (14)

fotografovat se (VII,i)(See vyfotografovat se) -- to photograph each other (14G)

foukat (I,i)(See zafoukat)(personal and impersonal) -- to blow (17)

fungovat (VII,i) -- to function, work, operate (11)

funkce (f) -- function (14)

G

garáž (f) -- garage (19)

gram (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- gram (.03527 ounces avoirdupois)(12G)

H

haléř (m) -- heller, penny (12)

házet (III,i)(See hodit) -- to throw, cast (18)

hekt(o)- (prefix) -- hundred (12G)

hezčí (comp. adj.) see hezký

hezký (comp.: hezčí) -- nice, fine, pretty, handsome (4)

hlad (m) -- hunger (1)

hlas (m) -- voice (4)

hlásit (II,i)(See ohlásit) -- to announce, report (14G)

hlásit se (II,i)(See ohlásit se) -- to respond, to take a call (2)

hlava (f) -- head (5)

hlavně (adv.) -- mainly, primarily, chiefly (12)

hlavní -- main, major, principal (9)

hledání (n) -- search, searching (16G)

hledat (I,i)(See vyhledat) -- to look for (1)

hlídat (I,i)(See ohlídat) -- to watch, guard, take care of (18)

hluboko (adv.) see hluboký

hluboký (pred.adj. hluboko) -- deep (13)

hlucho (adv.) see hluchý

hluchý (pred.adj. hlucho) -- deaf (4)

hluk (m) -- noise (10)

hlušší (comp.adj.) see hluchý

hnát (Vc,irreg.,i, det.)(ženu, ženeš; hnal)(See honit) -- to chase, drive, pursue (19)

hned (adv.) -- immediately, at once (5)

hnědý -- brown (20)

hnout (VI,p)(See hýbat) -- to move, stir (10)

hnout se (VI,p)(See hýbat se) -- to move (14G)

hodina (f) -- hour (5)

hodinky (f.pl.)(Gen. hodinek) -- watch (9)

hodiny (f.pl.) -- clock (12)

hodit (II,p)(See házet) -- to throw, cast (18)

hodit se (II,i)(k + Dat.) -- to be suitable (17)

hodit se (+ Dat.) -- to suit (17)

hodně (adv.) -- much, a lot, a great deal (6)

hodný -- good, kind, nice (18)

hodnota (f) -- value (13)

hoch (m) -- boy (3)

holub (m)(Gen.sg. -a) -- pigeon (19)

honit (II,i,indet.)(See hnát) -- to chase, drive, pursue) (19)

hora (f) -- mountain (4)

horko (n) -- heat (4)

horký (pred.adj. horko) -- hot (4)

je horko -- it's hot (4)

horší (comp. of špatný, zlý) -- worse (13G)

hořet (IV,i) -- to burn, be on fire (17)

host (m)(plural forms have two sets of endings: Nom. -é/-i; Gen. -ů/-í; Dat. -ům/-ím; Acc. -y/-i; Instr. -i/-mi; Loc. -ech/-ích) -- guest (13)

hotový/hotov -- ready, finished, completed (13)

houska (f)(Gen.pl. housek) -- roll, twist (15)

hovořit (II,i)(See pohovořit) -- to talk, chat (2)

hra (f)(Gen.pl. her) -- play, game (7)

hranice (f)(Gen.pl. hranic) -- frontier, boundary, limit (20)

hrát (VII,i)(hrál, hrála)(See zahrát) -- to play (11)

hrát roli -- to play a part, role (15)

hrát si (VIII,i)(like hrát) -- to play for one's own pleasure (14G)

hrdina (m)(irreg. decl.) -- hero (11)

hrozit (II,i)(někomu něčím)(See pohrozit) -- to threaten (20)

hrozný -- awful, terrible (6)

hruška (f)(Gen.pl. hrušek) -- pear (16)

hřmět (IV,i)/hřmít (II,i)(perf. part. hřmělo only)(See zahřmět/zahřmít)(impersonal) -- to thunder (17)

hubený -- thin, lean, slim (7)

hubnout (VI,i)(See zhubnout) -- to grow slim, lose weight (7)

hudba (f) -- music (1)

hudebník (m) -- musician (2)

hůře/hůř (comp.adv. of špatný, zlý) -- worse (13G)

hustší (comp. adj.) see hustý

hustý (comp.: hustší) -- thick, dense (13)

hvězda (f) -- star (13)

hýbat (I,i)(See hnout) -- to move, stir (10)

hýbat se (I,i)(See hnout se) -- to move (14G)

CH

chápat (IX,i)(See pochopit) -- to comprehend, grasp (11)

charakter (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- character, moral character (16)

chladno (n) -- coolness (9)

chladný (pred.adj. chladno) -- cool (9)

chlapec/chlapc- (m) -- boy (15)

chléb/chleb- (m)(Gen.sg. -a) -- bread, loaf (13)

chodba (f)(Gen.pl. chodeb) -- corridor, hall (7)

chodit (II,i,indet.) -- to walk, go (on foot) (9)

chodit do společnosti -- to go out (socially) (15)

chodit/jít se podívat na + Acc. -- to drop in on (15)

chodník (m) -- sidewalk (19)

chtít (irreg.,i)(chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí; chtěl, chtěla) -- to want, wish (9)

chudší (comp. adj.) see chudý

chudý (comp.: chudší) -- poor, impoverished (13)

chut' (f)(Gen.sg.-Nom.pl.-Acc.pl. -ě; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -ěmi; Loc.pl. -ích) -- appetite, taste (3)

mít chut' na + Acc. -- to feel like having (3)

chutnat (I,i)(+ Dat. of person) -- to like, taste (13)

chvála (f)(Gen.pl. chval) -- praise (4)

chválit (II,i)(See pochválit) -- to praise (7)

chválit se (II,i)(See pochválit se) -- to praise oneself; to praise each other (14G)

chvíle (f)(Gen.pl. chvil) -- while, moment (5)

ještě chvíli -- a while longer, a while yet (5)

na poslední chvíli -- at the last moment (14)

chyba (f) -- mistake, error, blunder (12)

chybět (III,i) -- to be missing (7)

chystat (I,i)(See přichystat) -- to prepare, make ready (4)

chystat se (I,i)(See přichystat se) -- to prepare, make ready, intend (5)

chytat (I,i)(See chytit) -- to catch, grab (18)

chytit (II,p)(See chytat) -- to catch, grab (18)

chytrý -- clever (8)

I

i (conj. and adv.)(= a také) -- and, as well as, also, even (1)

i...i (conj.) -- both...and (1)

informace (f)(either sg. or pl.) -- piece of information, information (14)

inteligentní -- intelligent (5)

J

já (Gen.-Acc. mne (mě); Loc. mně; Dat. mně (mi); Instr. mnou) -- I (3G)

jablka (n)(Gen.pl. jablek; Loc.pl. jablkách) -- apple (16)

jak (adv.) -- how, as (4)

jakkoli (adv.) -- any way at all/however (18G)

jakmile (conj.) -- as soon as (15)

jako (adv.) -- like, as (2)

jaksi (adv.) -- somehow, kind of, to a certain extent (16)

jaký (interrog. pron.) -- what (kind of, sort of) (4)

jakýkoli (indef. pron.) -- any kind at all/whatever kind of (18G)

jakýsi (indef. pron.) -- some kind of (unknown) (18G)

Jan (m)(Voc. Jene) -- John (10)

Jarmila (f) -- Jarmila (feminine name) (2)

jaro (n)(Loc.sg. -u) -- spring (4)

jasný -- pred.adj. jasno) -- bright, clear (2) jazyk (m)(Loc.sg. either jazyce or jazyku) — tongue, language (15)

jeden, jedna, jedno — one, a/an (4,7)

jedenáct — eleven (12G)

jedenáctý — eleventh (12G)

jediný — single, only (4)

jedlý — edible (16G)

jednání (n) — act, conduct, behavior, action (2)

jednička (number noun) — one (12G)

jednoduchý (comp.: jednodušší) — simple (8)

jednodušší (comp.) see jednoduchý

jednotlivý — single, separate, individual (16)

jednou (adv.) — once, once upon a time, one day (7)

jeho — his, its (8)

jehož (indecl.)(rel.pron.) — whose, of which (18G)

její — her, its, hers (8)

jejich — their, theirs (8)

jejichž (indecl.)(rel.pron.) — whose, of which (18G)

jejíž (inflected like její + ž) — whose, of which (18G)

jemný — fine, delicate, refined (11)

jen (adv.) — only (2)

jenom (see jen) — only, merely (15)

jenž (rel.pron.)(See který) — which, what, who (18G)

jenže (conj.) — only, however (17)

jestli (conj.) — whether, if (7)

jestliže (conj.) — if (15)

ještě (adv.) — still (1)

ještě ne (adv.) — not yet (3)

jet (Va,i, det.)(jedu, jedeš; jel, jela) — to go (by vehicle) (5)

jezdit (II,i, indet.) — to ride, go (by vehicle) (9)

jezero (n) — lake (14)

jídelna (f)(Gen.pl. jídelen) — dining room, luncheonette (20)

jídlo (n)(Gen.pl. jídel) — meal, dish, food (8)

jih (m) — south (5)

jinak (adv.) — otherwise, in another way (11)

jinam (adv.) — elsewhere, to a different place (7)

jinde (adv.) — elsewhere (3)

jindy (adv.) — at other times (2)

jiný — other, different (7)

Jiří (m) — Jiří (masculine name) (3)

jíst (irreg.,i)(jím, jíš, jí, jíme, jíte, jedí; jedl, jedla)(See sníst) — to eat (4)

jistý (short form: být si jist) — sure, certain (13)

jít (Va,irreg.,i, det.)(jdu, jdeš; šel, šla) — to go (on foot) (5)

jít o + Acc. — to be the point, to be a question of, the thing is (11)

jít pro + Acc. — to go and fetch, go after something (6)

jít si (Va, irreg., i)(like jít) — to walk, deriving pleasure from the action (14G)

jméno (n)(Gen.pl. jmen) — name (11)

jmenovat (VII,i) — to call by name, appoint (14G)

jmenovat se (VII,i) — to be called, be named (9)

K

k(e) + Dat. (prep.) — to, toward (6)

kabát (m) — overcoat, suitcoat, jacket (13)

kalhoty (f)(pl. only) — trousers (20)

kam? — where? (motion) (1)

kámen/kamen- (m)(mixed decl.) — stone, rock (13) kamkoli (indef. adv.) — to any place at all (18G)

kamsi (indef. adv.) — to someplace (unknown) (18G)

kancelář (f)(Gen.sg.-Nom.-Acc.pl. -e; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) — office (6)

kapesník (m) — handkerchief (1)

kapsa (f)(Gen.pl. kapes) — pocket (14)

Karel/Karl- (m) — Karel (masculine name) (2)

kartáček/kartáčk- (m) — brush (14)

kartáček na zuby — toothbrush (14)

kašel/kašl- (m) — cough (1)

káva (f)(Gen.pl. kav) — coffee (2)

každý — every, each, everyone (6)

kde? — where? (1)

kdeco (indef. pron.) — absolutely everything (18G)

kdejaký (indef. pron.) — absolutely every kind (18G)

kdekdo (indef. pron.) — absolutely everyone (18G)

kdekoli (indef. adv.) — anywhere at all (18G)

kdesi (indef. adv.) — somewhere (unknown) (18G)

kdo? — who? (1)

kdokoli (indef. pron.) — anyone at all (18G)

kdosi (indef. pron.) — someone (unknown) (18G)

kdy? — when? (5)

kdyby (conj.) — if (conditional)(15G)

kdykoli (adv.) — whenever (4)

kdysi (adv.) — once, in the old days (16)

když (conj.) — when, since (5)

keř (m) — shrub, bush (3)

kéž (conj.) — would that, if only (15)

kilo- (prefix) — thousand (12G)

Klára (f) — Klára (feminine name)(1)

klepat (IX,i)(may have Class I present-tense forms, but imperative is only: klepej, klepejme, etc.)(See zaklepat) — to knock (16)

klíč (m) — key (8)

klid (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — quiet, calm, peace (13)

klidný (pred.adj. klidno) — quiet, calm, peaceful (14)

klobouk (m) — hat (2)

kniha (f)— book (1)

knihovna (f)(Gen.pl. knihoven) — library, bookcase (16)

knížka (f)(Gen.pl. knížek) — book, small book (17)

koberec/koberc- (m) — rug, carpet (2)

kočka (f)(Gen.pl. koček) — cat (8)

kolega (m)(irreg. decl.) — colleague (11)

kolem (adv.) — around, past, by (5)

kolem + Gen (prep.) — around, about; approximately (19)

koleno (n)(alternative Gen.-Dat.pl. kolenou) — knee (18)

kolik (quant.) — how much? how many? (8)

kolikátý? — what? which? (of a series) (12)

kolo (n) — wheel, circle, bicycle (8)

konat (I,i)(See vykonat) — to do, make, perform (14)

konat se (I,i) — to take place (14)

končit (II,i)(See skončit) — to end, finish, be over (7)

konec/konc- (m) — end (9)

konec konců (adv.) — after all, in the long run (17)

konečný — final (5)

konkrétní — concrete, particular (12)

kopec/kopc- (m) — hill (4)

koruna (f) — crown (12)

košile (f)(Gen.pl. košil) — shirt (14)

koupelna (f)(Gen.pl. koupelen) — bathroom (10)

koupit (si)(II,p)(See kupovat) -- to buy (for oneself) (9)

kouřit (II,i)(See vykouřit) — to smoke (3)

kouřit si (II,i) -- to smoke for one's enjoyment (14G)

kousek/kousk- (m) — bit, small piece (15)

krajina (f) — landscape, scenery (4)

král (m)(Nom.pl. králové) -- king (18)

královna (f)(Gen.pl. královen) -- queen (18)

krásný — beautiful, lovely (6)

krást (Va,i)(kradu, kradeš)(See ukrást) — to steal, pilfer (20G)

-krát (suffix) — times (12G)

krátko (adv.) see krátký (13G)

krátký (comp.: kratší) -- short (5)

kratší (comp. adj.) see krátký

kravata (f) — necktie, tie (19)

krk (m) — throat, neck (8)

krok (m) — step (8)

kromě + Gen. (prep.) — besides, except, in addition to, but (9)

krychlový — cubic (12G)

krýt (VIII,i) — to cover, shelter (10)

křičet (IV,i)(See křiknout) — to shout, cry (4)

křída (f) -- chalk (15)

křiknout (VI,p)(See křičet) — to shout, cry (7)

který — which, what (of a series or group) (4)

kterýkoli (indef. pron.) — any at all (of a series or a group) (18G)

kterýsi (indef. pron.) — some (unknown)(of a series or group) (18G)

kubický — cubic (12G)

kudy (adv.) -- which way (16)

kudykoli (indef. adv.) -- any way at all (18G)

kudysi (indef. adv.) — some way (unknown) (18G)

kuchyně (f) — kitchen, cuisine (12)

kultura (f) -- culture (7)

kůň/koň- (m)(irreg.)(Gen.pl. koňů/koní; Dat.pl. koňům/koním; Instr.pl. koni/koňmi) — horse (16)

kupodivu (adv.) -- surprisingly (enough), oddly (enough) (4)

kupovat (si)(VII,i)(See koupit) — to buy (for oneself) (9)

kurs (m) — course (15)

kus (m) -- piece (15)

květen/květn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) — May (12G)

květina (f) -- flower (4)

kvůli + Dat. (prep.) — on account of, because of, for the sake of (12)

L

lacino (adv.) see laciný

laciný (pred.adj. lacino) -- cheap (3)

láhev/lahv- (f)(Gen.sg. -e; Nom.-Acc.pl. -e; Gen.pl. lahví; Dat.pl. lahvím; Instr. pl. lahvemi; Loc.pl. lahvích) — bottle(19G)

lampa (f) -- lamp (4)

láska (f)(Gen.pl. lásek) -- love, affection, fondness (18)

laskavý/laskav — kind (13)

lavička (f)(Gen.pl. laviček) -- bench (4)

lecco(s) (indef.pron.) — many a thing (18G)

lecčí (indef. pron.) -- many a one's (18G)

lecjak (indef.adv.) -- many a way (18G)

lecjaký (indef.pron.) — many a kind of (18G)

leckam (indef. adv.) -- to many a place (18G)

leckde (indef. adv.) -- many a place (18G)

leckdo (indef. pron.) -- many a one/person (18G)

leckdy (indef. adv.) -- many a time (18G)

leckterý (indef. pron.) -- many a one (18G)

leckudy (indef. adv.) -- many a way (18G)

led (m) -- ice (17)

ledaco(s) (indef.pron.) -- many a thing (18G)

ledačí (indef. pron.) -- many a one's (18G)

ledajak (indef. adv.) -- many a way (18G)

ledajaký (indef. pron.) -- many a kind (18G)

ledakam (indef. adv.) -- to many a place (18G)

ledakde (indef. adv.) -- many a place (18G)

ledakdo (indef. pron.) -- many a one/person (18G)

ledakterý (indef. pron.) -- many a one (18G)

ledakudy (indef. pron.) -- many a way (18G)

ledaže (conj.) -- unless (16)

leden/ledn- (Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) -- January (12G)

legrace (f) -- fun (11)

dělat/udělat si legraci z + Gen. -- to make fun of (14)

lehat si (I,i)(See lehnout si) -- to lie down (19)

lehčí (comp. adj.) see lehký

lehko (adv.) see lehký

lehký (pred. adj. lehko) -- light, easy (3)

lehnout si (VI,p)(See lehat si) -- to lie down (19)

lék (m) -- medicine, remedy (6)

lékař (m) -- physician, doctor (10)

lekce (m) --lesson (15)

Leoš Janáček -- Czech musical composer (1854-1928) (16)

lépe (comp. adv.) see dobrý) -- better (13G)

lepší (comp. adj. of dobrý) -- better (13G)

les (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.pl. -ích) -- woods, forest (6)

letadlo (n)(Gen.pl. letadel) -- airplane (19)

létat (I,i, indet.) -- to fly, go by plane (9)

letět (IV,i, det.) -- to fly, go by plane (9)

letiště (n) -- airport (19)

letní -- summer (adj.)(4)

léto (n)(Gen.pl. lét, but let = of years) -- summer (4)

letos (adv.) -- this year (3)

letošní -- this year's (16)

levý -- left (6)

lézt (Va,i)(lezu, lezeš)(See vylézt) -- to crawl, creep, climb (18)

ležet (IV,i) -- to lie (4)

lhát (IX,i)(See zalhat) -- to lie, tell lies (11)

líbit se (II,i)(+ Dat. of person) -- to like, appeal to (13)

lidé (pl. only)(Gen. lidí; Dat. lidem; Acc. lidi; Instr. lidmi; Loc. lidech) -- people, human beings (4)

lingvistika (f) -- linguistics (4)

lístek/lístk- (m) -- ticket, card, slip (18)

listopad (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- November (12G)

lišit (II,i)(See roslišit) -- to distinguish, differentiate (14G) lišit se (II,i)(od + Gen.) — to differ from (13)

lít (VIII,i)(liji/leji, liješ/leješ) (personal and impersonal) -- to pour (liquids) (17)

literární -- literary (13)

literatura (f) — literature (8)

líto (impersonal pred. adj.) -- sorry (17)

litovat (VII,i)(+ Gen.) -- to be sorry (17)

litr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — liter (1.0567 quarts (12G)

logický -- logical (14)

loni (adv.) -- last year (6)

loučit se (II,i)(+s + Instr.)(See rozloučit se) — to part with, say good-bye to (10)

louka (f)(Gen.pl. luk) — meadow (6)

lze (adv.)(impersonal) — it is possible (17)

M

magnetofon (m) — tape recorder (11)

málo (adv. and quant.) — little, few (not enough) (6)

máloco (indef. pron.) — hardly anything (18G)

málokam (indef. adv.) — hardly anywhere (18G)

málokde (indef. adv.) -- hardly anywhere (18G)

málokdo (indef. pron.) -- hardly anyone (18G)

málokdy (indef. adv.) -- hardly any time (18G)

málokterý (indef. pron.) — hardly any one (18G)

málokudy (indef. adv.) — hardly any way (18G)

malovat (VII,i)(See namalovat) -- to paint (10)

mapa (f) — map (18)

Marie (f)(Gen. Marie; Dat.-Acc.-Loc.sg. Marii; Nom.-Acc.pl. Marie; Gen.pl. Marií; Dat.pl. Mariím; Instr.pl. Mariemi; Loc. pl. Mariích) — Mary (8)

Markéta (f) -- Margaret (17)

marný -- futile, vain (10)

máslo (n) -- butter (15)

maso (n) -- meat, flesh (18)

matčin -- mother's (9G)

matka (f)(Gen.pl. matek) -- mother (1)

mazat (IX,i)(See namazat and umazat) — to oil, grease, smear, soil (11)

mazat se (IX,i)(See umazat se) -- to get dirty (14G)

měkký (comp.: měkčí) -- soft (18)

méně (comp. adv. and quant.) -- less, fewer (13G)

měnit (II,i)(See změnit) -- to change (12)

menší (comp. of malý) — smaller (13G)

měřit (II,i)(See změřit) — to measure, take measurements (12)

měsíc (m) -- month, moon (6)

město (n) — city, town (4)

metr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — meter (39.37 inches) (12G)

mezi + Instr. or Acc. — between, among (10)

mezitím (adv.) — in the meantime (7)

míjet (III,i)(See minout) — to pass, go by (7)

míjet se (III,i)(+ s + Instr.)(See minout se) — to pass each other (14G)

Milan (m) -- Milan (masculine name)(1)

Milena (f) -- Milena (feminine name)(4)

miliarda (f) -- billion (12G)

milion (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- million (12G)

milovat (VII,i) -- to love, be fond of (10)

milovat se (VII,i) -- to love each other (14G) milý (pred.adj. milo) — dear, nice, affable (10)

mimo (+ Acc.) — past, by; except, in addition to (17)

mimochodem (adv.) — incidentally, by the way (10)

minout (VI,p)(See míjet) — to pass, go by (7)

minout se (VI,p)(+ s + Instr.)(See míjet se) — to pass each other (14G)

minulost (f) — the past (16)

minulý — past, last (in temporal sense) (8)

minus — minus (12G)

minuta (f) — minute (8)

míra (f)(Gen.pl. měr) — measure (12)

mírný — mild, gentle, moderate (14)

mísa (f)(Gen.pl. mis/mís) — dish, bowl (16)

místnost (f) — room, living space (14)

místo (n) — place, position, room (space) (9)

místo + Gen. (prep. and adv.) — instead of (11)

mít (I, irreg.,i)(mám, máš; měl, měla) — to have (1)

mít + inf. — to be to, to be supposed to (5)

mít na sobě — to be wearing, have on (9,14)

mít volno — to be free (not busy, not working (6)

mít se (like mít) — to be (mental or physical state) (14G)

mizet (III,i)(See zmizet) — to disappear, vanish, be gone (7)

mladší (comp.) see mladý

mladý (comp.: mladší) — young (3)

mlčet (IV,i) — to be silent, say nothing (13)

mlčky (adv.) — in silence, without a word, tacitly (20)

mléko (n) — milk (2)

mlha (f) — fog (19)

mluvit (II,i) — to speak (2)

mnoho (quant.) — many, much (8)

množství (n) — quantity, amount (19)

moc (adv. and quant.)(colloquial, = mnoho) — very, very much; rather (16)

moc (f) — power (16)

moci (Va,irreg.,i)(mohu,můžeš, může, můžeme, můžete, mohou; mohl, mohla) — can, to be able (5)

móda (f) — fashion, vogue (14)

moderní — modern (3)

modrý — blue (4)

Morava (f)(Loc. na Moravě) — Moravia (15)

moře (n) — sea, seashore (6)

most (m) — bridge (9)

motor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — engine, motor (19)

možná (adv.) — perhaps, possibly, maybe (4)

možná, že — it is possible that (4)

možnost (f) — possibility, likelihood, chance (14)

druhá (jiná) možnost — alternative (14)

možný (pred.adj. možno) — possible (9)

mrak (m) — cloud (dark) (19)

Mráz (m)(Acc.sg. -e) — family name (3)

mráz/mraz- (m)(used in pl. also) — frost (17)

mrazit (II,i) — to chill (17)

mrtvý/mrtev (pred.adj. mrtvo) — dead (13)

mrznout (VI,i)(See zmrznout) — to freeze (9)

můj, má, mé, etc. — my, mine (8)

muset (III,i)/musit (II,i) — to have to, must (3)

muž (m)(Nom.pl. muži = husbands; mužové = men) — husband, man, person, male (5)

my (Acc.-Gen.-Loc. nás; Dat. nám; Instr. námi) — we (3G)

mýdlo (n)(Gen.pl. mýdel) — soap (10)

mýlit (II,i)(See zmýlit) — to deceive; confuse (14G)

mýlit se (II,i)(See zmýlit se) — to be wrong, to be mistaken (2)

myslet (IV,i)/myslit (II,i) — to think (4)

myslet si (IV,i)/myslit si (II,i) — to think to oneself (14G)

myšlenka (f)(Gen.pl. myšlenek) — idea, thought (13)

mýt (se)(VIII,i)(See umýt (se)) — to wash (oneself) (10)

N

na + Acc. (prep.) — on, on top of, for; to (with verbs of motion) (1)

na + Loc. (prep.) — on, in,at (4)

naběhnout (VI,p)(See nabíhat) — to run on, upon, against (19G)

nabídnout (VI,p)(Past pass. part. nabídnut)(See nabízet) — to offer (19)

nabíhat (I,i)(See naběhnout) — to run on, upon, against (19G)

nabírat (I,i)(See nabrat) — to take a part of a larger quantity (20G)

nabízet (III,i)(See nabídnout) — to offer (19)

nabrat (Vc,p)(like brát)(See nabírat) — to take a part of a larger quantity (20G)

nábytek/nábytk- (m) — furniture (16)

načekat se (I,i/p) — to wait a long time (20G)

nad(e) + Instr. or Acc. — above, over (10)

nadběhnout (VI,p)(See nadbíhat) — to take a shortcut (19G)

nadbíhat (I,i)(See nadběhnout) — to take a shortcut (19G)

naděje (f) — hope (12)

nadejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See nadcházet) — to take a shortcut, to come up (19G)

nadcházet (III,i)(See nadejít) — to take a shortcut, to come up (19G)

nadjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See nadjíždět) — to take a shortcut, to go over (by vehicle) (19G)

nadjíždět (III,i)(See nadjet) — to take a shortcut, to go over (by vehicle) (19G)

nadnášet (III,i)(See nadnést) — to carry upwards, lift; to exaggerate (19G)

nadnést (Va,p)(like nést)(See nadnášet) — to carry upwards, lift; to exaggerate (19G)

nádoba (f) — vessel, container (19)

nádraží (n) — railroad station (1)

nadšení (n) — enthusiasm (17)

nadšený (+ Instr.) — enthusiastic (about) (17)

nahánět (III,i)(See nahnat) — to chase to; to chase a number of (19G)

nahlas (adv.) — aloud (2)

náhlý — sudden, unexpected (19)

nahnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See nahánět) — to chase to; to chase a number of (19G)

náhoda (f) — chance (12)

nahoru (adv.) — up, upstairs (motion) (9)

nahoře (adv.) — up, above, upstairs (2)

nacházet (III,i)(See najít) — to find (6)

najednou (adv.) — together, all at once (2) najet (Va,p)(like jet)(See najíždět) — to run on, into (by vehicle; to drive some distance (19G)

najíst se (irreg.,p)(like jíst)(+ Gen.) — to eat one's fill (of)(14)

najít (Va,p)(like jít)(See nacházet) — to find (6)

najíždět (III,i)(See najet) — to run on, into (by vehicle) (19G)

nakonec (adv.) — in the end (8)

nakoupit (II,p)(See nakupovat) — to shop, make purchases (15)

nakupovat (VII,i)(See nakoupit) — to shop, make purchases (15)

nálada (f) — mood, spirits, temper (13)

  nemít náladu — not to be in the mood (13)

nalét(áv)at (I,i)(See naletět/nalétnout) — to fly into, against (19G)

naletět (IV,p)(See nalét(áv)at/naletovat) — to fly into, against (19G)

nalétnout (VI,p)(See nalét(áv)at) — to fly into, against (19G)

nalevo (adv.) — to the left, on the left (2)

nalhat (IX,p)(See nalhávat) — to tell a number of lies (20G)

nalhávat (I,i)(See nalhat) — to tell a number of lies (20G)

namáhavý — hard, strenuous, tiring (13)

namalovat (VII,p)(See malovat) — to paint (10)

namazat (IX,p)(See mazat) — to oil, smear, grease well, thoroughly (11)

náměstí (n) — square, plaza (16)

nanášet (III,i)(See nanést) — to bring, carry (a quantity of); to apply to (19G)

nanést (Va,p)(like nést)(See nanášet) — to bring, carry (a quantity of); to apply to (19G)

naneštěstí (adv.) — unfortunately (19)

naopak (adv.) — on the contrary (9)

nápad (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — idea, notion, whim (8)

napětí (n) — strain, tension (19)

naplnit (II,p)(See naplňovat) — to fill (19)

naplňovat (VII,i)(See naplnit) — to fill (19)

napodobit (II,p)(See napodobovat) — to imitate (20G)

napodobovat (VII,i)(See napodobit) — to imitate (20G)

naposled (adv.) — for the last time, lastly, last (11)

napravo (adv.) — to the right, on the right (2)

naproti (adv.) — opposite, across the street (4)

  naproti + Dat. (prep.) — opposite (6)

napršet (IV,p) — to shower briefly (20G)

napřed (adv.) — before, in front, ahead (12)

napřesrok (adv.) — next year (12G)

například (např.) — for example,(e.g. (8)

napsat (IX,p)(like psát) — to write (11)

napsat se (IX,p)(like psát) — to write a lot (14)

narodit se (II,p)(See rodit se) — to be born (10)

narození (n) — birth (16G)

narozeniny (f)(pl. only) — birthday (12)

nasadit (II,p)(See nasazovat) — to put (on), mount; plant (18)

nasázet (III,p)(Distributive) — to plant (one after another) (18)

nasazovat (VII,i)(See nasadit) — to put (on), mount (18)

následek/následk- (m) — consequence (16)

naslibovat (VII,p) -- to make many promises (20G)

násobení (n) -- multiplication (12G)

nastat (Va,p)(3rd person only: nastane, nastanou)(See nastávat) -- to set in, come (20G)

nastávat (I,i)(3rd person only)(See nastat) -- to set in, come (20G)

náš, naše, naše, etc. -- our, ours (8)

naštěstí (adv.) -- fortunately (19)

natáhnout (VI,p)(See natahovat) -- to pull on, stretch; to wind (a clock) (19G)

natahovat (VII,i)(See natáhnout) -- to pull on, stretch; to wind (a clock) (19G)

naučit (II,p)(někoho něčemu)(See učit) -- to teach (something to someone)(10)

naučit se (II,p)(+ Dat.)(See učit se) -- to learn (10)

navážet (III,i)(See navézt) -- to haul (a quantity of) (19G)

navézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See navážet) -- to haul (a quantity of) (19G)

navrhnout (VI,p)(See navrhovat) -- to propose, put forward, suggest (16)

navrhovat (VII,i)(See navrhnout) -- to propose, put forward, suggest (16)

návštěva (f) -- call, visit (4)

návštěvník (m) -- visitor (4)

navštěvovat (VII,i)(See navštívit) -- to visit (15)

navštívit (II,p)(See navštěvovat) -- to visit (15)

navzájem (adv.) -- mutually, each other, one another (14)

nazdar -- hello, good-bye (15)

název/nazv- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- name, title (17)

naznačit (II,p)(See naznačovat) -- to suggest, hint, imply (20G)

názor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- view, opinion (12)

ne -- no, not (1)

nebe (n)(pl. stem nebes-) -- sky (4)

nebezpečí (n) -- danger (20)

nebezpečný -- dangerous (20)

nebo (conj.) -- or (2)

něco -- something, anything (8)

něco zajímavého -- something interesting (8)

něčí (indef. pron.) -- someone's/anyone's (18G)

nedávno (adv.) -- recently, not long ago (7)

nedávný -- recent (13G)

neděle (f) -- Sunday (7,12G)

nedorozumění (n) -- misunderstanding (16)

nedostatek/nedostatk- (m) -- shortage, lack, deficiency (14)

nehledě k + Dat. (adv.) -- apart from, regardless of, notwithstanding (16)

nechat (I,p)(See nechávat) -- to let, leave (5)

nechávat (I,i)(See nechat) -- to let, leave (5)

nechávat/nechat + Gen. -- to leave off doing something, drop something (17)

nějak (indef. adv.) -- somehow, anyhow (18G)

nějaký -- some (kind of)(4)

nejdříve/nejdřív (adv.) -- first (5)

nejen...ale (conj.) -- not only...but (2)

někam (indef. adv.) -- somewhere, anywhere (implies motion) (8)

někde (indef. adv.) -- somewhere, anywhere (8)

někdo (indef. pron.) -- somebody, anybody (8)

někdy (indef. adv.) -- occasionally, sometimes (1) několik (quant.) -- several, some, a few (8)

několik málo (quant.) -- a few (11)

několikerý (collective) -- some, several (12G)

několikrát (adv.) -- several times (17)

některý -- some (of a series, of a number) (9)

někudy (indef. adv.) -- some way, any way (18G)

nelze (adv.)(impersonal) -- it is impossible (17)

Němec/Němc- (m) -- German (also a family name) (10)

Němka (f)(Gen.pl. Němek) -- German (feminine) (10)

nemluvě o + Loc. (adv.) -- not to speak of (16)

nemoc (f) -- illness, sickness (10)

nemocnice (f) -- hospital (17)

nemocný/nemocen -- sick, ill (3)

nenávist (f) -- hate, hatred (18)

není zač -- don't mention it (17)

neočekávaný -- unexpected, unlooked for (16)

nerad -- see rád (4)

nést (Va,i, det.)(nesu, neseš) -- to carry (not by vehicle) (5)

nevýhoda (f) -- disadvantage, drawback (14)

než (conj./adv.) -- before, than (11)

nic (Gen. ničeho; Dat. ničemu; Acc. nic; Loc. ničem; Instr. ničím) -- nothing (9)

ničí (indef. pron.) -- no one's (18G)

nijak (indef. pron.) -- in no way (18G)

nijaký (indef. pron.) -- mediocre (18G)

nikam (indef. adv.) -- to no place, nowhere (18G)

nikde (indef. adv.) -- no where (18G)

nikdo (indef. pron.) -- nobody (8)

nikdy (indef. adv.) -- never (8)

nikoli (negative adv.)(See ne) -- no, not (18)

nikudy (indef. adv.) -- no way (18G)

nízko (adv.) see nízký

nízký (comp.: nižší) -- low (4)

níže (comp. adv.) see nízký

nižší (comp. adj.) see nízký

no ne! (interjection) -- Oh really! You don't say! (expression of wonder, surprise) (12)

noc (f)(Nom.-Acc.pl. -i/-e; Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) -- night (6)

noční -- night (adj.) (17)

noha (f)(Gen.pl. nohou; Instr.pl. nohama; Loc.pl. nohou/nohách) -- leg, foot (10)

normální -- normal (10)

nos (m) -- nose (7)

nosit (II,i,indet.) -- to wear, carry (2)

notýsek/notýsk- (m) -- pocket-sized book, address book (1)

noviny (f)(pl. only) -- newspaper (9)

nový -- new (3)

nudit (II,i) -- to bore (14G)

nudit se (II,i) -- to be bored (13)

nutit (II,i)(koho k čemu/do čeho)(See donutit) -- to force, compel, make someone do something (14)

nutný (pred.adj. nutno) -- necessary, urgent (11)

nyní (adv.) -- now (2)

O

o + Loc. (prep.) -- about, of (4)

oba (m), obě (f,n) -- both (12)

občas (adv.) -- from time to time (6)

oběd (m)(Gen.sg. -a) -- lunch, midday meal (6)

obědvat (I,i)(See poobědvat) — to have lunch (1)

oběhnout (VI,p)(See obíhat) — to run around, round up (19G)

obejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See obcházet) — to go around, avoid (19G)

obcházet (III,i)(See obejít) — to go around, avoid (19G)

obchod (m) — shop, trade, business (13)

obíhat (I,i)(See oběhnout) — to run around, round up (19G)

objednat (I,p)(See objednávat) — to order (18)

objednávat (I,i)(See objednat) — to order (18)

objet (Va,p)(like jet)(See objíždět) — to go around, avoid (19G)

objevit (II,p)(See objevovat) — to discover, reveal, disclose (14G)

objevit se (II,p)(See objevovat se) — to appear, turn up (11)

objevovat (VII,i)(See objevit) — to discover, reveal, disclose (14G)

objevovat se (VII,i)(See objevit se) — to appear, turn up (11)

objíždět (III,i)(See objet) — to go around, avoid (19G)

oblak (m)(alternate plural forms are neuter: oblaka, oblak, oblakům, etc.) — cloud (white, light) (19)

obléci (Va,p)(perf. part. oblekl; imper. oblec)(See oblékat) — to put on, dress

oblek (m) — suit, wearing apparel (8)

oblékat (I,i)(See obléknout) — to put on, dress (14G)

oblékat se (I,i)(See obléknout se) — to dress oneself (1)

obléknout (VI,p)(See oblékat) — to put on, dress (14G)

obléknout se (VI,p)(See oblékat se) — to dress oneself (7)

oblét(áv)at (I,i)(See obletět/oblétnout) — to fly around (19G)

obletět (IV,p)(See oblét(áv)at/obletovat) — to fly around (19G)

oblétnout (VI,p)(See obletovat/oblét(áv)at) — to fly around (19G)

obletovat (VII,i)(See oblétnout/obletět) — to fly around (19G)

oblíbený — popular, favorite (17)

obličej (m) — face (14)

obloha (f) — sky, firmament (19)

obložený chlebíček/chlebíčk- (m) — sandwich (15)

obojí (collective) — both (12G)

obracet se (III,i)(See obrátit se) — to turn (around) (15)

obracet se/obrátit se k + Dat. — to turn to, address (15)

obracet se/obrátit se na + Acc. — to have recourse to (15)

obrátit se (II,p)(See obracet se) — to turn around (15)

obraz (m) — picture, painting (2)

obrázek/obrázk- (m) — illustration, picture (7)

obrůst (Va,p)(like růst)(See obrůstat) — to grow over (20G)

obrůstat (I,i)(See obrůst) — to grow over (20G)

obsáhnout (VI,p)(See obsahovat) — to embrace, encompass, contain (20G)

obsahovat (VII,i)(See obsáhnout) — to embrace, encompass, contain (20G)

obvyklý — customary, habitual, usual (14)

obyčejný — usual (1)

ocenit (II,p)(See oceňovat) — to appreciate, evaluate (20G)

oceňovat (VII,i)(See ocenit) — to appreciate, evaluate (20G)

očekávat (I,i)(— to expect (16)

od(e) + Gen. — from, away from (8)

od té doby, co (conj. phrase) — since the time that (11)

odběhnout (VI,p)(See odbíhat) — to run away (19G) odbíhat (I,i)(See odběhnout) -- to run away (19G)

odbýt (Va,p)(like být)(See odbývat) -- to do indifferently (20G)

odbývat (I,i)(See odbýt) -- to do indifferently (20G)

odčítání (n) -- subtraction (12G)

oddělit (II,p)(něco od něčeho)(See oddělovat) -- to separate, detach, segregate (20G)

oddělovat (VII,i)(něco od něčeho)(See oddělit) -- to separate, detach, segregate (20G)

odehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See odhánět) -- to chase away (19G)

odejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See odcházet) -- to leave, go away (on foot)(5)

odepsat (IX,p)(like psát)(See odpisovat) -- to write back (20G)

odevšad/odevšud (indef. adv.) -- from everywhere (18G)

odhánět (III,i)(See odehnat) -- to chase away (19G)

odcházet (III,i)(See odejít) -- to leave, go away (on foot) (3)

odchod (m) -- departure, leaving (16)

odjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See odjíždět) -- to leave, go away (by vehicle)(5)

odjinud (indef. adv.) -- from somewhere else (18G)

odjíždět (III,i)(See odjet) -- to go away (by vehicle) (19G)

odkládat (I,i)(See odložit) -- to put off, postpone, take off (clothes)(17)

odkud? -- from where? (8)

odkudkoli (indef. adv.) -- from anywhere at all (18G)

odkudsi (indef. adv.) -- from somewhere (unknown) (18G)

odleckud (indef. adv.) -- from many a place (18G)

odlét(áv)at (I,i)(See odletět/odlétnout) -- to fly away (19G)

odletět (IV,p)(See odlét(áv)at/odletovat) -- to fly away (19G)

odlétnout (VI,p)(See odletovat/odlét(áv)at) -- to fly away (19G)

odletovat (VII,i)(See odlétnout/odletět) -- to fly away (19G)

odlišit (II,p)(něco od něčeho)(See odlišovat) -- to differentiate (20G)

odlišovat (VII,i)(něco od něčeho)(See odlišit) -- to differentiate (20G)

odložit (II,p)(See odkládat) -- to put off, postpone, take of (clothes) (17)

odmítat (I,i)(See odmítnout) -- to refuse, reject, decline (18)

odmítnout (VI,p)(See odmítat) -- to refuse, reject, decline (18)

odmlouvat (I,i) -- to talk back, contradict (20G)

odnášet (III,i)(See odnést) -- to carry, take away (19G)

odněkud (indef. adv.) -- from somewhere, anywhere (18G)

odnést (Va,p)(like nést)(See odnášet) -- to carry, take away (19G)

odnikud (indef. adv.) -- from nowhere (18G)

odpisovat (VII,i)(See odepsat) -- to write back (20G)

odpočinout si (VI,i)(See odpočívat) -- to rest, have a rest, relax (13)

odpočívat (I,i)(See odpočinout si) -- to rest, have a rest, relax (13)

odpoledne (n) -- afternoon (4)

odpouštět (III,i)(někomu něco)(See odpustit) -- to forgive (20G)

odpověd' (f)(Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) -- answer (6)

odpovědět (irreg.,p)(like vědět)(+ Dat.)(See odpovídat) -- to answer, reply (5)

odpovídat (I,i)(+ Dat.)(See odpovědět) -- to answer, reply (1)

  odpovědět/odpovídat na něco -- to reply to something (6,11)

odpracovat (VII,p)(See odpracovávat)— to work off, put in (time) (20G)

odpracovávat (I,i)(See odpracovat) — to work off, put in (time) (20G)

odpustit (II,p)(někomu něco)(See odpouštět) — to forgive (20G)

odstranit (II,p)(něco z něčeho)(See odstraňovat) — to put away, remove (20G)

odstraňovat (VII,i)(něco z něčeho)(See odstranit) — to put away, remove (20G)

odsud (adv.) see odtud

odtáhnout (VI,p)(See odtahovat) — to drag, pull away (19G)

odtahovat (VII,i)(See odtáhnout) — to drag, pull away (19G)

odtud (adv.) — from there/here (6)

odvádět (III,i)(See odvést) — to lead away (19G)

odvážet (III,i)(See odvézt) — to take/carry away (in some conveyance)(17)

odvést (Va,p)(like vést)(See odvádět) — to lead away (19G)

odvézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See odvážet) — to take/carry away (in some conveyance) (17)

ohlásit (II,p)(See hlásit) — to announce, report (14G)

ohlásit se (II,p)(See hlásit se) — to respond, to take a call (5G)

ohlédnout se (VI,p)(See ohlížet se) — to turn around and look (20G)

ohlídat (I,p)(See hlídat) — to watch, guard, take care of (18)

ohlížet se (III,i)(See ohlédnout se) — to turn around and look (20G)

ochutnat (I,p)(See ochutnávat) — to taste (transitive) (19)

ochutnávat (I,i)(See ochutnat) — to taste (transitive) (19)

okamžik (m) — moment, instant (13)

okamžitě (adv.) — instantaneously, immediately, at once, without delay (14)

okamžitý — instantaneous, immediate (14)

okno (n)(Gen.pl. oken) — window (2)

oko (n)(Nom.-Acc.pl. oči; Gen.pl. očí; Dat.pl. očím; Instr.pl. očima; Loc.pl. očích) — eye (13)

okolí (n) — surroundings, neighborhood, environment (19)

okolnost (f) — circumstance, condition (14)

okraj (m) — edge, margin (20)

omezit (II,p)(See omezovat) — to limit, restrict, curtail (20G)

omezovat (VII,i)(See omezit) — to limit, restrict, curtail (20G)

omlouvat se (I,i)(někomu za něco)(See omluvit se) — to apologize, excuse oneself (18)

omluvit se (II,p)(někomu za něco)(See omlouvat se) — to apologize, excuse oneself (18)

omyl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — error, mistake (15)

on, ona, ono — he, she, it (3G)

opakovat (VII,i)(See zopakovat) — to repeat, review, recapitulate (9)

opera (f) — opera (2)

operace (f) — operation (17)

opouštět (III,i)(See opustit) — to leave, abandon (20G)

opravdový — true, real, genuine (10)

opravdu (adv.) — really, indeed (2)

opravit (II,p)(See opravovat) — to correct, repair, mend (15)

opravovat (VII,i)(See opravit) — to correct, repair, mend,(15)

optimista (m)(irreg. decl.) — optimist (11)

opustit (II,p)(See opouštět) — to leave, abandon (20G)

osm — eight (12G)

osmdesát — eighty (12G)

osmdesátý — eightieth (21G)

osmerý/-o (coll. num.) — eight (12G)

osmička (f)(number noun) — eight (12G)

osmnáct — eighteen (12G)

osmnáctý — eighteenth (12G)

osmý — eighth (12G)

osobní — personal (17)

ostatně (adv.) — after all (16)

ostatní — the remaining, the other (11)

Ostrava — city in MOravia (17)

osud (m) — fate, destiny (12)

ošklivý (pred.adj. ošklivo) — ugly, nasty, bad (9)

otázka (f)(Gen.pl. otázek) — question (6)

otcův/-ov- (poss. adj.) — father's (9G)

otec/otc- (m)(Nom.pl. otci/otcové) — father (1)

otvírat (I,i)(See otevřít) — to open (16)

otevřít (Vb,p)(perf. part. otevřel, otevřela)(See otvírat) — to open (16)

otrava (f) — boredom, tedium; poisoning (13)

otrávit se (II,p)(See otravovat se) — to take poison; to be bored (15)

otravovat se (VII,i)(See otrávit se) — to take poison; to be bored (15)

ovoce (n)(sg. only) — fruit (16)

ovšem (adv.) — of course (3)

oznámit (II,p)(See oznamovat) — to announce, notify, inform (13)

oznamovat (VII,i)(See oznámit) — to announce, notify, inform (13)

ozvat se (Vc,p)(like zvát)(See ozývat se) — to make oneself heard, resound, respond, break the silence (16)

ozývat se (I,i)(See ozvat se) — to make oneself heard, resound, respond, break the silence (16)

oženit se (II,p)(See ženit se) — to get married (of a man) (20G)

P

pacient (m) — patient (male) (16)

pacientka (f)(Gen.pl. pacientek) — patient (female) (16)

padat (I,i)(See spadnout and upadnout) — to fall (11)

padesát — fifty (12G)

padesátý — fiftieth (12G)

padlý — fallen (16G)

padnout (VI,p)(See padat) — to fall (11)

pak (adv.)(See potom) — then (14)

pálit (II,i)(See spálit) — to scorch, burn (14)

pamatovat si (VII,i)(See zapamatovat si) — to remember, retain in memory (10)

pamět' (f)(Dat.pl. -tem; Instr.pl. -tmi; Loc.pl. -tech) — memory (pl. = memoirs) (10)

pan (m) — Mr. (1)

pán (m)(Nom.pl. páni/panové) — gentleman (6)

paní (f)(all sg. forms, paní; Nom.-Gen.-Acc.pl. paní; Dat.pl. paním; Instr.pl. paními, Loc.pl. paních) — lady, Mrs. (1, 10)

papír (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — paper (6)

pár (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — couple, pair, a few (8)

pára (f)(Gen.pl. par) — vapor, steam (19)

párek/párk- (m) — wiener, frankfurter (2)

park (m) — park (4)

pas (m) — waist (15)

pás (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — tape, strip, band (11)

pátek/pátk- (m) — Friday (12G)

paterý/-o (coll. num) — five (12G)

patnáct — fifteen (12G)

patnáctý — fifteenth (12G)

patrný (pred.adj. patrno) — apparent, perceptible (4)

patřit (II,i)(+ Dat.) — to belong to (6)

pátý — fifth (12G)

Pavel/Pavl- (m) — Paul (first name) (14)

pečivo (n) — baked goods (15)

pečlivý — careful (11)

pěkný — fine, pretty (4)

peníze (m.pl.)(Gen. peněz; Loc. penězích; Instr. penězi) — money (8)

pero/péro (n)(Loc.sg. -u) — pen (1)

  kuličkové pero — ball-point pen (14)

pes/ps- (m)(Loc.sg. -u; Loc.pl. -ích) — dog (8)

pesimista (m)(irreg. decl.) — pessimist (11)

pěšky (adv.) — on foot (17)

pět — five (12G)

Petr (m) — Peter (11)

Pét'a (m)(irreg. decl.) — diminutive of Peter (11)

pětka (f)(number noun) — five (12G)

pevný — firm, solid, strong (18)

pilný — hard-working, diligent (17)

písmeno (n) — letter (16)

  tiskací písmeno — printed letter (16)

pít (VIII,i)(See vypít) — to drink (10)

pivo (n) — beer (19)

plakat (IX,i)(pláči, pláčeš)(See zaplakat) — to weep, cry (15)

plán (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — plan (4)

plášt'(m) — overcoat, topcoat (9)

platit (II,i)(See zaplatit) — to pay (6)

plést (Va,i)(pletu, pleteš)(See splést) — to braid, entwine, confuse (14G)

plést se (Va,i)(like plést)(See splést se) — to be confused, mistaken (5)

plný/pln + Gen. — full (of) (8)

plot (m) — fence (20)

plus — plus (12G)

plyn (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — gas (19)

po + Loc. (prep.) — after, along, up and down, all over (4)

pobavit (II,p)(See bavit) — to attract, amuse (14G)

pobavit se (II,p)(See bavit se) — to amuse oneself, have a good time (5G)

pobýt (Va,p)(like být)(See pobývat) — to stay a while (5)

pobývat (I,i)(See pobýt) — to stay a while (5G)

pocit (m) — sensation, feeling (19)

počasí (n) — weather (9)

počátek/počátk- (m) — beginning (17)

počet/počt- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — number (quantity) (17)

počítat (I,i)(See spočítat) — to count, figure up, reckon, calculate (12)

počkat (I,p)(See čekat) — to wait a while (5)

počkat si (I,p)(See čekat si) — not to mind waiting (14G)

pod(e) + Instr. or Acc. — below, beneath, under (10)

podařit se (II,p)(+ Dat. of person) (See dařit se)(personal and impersonal) — to succeed in something or in doing something (17)

podat (I,p)(See podávat) — to hand in/over (20G)

podávat (I,i)(See podat) — to hand in/over (20G)

podběhnout (VI,p)(See podbíhat) — to run under (19G)

podbíhat (I,i)(See podběhnout) — to run under (19G)

podcenit (II,p)(See podceňovat) — to underestimate (20G)

podceňovat (VII,i)(See podcenit) — to underestimate (20G)

podejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See podcházet) — to walk under (19G)

poděkovat (VII,p)(+ Dat.)(See děkovat) — to thank (9)

podepsat se (IX,p)(like psát)(See podpisovat se) — to sign one's name (20G)

podcházet (III,i)(See podejít) — to walk under (19G)

podívat se (I,p)(See dívat se) — to take a look (5G)

podívat se na + Acc. — to take a look at (1,5)

podjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See podjíždět) — to drive under (19G)

podjíždět (III,i)(See podjet) — to drive under (19G)

podkládat (I,i)(See podložit) — to put under, support (20G)

podlaha (f) — floor (14)

podle + Gen. (prep.) — according to (12)

podle všeho — to all appearances (13)

podlétávat (I,i)(See podletět) — to fly under (19G)

podletět (IV,p)(See podlétávat) — to fly under (19G)

podložit (II,p)(See podkládat) — to put under, support (20G)

podnikat (I,i)(See podniknout) — to undertake (20G)

podniknout (VI,p)(See podnikat) — to undertake (20G)

podobně (adv.) — like that, similarly (14)

a podobně (apod.) — and the like (14)

podobný/podoben — similar, resembling (7)

podpisovat se (VII,i)(See podepsat se) — to sign one's name (20G)

podrobný — detailed (19)

podržet (IV,p)(See držet) — to hold a while (5G)

podržet se (IV,p)(+ Gen.)(See držet se) — to hold on (to someone/something) (14)

podvádět (III,i)(See podvést) — to deceive, cheat (20G)

podvést (Va,p)(like vést)(See podvádět) — to deceive, cheat (20G)

podzim (m) — autumn, fall (4)

pohádka (f)(Gen.pl. pohádek) — tale, fairy tale, fable (18)

pohled (m) — look, sight, view (20)

pohnout (VI,p)(něčím)(See pohýbat) — to move slightly, stir (20G)

pohodlný — comfortable (3)

pohovořit (II,p)(See hovořit) — to talk a bit (5G)

pohrozit (II,p)(někomu něčím)(See hrozit) — to threaten (20)

pohyb (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — motion, movement, exercise (9)

pohýbat (I,i)(něčím)(See pohnout) — to move slightly, stir (20G)

pochopit (II,p)(See chápat) — to comprehend (6)

pochválit (II,p)(See chválit) — to praise (7)

pochválit se (II,p)(See chválit se) — to praise oneself; to praise each other (14G)

pochybovat (VII,i)(o + Loc.)(See zapochybovat) — to doubt, have doubts (about)(12)

pojet (Va,i)(pojedu, pojedeš)(The infinitive and perf. part. of this verb do not exist) — to go (by vehicle)(5)

pojít (Va,i)(půjdu, půjdeš)(The infinitive and perf. part. of this verb do not exist) — to go on foot (5)

pokládat (I,i)(See položit) — to lay, put (16)

pokládat někoho/něco za někoho/něco — to consider someone/something as someone/something (16)

pokoj (m) — room, living room; peace (3)

pokoušet se (III,i)(o něco)(See pokusit se) — to attempt, try, make an effort (18)

pokud (adv.) — as long as, as far as (5, 18)

pokud jde o + Acc. — as far as ... is concerned (18)

pokud možno — if possible (18)

pokusit se (II,p)(o něco)(See pokoušet se) — to attempt, try, make an effort (18)

pole (n) — field (13)

poledne (n) — noon (6)

v poledne — at noon (12)

polévat (I,i)(něco něčím)(See polít) — to pour/spill all over (20G)

polévka (f)(Gen.pl. polévek) — soup (20)

polít (VIII,p)(like lít)(něco něčím)(See polévat) — to pour/spill all over (20G)

politický — political (12)

politika (f) — politics, policy (19)

poloha (f) — situation, position, location (4)

polovina (f) — one-half (12G)

položit (II,p)(See pokládat) — to lay, put (16)

polštář (m) — pillow (20)

pomáhat (I,i)(+ Dat.)(See pomoci) — to help, assist, aid (6)

pomalu (adv.) — slowly (8)

pomalý — slow (12G)

poměrný — relative (19)

pomník (m) — monument, memorial (17)

pomoc (f) — help, aid, assistance (16)

pomoci (Va,p)(like moci)(+ Dat.)(See pomáhat) — to help, assist, aid (6)

pomocí + Gen. — by means of (18)

pondělí (n)(pondělek/pondělk- (m)(Gen. sg. -a)) — Monday (12G)

poněvadž (conj.) — since (16)

poobědvat (I,p)(See obědvat) — to have lunch (5)

popisovat (VII,i)(See popsat) — to describe, give an account of (16)

poprchávat (I,i)(impersonal) — to drizzle (17)

poprosit (II,p)(někoho o něco)(See prosit) — to ask (for), request (from), beg (for) (15)

popřát (VII,p)(popřeji, popřeješ; popřál)(See přát) — to wish a person something (16)

popsat (IX,p)(like psát)(See popisovat) — to describe, give an account of (16)

poradit (II,p)(někomu něco)(See radit) — to advise (17)

porazit (II,p)(See porážet) — to knock down, upset, defeat (16)

porážet (III,i)(See porazit) — to knock down, upset, defeat (16)

porodit (II,p)(See rodit) — to bear children (14G)

porozumět (III,p)(+ Dat.)(See rozumět) — to understand (6)

pořád (adv.) — constantly, all the time, still (1)

pořádek/pořádk- (m) — order (1)

dát do pořádku — to put in order (11)

dělat pořádek — to put things in order, straighten up (1)

pořádně (adv.) — thoroughly, decidedly, in an orderly manner (14)

posbírat (I,i)(distributive) — to collect, gather (one after another)(18)

poschodí (n) — floor, story (17)

posílat (I,i)(See poslat) — to send (4)

poskytnout (VI,p)(See poskytovat) — to give, provide (16)

poslat (IX,p)(See posílat) — to send (11)

poslední — last, latest (6)

poslechnout (VI,p)(See poslouchat) — to listen, obey (8)

poslouchat (I,i)(See poslechnout) -- to listen (1)

posluchač (m) -- listener, hearer, student (15)

posluchárna (f)(Gen.pl. poslucháren) -- lecture room (15)

pospíchat (I,i)(See pospíšit) -- to be in a hurry (1)

pospíšit (II,p)(irreg. imp.: pospěš, pospěšte, pospěšme) -- to hurry (13)

postačit (II,p)(See stačit) -- to suffice, be enough (14)

postarat se (I,p)(o + Acc.)(See starat se) -- to take care of, look after (10)

postavit (II,p)(See stavět) -- to build (20)

postel (f)(Gen.sg. and Nom.pl. -e; Dat. pl. -ím; Loc.pl. -ích) -- bed (2)

postěžovat si (VII,p)(někomu + na něco/někoho)(See stěžovat si) -- to complain (to someone about someone/something) (15)

postupný -- gradual (18)

posypat (IX,p)(něco něčím)(See posýpat) -- to strew/sprinkle all over (20G)

posýpat (I,i)(něco něčím)(See posypat) -- to strew/sprinkle all over (20G)

poškodit (II,p)(See poškozovat) -- to damage, injure (20G)

poškozovat (VII,i)(See poškodit) -- to damage, injure (20G)

pošta (f) -- post office (4)

poštovní -- mail, post (adj.) (18)

poštovní schránka -- mail box (18)

pot (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- sweat, perspiration (18)

potíž (f)(Gen.sg. and Nom.pl. -e; Dat. pl. -ím; Instr. sg. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) -- difficulty, trouble (11)

potkat (I,p)(See potkávat) -- to meet (by chance) (5)

potkat se (I,p)(See potkávat se) -- to meet each other, become acquainted with each other (14G)

potkávat (I,i)(See potkat) -- to meet (by chance) (4)

potkávat se (I,i)(See potkat se) -- to meet each other, become acquainted with each other (14G)

potom (adv.) -- then, afterwards (5)

potom co (conj.) -- after (16)

potrvat (I,p)(See trvat) -- to last, take (time) (7)

potřebovat (VII,i) -- to need (9)

potvrdit (II,p)(See potvrzovat) -- to confirm, corroborate (20G)

potvrzovat (VII,i)(See potvrdit) -- to confirm, corroborate (20G)

pouhý -- mere, bare (17)

pouštět (III,i)(See pustit) -- to let go, release (20)

použít (VIII,p)(+ Gen.)(See používat) -- to use, make use of, employ (12)

používat (I,i)(+ Gen.)(See použít) -- to use, make use of, employ (12)

považovat (VII,i)(+ Acc. + za + Acc.) -- to regard, consider someone/something as someone/something (10)

považovat se (VII,i)(+ za + Acc.) -- to consider oneself as (14G)

povědět (irreg.,p)(like vědět)(See povídat and vypravovat) -- to tell, talk (11)

povídat (I,i)(See povědět) -- to tell, talk (11)

povinnost (f) -- duty, obligation (15)

pozavírat (I,p)(distributive) -- to close, shut (one after another)(18)

pozdě (adv.) -- late (3)

pozdější (comp. adj.) -- later (in sequence) (13G)

pozdnější (comp. of pozdní) -- later (not early) (13G)

pozdní -- late (13G)

pozdrav (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- greeting (6)

pozdravit (II,p)(See zdravit) -- to greet (7) pozdravit se (II,p)(See zdravit se)(s + Instr.) — to greet each other (14G)

pozítří (adv.) -- the day after tomorrow (7)

poznámka (f)(Gen.pl. poznámek) -- note, remark (7)

poznání (n) — knowledge (16G)

poznat (I,p)(See poznávat) -- to recognize, get acquainted with (5)

poznat se (I,p)(s + Instr.)(See poznávat se) -- to recognize each other (14G)

poznávání (n) -- perception (16G)

poznávat (,i)(See poznat) — to recognize, get acquainted with (5)

poznávat se (I,i)(s + Instr.)(See poznat se) -- to recognize each other; become acquainted with each other (14G)

pozor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — attention (11)

pozor! — look out! (11)

dávat/dát pozor na + Acc. -- to pay attention to, to watch out for (11)

pozorovat (VII,i)(See zpozorovat) — to watch, observe (18)

pozvat (Vc,p)(like zvát)(See zvát) — to invite (13)

pozvat se (Vc,p)(like zvát)(See zvát se) — to invite each other (14G)

požádat (I,p)(o + Loc.)(See žádat) — to request, ask (for), require (14)

práce (f)(Instr.sg. prací; Gen.pl. prací; Instr.pl. pracemi; Loc.pl. pracích) — work (5)

pracovat (VII,i) -- to work (10)

Praha (f) -- Prague (1)

prach (m) -- dust, powder (17)

praktický -- practical, handy (13)

pramen (m)(mixed declension) -- source, spring (13)

prášek/prášk- (m) -- powder, pill (18)

pravda (f) -- truth (2)

mít pravdu — to be right (4)

pravděpodobný — probable, likely (16)

právě (adv.) — just (this very moment), just now (6)

pravidelný -- regular (15)

pravidlo (n)(Gen.pl. pravidel) -- rule, axiom (14)

pravopis (m) -- orthography, spelling (14)

pravý -- right, genuine (6)

prázdniny (f)(Pl.only) — holidays, vacation (18)

prázdný (pred. adj. prázdno) -- empty (5)

pro + Acc. — for, in favor of (6)

proběhnout (VI,p)(See probíhat) — to run through, to run its course, proceed (19G)

probíhat (I,i)(See proběhnout) -- to run through, to run its course, proceed (19G)

problém (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — problem (10)

probouzet se (III,i)(See probudit se) -- to awake, wake up (19)

probudit se (II,p)(See probouzet se) — to awake, wake up (19)

proč? — why? (2)

prodat (I,p)(See prodávat) — to sell (13)

prodávat (I,i)(See prodat) — to sell (13)

profesor (m) — professor (1)

program (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- program (14)

prohánět (III,i)(See prohnat) — to chase through (19G)

prohlásit (II,p)(See prohlašovat) -- to declare, state (20G)

prohlašovat (VII,i)(See prohlásit) — to declare, state (20G)

prohledat (I,p)(See prohledávat) -- to search thoroughly (20G)

prohledávat (I,i)(See prohledat) -- to search thoroughly (20G)

prohlédnout si (VI,p)(See prohlížet si) -- to examine, inspect, visit (places) (14)

prohlížet si (III,i)(See prohlédnout si) — to examine, inspect, visit (places (14)

prohnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See prohánět) — to chase through (19G)

prohodit (II,p) — to mention casually (20G)

prohrát (VIII,p)(See prohrávat) — to gamble away, lose (20G)

prohrávat (I,i)(See prohrát) — to gamble away, lose (20G)

procházet (III,i)(See projít) — to walk, go through (19G)

procházet se (III,i)(See projít se) — to take a walk (6)

procházka (f)(Gen.pl. procházek) — walk (4)

projet (Va,p)(like jet)(See projíždět) — to drive, go through (19G)

projevit (II,p)(See projevovat) — to manifest, display, demonstrate (20G)

projevovat (VII,i)(See projevit) — to manifest, display, demonstrate (20G)

projít (Va,p)(like jít)(See procházet) — to walk, go through (19G)

projít se (Va,p)(like jít)(See procházet) — to take a walk (6)

projíždět (III,i)(See projet) — to drive, go through (19G)

prolét(áv)at (I,i)(See proletět/prolétnout) — to fly through (19G)

proletět (IV,p)(See prolét(áv)at/proletovat) — to fly through (19G)

prolétnout (VI,p)(See proletovat/prolét(áv)at) — to fly through (19G)

proletovat (VII,i)(See prolétnout/proletět) — to fly through (19G)

promíjet (III,i)(See prominout) — to excuse, forgive ,pardon (7)

prominout (VI,p)(See promíjet) — to excuse, forgive, pardon (7)

promlouvat (I,i)(See promluvit) — to have a talk with; deliver a speech (16)

promluvit (II,p)(See promlouvat) — to have a talk with; deliver a speech (16)

promyslit (II,p)(See promýšlet) — to deliberate, reflect on (20G)

promýšlet (III,i)(See promyslit) — to deliberate, reflect on (20G)

pronášet (III,i)(See pronést) — to carry through (19G)

pronést (Va,p)(like nést)(See pronášet) — to carry through (19G)

pronikat (I,i)(See proniknout) — to penetrate, permeate (20G)

proniknout (VI,p)(See pronikat) — to penetrate, permeate (20G)

propíjet (III,i)(See propít) — to lose, squander by drinking (20G)

propít (VIII,p)(See propíjet) — to lose, squander by drinking (20G)

prosím — please (2)

prosím tě — oh, come on! please! (5)

prosím vás — oh, come on! please! (11)

prosinec/prosinc- (m) — December (20G)

prosit (II,i)(někoho o něco)(See poprosit) — to ask (for), request (from), beg (for) (15)

prostší (comp.) see prostý (13G)

prostý — simple (13G)

prostudovat (VII,p)(See studovat) — to study (9)

protáhnout (VI,p)(See protahovat) — to drag through/out, extend (19G)

protahovat (VII,i)(See protáhnout) — to drag through/out, extend (19G)

proti + Dat. — opposite, facing, against, compared with (6)

protivný — detestable (5)

proto (adv.) — that is why, therefore (4)

protože (conj.) — because (4)

provádět (III,i)(See provést) — to lead through; to carry out, accomplish (19G) provážet (III,i)(See provézt) — to haul through (19G)

provést (Va,p)(like vést)(See provádět) — to lead through; to carry out, accomplish (19G)

provézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See provážet) — to haul through (19G)

provoz (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — traffic (5)

prožít (VIII,p)(See prožívat) — to live through, experience (20G)

prožívat (I,i)(See prožít) — to live through, experience (20G)

prst (m) — finger (19)

pršet (IV,i) — to rain (4)

prudký — violent, strong, extreme, intense (14)

průmysl (m) — industry (19)

průmyslový — industrial (19)

první — first (3)

prý (adv.) — they say, I understand, allegedly (6)

pryč (adv.) — away, gone (3)

přát (VIII,i)(někomu něco)(přeji, přeješ; přál)(See popřát) — to wish a person something (16)

přát si (VIII,i)(like přát) — to wish (16)

přátelský — friendly, amicable (13)

přeběhnout (VI,p)(See přebíhat) — to run across, over (something)(19G)

přebíhat (I,i)(See přeběhnout) — to run across, over (something) (19G)

přece — after all, surely, yet, anyhow (11)

přečíst (Va,p)(like číst)(See číst) — to read (5)

přečíst si (Va,p)(like číst)(See číst si) — to read for one's own enjoyment (14G)

před(e) + Instr. or Acc. (prep.) — before, ahead of, in front of (10)

předběhnout (VI,p)(See předbíhat) — to run in front of, overtake by running (19G)

předbíhat (I,i)(See předběhnout) — to run in front of, to overtake by running (19G)

předčíst (Va,p)(like číst)(See předčítat) — to read aloud to someone (20G)

předčítat (I,i)(See předčíst) — to read aloud to someone (20G)

předehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See předhánět) — to overtake (19G)

předejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See předcházet) — to overtake (19G)

předělat (I,p)(See předělávat) — to re-do, re-make (20G)

předělávat (I,i)(See předělat) — to re-do, re-make (20G)

předem (adv.) — in advance, beforehand (14)

předevčírem (adv.) — the day before yesterday (12)

především (adv.) — above all (17)

předhánět (III,i)(See předehnat) — to overtake (19G)

předcházet (III,i)(See předejít) — to overtake (19G)

předjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See předjíždět) — to drive in front of, overtake (19G)

předjíždět (III,i)(See předjet) — to drive in front of, overtake (19G)

předletět (IV,p)(See předletovat) — to overtake by flying (19G)

předletovat (VII,i)(See předletět) — to overtake by flying (19G)

předmět (m) — object, subject (in school) (10)

přednášet (III,i)(See přednést) — to lecture, recite (6,19G)

přednáška (f)(Gen.pl. přednášek) — lecture, class (1)

přednést (Va,p)(like nést)(See přednášet) — to recite, lecture, deliver (speech) (19G)

přednost (f) — priority, preference, merit, advantage (13)

dávat přednost něčemu před něčím -- to prefer something to something (13)

předplácet (III,i)(See předplatit) -- to subscribe to, prepay (20G)

předplatit (II,p)(See předplácet) -- to subscribe to, prepay (20G)

předpokládat (I,i) -- to anticipate, assume (17)

předpovědět (irreg.,p)(like vědět) (See předpovídat) -- to foretell, predict (20G)

předpovídat (I,i)(See předpovědět) -- to foretell, predict (20G)

představit si (II,p)(See představovat si) -- to imagine (15)

představovat si (VII,i)(See představit si) -- to imagine (15)

předstírat (I,i) -- to pretend, simulate, feign (20G)

předtím (adv.) -- before, previously (11)

předvádět (III,i)(See předvést) -- to lead in front of; to demonstrate something, "model" (19G)

předvést (Va,p)(like vést)(See předvádět) -- to lead in front of; to demonstrate something, "model" (19G)

předvídat (I,i) -- to anticipate (20G)

přehánět (III,i)(See přehnat) -- to exaggerate (5); to chase over, across (19G)

přehlédnout (VI,p)(See přehlížet) -- to overlook, disregard; look over (20G)

přehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See přehánět) -- to exaggerate; to chase over, across (19G)

přehrát (VIII,p)(See přehrávat) -- to re-play (20G)

přehrávat (I,i)(See přehrát) -- to re-play (20G)

přecházet (III,i)(See přejít) -- to to over, across (19G)

přechodník (m) -- adverbial participle (16)

přejet (Va,p)(like jet)(See přejíždět) -- to drive over/across, to run over (19G)

přejídat se (I,i)(See přejíst se) -- to overeat (20G)

přejíst se (irreg.,p)(like jíst)(See přejídat se) -- to overeat (20G)

přejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See přecházet) -- to go over, across (19G)

přejíždět (III,i)(See přejet) -- to drive over/across, to run over (19G)

překlad (m) -- translation (15)

překládat (I,i)(See přeložit) -- to translate (11)

překonat (I,p)(See překonávat) -- to surmount, overcome (20G)

překonávat (I,i)(See překonat) -- to surmount, overcome (20G)

překvapení (n) -- surprise (16)

překvapit (II,p)(See překvapovat) -- to surprise, astonish (10)

překvapovat (VII,i)(See překvapit) -- to surprise, astonish (10)

přelét(áv)at (I,i)(See přeletět/přelétnout) -- to fly over, across (19G)

přeletět (IV,p)(See přelét(áv)at/přeletovat) -- to fly over, across (19G)

přelétnout (VI,p)(See přeletovat/přelét(áv)at) -- to fly over, across (19G)

přeletovat (VII,i)(See přelétnout/přeletět) -- to fly over, across (19G)

přeložit (II,p)(See překládat) -- to translate (11)

přemýšlet (III,i)(o + Loc.) -- to think about, reflect on (14)

přenášet (III,i)(See přenést) -- to carry over, across (19G)

přenést (Va,p)(like nést)(See přenášet) -- to carry over, across (19G)

přeplnit (II,p)(See přeplňovat) -- to overfill, overcrowd (20G)

přeplňovat (VII,i)(See přeplnit) -- to overfill, overcrowd (20G)

přerušit (II,p)(See přerušovat) — to interrupt (15)

přerušovat (VII,i)(See přerušit) -- to interrupt (15)

přes(e) + Acc. (prep.) -- over, across, in spite of (9)

přesný — accurate, exact, precise (8)

přestat (Va,p)(přestanu, přestaneš) (See přestávat) — to stop doing, cease (7)

přestávat (I,i)(See přestat) — to stop doing, cease (7)

přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek) -- interval, break, pause, intermission (15)

přestěhovat se (VII,p)(See stěhovat se) — to move (change residence) (18)

přestože (conj.) — though, although (17)

přestoupit (II,p)(z něčeho do něčeho) (See přestupovat) — to change (train, bus) (17)

přestupovat (VII,i)(z něčeho do něčeho) (See přestoupit) — to change (train, bus (17)

přesvědčení (n) — conviction (16G)

přesvědčit (II,p)(See přesvědčovat) -- to convince, persuade (6)

přesvědčit se (II,p)(See přesvědčovat se) -- to convince oneself (14G)

přesvědčovat (VII,i)(See přesvědčit) -- to convince, persuade (9G)

přesvědčovat se (VII,i)(See přesvědčit se) -- to convince oneself (14G)

přetáhnout (VI,p)(See přetahovat) — to pull over, across (19G)

přetahovat (VII,i)(See přetáhnout) -- to pull over, across (19G)

převádět (III,i)(See převést) — to take, lead over (19G)

převážet (III,i)(See převézt) — to haul, take over (19G)

převést (Va,p)(like vést)(See převážet) — to take, lead over (19G)

převézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See převážet) — to haul, take over (19G)

převládat (I,i)(See převládnout) — to dominate (20G)

převládnout (VI,p)(See převládat) — to dominate (20G)

převzít (Vb,p)(like vzít) — to take over, assume (20G)

při + Loc. (prep.) — near (also expresses various accompanying circumstances) (4)

při nejmenším — at least (16)

přiběhnout (VI,p)(See přibíhat) — to come running (19G)

přibíhat (I,i)(See přiběhnout) -- to come running (19G)

přibíjet (III,i)(See přibít) -- to fasten, nail (10)

přibít (VIII,p)(See přibíjet) — to fasten, nail (10)

přiblížit (II,p)(See přibližovat) — to bring/draw near (20G)

přibližovat (VII,i)(See přiblížit) — to bring/draw near (20G)

přibližný — approximate (18)

příbuzný (adj. and noun) — related, relation, relative (8)

přibýt (Va,p)(like být)(See přibývat) — to increase, grow (20G)

přibývat (I,i)(See přibýt) -- to increase, grow (20G)

přidat (I,p)(See přidávat) — to add, contribute (20G)

přidávat (I,i)(See přidat) -- to add, contribute (20G)

přihánět (III,i)(See přihnat) — to chase to (19G)

přihláška (f)(Gen.pl. přihlášek) — application, registration (16)

přihnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See přihánět) — to chase to (19G)

přicházet (III,i)(See přijít) -- to arrive, come (3)

přichystat (I,p)(See chystat) — to prepare, make ready (5G)

přichystat se (I,p)(See chystat se) — to prepare, make ready (5G)

příjemný — pleasant, agreeable (4)

přijet (Va,p)(like jet)(See přijíždět) — to arrive (by vehicle) (5)

přijímací zkouška (f) — entrance examination (16)

přijímat (I,i)(See přijmout) — to receive, accept, take (16)

přijít (Va,p)(like jít)(See přicházet) — to arrive (5)

  přijít o + Acc. (perfective only) — to lose (not to misplace) (14)

  přijde na to — it depends (7)

přijíždět (III,i)(See přijet) — to come, arrive (by vehicle) (19G)

přijmout (Vb,p)(přijmu, přijmeš; přijal, přijala)(See přijímat) — to receive, accept, take (16)

příklad (m) — example (15)

přikoupit (II,p)(See přikupovat) — to buy some more of something (20G)

přikrýt (VIII,p)(See přikrývat) — to cover (up) (10)

přikrývat (I,i)(See přikrýt) — to cover (up) (10)

přikupovat (VII,i)(See přikoupit) — to buy some more of something (20G)

přilét(áv)at (I,i)(See přiletět/přilétnout) — to fly to, come, arrive (by flying) (19G)

přiletět (IV,p)(See přilét(áv)at/přiletovat) — to fly to, come, arrive (by flying) (19G)

přilétnout (VI,p)(See přiletovat/přilét(áv)at) — to fly to, come, arrive (by flying) (19G)

přiletovat (VII,i)(See přilétnout/přiletět) — to fly to, come, arrive (by flying) (19G)

příležitost (f) — opportunity, occasion, chance (14)

příliš (adv.) — too (6)

přímo (adv.) — directly, downright, just (11)

přímý — direct, downright (13G)

přinášet (III,i)(See přinést) — to bring (on foot) (9)

přinášet si (III,i)(See přinést si) — to bring for oneself (14G)

přinést (Va,p)(like nést)(See přinášet) — to bring (on foot) (9)

přinést si (Va,p)(like nést)(See přinášet si) — to bring for oneself (14G)

případ (m) — case (7)

připálit (II,p)(See připalovat) — to burn slightly, singe, scorch (20G)

připalovat (VII,i)(See připálit) — to burn slightly, singe, scorch (20G)

připomenout (VI,p)(někomu něco/někoho)(See připomínat) — to remind of, suggest (14)

připomínat (I,i)(někomu něco/někoho)(See připomenout) — to remind of, suggest (14)

připravit (II,p)(See připravovat) — to prepare, get a thing ready (16)

připravovat (VII,i)(See připravit) — to prepare, get a thing ready (16)

příroda (f) — nature (4)

přirozeně (adv.) — naturally, of course (6)

přirozený (pred. adj. přirozeno) — natural (13G)

přispat si (irreg.,p)(like spát) — to sleep a bit longer (20G)

přistěhovat se (VII,p) — to move in (20G)

příští — following, next (in temporal sense), future (7)

přitáhnout (VI,p)(See přitahovat) — to pull to, drag to (19G)

přitahovat (VII,i)(See přitáhnout) — to pull to, drag to (19G)

přítel (m)(Acc.sg. -e; Nom.pl. přátelé; Gen.pl. přátel; Dat.pl. přátelům; Acc. pl. přátele; Instr.pl. přáteli; Loc. pl. přátelích) -- friend (4)

přitom (adv.) -- at the same time (4)

přítomnost (f) -- the present, presence (16)

přivádět (III,i)(See přivést) -- to lead to, bring (19G)

přivážet (III,i)(See přivézt) -- to haul to, deliver (19G)

přivést (Va,p)(like vést)(See přivádět) -- to lead to, bring (19G)

přivézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See přivážet) -- to haul to, deliver (19G)

přivírat (I,i)(See přivřít) -- to close partly, leave ajar (20G)

přivítat (I,p)(See vítat) -- to welcome (19)

přivřít (Vb,p)(perf. part. přivřel; přivřela)(See přivírat) -- to close partly, leave ajar (20G)

přiznat se (I,p)(See přiznávat se) -- to confess, acknowledge (20G)

přiznávat se (I,i)(See přiznat se) -- to confess, acknowledge (20G)

příznivý -- favorable, lucky (16)

přizpůsobit (II,p)(něco něčemu)(See přizpůsobovat) -- to adapt, adjust (something to something) (14)

přizpůsobit se (II,p)(+ Dat.)(See přizpůsobovat se) -- to conform, adjust (14)

přizpůsobovat (VII,i)(něco něčemu) (See přizpůsobit) -- to adapt, adjust (something to something) (14)

přizpůsobovat se (VII,i)(+ Dat.)(See přizpůsobit se) -- to conform, adjust (14)

psací stroj -- typewriter (16G)

psaní (n) -- letter, writing (16)

psát (IX,i)(píši, píšeš)(See napsat) -- to write (11)

psát na stroji -- to type (11)

psychologie (f) -- psychology (17)

pták (m) -- bird (9)

ptát se (I,i)(+ Gen.)(See zeptat se) -- to ask (a question) (5)

ptát se/zeptat se někoho na něco/někoho -- to ask someone about (5)

půjčit (II,p)(+ ind. obj.)(See půjčovat) -- to lend, loan, let have (9)

půjčovat (VII,i)(+ ind. obj.)(See půjčit) -- to lend, loan, let have (9)

půjdu see pojít

půl (quant.) -- half (8)

půlnoc (f)(Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) -- midnight (12)

o půlnoci -- at midnight (12)

Punt'a (m)(irreg. decl.) -- Spot (dog's name) (11)

pustit (II,p)(See pouštět) -- to let go, release (20)

původní -- original (11)

R

rád -- glad, happy (4)

rád + verb -- to like (to), love (to) (4)

mít rád + noun -- to like (4)

rada (f) -- advice, counsel, suggestion (14)

raději/radši (comp. adv. of rád) -- prefer, like better (13G)

rádio (n)(Nom.-Acc.sg. rádio; Gen.sg. rádia; Dat.-Loc.sg. rádiu; Instr.sg. rádiem; Nom.-Acc.pl. rádia; Gen.pl. rádií; Dat.pl. rádiím; Instr.pl. rádii; Loc.pl. rádiích) -- radio (20)

radit (II,i)(někomu něco)(See poradit) -- to advise (17)

radost (f) -- happiness, joy (2)

mít radost z + Gen. -- to be pleased by (17)

rameno (n)(mixed decl.) -- shoulder (13)

ranní -- morning (adj.) (5)

ráno (n) -- morning (2)

republika (f) -- republic (16)

restaurace (f) -- restaurant (9)

revma (n) -- rheumatism, arthritis (15)

rodič (m)(Nom.pl. rodiče/rodičové) -- parent (12)

rodilý -- native (16G)

rodina (f) -- family (10)

rodit (II,i)(See porodit) -- to bear children (14G)

rodit se (II,i)(See narodit se) -- to be born (10)

roh (m) -- corner (4)

rok (m)(Loc.sg. roce/roku) -- year (4)

role (f) -- part, role (15)

 hrát roli -- to play a part, role (15)

román (m) -- novel (16)

rostlý -- grown (16G)

rovnat se (I,i) -- to equal (12G)

rovný -- straight, even, level, upright (18)

rozběhnout se (VI,p)(See rozbíhat se)-- to scatter, disperse (by running)(19G)

rozbíhat se (I,i)(See rozběhnout se) -- to scatter, disperse (by running) (19G)

rozbíjet (III,i)(See rozbít) -- to break, smash (19)

rozbít (VIII,p)(See rozbíjet) -- to break, smash (19)

rozdat (I,p)(See rozdávat) -- to hand out, distribute (20G)

rozdávat (I,i)(See rozdat) -- to hand out, distribute (20G)

rozdělat (I,p)(See rozdělávat) -- to begin doing and leave unfinished (20G)

rozdělávat (I,i)(See rozdělat) -- to begin doing and leave unfinished (20G)

rozdělit (II,p)(See rozdělávat) -- to divide (14)

rozdělovat (VII,i)(See rozdělit) -- to divide (14)

rozdíl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- difference (8)

rozehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See rozhánět) -- to disperse by chasing (19G)

rozejít se (Va,p)(like jít)(s + Instr.) (See rozcházet se) -- to part, part company (with) (13)

rozesmát se (VIII,p)(like smát se)(See rozesmávat se) --to burst out laughing (20G).

rozesmávat se (I,i)(See rozesmát se) -- to burst out laughing (20G)

rozestavět (III,p)(See rozestavovat) -- to begin to build and leave unfinished (20G)

rozestavovat (VII,i)(See rozestavět) -- to begin to build and leave unfinished (20G)

rozhánět (III,i)(See rozehnat) -- to disperse by chasing (19G)

rozhodnout (VI,p)(See rozhodovat) -- to decide (14G)

rozhodnout se (VI,p)(o + Loc.)(See rozhodovat se) -- to decide, make up one's mind (14)

rozhodný -- resolute, definite, decisive (13)

rozhodovat (VII,i)(See rozhodnout) -- to decide (14G)

rozhodovat se (VII,i)(o + Loc.) (See rozhodnout se) -- to decide, make up one's mind (14)

rozhovor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- conversation, talk, dialogue (7)

rozhovořit se (II,p)(See rozhovořovat se) -- to start talking (20G)

rozhovořovat se (VII,i)(See rozhovořit se) -- to start talking (20G)

rozcházet se (III,i)(s + Instr.) (see rozejít se) -- to part, part company with (13) rozjet se (Va,p)(See rozjíždět se) — to drive, ride (in different directions) (19G)

rozjíždět se (III,i)(See rozjet se) — to drive, ride (in different directions) (19G)

rozlét(áv)at se (I,i)(See rozletět se/rozlétnout se) — to fly in different directions, disperse (19G)

rozletět se (IV,p)(See rozlét(áv)at se/rozletovat se) — to fly in different directions, disperse (19G)

rozlétnout se (VI,p)(See rozletovat se/rozlét(áv)at se) — to fly in different directions, disperse (19G)

rozletovat se (VII,i)(See rozlétnout se/rozletět se) — to fly in different directions, disperse (19G)

rozlišit (II,p)(See lišit) — to distinguish, differentiate (14G)

rozloučit se (II,p)(s + Instr.)(See loučit se) — to part with, say good-bye to (10)

rozmlouvat (I,i)(See rozmluvit) — to dissuade, talk out of (20G)

rozmluvit (II,p)(See rozmlouvat) — to dissuade, talk out of (20G)

rozmyslet si (IV,p)/rozmyslit si (II,p) (See rozmýšlet si) — to make up one's mind, reflect, think over (7)

rozmýšlet si (III,i)(See rozmyslet si/rozmyslit si) — to make up one's mind, reflect, think over (7)

roznášet (III,i)(See roznést) — to take around, distribute, spread (19G)

roznést (Va,p)(like nést)(See roznášet) — to take around, distribute, spread (19G)

rozpačitě (adv.) — with hesitation, without knowing what to do (5)

rozpačitý — hesitant (13G)

rozpaky (m.pl.) — bewilderment, puzzlement (10)

  být na rozpacích — to be perplexed, be uneasy, be hesitant (10)

rozpor (m)(Loc.sg. -u)— contradiction, antagonism (19)

rozřešit (II,p)(See řešit) — to solve, (20G)

rozsvěcet (III,i)(See rozsvítit) — to light up, illuminate, turn on (20G)

rozsvítit (II,p)(See rozsvěcet) — to light up, illuminate, turn on (20G)

rozšířit (II,p)(See rozšiřovat) — to expand, spread, widen (20G)

rozšiřovat (VII,i)(See rozšířit) — to expand, spread, widen (20G)

roztáhnout (VI,p)(See roztahovat) — to spread out, extend (19G)

roztahovat (VII,i)(See roztáhnout) — to spread out, extend (19G)

rozumět (III,i)(+ Dat.) (See porozumět) — to understand (6)

rozumný — sensible, reasonable (5)

rozvádět (III,i)(See rozvést) — to take to different places; to elaborate, work out (19G)

rozvádět se (III,i)(See rozvést se) — to get divorced (19G)

rozvážet (III,i)(See rozvézt) — to haul around, distribute (19G)

rozvést (Va,p)(like vést)(See rozvádět) — to take to different places; to elaborate, work out (19G)

rozvést se (Va,p)(like vést)(See rozvádět se) — to get divorced (19G)

rozvézt (Va,p)(See rozvážet) — to haul around, distribute (19G)

rozvíjet se (III,i)(See rozvinout se) — to develop, unfold (20G)

rozvinout se (VII,p)(See rozvíjet se) — to develop, unfold (20G)

rozzlobit (II,p)(See zlobit) — to irritate, worry (14G)

rozzlobit se (II,p)(na + Acc.)(See zlobit se) — to get angry (at/with) (11)

ruka (f)(Nom.-Acc.pl. ruce; Gen.pl. rukou; Instr.pl. rukama) — hand (4)

rukavice (f)(Gen.pl. rukavic) — glove (17)

ruský — Russian (2)

růst (Va,i)(rostu, rosteš)(See vyrůst and vzrůst) — to grow, increase, rise (15)

rušit (II,i) — to trouble, bother (18)

různý — various, different (5)

růže (f) — rose (11)

rychlý — fast, quick (1,8)

rýma (f) — cold (illness) (4)

rytmus (m) (irreg. decl.) — rhythm (15)

Ř

řada (f) — row, series, line, sequence (4)

řádka (f)(Gen.pl. řádek) — line (of print) (12)

řeč (f)(Instr.pl. řečmi) — speech, language (15)

řeka (f) — river (9)

řešit (II,i)(See rozřešit) — to solve (20G)

říci (VI,p)(řeknu, řekneš; řekl, řekla) (See říkat) — to say, tell (7)

říci si (VI,p)(like říci)(See říkat si) — to say to oneself (14G)

řídit (II,i) — to operate, direct (3)

  řídit auto — to drive a car (3)

řídký — thin, rare (13G, 19)

říjen/říjn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) — October (12G)

říkat (I,i)(See říci) — to say, tell (4)

  někomu se to říká — it's easy for someone to say (11)

říkat se (I,i)(See říci si) — to say to oneself (14G)

S

s(e) + Instr. — with, along with, together with (10)

s(e) + Gen. — from, off (down off the surface of something) (9)

s sebou (adv.) — along, with (5)

salám (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — salami, sausage, Bologna (15)

sám — alone, oneself, the very (13)

samotný (synonymous with sám) — alone, oneself, the very (14)

samozřejmě (adv.) — naturally, you bet, it goes without saying, go ahead, feel free (15)

samozřejmý — natural, self-evident (15)

samý, samá, etc. — the very, nothing but, only (13G)

sázet (III,i)(See zasadit) — to plant (3)

sběhnout/seběhnout (VI,p)(See sbíhat) — to run down from, off of (19G)

sběhnout se/seběhnout se (VI,p)(See sbíhat se) — to run together, gather (19G)

sbíhat (I,i)(See sběhnout/seběhnout) — to run down from, off of (19G)

sbíhat se (I,i)(See sběhnout se/seběhnout se) — to run together, gather (19G)

sbírat (I,i)(See sebrat) — to collect, gather (18)

scéna (f) — scene, stage, scenery (11)

sčítání (n) — addition (12G)

se (pron.) — reflexive pronoun (14G)

sebrat (Vc,p)(like brát)(See sbírat) — to collect, gather (18)

sedat si (I,i)(See sednout si) — to sit down, take a seat (7)

sedět (IV,i) — to sit (4)

sedět si (IV,i) — to enjoy sitting (14G)

sedm — seven (12G)

sedmdesát — seventy (12G)

sedmdesátý — seventieth (12G)

sedmerý/-o (coll. num.) — seven (12G)

sedmička (f) (number noun) — seven (12G)

sedmnáct — seventeen (12G)

sedmnáctý — seventeenth (12G)

sedmý — seventh (12G)

sednout si (VI,p)(See sedat si) — to sit down, take a seat (7)

sehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See shánět) — to chase down from, off of; to get together, round up (19G)

sejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See scházet) — to come down (from) (19G)

sejít se (Va,p)(like jít)(See scházet se) — to meet, come together (14)

sem (adv.) — here (with verbs of motion) (5)

sen/sn- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — dream (15)

seskakovat (VII,i)(See seskočit) — to jump down (20G)

seskočit (II,p)(See seskakovat) — to jump down (20G)

sestavit (II,p)(See sestavovat) — to put together, compile, assemble (20G)

sestra (f)(Gen.pl. sester) — sister (1)

sestřin (poss. adj.) — sister's (9G)

sešlý — worn out (16G)

setkat se (I,p)(See setkávat se) — to meet, come together (19)

setkávat se (I,i)(See setkat se) — to meet, come together (19)

setmět se (IV,p)/setmít se (II,p)(perf. setmělo se)(See stmívat se) — to grow dark (17)

sever (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — north (18)

seznam (m) — list (18)

shánět (III,i)(See sehnat) — to chase down from, off of; to get together, round up (19G)

sházet (III,i)(See shodit) — to throw/knock down (20G)

shodit (II,p)(See sházet) — to throw/knock down (20G)

scházet (III,i) — to come down from; to be missing (19G)

scházet se (III,i)(See sejít se) — to meet, come together (14)

schod (m) — step (pl. = stairs, stairway) (9)

schopný/schopen + Gen. — capable (of) (8)

schránka (f)(Gen.pl. schránek) — box (18)

schránka na dopisy/poštovní schránka — mail box (18)

schůze (f) — meeting (8)

schůzka (f)(Gen.pl. schůzek) — appointment, engagement, (12)

sice...ale — it is true...but (6)

síla (f)(Instr.sg. silou; Gen.pl. sil; Dat.pl. silám; Instr.pl. silami; Loc. pl. silách) — power, force, strength (10)

silnice (f)(Gen.pl. silnic) — road, highway (17)

silný — strong (3)

situace (f) — situation (8)

sjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See sjíždět) — to drive down from, off of (19G)

sjet se (Va,p)(like jet)(See sjíždět se) — to get together, meet (19G)

sjezd (m) — convention, congress (14)

sjíždět (III,i)(See sjet) — to drive down from, off of (19G)

sjíždět se (III,i)(See sjet se) — to get together, meet (19G)

skákat (IX/I,i)(imp.: skákej; skákejme; skákejte)(See skočit) — to jump, leap (18)

skládat se (I,i)(z + Gen.) — to be composed of, consist of (14)

skladba (f)(Gen.pl. skladeb) — composition, pattern, syntax (11) sklenice (f) — glass (2)

sklep (m) — cellar, basement (19)

skočit (II,p)(See skákat) — to jump, leap (18)

  skočit někam pro něco — to run and fetch something (18)

skončit (II,p)(See končit) — to end, finish, be over (7)

skoro (adv.) — almost, nearly (6)

skrýt se (VIII,p)(See skrývat se) — to hide (20G)

skrývat se (I,i)(See skrýt se) — to hide (20G)

skrze + Acc. (prep.) — through (19)

skříň (f)(Gen.sg.-Nom.pl.-Acc.pl. -ě; Dat.pl.-ím; Instr.pl.-ěmi; Loc.pl. -ích) — cabinet, closet, wardrobe (2)

skupina (f) — group (14)

skvělý — brilliant, exquisite (13)

skvrna (f) — stain, spot (11)

slabší (comp.) see slabý

slabý — weak, slight (6)

sladký (comp. sladší) — sweet (15)

slavnostní — festive, gala, ceremonial, solemn (14)

slečna (f)(Gen.pl. slečen) — Miss, unmarried woman (1)

slét(áv)at (I,i)(See sletět/slétnout) — to fly down from (19G)

slét(áv)at se (I,i)(See sletět se/slétnout se) — to fly together, gather (19G)

sletět (IV,p)(See slét(áv)at/sletovat) — to fly down from (19G)

sletět se (IV,p)(See slét(áv)at se/sletovat se) — to fly together, gather (19G)

slétnout (VI,p)(See sletovat/slét(áv)at) — to fly down from (19G)

slétnout se (VI,p)(See sletovat se/slét(áv)at se) — to fly together, gather (19G)

sletovat (VII,i)(See slétnout/sletět) — to fly down from (19G)

sletovat se (VII,i)(See slétnout se/sletět se) — to fly together, gather (19G)

slíbit (II,p)(See slibovat) — to promise (13)

slibovat (VII,i)(See slíbit) — to promise (13)

Slovensko (n) — Slovakia (16)

  na Slovensku — in Slovakia (16)

slovník (m) — dictionary (14)

slovo (n) — word (6)

složitý — complex, complicated (8)

slunce (n) — sun (2)

  na slunci — in the sun (5)

slušný — proper, decent, fair (12)

služba (f)(Gen.pl. služeb) — service (17)

slyšet (IV,i)(See uslyšet) — to hear (4)

slza (f) — tear (15)

smát se (VII,i)(směji se, směješ se; smál se, smála se)(+ Dat.)(See zasmát se) — to laugh, smile (at) (11)

smělý — audacious (16G)

směr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — direction, trend, line (16)

smět (III,i) — to be allowed, may (3)

smích (m) — laughter (2)

smůla (f) — bad luck (7)

smutný (pred.adj. smutno) — sad (13)

smysl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — sense, import (7)

snad (adv.) — perhaps, possibly, I think (7)

snadno (adv.) see snadný

snadný (pred.adj. snadno) — easy, light, not involved (8)

snášet (III,i)(See snést) — to carry down from, off of; to bring together, gather (19G)

snazší (comp. adj.) see snadný

snažit se (II,i) -- to try, endeavor, make an effort (6)

snést (Va,p)(like nést)(See snášet) -- to be able to bear, stand, tolerate; to carry down, off of; to bring together, gather (5, 19G)

sněžit (II,i) -- to snow (9)

snídaně (f) -- breakfast (19)

snídat (I,i) -- to have breakfast (1)

sníh/sněh- (m) -- snow (16)

sníst (irreg.,p)(sním, sníš, sní, sníme, sníte, snědí; Imp. sněz, snězme, snězte; snědl, snědla)(See jíst) -- to eat up, consume (5G, 19)

sobota (f) -- Saturday (12G)

sotva (adv.) -- hardly, scarcely, barely (10)

soudě podle + Gen. (adv.) -- judging by (16)

souhlasit (II,i)(s + Instr.) -- to agree (with) (17)

soused (m)(Nom.pl. sousedé/sousedi) -- neighbor (18)

sousedka (f)(Gen.pl. sousedek) -- neighbor (feminine) (18)

souviset (III/IV,i)(s +Instr.) -- to be connected (with) (16)

spadat (I,p)(distributive) -- to fall down (one after another) (18)

spadlý -- fallen (16G)

spadnout (VI,p)(See padat) -- to fall (down from/off of) (11)

spálit (II,p)(See pálit) -- to scorch, burn (14)

spát (irreg.,i)(spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí) -- to sleep (4)

spát si (irreg., i)(like spát) -- to sleep with obvious pleasure (14G)

spíš (adv.) -- rather (9)

splést (Va,p)(like plést)(See plést) -- to braid, entwine, confuse (14G)

splést se (Va,p)(like plést)(See plést se) -- to be confused (14G)

splnit (II,p)(See splňovat) -- to fulfill (20G)

splňovat (VII,i)(See splnit) -- to fulfill (20G)

spočítat (I,p)(See počítat) -- to count, figure up, reckon (12)

spckojený -- satisfied, content (6)

společenský -- social (14)

společnost (f) -- society, company, community (13)

společný -- common, joint (13)

spolehlivý -- reliable (13)

spolu (adv.) -- together (10)

spolubydlící (m/f) -- roommate (17)

spoustu (quant.) -- plenty, a lot, a great deal (12)

správce (m)(irreg. decl.) -- manager (11)

správný -- correct, right (12)

srdce (n) -- heart (6)

srdečný -- cordial, hearty (17)

srovnat (I,p)(See srovnávat) -- to compare (13)

srovnat se (I,p)(See srovnávat se) -- to make a comparison among -selves (14G)

srovnávat (I,i)(See srovnat) -- to compare (13)

srovnávat se (I,i)(See srovnat se) -- to make a comparison among -selves (14G)

srpen/srpn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) -- August (12G)

stačit (II,i)(See postačit and vystačit) -- to suffice, be enough, manage to (+ inf.) (14)

stáhnout (VI,p)(See stahovat) -- to pull down, from, off of; to pull together (19G)

stahovat (VII,i)(See stáhnout) -- to pull down from, off of; to pull together (19G)

stále (adv.) -- all the time (18)

stanice (f)(Gen.pl. stanic) — stop, station (17)

stanovisko (n)(Gen.pl. stanovisek) — point of view, standpoint, attitude (13)

starat se (I,i)(o + Acc.)(See postarat se) — to take care of, look after (10)

starost (f) — care, concern, worry (7)

  být bez starosti — not to worry (13)

  dělat starosti (+ Dat.) — to cause concern (to someone) (7)

starší (comp. adj.) see starý

starý — old (3)

stát (IV, irreg.,i)(stojím, stojíš; stál, stála) — to stand, cost (4)

  stát za to — to be worth it (17)

stát se (Va,p)(stanu se, staneš se) (See dít se) — to happen, become (10)

stávat se (I,i)(See stát se and dít se) — to happen, become (9)

stavět (III,i)(See postavit) — to build (20)

stěhovat se (VII,i)(See přestěhovat se) — to move (change residence) (18)

stejně (adv.) — in the same way, anyhow (11)

stejný (— like, identical (10)

stěna (f) — wall (4)

sterý/-o (coll. num.) — hundred (12G)

stěžovat si (VII,i)(někomu na něco/někoho)(See postěžovat si) — to complain (to someone about someone/something) (15)

stín (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — shade, shadow (18)

stmívat se (I,i)(See setmět se/setmít se)(impersonal) — to grow dark (17)

sto — one hundred (12G)

stovka (f)(number noun) — hundred (12G)

strach (m) — fear (1)

strana (f) — side, direction, party, page (7)

stránka (f)(Gen.pl. stránek) — aspect, point of view; page (16)

strávit (II,p)(See trávit) — to spend, pass (13)

stroj (m) — machine (11)

  psací stroj — typewriter (11)

strom (m) — tree (3)

strpět (IV,p)(See trpět) — to suffer, bear (10)

středa (f) — Wednesday (12G)

střední — central, middle, mean (18)

střecha (f)(Loc.sg. střeše) — roof (19)

student (m) — student (3)

studentka (f)(Gen.pl. studentek) — student (female) (4)

studený (pred.adj. studeno) — (very) cold, chilly, frigid (11)

studium (n)(irreg. decl.) — study (15)

studovat (VII,i)(See prostudovat) — to study (9)

stůl/stol- (m) — table (1)

styk (m) — contact, relations (in pl.) (13)

sucho (n) — dry weather, drought (9)

suchý (pred.adj. sucho) — dry (13G)

sůl/sol- (f)(Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) — salt (20)

svádět (III,i)(See svést) — to lead down from, off of; to bring together (19G)

svátek/svátk- (m) — holiday (4)

svatý (comp. světější) — holy, sacred, saint (13)

svazek/svazk- (m) — volume, bunch, bond (17)

svážet (III,i)(See svézt) — to haul, bring down from, off of; to bring together (19G)

svést (Va,p)(like vést)(See svádět) — to lead down from,off of; to bring together (19G) svět (m)(Gen.sg. -a) — world (10)

světější (comp. adj.) see svatý (13G)

světlo (n)(Gen.pl. světel) — light (2)

světlý (— light, bright (19)

světový — world, world-wide (18)

světová strana — point of the compass (18)

svézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See svážet) — to haul, bring down from, off of; to bring together (19G)

svítat (I,i)(impersonal) — to dawn (17)

svítit (II,i) — to shine, to be on (light) (2)

svléci (Va,p)(svleku, svlečeš)(See svlékat) — to take off, undress (20G)

svlékat (I,i)(See svléci) — to take off, undress (20G)

svolat (I,p)(See svolávat) — to call together, summon (20G)

svolávat (I,i)(See svolat) — to call together, summon (20G)

svůj, svá, své, etc. — one's own (8)

syn (m)(Nom.pl. synové) — son (9)

syr (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) — cheese (15)

Š

šálek/šálk-(m) —cup (13)

šaty (m.pl.) — clothes (8)

šedesát — sixty (12G)

šedesátý — sixtieth (12G)

šest — six (12G)

šesterý/-o (coll. num.) — six (12G)

šestka (f)(number noun) — six (12G)

šestnáct — sixteen (12G)

šestnáctý — sixteenth (12G)

šestý — sixth (12G)

šetřit (II,i)(něčím) — to use sparingly, economize (15)

šířka (f)(Gen.pl. šířek) — breadth, width (12)

široko (adv.) see široký

široký — broad, wide (12)

širší (comp. adj.) see široký

šíře (comp. adv.) see široký

škoda (f) — damage, loss; shame, pity (5)

to je škoda — it's a shame, it's too bad (5)

škola (f) — school (9)

špatný (comp.adj. horší; comp.adv. hůře/hůř) — bad, poor, wrong (3,6)

špinavý (pred.adj. špinavo) — dirty, filthy (10)

šťastný/šťasten — happy (9)

štěstí (n) — luck, good luck, happiness (11)

švestka (f)(Gen.pl. švestek) — plum (16)

T

tabule (f) — blackboard, board, panel (15)

tady (adv.) — here (1)

tahat (I,i, indet.)(See táhnout) — to pull, tug, draw (19)

táhnout (VI,i,det.)(See tahat) — to pull, tug, draw (19)

tak (adv.) — so, that way (2)

tak...jako (conj.) — as...as, (not) so...as (3)

tak dobře (adv.) — all right (7)

také (adv.) — also, too (1)

takhle (adv.) — in this way, like this (7)

takový — such (3)

takový...jako (conj.) — such...as (3)

takže (conj.) — so that (20)

talíř (m) — plate (19)

tam (adv.) -- there (2)

tamhle (adv.) -- over there, right there (4)

tamten, tamta, tamto, etc. -- that (over there), that one (over there)(7)

tatínek/tatínk- (m) -- father, dad (3)

ted' (Adv.)(See nyní) -- now (14)

tedy (adv.) -- then, so (7)

tehdy (adv.) -- at that time, then (11)

telefon (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- telephone (10)

telefonní -- telephone (adj.) (15)

telegram (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- telegram (4)

televize (f) -- television (15)

televizor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- television set (15)

televizní -- television (adj.)(15)

tělo (n) -- body (8)

téma (n)(irreg. decl.) -- theme, topic (15)

téměř (adv.) -- almost, nearly (15)

ten, ta, to, etc. -- this, that, this one, that one (7)

ten samý, ta samá, to samé, etc. -- the (very) same (7)

tenhle, tahle, tohle, etc. -- this (right here), this one (right here)(7)

tenkrát (adv.) -- then, at that time (14)

tento, tato, toto, etc. (= tenhle, tahle, tohle, etc.) -- this (7)

tentokrát (adv.) -- this time (2)

tentýž, tatáž, totéž, etc. (intensifying pron., = ten samý, ta samá, to samé, etc.) -- the same (18G)

teplo (n) -- warmth, heat (9)

teplota (f) -- temperature (1)

teplý (pred. adj. teplo) -- warm (4)

teprve (adv.) -- only (no sooner than (12)

těšit (II,i)(See utěšit) -- to comfort, console (14G)

těšit se (II,i)(na + Acc.) -- to look forward to (13)

též (adv.) -- also (17)

těžko (adv.) see těžký

těžký (pred. adj. těžko) -- heavy, difficult (9)

těžší (comp. adj.) see těžký

ticho (n) -- silence, quiet (4)

tichý (pred.adj. ticho) -- quiet, silent (3)

tím spíš, že -- the more so as, especially since (14)

tisíc -- thousand (12G)

tisící -- thousandth (12G)

tisícerý/-o (coll. num.) -- thousand (12G)

tisícovka (f)(number noun) -- thousand (12G)

tisknout (VI,i) -- to print, press, hold tight (7)

tišší (comp. adj.) see tichý

tíže (comp. adv.) see těžký

tloustnout (VI,i)(See ztloustnout) -- to get fat, to put on weight (7)

tlustší (comp. adj.) see tlustý

tlustý -- thick, fat (7)

tma (f) -- dark, darkness (11)

tmavý -- dark (adj.) (19)

tolik (quant.) -- so much, so many (8)

topení (n) -- heating (11)

topinka (f)(Gen.pl. topinek) -- toast, piece of toast (19)

totiž (adv.) -- that is to say, it's just that, just, exactly (4)

tramvaj (f)(Nom.-Acc.pl. -e; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) -- streetcar (17)

trapný -- painful, awkward, uncomfortable (7)

tráva (f)(Gen.pl. trav) — grass (14)

trávit (II,i)(See strávit) — to spend, pass (13)

trhat (I,i) — to gather, pick (18)

trochu (adv.) — a little (2)

trojí/troje (coll. num.) — three (12G)

trojka (f)(number noun) — three (12G)

trpělivý — patient (adj.) (17)

trpět (IV,i)(See strpět) — to suffer, bear (10)

trvalý — lasting, enduring, permanent (16)

trvat (I,i)(See potrvat) — to last, take (time) (7)

trvat na + Acc. — to insist on (18)

třást (Va,i)(třesu, třeseš; třásl, třásla)(+ Instr.)(See zatřást) — to shake (18)

třeba (adv.) — even, if necessary, for instance (15)

je třeba — it is necessary (15)

třebaže — although, though (15)

třetí — third (12G)

tři — three (2,12)

třicátý — thirtieth (12G)

třicet — thirty (12G)

třída (f) — class, classroom, avenue (15)

třináct — thirteen (12G)

třináctý — thirteenth (12G)

tu (see tady) — here (15)

tuhle (adv.) — the other day (7)

tužka (f)(Gen.pl. tužek) — pencil (7)

tvář (f)(Gen.sg.-Nom.pl. tváře; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) — cheek, face (14)

tvářit se (II,i)(+ adv.)(See zatvářit se) — to show or pretend some emotion on one's face (14)

tvořit (II,i)(See utvořit, vytvořit) — to form, create, make (16)

tvrdý (comp. tvrdší) — hard (18)

tvůj, tvá, tvé, etc. — your (sg.), yours (sg.) (8)

ty (Gen.-Acc. tebe (tě); Dat. tobě (ti); Loc. tobě; Instr. tebou) — you (sg.)(3G)

týden (m)(Nom.-Acc.sg. týden; Gen.sg. týdne; Dat.-Loc.sg. týdnu; Instr.sg. týdnem; Nom.-Acc.-Instr.pl. týdny; Gen. pl. týdnů; Dat.pl. týdnům; Loc.pl. týdnech) — week (10)

U

u + Gen. — at, near, by, with (persons) (8)

blízko u + Gen. — close by (8)

uběhnout (VI,p)(See ubíhat) — to run away; to be able to run (some distance) (19G)

ubíhat (I,i)(See uběhnout) — to run away (19G)

ubírat (II,i)(See ubrat) — to take away (20G)

ubohý — poor, wretched (13)

ubrat (Vc,p)(like brát)(See ubírat) — to take away (20G)

ubrus (m) — tablecloth (19)

ubýt (Va,p)(like být)(See ubývat) — to decrease, decline, subside (20G)

ubývat (I,i)(See ubýt) — to decrease, decline, subside (20G)

ucítit (II,p)(See cítit) — to detect — smell, taste (5G)

účastnit se (II,i)(+ Gen.)(See zúčastnit se) — to take part in (8)

účel (m) — purpose, end (20)

učení (n) — teaching, study (16G)

účinný — effective (11)

učit (II,i)(+ Acc. of persons and Dat. of things)(See naučit) — to teach (something to someone) (10)

učit se (II,i)(+ Dat.)(See naučit se) — to learn (10)

učitel (m)(Gen.sg. -e; Nom.pl. -é) -- teacher (10)

učitelka (f)(Gen.pl. učitelek) -- teacher (feminine) (10)

událost (f) -- event, happening, occurrence (14)

udělat (I,p)(See dělat) -- to do, make, work (5G)

udělat si (I,p)(See dělat si) -- to make/do for oneself (14G)

ucházet (III,i)(See ujít) -- to go away, to escape (19G)

ujednáno -- agreed (5)

ujet (Va,p)(like jet)(See ujíždět) -- to drive, go away (causing someone to miss a bus, train); to be able to drive (some distance) (19G)

ujistit (II,p)(See ujišt'ovat) -- to assure (11)

ujišt'ovat (VII,i)(See ujistit) -- to assure (11)

ujít (Va,p)(like jít)(See ucházet) -- to go away; to be able to walk (some distance) (19G)

ujíždět (III,i)(See ujet) -- to drive, go away (19G)

ukázat (IX,p)(+ ind. obj.)(See ukazovat) -- to show, display, demonstrate (11)

ukázat se (IX,p)(See ukazovat se) -- to show off (15)

ukazovat (VII,i)(+ ind. obj.)(See ukázat) -- to show, display, demonstrate (9)

ukazovat se (VII,i)(See ukázat se) -- to show off (15)

uklidit (II,p)(See uklízet) -- to tidy up, to clean up (5G)

uklidnit (II,p)(See uklidňovat) -- to calm (down) (19)

uklidňovat (VII,i)(See uklidnit) -- to calm (down) (19)

uklízet (III,i)(See uklidit) -- to tidy up, to clean up (3)

úkol (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- task, assignment (13)

ukrást (Va,p)(like krást)(See krást) -- to steal, pilfer (20G)

ulét(áv)at (I,i)(See uletět/ulétnout) -- to fly away (19G)

uletět (IV,p)(See ulét(áv)at/ulétnout) -- to fly away; to be able to fly (some distance) (19G)

ulétnout (VI,p)(See uletovat/ulét(áv)at) -- to fly away; to be able to fly (some distance)(19G)

uletovat (VII,i)(See ulétnout/uletět) -- to fly away (19G)

ulice (f) -- street (5)

úloha (f) -- exercise, composition, role (15)

umazat (IX,p)(See mazat) -- to soil, smear (11)

umazat se (IX,p)(See mazat se) -- to get dirty (14G)

umělý -- artificial (16G)

umění (n) -- art (13)

umět (III,i)(+ inf.) -- to know how to, can (3)

umírat (I,i)(See umřít) -- to die (18)

umlouvat (I,i)(See umluvit) -- to talk someone down/to death (20G)

umluvit (II,p)(See umlouvat) -- to talk someone down/to death (20G)

umožnit (II,p)(See umožňovat) -- to make possible, enable (20G)

umožňovat (VII,i)(See umožnit) -- to make possible, enable (20G)

umřít (Vb,p)(umřu, umřeš; umřel, umřela) (See umírat) -- to die (18)

úmysl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- intention (18)

umýt (se) (VIII,p)(See mýt) -- to wash (oneself) (10)

unášet (III,i)(See unést) -- to carry away (19G)

unavený -- tired (5)

unést (Va,p)(like nést)(See unášet) -- to carry away; to be able to carry (some amount) (19G)

universita (f) -- university (4)

únor (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) -- February (12G)

upadnout (VI,p)(See padat) -- to fall down (11)

úplný -- entire, complete (9)

upozornit (II,p)(někoho na něco)(See upozorňovat) -- to draw someone's attention to, inform someone of (14)

upozorňovat (VII,i)(někoho na něco) (See upozornit) -- to draw someone's attention to, inform someone of (14)

uprostřed (prep./adv.)(+ Gen.) -- in the middle of (17)

upřímnost (f) -- sincerity, frankness (7)

upřímný -- sincere, whole-hearted, frank, honest (16)

urazit (II,p)(See urážet) -- to knock off; to offend, insult (20G)

urážet (III,i)(See urazit) -- to knock off; to offend, insult (20G)

určit (II,p)(See určovat) -- to determine, establish (18)

určitý -- certain, sure (5)

určovat (VII,i)(See určit) -- to determine, establish (18)

uskutečnit (II,p)(See uskutečňovat) -- to bring about, realize (20G)

uskutečňovat (VII,i)(See uskutečnit) -- to bring about, realize (20G)

uslyšet (IV,p)(See slyšet) -- to detect a sound (5G)

úspěch (m) -- success (12)

úspěšný -- successful (10)

utáhnout (VI,p) -- to be able to pull, drag (some amount) (19G)

utéci (Va,p)(uteku, utečeš; uteče, utečeme, utečete, utekou; utekl, utekla) (See utíkat) -- to flee, run away (18)

úterý (n)(úterek/úterk- (m)(Gen.sg. -a)) -- Tuesday (12G)

utěšit (II,p)(See těšit) -- to comfort, console (14G)

utíkat (I,i)(See utéci) -- to flee, run away (18)

utírat (I,i)(See utřít) -- to wipe, dry (18)

utřít (Vb,p)(utřu, utřeš; utřel, utřela) (See utírat) -- to wipe, dry (18)

utvořit (II,p)(See tvořit) -- to form, make (16)

úvaha (f) -- consideration, essay (15)

uvařit (II,p)(See vařit) -- to boil, make, cook (5)

uvážit (II,p)(See uvažovat)(o + Loc.) -- to consider, look into, deliberate (16)

uvažovat (VII,i)(o + Loc.)(See uvážit) -- to consider, look into, deliberate (16)

uvědomit si (II,p)(See uvědomovat si) -- to realize (7)

uvědomovat si (VII,i)(See uvědomit si) -- to realize (9G)

uvěřit (II,p)(+ Dat.)(See věřit) -- to believe, trust (6)

uvézt (Va,p)(like vézt) -- to be able to haul, convey (some amount) (19G)

uvidět (IV,p)(See vidět) -- to see, catch sight of (5)

uvidět se (IV,p)(s + Instr.)(See vidět se) -- to see oneself; to see each other (14G)

uvítat (I,p)(See vítat) -- to welcome (19)

uvnitř (adv.) -- inside, within (14)

úzko (adv.) see úzký

úzký (pred.adj. úzko) -- narrow (13)

už (adv.) -- already (1)

už ne (adv.) -- no longer (1)

úže (comp. adv.) see úzký

užitečný -- useful, valuable (14)

V

v(e) + Loc. -- in, at (4)

ve dne v noci (adv.) -- day and night (17)

Václav (m) -- man's name (13)

Svatý Václav -- Saint Wenceslas, the patron saint of Bohemia (13)

vadit (II,i)(+ Dat. of person) -- to hamper (9)

to nevadí -- it doesn't matter (9)

to mi nevadí -- I don't mind (9)

váha (f)(Gen.pl. vah)-- weight, scales (both váha and váhy) (12)

válka (f)(Gen.pl. válek) -- war (10)

Valouch (m) -- family name (10)

vánoce (m)(pl. only)(Gen. vánoc) -- Christmas (16)

o vánocích -- at Christmas (16)

vařit (II,i)(See uvařit) -- to boil, to make, cook (2)

váš, vaše, vaše, etc. -- your (pl.), yours (pl.) (8)

vážit si (II,i)(+ Gen.) -- to respect, appreciate, think highly of (8)

vážný -- serious, important (10)

vběhnout (VI,p)(See vbíhat) -- to run into (19G)

vbíhat (I,i)(See vběhnout) -- to run into (19G)

včas (adv.) -- on time, in time (6)

včera (adv.) -- yesterday (6)

včera ráno -- yesterday morning (6)

včerejší -- yesterday's (16)

včetne + Gen. -- including (18)

vdát se (I,p)(See vdávat se) -- to get married (20)

vdávat se (I,i)(See vdát se) -- to get married (20)

vděčný/vděčen -- grateful, thankful (7)

věc (f) -- thing (2)

večer (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) -- evening (5)

večeře (f) -- supper (4)

vědec/vědc- (m) -- scientist (13)

vědět (irreg., i)(vím, víš, ví, víme, víte, vědí) -- to know, to be aware of a fact, to have information about a fact (4)

dávat/dát vědět -- to let know (7)

vědět si rady s + Instr. -- to cope (with), handle; be puzzled (by) (negative) (14)

vedle + Gen. -- beside, next to, in addition to (11)

vedlejší -- adjacent, next-door, unessential, irrelevant (20)

vědomý/vědom + Gen. -- conscious, aware (of) (13)

vedoucí (m/f)(adj.) -- head, leader, chief, boss (11)

vehnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See vhánět) -- to chase into (19G)

vejce (n)(Gen.pl. vajec) -- egg (19)

míchaná vejce -- scrambled eggs (19)

vejít (Va,p)(like jít)(See vcházet) -- to go in, enter, get in (12)

vejít se (Va,p)(like jít) -- to hold, contain (liquids), to fit (12)

veliký/velký -- big, large, great (3)

velmi (adv.) -- very, much (2)

ven (adv.) -- out, outside (motion)(9)

venkov (m)(Gen.sg. -a) -- the country (side) (13)

na venkově/na venkov -- in the country/ into the country (13)

venku (adv.) -- outside (2)

věnovat (VII,i)(někomu něco) -- to present, donate (17)

věnovat se něčemu -- to devote oneself (to) (17)

věnovat pozornost + Dat.-- to pay attention to (17) veřejný -- public (19)

věřit (II,i)(+ Dat.)(See uvěřit) -- to believe, trust (6)

věřit si (II,i) -- to believe in oneself (14G)

veselý (pred.adj. veselo) -- merry, cheerful, gay (13)

vesnice (f) -- village (13)

vést (Va,i, det.)(vedu, vedeš; vedl, vedla) -- to lead, guide, direct (9)

věta (f) -- sentence, clause (7)

větší (comp. of velký) -- bigger (13G)

většina (f) -- greater part, majority (18)

většinou (adv.) -- mostly, for the most part (13)

vězeň/vězň- (m) -- prisoner, captive (12)

vézt (Va,i, det.)(vezu, vezeš; vezl, vezla) -- to carry, take (by conveyance) (9)

vhánět (III,i)(See vehnat) -- to chase into (19G)

vhodný -- suitable, fitting (10)

vcházet (III,i)(See vejít) -- to go in, enter, get in (12)

vchod (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- entrance, front door (18)

víc (comp. adv. of mnoho/velmi/velký) -- more (13G)

vidění (n) -- apparition, seeing (16G)

vidět (IV,i)(See uvidět) -- to see (4)

vidět se (IV,i)(s + Instr.) (See uvidět se) -- to see oneself; to see each other (14G)

vina (f) -- blame, fault, guilt (14)

víra (f)(Gen.pl. věr) -- belief (16G)

viset (IV,i) -- to hang, to be suspended (4)

vítat (I,i)(See přivítat and uvítat) -- to welcome (19)

vítr/větr- (m) -- wind (16)

vjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See vjíždět) -- to drive, go into (19G)

vjíždět (III,i)(See vjet) -- to drive, go into (19G)

vkus (m) -- taste (13)

vlak (m) -- train (1)

vlas (m) -- hair (15)

vlastně (adv.) -- as a matter of fact, in fact, actually (6)

vlastní -- one's own, intrinsic (14)

vlét(áv)at (I,i)(See vletět/vlétnout) -- to fly into (19G)

vletět (IV,p)(See vlét(áv)at/vletovat) -- to fly into (19G)

vlétnout (VI,p)(See vletovat/vlét(áv)at) -- to fly into (19G)

vletovat (VII,i)(See vlétnout/vletět) -- to fly into (19G)

vlhčí (comp. adj.) see vlhký

vlhko (n) -- dampness, humidity, moisture (9)

vlhký (pred.adj. vlhko) -- damp, moist (4)

vliv (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- influence (13)

Vltava (f) -- the Vltava river (Moldau) (18)

vnášet (III,i)(See vnést) -- to carry, bring into (19G)

vnést (Va,p)(like nést)(See vnášet) -- to carry, bring into (19G)

vnikat (I,i)(See vniknout) -- to penetrate (20G)

vniknout (VI,p)(See vnikat) -- to penetrate (20G)

voda (f) -- water (2)

vodit (II,i,indet.) -- to lead, guide, direct (9)

volat (I,i)(See zavolat) -- to call, phone (1)

volat se (I,i)(s + Instr.)(See zavolat se) -- to call each other (14G)

volný (pred.adj. volno) -- free, unrestrained, loose (11) voňavý -- fragrant (4)

vonět (III,i)(See zavonět) -- to smell good, to have a pleasant smell (16)

vozit (II,i, indet.) -- to carry, take (by conveyance) (9)

vpředu (adv.) -- in front (14)

vracet (III,i)(See vrátit) -- to return, give back (6)

vracet se (III,i)(See vrátit se) -- to return, (5)

vrátit (II,p)(See vracet) -- to return, give back (6)

vrátit se (II,p)(See vracet se) -- to return (5)

vrstva (f)(Gen.pl. vrstev) -- layer, stratum (17)

vsadit (II,p)(See vsazovat) -- to put/set in, implant (20G)

vsadit se (II,p)(See vsazovat se) -- to bet, wager (20G)

vsazovat (VII,i)(See vsadit) -- to put/set in, implant (20G)

vsazovat se (VII,i)(See vsadit se) -- to bet, wager (20G)

vstát (Va,p)(vstanu, vstaneš)(See vstávat) -- to get up (7)

vstávat (I,i)(See vstát) -- to get up (1)

vstoupit (II,p)(See vstupovat) -- to step into, enter (20G)

vstupovat (VII,i)(See vstoupit) -- to step into, enter (20G)

však (conj.) -- but, however (14)

všechen, všechna, všechno, etc. -- all, all of (9)

všelico(s) (indef.pron.) -- many a thing (18G)

všelijak (indef. adv.) -- many a way (18G)

všelijaký (indef. pron.) -- all sorts of (15)

všímat si (I,i)(+ Gen.)(See všimnout se) -- to notice, take notice of, observe (8)

všimnout si (VI,p)(+ Gen.)(See všímat si) -- to notice, take notice of (8)

všude (adv.) -- everywhere (4)

vtáhnout (VI,p)(See vtahovat) -- to drag, pull into (19G)

vtahovat (VII,i)(See vtáhnout) -- to drag, pull into (19G)

vteřina (f) -- second (8)

vůbec (adv) -- not at all, in general (1)

vůči + Dat.(prep.) -- towards (18)

vůle (f) -- will (6)

vůz/voz- (m) -- car, wagon, van (16)

vy (Acc.-Gen.-Loc. vás; Dat. vám; Instr. vámi) -- you (pl.) (3G)

vyběhnout (VI,p)(See vybíhat) -- to run out of, run upwards (19G)

vybíhat (I,i)(See vyběhnout) -- to run out of, run upwards (19G)

vybírat si (I,i)(See vybrat si) -- to choose, select (14)

výborný -- excellent (9)

vybrat si (Vc,p)(like brát)(See vybírat si) -- to choose, select (14)

vybudovat (VII,p)(See budovat) -- to build up (20G)

vycvičit (II,p)(See cvičit) -- to train, exercise (18)

vyčistit (II,p)(See čistit) -- to clean (14)

vydání (n) -- issue, edition (14)

vydat (I,p)(See vydávat) -- to publish, release, emit (20G)

vydávat (I,i)(See vydat) -- to publish, release, emit (20G)

vyfotografovat (VII,p)(See fotografovat) -- to take pictures, photograph (14)

vyfotografovat se (VII,p)(See fotografovat se) -- to photograph each other (14G)

vyhánět (III,i)(See vyhnat) -- to chase out of, drive up (19G)

vyházet (III,i)(See vyhodit) -- to throw out/away (20G)

vyhledat (I,p)(See hledat) -- to search out (5G)

vyhnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See vyhánět) -- to chase out of, drive up (19G)

výhoda (f) -- advantage, asset, merit (14)

vyhodit (II,p)(See vyházet) -- to throw out/away (20G)

vyhrát (VIII,p)(See vyhrávat) -- to win, gain (20G)

vyhrávat (I,i)(See vyhrát) -- to win, gain (20G)

vycházet (III,i)(See vyjít) -- to go out, to come out; rise (of sun) (15)

východ (m) -- exit, way out; east; sunrise (18)

vyjet (Va,p)(like jet)(See vyjíždět) -- to drive out of, up (19G)

vyjít (Va,p)(like jít)(See vycházet) -- to go out, come out; rise (of sun) (15)

vyjíždět (III,i)(See vyjet) -- to drive out of, up (19G)

výkladní skříň -- shop window (15)

vykonat (I,p)(See konat) -- to do, make, perform (14)

vykouřit (II,p)(See kouřit) -- to smoke up (5G)

výlet (m) -- trip, picnic, outing (14)

vylét(áv)at (I,i)(See vyletět/vylétnout) -- to fly out of, up (19G)

vyletět (IV,p)(See výlét(áv)at/vyletovat) -- to fly out of, up (19G)

vylétnout (VI,p)(See vyletovat/vylét(áv)at) -- to fly out of, up (19G)

vyletovat (VII,i)(See vylétnout/vyletět) -- to fly out of, up (19G)

vylézt (Va,p)(like lézt)(See lézt) -- to climb (18)

vymalovat (VII,p)(See malovat) -- to decorate an interior (20G)

vynášet (III,i)(See vynést) -- to carry out of, up (19G)

vynést (Va,p)(like nést)(See vynášet) -- to carry out of, up (19G)

vypadat (I,i) -- to look (like) (2)

vypadávat (I,i)(See vypadnout) -- to fall out (8)

vypadnout (VI,p)(See vypadávat) -- to fall out (8)

vypínat (I,i)(See vypnout) -- to turn off, disconnect (20G)

vypít (VIII,p)(See pít) -- to drink (10)

vyplnit (II,p)(See vyplňovat) -- to fill out, stuff (20G)

vyplňovat (VII,i)(See vyplnit) -- to fill out, stuff (20G)

vypnout (Vb,p)(See vypínat) -- to turn off, disconnect (20G)

vypravovat (VII,i)(+ ind. obj.)(See říci and povědět) -- to relate, give an account of, tell about (9)

výraz (m) -- expression (20)

výrobek/výrobk- (m) -- product (19)

vyrůst (Va,p)(like růst)(See růst) -- to grow (15)

vyskákat (I,p)(Distributive) -- to jump out (one after another) (18)

výsledek/výsledk- (m) -- result (11)

vyslovit (II,p)(See vyslovovat) -- to pronounce (11)

vyslovovat (VII,i)(See vyslovit) -- to pronounce (11)

vysoko (adv.) see vysoký

vysoký -- high, tall (4)

vyspat se (irreg.,p)(like spát) -- to have a night's sleep (14)

vystačit (II,p)(See stačit) -- to suffice, be enough (14)

vystoupit (II,p)(See vystupovat) -- to get out, ascend, climb (16)

vystupovat (VII,i)(See vystoupit) -- to get out,ascend, climb (16)

vysvětlit (II,p)(See vysvětlovat) -- to explain (7)

vysvětlovat (VII,i)(See vysvětlit) -- to explain (7)

výše (comp. adv.) see vysoký

výška (f)(Gen.pl. výšek) -- height (12)

vyšší (comp. adj.) see vysoký

výtah (m) -- elevator (18)

vytáhnout (VI,p)(See vytahovat) -- to pull out of, up (19G)

vytahovat (VII,i)(See vytáhnout) -- to pull out of, up (19G)

vytrvalý -- persevering, relentless, diligent (15)

vytvořit (II,p)(See tvořit) -- to create, make (16)

vyvádět (III,i)(See vyvést) -- to lead out of, up (19G)

vyvážet (III,i)(See vyvézt) -- to haul, convey out of, up; to export (19G)

vyvést (Va,p)(like vést)(See vyvádět) -- to lead out of, up (19G)

vyvézt (Va,p)(like vézt)(See vyvážet) -- to haul, convey out of, up; to export (19G)

význam (m)(Loc.sg. -u) -- meaning, significance (18)

významný -- significant, meaningful (15)

vyznat se (I,p)(See vyznávat se) -- to know one's way about, confess (14G)

> **vyznat se v** + Loc.(perfective only) -- to be good at, be familiar with, know one's way around in (13)

vyznávat se (I,i)(See vyznat se) -- to know one's way about, confess (14G)

vzadu (adv.) -- at the back, in back (14)

vzdálený (od + Gen.) -- distant (from) (17)

vzdát se (I,p)(něčeho)(See vzdávat se) -- to give up, surrender (20G)

vzdávat se (I,i)(něčeho)(See vzdát se) -- to give up, surrender (20G)

vzduch (m) -- air (11)

vzdychat (I,i)(See vzdychnout) -- to sigh (20G)

vzdychnout (VI,p)(See vzdychat) -- to sigh (20G)

vzejít (Va,p)(like jít) -- to come up, arise (19G)

vzhůru (adv.) -- upwards, up (19)

vzít (Vb,p)(vezmu, vezmeš; vzal, vzala) (See brát) -- to take (5)

vzít se (Vb,p)(like vzít)(See brát se) -- to marry (14G)

vzlét(áv)at (I,i)(See vzletět/vzlétnout) -- to fly up, take off (19G)

vzletět (IV,p)(See vzlét(áv)at/vzletovat) -- to fly up, take off (19G)

vzlétnout (VI,p)(See vzletovat/ vzlét(áv)at) -- to fly up, take off (19G)

vzletovat (VII,i)(See vzlétnout/ vzletět) -- to fly up, take off (19G)

vznášet se (III,i)(See vznést se) -- to fly up, soar, hover (19G)

vznést se (Va,p)(like nést)(See vznášet se) -- to fly up, soar, hover (19G)

vznikat (I,i)(See vzniknout) -- to arise, originate, be caused by (14)

vzniklý -- arisen (16G)

vzniknout (VI,p)(See vznikat) -- to arise, originate, be caused by (14)

vzpomenout si (VI,p)(na + Acc.)(See vzpomínat si) -- to recall, think of (8)

vzpomínat si (VI,p)(na + Acc.)(See vzpomenout si) -- to remember, recall, think of (1)

vzpomínka (f)(Gen.pl. vzpomínek) -- memory, recollection, remembrance (18)

vzrůst (Va,p)(like růst)(See růst) -- to grow, increase, rise (15)

vztah (m) -- relation, relationship (17) vztáhnout (VI,p)(See vztahovat) -- to reach up (19G)

vztahovat (VII,i)(See vztáhnout) -- to reach up (19G)

vždy (adv. see vždycky) -- always (18)

vždycky (adv.) -- always (1)

vždyt' (adv.) -- well, to be sure, it should be noted (17)

Z

z(e) + Gen. -- out of, from, of (8)

jeden z + Gen. -- one of (8)

za + Acc. -- in, after, for (7)

za + Instr. or Acc. -- behind, beyond, over (10)

zabarvit (II,p)(See zabarvovat) -- to tint (20G)

zabarvovat (VII,i)(See zabarvit) -- to tint (20G)

zabavit (II,p)(See zabavovat) -- to seize, confiscate (20G)

zabavovat (VII,i)(See zabavit) -- to seize, confiscate (20G)

zaběhnout (VI,p)(See zabíhat) -- to run behind; to run in on (19G)

zabíhat (I,i)(See zaběhnout) -- to run behind; to run in on (19G)

zablýsknout se (VI,p)(See blýskat se) (impersonal) -- to flash (of lightning) (17)

zabíjet (III,i)(See zabít) -- to kill, dispatch (20G)

zabít (VIII,p)(See zabíjet) -- to kill, dispatch (20G)

zabolet (IV,p)(See bolet) -- to ache, hurt, give pain (18)

zabránit (II,p)(+ Dat. or někomu v tom) (See zabraňovat) -- to prevent (something or somebody from doing something) (15)

zabranǒvat (VII,i)(+ Dat. or někomu v tom)(See zabranit) -- to prevent (something or somebody from doing something((15)

zabývat se (I,i)(+ Instr.) -- to occupy oneself (with), be busy (with)(10)

začátek/začátk- (m) -- beginning (9)

začínat (I,i)(See začít) -- to begin, start (7)

začít (Vb,p)(začnu, začneš; začal, začala)(See začínat) -- to begin, start (7)

záda (n)(pl. only)(Gen. zad) -- back (14)

zafoukat (I,p)(See foukat)(personal and impersonal) -- to blow (17)

zahánět (III,i)(See zahnat) -- to chase behind, away (19G)

zahnat (Vc,p)(like hnát)(See zahánět) -- to chase behind, away (19G)

zahrada (f) -- garden, orchard (18)

zahrádka (f)(Gen.pl. zahrádek) -- yard (3)

zahrát (VIII,p)(See hrát) -- to play, (11)

zahřmět (IV,p)/zahřmít (II,p)(perf. part. only zahřmělo)(See hřmět/hřmít) (impersonal) -- to thunder (17)

zacházet (III,i)(See zajít) -- to go behind; to drop in on (19G)

zachranit (II,p)(See zachraňovat) -- to save, rescue (20G)

zachraňovat (VII,i)(See zachranit) -- to save, rescue (20G)

zájem/zájm- (m)(Loc.pl. -u) -- interest (10)

mít zájem -- to have an interest (in) (10)

zajet (Va,p)(like jet)(See zajíždět) -- to drive behind; to drop in on (19G)

zajímat (I,i)(-- to interest (5)

zajímat se o + Loc. -- to be interested in (14)

zajímavý (pred.adj. zajímavo) -- interesting (5)

zajít (Va,p)(like jít)(See zacházet) -- to go behind; to drop in on (19G)

zajíždět (III,i)(See zajet) -- to drive behind; to drop in on (19G)

zaklepat (IX/I,p)(imp. zaklepej, etc.) (See klepat) -- to knock (16)

zaklepat/klepat na dveře -- to knock at the door (16)

zakrýt (VIII,p)(See zakrývat) -- to cover, conceal (20G)

zakrývat (I,i)(See zakrýt) -- to cover, conceal (20G)

zalét(áv)at (I,i)(See zaletět/zalétnout) -- to fly behind, in (19G)

zaletět (IV,p)(See zalét(áv)at/zaletovat) -- to fly behind, in (19G)

zalétnout (VI,p)(See zaletovat/zalét(áv)at) -- to fly behind, in (19G)

zaletovat (VII,i)(See zalétnout/zaletět) -- to fly behind, in (19G)

zalévat (I,i)(See zalít) -- to water (20G)

zalézat (I,i)(See zalézt) -- to crawl, behind, hide, withdraw (20G)

zalézt (Va,p)(like lézt)(See zalézat) -- to crawl, behind, hide, withdraw (20G)

záležet (IV/III,i)(na + Loc.) -- to depend on (14)

na tom nezáleží -- it doesn't matter (14)

záležitost (f) -- affair, matter (13)

zalhat (IX,p)(See lhát) -- to lie, tell a lie (11)

záliba (f) -- liking, preference, hobby (10)

zalít (VIII,p)(like lít)(See zalévat) -- to water (20G)

zamilovat se (VII,p)(See zamilovávat se) -- to fall in love (20G)

zamilovávat se (I,i)(See zamilovat se) -- to fall in love (20G)

zanášet (III,i)(See zanést) -- to drop off (19G)

zanést (Va,p)(like nést)(See zanášet) -- to drop off (19G)

západ (m) -- west; sunset (18)

zapálit (II,p)(See zapalovat) -- to ignite, light up (20G)

zápalka (f)(Gen.pl. zápalek) -- match (20)

zapalovat (VII,i)(See zapálit) -- to ignite, light up (20G)

zapamatovat si (VII,p)(See pamatovat si) -- to remember, retain in memory (10)

zápas (m) -- fight, struggle, contest (20)

zápisník (m) -- notebook, memorandum book (16)

zapínat (I,i)(See zapnout) -- to turn on, switch on (20G)

zapisovat (VII,i)(See zapsat) -- to write down, record (20G)

zaplakat (IX,p)(See plakat) -- to weep, cry (15)

zaplatit (II,p)(See platit) -- to pay (6)

záplava (f) -- flood, deluge; spate (16)

zapnout (Vb,p)(See zapínat) -- to turn on, switch on (20G)

zapochybovat (VII,p)(o + Loc.)(See pochybovat) -- to doubt, have doubts (about) (12)

zapomenout (VI,p)(See zapomínat) -- to forget (8)

zapomenout si (VI,p)(See zapomínat si) -- to go and forget some personal effect (14G)

zapomínat (I,i)(See zapomenout) -- to forget (8)

zapomínat si (I,i)(See zapomenout si) -- to go and forget some personal effect (14G)

zapsat (IX,p)(like psát)(See zapisovat) -- to write down, record (20G)

zarazit se (II,p)(See zarážet se) -- to pause, hesitate, stop (doing something) (15)

zarážet se (III,i)(See zarazit se) -- to pause, hesitate, stop (doing something) (15)

zároveň (adv.) -- at the same time (15)

září (n) -- September (12G)

zařídit (II,p)(See zařizovat) -- to arrange, fix, take care of (18)

zařizovat (VII,i)(See zařídit) -- to arrange, fix, take care of (18)

zásada (f) -- principle (18)

zasadit (II,p)(See sázet) -- to plant (5G)

zasáhnout (VI,p)(See zasahovat) -- to influence, affect (16)

zasahovat (VII,i)(See zasáhnout) -- to influence, affect (16)

zasahovat/zasáhnout do + Gen. -- to interfere in, meddle in (16)

zase (adv.) -- again (2)

zasmát se (VIII,p)(like smát se)(+ Dat.)(See smát se) -- to laugh, smile (at) (11)

zásoba (f) -- reserve, store, supply (17)

zastavit se (II,p)(See zastavovat se) -- to stop (while in motion) (15)

zastavovat se (VII,i)(See zastavit se) -- to stop (while in motion) (15)

zastoupit (II,p)(See zastupovat) -- to substitute for, take someone's place (20G)

zastupovat (VII,i)(See zastoupit) -- to substitute for, take someone's place (20G)

zásuvka (f)(Gen.pl. zásuvek) -- drawer (6)

zatáhnout (VI,p)(See zatahovat) -- to pull, drag behind, in (19G)

zatahovat (VII,i)(See zatáhnout) -- to pull, drag behind, in (19G)

zatím (adv.) -- in the meantime, for the time being (19)

zatímco (conj.) -- while (13)

zato (adv.) -- on the other hand, in return, back (6)

zatřást (Va,p)(like třást)(+ Instr.)(See třást) -- to shake (18)

zatvářit se (II,p)(+ adv.)(See tvářit se) -- to show or pretend some emotion on one's face (14)

zaujímat (I,i)(See zaujmout) -- to occupy, take up, absorb, captivate (14)

zaujmout (Vb,p)(See zaujímat) -- to occupy, take up, absorb, captivate (14)

zavádět (III,i)(See zavést) -- to lead to, in (19G)

zavazadlo (n)(Gen.pl. zavazadel) -- (piece of) luggage (18)

zavést (Va,p)(like vést)(See zavádět) -- to lead to, in (19G)

zavézt (Va,p)(like vézt) -- to haul in, drop off (19G)

zavírat (I,i)(See zavřít) -- to close, shut (16)

záviset (III,i)(na + Loc.) -- to depend (on) (16)

zavolat (I,p)(See volat) -- to call, give a call (5)

zavolat se (I,p)(s + Instr.)(See volat se) -- to call each other (14G)

zavonět (III,p)(See vonět) -- to smell good, have a pleasant smell (16)

zavřít (Vb,p)(zavřu, zavřes; zavřel)(See zavírat) -- to close, shut (16)

zazelenat (I,p)(See zelenat) -- to turn green, become green (14)

zaznít (IV,p)(perf. part. zazněl)(See znít) -- to resound (5G)

zazpívat (I,p)(See zpívat) -- to sing (11)

zbavit se (II,p)(+ Gen.)(See zbavovat se) -- to get rid of, dispose of (15)

zbavovat se (VII,i)(+ Gen.)(See zbavit se) -- to get rid of, dispose of (15)

zbýt (Va,p)(like být)(See zbývat) -- to be left, remain (17)

zbytečný (pred.adj. zbytečno) -- unnecessary, pointless (11)

zbytek/zbytk- (m) — remainder, rest (20)

zbývat (I,i)(See zbýt) — to be left, remain (17)

zda (conj.) — whether (15)

zdali (conj.) — whether (15)

zdání (n)

  nemít zdání — to have no idea (4)

zdát se (I,i)(+ Dat.) — to seem, appear (15)

  zdá se mi — it seems to me (15)

zde (adv.)(See tady) — here (16)

zdejší — of this place, local (17)

zdraví (n) — health (10)

zdravit (II,i)(See pozdravit) — to greet (7)

zdravit se (II,i)(s + Instr.)(See pozdravit se) — to greet each other (14G)

zdravý/zdrav — healthy, healthful (3)

zdržet (IV,p)(See zdržovat) — to detain (14G)

zdržet se (IV,p)(See zdržovat se) — to be detained, to be held up (6)

zdržovat (VII,i)(See zdržet) — to detain (14G)

zdržovat se (VII,i)(See zdržet se) — to stay, linger (9G)

zdůraznit (II,p)(See zdůrazňovat) — to stress, emphasize, point out (12)

zdůrazňovat (VII,i)(See zdůraznit) — to stress, emphasize, point out (12)

zelenat (I,i)(See zazelenat) — to turn green, become green (14)

zelenat se (I,i)(See zezelenat se) — to be green, appear green (14)

zelenina (f) — vegetables ([illegible])

zelený — green (4)

zem (declined like země) — soil, ground, floor (11)

země (f) — country, land, soil, earth, globe, ground, floor (11)

zeptat se (I,p)(+ Gen.)(See ptát se) — to ask (a question) (5)

zezelenat se (I,p)(See zelenat se) — to be green, appear green (14)

zhublý — emaciated (16G)

zhubnout (VI,p)(See hubnout) — to grow slim, lose weight (7)

zima (f) — winter (4)

zítra — tomorrow (1)

zjistit (II,p)(See zjišťovat) — to find out, ascertain, verify (12)

zjistit si (II,p)(See zjišťovat si) — to find out for oneself (14G)

zjišťovat (VII,i)(See zjistit) — to find out, ascertain, verify (12)

zjišťovat si (VII,i)(See zjistit si) — to find out for oneself (14G)

zkoušet (III,i)(See zkusit) — to try, attempt, try out (11)

zkoušet si (III,i)(See zkusit si) — to try on something (14G)

zkouška (f)(Gen.pl. zkoušek) — examination, trial (9)

zkusit (II,p)(See zkoušet) — to try, attempt, try out (11)

zkusit si (II,p)(See zkoušet si) — to try something on (14G)

zlobit (II,i)(See rozzlobit) — to irritate, worry (14G)

zlobit se (II,i)(na + Acc.)(See rozzlobit se) — to be angry (at/with) (11)

zlý — bad, wicked, evil, vicious (6)

zmatek/zmatk- (m) — confusion, mess, tangle (14)

změna (f) — change (9)

změnit (II,p)(See měnit) — to change (12)

změřit (II,p)(See měřit) — to measure, take measurements (12)

zmizet (III,p)(See mizet) — to disappear, vanish, be gone (7)

zmrzlý — frozen (16G)

zmrznout (VI,p)(See mrznout) — to freeze (9)

zmýlit (II,p)(See mýlit) — to deceive, confuse (14G)

zmýlit se (II,p)(See mýlit se) — to be wrong, be mistaken (5G)

značný — considerable, substantial (17)

znalý — informed (16G)

znamenat (I,i) — to mean, stand for (7)

známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek) — trace, postage stamp, mark, grade, symbol, sign (16)

známý (adj. or noun) — well-known, acquaintance (7)

znát (I,i) — to know (be acquainted with) (1)

znát se (I,i) — to know oneself, to know each other (14G)

znělý — voiced (16G)

znění (n) — version, sounding (16G)

znít (IV,i)(perf. part. zněl)(See zaznít) — to sound, resound (4)

znovu (adv.) — anew, afresh, once again (11)

zopakovat (VII,p)(See opakovat) — to repeat, review, recapitulate (9)

zoufalý — desperate (14)

zpáteční — return (adj.) (14)

zpátky (adv.) — back (adv.) (5)

zpěv (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — singing (11)

zpívat (I,i)(See zazpívat) — to sing (11)

zpívat si (I,i) — to sing for one's own enjoyment (14G)

zpozorovat (VII,p)(See pozorovat) — to notice, note (18)

zpráva (f) — news; report, account (19)

způsob (m) — way, manner, fashion (12)

způsobit (II,p)(See způsobovat) — to bring about, cause (16)

způsobovat (VII,i)(See způsobit) — to bring about, cause (16)

zralý — ripe (18)

zřejmě (adv.) — obviously, evidently (4)

zřejmý (pred.adj. zřejmo) — obvious, evident (13G)

zřídka (adv.) — seldom, rarely (11)

ztloustlý — plump (16G)

ztloustnout (VI,p)(See tloustnout) — to get fat, put on weight (7)

ztrácet (III,i)(See ztratit) — to lose (11)

ztratit (II,p)(See ztrácet) — to lose (11)

zub (m)(Loc.sg. -u) — tooth (14)

zubař (m) — dentist (6)

zúčastnit se (II,p)(+ Gen.)(See účastnit se) — to take part in (8)

zůstat (Va,p)(zůstanu, zůstaneš)(See zůstávat) — to remain, stay (7)

  zůstat viset — to get stuck, stranded (17)

zůstávat (I,i)(See zůstat) — to remain, stay (7)

zvát (Vc,i)(zvu, zveš)(See pozvat) — invite (13)

zvát se (Vc,i)(like zvát)(See pozvat se) — to invite each other (14G)

zvědavý/zvědav — curious, inquisitive (13)

zvíře (n)(mixed decl.) — animal (13)

zvlášt' (adv.) — in particular, especially; apart, separately (4,14)

zvláštní — special, particular (8)

zvyk (m) — habit, practice (18)

zvyklý (+ inf. or na + Acc.) —used (to), accustomed (to) (9)

Ž

žádat (I,i)(o + Loc.)(See požádat) — to request, ask (for), require (14)

žádný (negative of jaký and který) — no, none, not one, not any (9)

žák (m) — pupil, disciple (10)

žaludek/žaludk- (m) — stomach (5)

že (conj. introducing noun clauses) — that (4)

žena (f) — wife, woman (5)

ženin (poss. adj.) — wife's (9G)

ženit se (II,i)(See oženit se) — to get married (of a man) (20G)

židle (f) — chair (2)

žít (VIII,i) — to live, be alive (10)

žít si (VIII,i) — to live and enjoy it (14G)

živě (adv.) — in a lively manner, animatedly, spiritedly (10)

život (m) — life (2)

živý/živ (pred.adj. živo) — alive, lively, vivid (4)

žízeň/žízň- (f) — thirst (1)

žlutý — yellow (11)

ENGLISH-CZECH GLOSSARY

ENGLISH-CZECH GLOSSARY

A

A, AN -- jeden/jedna/jedno, etc. (7)

to ABANDON -- opouštět (III,i)/opustit (II,p) (20G)

to be ABLE -- moci (Va,irreg.,i)(4); být s to + inf. (17); dovést (Va,p)(15)

ABOUT -- (prep.) o + Loc. (4); kolem + Gen. (19); (adv.) asi (2)

ABOVE -- (prep.) nad + Instr. or Acc. (10); (adv.) nahoře (2)

ABOVE all -- především (adv.) (17)

to ABSORB -- zaujímat (I,i)/zaujmout (Vb,irreg.,p) (14)

ACCENT MARK -- čárka (f)(Gen.pl. čárek) (20)

to ACCEPT -- přijímat (I,i)/přijmout (Vb,irreg.,p) (16)

ACCORDING to -- podle + Gen. (12)

ACCOUNT -- zpráva (f) (19)

to give an ACCOUNT of -- popisovat (VII,i)/popsat (IX,p) (16)

ACCURATE -- přesný (8)

ACCUSTOMED (to) -- zvyklý (+ inf. or na + Acc.) (9)

to ACHE -- bolet (IV,i)/zabolet (IV,p) (18)

to ACKNOWLEDGE -- přiznávat se (I,i)/přiznat se (I,p)(20G)

ACQUAINTANCE -- známý (7)

to get ACQUAINTED with -- poznávat se (I,i)/poznat se (I,p)(s + Instr.) (14G)

ACROSS -- přes + Acc. (9)

ACROSS the street from -- naproti + Dat. (6)

ACT -- jednání (n) (2)

ACTION -- jednání (n) (2)

ACTIVE -- aktivní (13)

ACTUALLY -- vlastně (6)

to ADAPT something to something -- přizpůsobovat (VII,i)/přizpůsobit (II,p) něco něčemu (14)

to ADD -- dodávat (I,i)/dodat (I,i)(15) přidávat (I,i)/přidat (I,p)(20G)

ADDITION -- sčítání (n)(12G)

in ADDITION to -- kromě + Gen. (9); vedle + Gen. (11); mimo + Acc. (17)

ADDRESS -- adresa (f) (10)

ADDRESS book -- notýsek/notýsk- (m)(1)

to ADDRESS -- obracet se (III,i)/obrátit se (II,p) k + Dat. (15)

ADJACENT -- vedlejší (20)

to ADJUST (intransitive) -- přizpůsobovat se (VII,i)/přizpůsobit se (II,p)(+ Dat.) (14)

to ADJUST (something to something) -- přizpůsobovat (VII,i)/přizpůsobit (II,p) něco něčemu (14)

ADULT -- dospělý (adj. and noun) (15)

in ADVANCE -- předem (adv.) (14)

ADVANTAGE -- přednost (f) (13); výhoda (f) (19)

ADVERBIAL participle -- přechodník (m) (16)

ADVICE -- rada (f) (14)

to ADVISE -- radit (II,i)/poradit (II,p) (17)

AFFABLE -- milý (10)

AFFAIR -- záležitost (f) (13)

to AFFECT -- zasahovat (VII,i)/zasáhnout (VI,p)(16)

AFFECTION -- láska (f)(Gen.pl. lásek)(18)

to be AFRAID of -- bát se (IV,i)(4)

I'm AFRAID -- bohužel (1)

AFRESH -- znovu (adv.) (11)

AFTER -- (prep.) po + Loc. (4); za + Acc. (7); (conj.) potom co (16)

AFTER all -- přece (11); konec konců (17); ostatně (16)

AFTERNOON -- odpoledne (n) (4)

AFTERWARDS -- potom (5)

AGAIN -- zase (2)

once AGAIN -- znovu (adv.) (11)

AGAINST -- proti + Dat. (6)

AGE -- doba (f) (6)

AGO -- před + Instr. (10)

of long AGO (adj.) -- dávný (13)

to AGREE (upon something with someone) -- dohadovat se (VII,i)/dohodnout se (VI,p)(s někým o něčem) (14)

to AGREE (with) -- souhlasit (II,i) (s + Instr.) (17)

AGREEABLE -- příjemný (4)

to come to an AGREEMENT (with someone on something) -- dohadovat se (VII,i)/dohodnout se (VI,p)(s někým o něčem) (14); domlouvat se (I,i)/domluvit se (II,p)(s někým) (20G)

AHA! -- aha! (interjection) (18)

AHEAD -- napřed (adv.) (12)

go AHEAD -- samozřejmě (15)

AHEAD of -- před + Instr. or Acc. (10)

AID -- pomoc (f) (16)

to AID -- pomáhat (I,i)/pomoci (Va, irreg., p) (6)

AIR -- vzduch (m) (11)

AIRPLANE -- letadlo (n)(Gen.pl. letadel) (19)

AIRPORT -- letiště (n) (19)

to leave AJAR -- přivírat (I,i)/přivřít (Vb,p) (20G)

ALARM-CLOCK -- budík (n)(may be animate or inanimate) (12)

ALIVE -- živý (4)

to be ALIVE -- žít (VII,i)(10)

ALL -- všechen/všechna/všechno, etc. (9)

ALL at once -- najednou (2)

ALL in ALL -- dohromady (adv.) (14)

ALL of -- všechen/všechna/všechno, etc. (9)

ALL right -- tak dobře (7)

ALL sorts of -- všelijaký (15)

ALL the time -- stále (adv.) (18)

ALLEGEDLY -- prý (6)

to ALLOW -- dovolovat (VII,i)/dovolit (II,p) (15)

to be ALLOWED -- smět (III,i) (3)

ALMOST -- téměř (adv.) (15); skoro (adv.) (6)

ALONE -- sám/sama/samo, etc. (13); samotný (14)

to leave somenone ALONE -- dávat (I,i)/dát (I,p) někomu pokoj (18)

ALONG -- (prep.) po + Loc. (4); (adv.) s sebou (5)

ALOUD -- nahlas (2)

ALREADY -- už (1)

ALSO -- také (1); též (adv.)(SČ) (17)

ALTERNATIVE -- druhá/jiná možnost (14)

ALTHOUGH -- ačkoli (6); přestože (conj.) (17); třebaže (15)

ALTOGETHER -- celkem (adv.) (14)

ALWAYS -- (SČ) vždy (adv.) (18); vždycky (1)

to AMAZE -- překvapovat (VII,i)/překvapit (II,p) (10)

to be AMAZED -- divit se (II,i) (5)

to be AMAZED at -- divit se + Dat. (6)

AMERICA -- Amerika (f) (1)

AMERICAN (adj.) -- americký (7)

AMERICAN (noun) -- Američan (m)(Nom.pl. -é); Američanka (f)(Gen.pl. Američanek) (20)

AMICABLE -- přátelský (13)

AMONG -- mezi + Instr. or Acc. (10)

AMOUNT -- množství (n) (19)

to AMUSE -- bavit (I,i)/pobavit (II,p) (14G)

to AMUSE oneself -- bavit se (II,i) (2)/pobavit se (II,p)(5G)

ANCIENT -- dávný (13)

AND -- a (1)

AND also -- i (1)

AND so on -- a tak dále (abbreviated atd.) (7)

ANECDOTE -- anekdota (f) (12)

ANEW -- znovu (adv.) (11)

to get ANGRY (at, with) -- zlobit se (II,i)/rozzlobit se (II,p)(na + Acc.) (11)

ANIMAL -- zvíře (mixed decl.) (13)

ANIMATED -- živý (10)

to ANNOUNCE -- oznamovat (VII,i)/oznamit (II,p)(13); hlásit (II,i)/ohlásit (II, p) (14G)

ANOTHER -- další (3); druhý (7)

ANSWER -- odpověd' (f)(Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) (6)

to ANSWER -- odpovídat (I,i)/odpovědět (irreg.,p) (5)

to ANSWER a call -- hlásit se (II,i)/ ohlásit se (II,p)(14G)

to ANSWER something -- odpovídat/ odpovědět na + Acc. (6)

ANTAGONISM -- rozpor (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(19)

to ANTICIPATE -- předpokládat (I,i)(17); předvídat (I,i)(20G); těšit se (II,i) na + Acc. (14)

ANY -- (in questions) nějaký (4);(with negative) žádný (9)

ANY minute, ANY time now -- co nevidět (5)

scarcely/hardly ANY -- málokterý (18G); skoro žádný (18G)

ANYHOW -- stejně (adv.) (11)

ANYONE -- někdo (8)

ANYTHING -- něco (8)

ANYWAY -- přece (adv.) (11)

ANYWHERE -- někde (8)

APART -- zvlášt' (adv.) (14)

APART from -- nehledě k + Dat. (adv.) (16)

APARTMENT -- byt (m) (3)

to APOLOGIZE -- omlouvat se (I,i)/omluvit se (II,p)(19)

APPARENT -- patrný (4)

to APPEAL to -- líbit se (II,i)(někomu) (13)

to APPEAR -- objevovat se (VII,i)/objevit se (II,p)(11); (to seem) vypadat (II,i) (2); hlásit se (II,i)/ohlásit se (II,p) (14G); zdát se (I,i)(+ Dat.) (15)

to APPEAR green -- zelenat se (I,i)/ zazelenat se (I,p)(14)

to all APPEARANCES -- podle všeho (13)

APPETITE -- chut' (f)(Nom.pl. -e) (3)

APPLE -- jablko (n)(Gen.pl. jablek; Loc.pl. jablkách) (16)

APPLICATION -- přihláška (f)(Gen.pl. přihlášek) (16)

to APPOINT -- jmenovat (VII,i) (14G)

APPOINTMENT -- schůzka (f) (12)

to APPRECIATE -- oceňovat (VII,i)/ocenit (II,p)(20G); vážit si (II,i)(+ Gen.)(8)

APPROXIMATE -- přibližný (18)

APPROXIMATELY -- kolem + Gen. (19)

APRIL -- duben/dubn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a)(12G)

ARE (unit of measure) -- ar (m) (12)

to ARISE (from) -- vznikat (I,i)/vzniknout (VI,p)(z + Gen.) (14)

AROUND -- (adv.) kolem (5); (prep.) kolem + Gen. (14)

to ARRANGE -- zařizovat (VII,i)/zařídit (II,p)(18)

to ARRIVE -- (on foot) přicházet (III,i) (3)/přijít (Va,irreg.,p)(5); (not on foot) přijet (Va,p)(5)/přijíždět (III,i)(19G)

ARROGANT -- domýšlivý (5)

ART -- umění (n) (13)

ARTHRITIS -- revma (n) (15)

AS -- jak (adv.) (4); jako (conj.) (2)

AS...AS -- tak...jako (3)

AS (early) as possible -- pokud možno (brzo) (18)

AS a matter of fact -- vlastně (6)

AS far AS -- pokud (5)

AS far AS... is concerned -- pokud jde o + Acc. (18)

AS long AS -- pokud (conj.) (5)

AS soon AS -- jakmile (conj.) (15)

AS well AS -- i (1)

to ASCEND -- vystupovat (VII,i)/vystoupit (II,p) (16)

to ASCERTAIN -- zjišt'ovat (VII,i)/zjistit (II,p)(12)

to ASK (a question) -- ptát se (I,i)/zeptat se (I,p) (5)

to ASK about -- ptát se/zeptat se na + Acc. (5)

to ASK (for) -- prosit (II,i)/poprosit (II,p)(někoho o něco) (15); žádat (I,i)/požádat (I,p)(o + Loc.) (14)

to be ASLEEP -- spát (IV,irreg.,i)(4)

ASPECT -- stránka (f)(Gen.pl. stránek) (16)

to ASSEMBLE -- sestavovat (VII,i)/sestavit (II,p)(20G)

ASSET -- výhoda (f) (14)

ASSIGNMENT -- úkol (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(13)

to ASSIST -- pomáhat (I,i)/pomoci (Va, irreg., p) (6)

ASSISTANCE -- pomoc (f) (16)

to ASSUME -- domnívat se (I,i)(18); předpokládat (I,i)(17); (take over) převzít (Vb,p) (20G)

to ASSURE -- ujišt'ovat (VII,i)/ujistit (II,p) (11)

to ASTONISH -- překvapovat (VII,i)/překvapit (II,p) (10)

to be ASTONISHED -- divit se (II,i) (5)

to be ASTONISHED at -- divit se + Dat. (6)

AT -- na + Loc. (4); u + Gen. (8)

AT least -- aspoň (adv.) (9); při nejmenším (adv.) (16)

AT once -- hned (adv.) (5); okamžitě (adv.) (14)

AT other times -- jindy (adv.) (2)

AT the last moment -- na poslední chvíli (14)

AT the same time -- zároveň (adv.)(15)

to ATTEMPT -- pokoušet se (III,i)/pokusit se (II,p)(o něco) (18); zkoušet (III,i)/zkusit (II,p)(11)

ATTENTION -- pozor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (11)

to draw someone's ATTENTION to -- upozorňovat (VII,i)/upozornit (II,p) (někoho) na něco (14)

to pay ATTENTION to -- dávat pozor na + Acc. (11); věnovat (VII,i) pozornost + Dat. (17)

ATTITUDE -- stanovisko (n) (13)

to ATTRACT -- bavit (II,i)/pobavit (II,p) (14G)

AUGUST -- srpen/srpn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

AUTHOR -- autor (m); autorka (f)(Gen.pl. autorek) (17)

AUTHORESS -- autorka (f)(Gen.pl. autorek) (17)

AUTUMN -- podzim (m) (Loc.sg. -u)(4)

AVENUE -- třída (f) (15)

AVERAGE -- střední (18)

to AWAKE -- probouzet se (III,i)/probudit se (II,p) (19)

AWARE (of) -- vědomý (si)(+ Gen.) (13)

AWAY -- pryč (adv.) (3)

AWAY from -- od + Gen. (8)

AWFUL -- hrozný (6)

AWKWARD -- trapný (7)

AXIOM -- pravidlo (n)(Gen.pl. pravidel) (14)

B

BACK -- (noun) záda (n)(pl. only)(Gen. zad) (14); (adv.) zato (6); zpátky (5)

at the BACK -- vzadu (adv.) (14)

in BACK -- vzadu (adv.) (14)

to talk BACK -- odmlouvat (I,i)(20G)

to write BACK -- odpisovat (VII,i)/ odepsat (IX,p)(20G)

BAD -- špatný (3); zlý (6); ošklivý (9)

BAKED goods -- pečivo (n) (15)

BALL-POINT PEN -- kuličkové pero (14)

BAND -- pás (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (11)

BANK -- banka (f)(12); (of a river, etc.) břeh (m) (16)

BARE -- pouhý (17)

BARELY -- sotva (adv.) (10)

BASEMENT -- sklep (m) (19)

BATHROOM -- koupelna (f)(Gen.pl. koupelen) (10)

to BEAR (children) -- rodit (II,i)/ porodit (II,p)(14G)

to be able to BEAR -- snést (Va,p)(5)

to BEAT -- bít (VIII,i)(+ Acc. of animate nouns) (10)

to BEAT on -- bít do + Gen. of inanimate nouns (10)

BEAUTIFUL -- krásný (6)

BECAUSE -- protože (4)

to BECOME -- stávat se (I,i)/stát se (Va,p) (9)

to BECOME green -- zelenat (I,i)/ zezelenat (I,p) (14)

BED -- postel (f)(Nom.pl. -e) (2)

BEER -- pivo (n) (14)

BEFORE -- (prep.) před + Instr. or Acc. (10); (adv.) předtím (11); dřív(e) (12); (conj.) než (11); dřív(e) než (11); dokud ne- (15)

BEFOREHAND -- předem (adv.) (14)

to BEG (for) -- prosit (II,i)/poprosit (II,p)(někoho o něco) (15)

to BEGIN -- začínat (I,i)/začít (Vb,p) (7); (intransitive) začínat se (I,i)/ začít se (Vb,p) (14)

BEGINNING -- začátek/začátk- (m) (9); počátek/počátk- (m) (17)

to BEGRUDGE -- litovat (VII,i) + Gen. (17)

BEHAVIOR -- jednání (n) (2)

BEHIND -- za + Instr. or Acc. (10)

to BELIEVE -- věřit (II,i)/uvěřit (II,p) (6)

to BELONG to -- patřit + Dat. (6)

BELOW -- (prep.) pod + Instr. or Acc. (10); (adv.) dole (2)

BENCH -- lavička (f)(Gen.sg. laviček)(4)

BENEATH -- pod + Instr. or Acc. (10)

BESIDE -- vedle + Gen. (11)

BESIDES -- kromě + Gen. (9)

to BET -- vsazovat se (VII,i)/vsadit se (II,p) (20G)

you BET -- samozřejmě (15)

BETWEEN -- mezi + Instr. or Acc. (10)

BEWILDERMENT -- rozpaky (m)(pl. only)(10)

BEYOND -- za + Instr. or Acc. (10)

BICYCLE -- kolo (n) (8)

BIG -- velký (3)

BILLION -- miliarda (f) (12G)

BIRD -- pták (m) (9)

to give BIRTH -- rodit (II,i)/porodit (II,p) (14G)

BIRTHDAY -- narozeniny (f)(pl. only)(12)

BIT -- kousek/kousk- (m) (15)

quite a BIT -- dost (adv.) (5)

BLACK -- černý (11)

BLACKBOARD -- tabule (f) (15)

BLAME -- vina (f) (14)

BLONDE -- blondýnka (f)(Gen.pl. blondýnek) (4)

to BLOW -- foukat (I,i)/zafoukat (I,p) (17)

BLUE -- modrý (4)

BLUNDER -- chyba (f) (12)

BOARD -- deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek) (16); tabule (f) (15)

BODY -- tělo (n) (8)

BOHEMIA -- Čechy (f)(pl. only) (13)

to BOIL -- vařit (II,i)(2)/uvařit (II,p) (5G); (intransitive) vařit se (II,i)/ uvařit se (II,p) (14G)

BOLOGNA -- salám (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (15)

BOND -- svazek/svazk- (m) (17)

BOOK -- kniha (f) (1); knížka (f)(Gen. pl. knížek) (17)

small BOOK -- knížka (f)(Gen.pl. knížek) (17)

BOOKCASE -- knihovna (f)(Gen.pl. knihoven) (16)

BOOT -- bota (f) (18)

to BORE -- nudit (II,i) (14G)

to be BORED -- nudit se (II,i)(13); otravovat se (VII,i)/otrávit se) (II,p) (15)

BOREDOM -- otrava (f) (13)

to be BORN -- rodit se (II,i)/narodit se (II,p) (10)

BOSS -- vedoucí (m/f) (11)

BOTH -- oba/obě (12)

to BOTHER -- rušit (II,i) (18)

BOTTLE -- láhev/láhv- (f)(Gen.sg. -e; Nom.-Acc.pl. -e; Gen.pl. lahví; Dat. pl. lahvím; Instr.pl. lahvemi; Loc.pl. lahvích) (19)

BOUNDARY -- hranice (f)(Gen.pl. hranic) (20)

BOWL -- mísa (f)(Gen.pl. mis/mís) (16)

BOX -- schránka (f)(Gen.pl. schránek) (18)

BOY -- hoch (m) (3); chlapec/chlapc- (m) (15)

to BRAID -- plést (Va,i)/splést (Va,p) (14G)

BREAD -- chléb/chleb- (m)(Gen.sg. -a)(13)

piece of BREAD -- topinka (f)(Gen.pl. topinek (19)

BREADTH -- šířka (f)(Gen.pl. šířek) (12)

BREAK -- přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek) (15)

to BREAK -- rozbíjet (III,i)/rozbít (VIII,p) (19)

to BREAK silence -- ozývat se (I,i)/ ozvat se (Vc,p) (17)

BREAKFAST -- snídaně (f) (19)

to have BREAKFAST -- snídat (I,i)(1)

BRIDGE -- most (m) (9)

BRIGHT -- jasný (2); světlý (19)

BRILLIANT -- skvělý (13)

to BRING -- (on foot) přinášet (III,i)/ přinést (Va,p); (not on foot) přivážet (III,i)/přivézt (Va,p)(19G); (to lead) přivádět (III,i)/přivést (Va,p)(19G)

to BRING about -- uskutečňovat (VII,i)/ uskutečnit (II,p)(20G); způsobovat (VII, i)/ způsobit (II,p) (16)

BROAD -- široký (12)

BROTHER -- bratr (m) (1)

BROW -- čelo (n) (18)

BROWN -- hnědý (20)

BRUSH -- kartáček/kartáčk- (m) (14)

to BUILD -- stavět (III,i)/postavit (II, p) (20)

BUILDING -- budova (f) (14)

BUNCH -- svazek/svazk- (m) (17)

to BURN -- hořet (IV,i) (17); pálit (II,i)/spálit (II,p) (14)

BUS -- autobus (m) (1)

BUSH -- keř (m) (3)

BUSINESS -- obchod (m) (13)

to be BUSY with -- zabývat se (I,i) + Instr. (10)

not to be BUSY -- mít volno (6)

BUT -- (conj.) ale (1); však (enclitic) (SČ)(14); (prep.) kromě + Gen. (9)

BUTTER -- máslo (n) (15)

to BUY (for oneself) -- kupovat (si) (VII,i)/koupit (si) (II,p) (9)

BY -- (prep.) u + Gen. (8); mimo + Acc. (17); (adv.) kolem (5)

BY means of -- pomocí + Gen. (18)

BY the way -- mimochodem (adv.) (10)

C

CABINET -- skříň (f)(Nom.pl. skříně)(2)

to CALCULATE -- počítat (I,i)/spočítat (I,p) (12)

CALL -- návštěva (f) (4)

to CALL -- volat (I,i)(1)/zavolat (I,p) (5)

to CALL by name -- jmenovat (VII,i) (14G)

to CALL together -- svolávat (I,i)/ svolat (I,p) (20G)

to be CALLED -- jmenovat se (VII,i)(9)

CALM -- (noun) klid (m) (oc.sg. -u) (13); (adj.) klidný (14)

to CALM down -- uklidňovat (VII,i)/ uklidnit (II,p) (14)

CAN (auxiliary verb) -- moci (Va,irreg. i) (5); (know how) umět (III,i) (3)

it CAN'T be helped -- nedá se nic dělat (11)

CAP -- čepice (f) (2)

CAPABLE (of) -- schopný (+ Gen.) (8)

to CAPTIVATE -- zaujímat (I,i)/zaujmout (Vb,irreg.,p) (14)

CAPTIVE -- vězeň/vězň- (m) (12)

CAR -- auto (n) (3); vůz/voz- (m) (16)

CARD -- lístek/lístk- (m) (18)

CARE -- starost (f) (7)

to take CARE of -- (attend to) starat se (I,i)/postarat se (I,p) o + Acc. (10); (look after) hlídat (II,i)/ ohlídat (I,p) (18); (arrange) zařizovat (VII,i)/zařídit (II,p) (18)

CAREFUL -- pečlivý (11)

to CARRY -- (on foot) nosit (II,i,indet.) (2)/nést (Va,i, det.)(5); (not on foot) vozit (II,i,indet.)/vézt (Va,i, det.)(9)

to CARRY away -- (on foot) odnášet (III,i)/odnést (Va,p) (19G); (not on foot) odvážet (III,i)/odvézt (Va,p) (17)

CARPET -- koberec/koberc- (m) (2)

CASE (instance) případ (m) (7)

to CAST -- házet (III,i)/hodit (II,p) (18)

CAT -- kočka (f)(Gen.pl. koček) (8)

to CATCH -- chytat (I,i)/chytit (II,p) (18)

to CATCH sight of -- uvidět (IV,p)(5)

to CAUSE -- způsobovat (VII,i)/způsobit (II,p)(16)

to CAUSE concern -- dělat starost + Dat. (7)

to be CAUSED by -- vznikat (I,i)/vzniknout (VI,p) z + Gen. (14)

to CEASE -- přestávat (I,i)/přestat (Va, irreg.,p) (7)

CELLAR -- sklep (m) (19)

CENTER -- centrum (n) (15)

CENTI- (prefix) -- centi- (12G)

CENTRAL -- střední (18)

CEREMONIAL -- slavnostní (14)

CERTAIN -- určitý (5); jistý (13)

to a CERTAIN extent -- jaksi (adv.) (16)

CHAIR -- židle (f) (2)

CHALK -- křída (f) (15)

CHANCE -- náhoda (f) (12); příležitost (f) (14); možnost (f) (14)

CHANGE -- změna (f) (9)

small CHANGE -- drobné (m.pl. adj.) (19)

to CHANGE -- (transitive) měnit (II,i)/změnit (II,p) (12); (intransitive) měnit se (II,i)/změnit se (II,p) (14G)

to CHANGE train, bus, etc. -- přestupovat (VII,i)/přestoupit (II,p) (z něčeho do něčeho) (17)

CHARACTER -- charakter (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (16)

to CHASE -- honit (II,i, indet.)/hnát (Vc,i, det.) (19)

to CHAT -- hovořit (II,i)(2)

CHEAP -- laciný (3)

to CHEAT -- podvádět (III,i)/podvést (Va,p) (20G)

CHEEK -- tvář (f)(Nom.pl. tváře)(14)

CHEERFUL -- veselý (13)

CHEESE -- sýr (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (15)

CHIEF -- vedoucí (m/f) (11); (adj.) hlavný (12)

CHILD -- dítě (mixed decl.) (13)

CHILDISH -- dětský (4)

CHILDREN -- děti (f.pl.) (10)

CHILDREN'S -- dětský (4)

to CHILL -- mrazit (II,i) (17)

CHILLY -- studený (11)

to CHOOSE -- vybírat si (I,i)/vybrat si (Vc,p) (14)

CHRISTMAS -- vánoce (m)(pl. only)(Gen. vánoc, Instr. vánoci/vánocemi) (16)

at CHRISTMAS -- o vánocích (16)

CIGARETTE -- cigareta (f) (3)

CIRCLE -- kolo (n) (8)

CIRCUMSTANCE -- okolnost (f) (14)

CITY -- město (n) (4)

CLASS -- přednáška (f) (1); třída (f)(15)

CLASSROOM -- třída (f) (15)

CLEAN -- čistý (10)

to CLEAN -- čistit (II,i)/vyčistit (II,p) (14)

to CLEAN up -- uklízet (III,i)(3)/uklidit (II,p) (5G)

CLEANER'S -- čistírna (f)(Gen.pl. čistíren) (8)

CLEAR -- jasný (2)

CLEVER -- chytrý (8)

to CLIMB -- lézt (Va,i)/vylézt (Va,p) (18)

CLOSE -- blízko + Gen. (8)

CLOSE by -- u + Gen. (8); blízko u + Gen. (8)

to CLOSE -- zavírat (I,i)/zavřít (Vb,p) (16)

CLOSED -- zavřený (8)

CLOSET -- skříň(f)(Nom.pl. skříně) (2)

CLOTHES -- šaty (m.pl.) (8)

dark CLOUD -- mrak (m) (19)

white, light CLOUD -- oblak (f) (19)

COFFEE -- káva (f) (2)

COLD -- (illness) rýma (f) (14)

very COLD -- studený (11)

COLLEAGUE -- kolega (m) (11)

to COLLECT -- sbírat (I,i)/sebrat (Vc,p) (18); posbírat (I,p)(distributive) (18)

COLLEGE of a university -- fakulta (f)(16)

COLLEGE of Arts and Sciences -- filosofická fakulta (f) (16)

COLOR -- barva (f)(Gen.pl. barev) (11); (adj.) barevný (15)

COLORED -- barevný (15)

COLORFUL -- barevný (15)

to COME -- (on foot) přicházet (III,i) (3)/ přijít (Va,irreg.,p)(5); (not on foot) přijíždět (III,i)(19G)/přijet (Va,p)(5) (of events) nastávat (I,i)/nastat (Va,p)(20G) to COME out -- vycházet (III,i)/vyjít (Va, irreg.,p) (15)

to COME to (a place)-- docházet (III, i)/ dojít (Va,irreg.,p) (18)

to COME together -- scházet se (III, i)/ sejít se (Va,irreg.,p) (14); (meet) setkávat se (I,i)/setkat se (I,p) (19)

to COMFORT -- těšit (II,i)/utěšit (II,p) (14G)

COMFORTABLE -- pohodlný (3)

COMMA -- čárka (f)(Gen.pl. čárek) (20)

COMMON -- společný (13)

COMMUNITY -- společnost (f) (13)

COMPANY -- společnost (f) (13)

COMPARATIVE -- poměrný (19)

to COMPARE -- srovnávat (I,i)/srovnat (I,p) (13)

COMPARED with -- (prep.) proti + Dat. (6)

point of the COMPASS -- světová strana (f) (18)

to COMPEL someone (to some action) -- nutit (II,i)/donutit (II,p) někoho (k něčemu/do něčeho or inf.) (14)

to COMPILE -- sestavovat (VII,i)/ sestavit (II,p) (20G)

to COMPLAIN (to someone about someone/ something) -- stěžovat si (VII,i)/ postěžovat si (VII,p)(někomu na někoho/ něco) (15)

COMPLETE -- úplný (9)

COMPLETED -- hotový (13)

COMPLETELY -- docela (adv.) (5); úplně (9)

COMPLEX -- složitý (8)

COMPLICATED -- složitý (8)

to be COMPOSED of -- skládat se (I,i)/ z + Gen. (15)

COMPOSITION -- skladba (f)(Gen.pl. skladeb) (11); úloha (f) (15)

to COMPREHEND -- chápat (IX,i)(11)/ pochopit (II,p) (6)

to CONCEAL -- zakrývat (I,i)/zakrýt (VIII,p) (20G)

CONCEITED -- domýšlivý (5)

CONCERN -- starost (f) (7)

to CONCERN (have to do with) -- běžet o + Acc. (17); jít o + Acc. (17)

CONCRETE -- (adj.) konkrétní (12)

CONDITION -- okolnost (f) (14)

CONDUCT -- jednání (n) (2)

to CONFESS -- přiznávat se (I,i)/přiznat se (I,p) (20G); vyznávat se (I,i)/vyznat se (I,p) (14G); význávat/vyznat (14G)

to CONFIRM -- potvrzovat (VII,i)/potvrdit (II,p) (20G)

to CONFISCATE -- zabavovat (VII,i)/ zabavit (II,p) (20G)

to CONFORM -- přizpůsobovat se (VII,i)/ přizpůsobit se (II,p)(+ Dat.) (14)

to CONFUSE -- plést (Va,i)/splést (Va,p) (14G)

to be CONFUSED -- plést se (Va,i)(5)/ splést se (Va,p)(14G)

CONFUSION -- zmatek/zmatk- (m) (14)

CONGRESS -- sjezd (m) (14)

to be CONNECTED (with) -- souviset (III, i) (s + Instr.) (16)

CONSCIOUS -- vědomý (si) + Gen. (13)

CONSEQUENCE -- následek/následk- (m)(16)

to CONSIDER -- uvažovat (VII,i)/uvážit (II,p) (o + Loc.) (16)

to CONSIDER someone/something (as/to be) someone/something -- považovat (VII,i) (10); pokládat (I,i) někoho/ něco za někoho/něco (16)

CONSIDERABLE -- značný (17)

CONSIDERATION -- úvaha (f) (15)

to CONSIST of -- skládat se (I,i) z + Gen. (14)

to CONSOLE -- těšit (II,i)/utěšit (II,p) (14G)

CONSTANTLY -- pořád (1)

to CONSUME -- sníst (irreg.,p) (19)

CONTACT — styk (m) (13)

to CONTAIN — obsahovat (VII,i)/obsáhnout (VI,p) (20G); (capacity) vejít se (Va, irreg., p) (12)(e.g. This room will contain 15 persons. — Do tohohle pokoje se vejde 15 lidí.)

CONTAINER — nádoba (f) (19)

CONTENT — (adj.) spokojený (6)

CONTEST — zápas (m) (20)

to CONTINUE — pokračovat (VII,i) (19)

to CONTRADICT — odmlouvat (I,i) (20G)

CONTRADICTION — rozpor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (19)

on the CONTRARY — naopak (adv.) (9)

to CONTRIBUTE — přidávat (I,i)/přidat (I,p) (20G)

to be CONVENIENT — hodit se (II,i)(+ Dat.) (17)

CONVENTION — sjezd (m) (14)

CONVERSATION — rozhovor (m)(Loc.sg.-u) (7)

to CONVINCE — přesvědčovat (VII,i)/přesvědčit (II,p)(6)

to COOK — vařit (II,i)(2)/uvařit (II,p) (5); (to be cooked) vařit se (II,i)/ uvařit se (II,p) (14G)

COOL — chladno (short adj.)(long form chladný) (9)

COOLNESS — chladno (n) (9)

to COPE (with) — vědět si rady (s + Instr.) (14)

COPY — číslo (n)(Gen.pl. čísel) (12)

CORDIAL — srdečný (17)

CORNER — roh (m) (4)

CORRECT — správný (12)

  to CORRECT — opravovat (VII,i)/ opravit (II,p) (15)

CORRIDOR — chodba (f)(Gen.pl. chodeb) (7)

to CORROBORATE — potvrzovat (VII,i)/ potvrdit (II,p) (20G)

to COST — stát (IV,i) (4)

COUGH — kašel/kašl- (m) (1)

COUNSEL — rada (f) (14)

to COUNT — počítat (I,i)/spočítat (I,p) (12)

COUNTRY — (geogr.) země (f) (11); (not city) venkov (m)(Gen.sg. -a) (13)

  in the COUNTRY — na venkově (13)

  into the COUNTRY — na venkov (13)

COUNTRYSIDE — venkov (m)(Gen.sg. -a) (13)

COUPLE — pár (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (8)

COURSE — kurs (m) (15)

  in the COURSE of — během + Gen. (10)

  of COURSE — ovšem (3); přirozeně (6)

to COVER — krýt (VIII,i) (10); zakrývat (I,i)/zakrýt (VIII,p) (20G)

  to COVER up — přikrývat (I,i)/přikrýt (VIII,p) (10)

to CRAWL — lézt (Va,i) (18)

to CREATE — tvořit (II,i)/vytvořit (II,p) (16)

to CREEP — lézt (Va,i) (18)

CROWN — koruna (f) (12)

to CRY — křičet (IV,i)/křiknout (VI,p) (7); plakat (IX,i)/zaplakat (IX,p)(15)

CUBIC — krychlový, kubický (12)

CUISINE — kuchyně (f) (12)

CULTURE — kultura (f) (7)

CUP — šálek/šálk- (m) (13)

CURIOUS (about) — zvědavý (na + Acc.) (13)

CURIOUS — (strange) divný (19)

to CURTAIL — omezovat (VII,i)/omezit (II,p) (20G)

CUSTOMARY — běžný (17); obvyklý (14)

CZECH — (person) Čech (m), Češka (f)(10); (adj.) český (13); (language) čeština (f) (15)

  in CZECH — česky (adv.) (2)

CZECHOSLOVAKIA — Československo (n)(1)

D

DAD -- tatínek/tatínk- (m) (3)

DAILY -- denní (2)

DAMAGE -- poškozovat (VII,i)/poškodit (II,p) (20G)

DAMP -- (adj.) vlhký (4); (noun) vlhko (n) (9)

DAMPNESS -- vlhko (n) (9)

DANGER -- nebezpečí (n) (20)

DANGEROUS -- nebezpečný (20)

DARK -- (adj.) tmavý (19); (noun) tma (f) (11)

to grow DARK -- stmívat se (I,i)/setmět se (IV,p) or setmít se (II,p) (17)

DARKNESS -- tma (f) (11)

DATE -- (meeting) schůzka (f)(Gen.pl. schůzek) (12)

DAUGHTER -- dcera (f) (9)

to DAWN -- svítat (I,i) (17)

DAY -- den (m) (irreg.) (10)

DAY and night -- ve dne v noci (17)

in the old DAYS -- kdysi (16)

the DAY after tomorrow -- pozítří (12)

the DAY before yesterday -- předevčírem (12)

the other DAY -- tuhle (7)

DEAD -- mrtvý (13)

DEAF -- hluchý (4)

DEAR -- milý (10); drahý (3)

DECA- (prefix) -- deka- (12G)

to DECEIVE -- mýlit (II,i)/zmýlit (II,p) (14G); podvádět (III,i)/podvést (Va,p) (20G)

DECEMBER -- prosinec/prosinc- (m) (12G)

DECENT -- slušný (12)

DECI- (prefix) -- deci- (12G)

to DECIDE -- rozhodovat se (VII,i)/rozhodnout se (VI,p)(o + Loc.) (14)

DECIDEDLY -- pořádně (14)

DECISIVE -- rozhodný (13)

to DECLARE -- prohlašovat (VII,i)/prohlásit (II,p) (20G)

to DECLINE -- odmítat (I,i)/odmítnout (VI,p) (18); (subside) ubývat (I,i)/ubýt (Va,p) (20G)

to DECREASE -- ubývat (I,i)/ubýt (Va,p) (20G)

DEEP -- hluboký (13)

to DEFEAT -- porážet (III,i)/porazit (II,p) (16)

DEFICIENCY -- nedostatek/nedostatk- (m) (14)

DEFINITE -- rozhodný (13)

without DELAY -- okamžitě (adv.) (14)

to DELIBERATE -- promýšlet (III,i)/promyslit (II,p) (20G); uvažovat (VII,i)/uvážit (II,p) (o + Loc.) (16)

DELICATE -- jemný (11)

to DELIVER -- dodávat (I,i)/dodat (I,p) (15)

to DELIVER a speech -- promlouvat (I,i)/promluvit (II,p) (16)

DELUGE -- záplava (f) (16)

to DEMONSTRATE -- dokazovat (VII,i)/dokázat (IX,p) (16); projevovat (VII,i)/projevit (II,p) (20G); ukazovat (VII,i) (9)

DENSE -- hustý (13)

DENTIST -- zubař (m) (6)

DEPARTURE -- odchod (m) (16)

to DEPEND on -- záležet (IV/III,p) na + Loc. (14); záviset (III,i) na + Loc. (16)

it DEPENDS -- přijde na to (7)

to DESCRIBE -- popisovat (VII,i)/popsat (IX,p) (16)

DESK -- stůl (m) (1)

DESPERATE -- zoufalý (14)

DESTINY — osud (m) (12)

to DETACH — oddělovat (VII,i)/oddělit (II,p) (něco od něčeho) (20G)

DETAILED — podrobný (19)

to DETAIN — zdržovat (VII,i)/zdržet (IV,p) (14G)

to be DETAINED — zdržet se (IV,p)(6)

to DETERMINE — určovat (VII,i)/určit (II,p) (18)

DETESTABLE — protivný (5)

to DEVELOP — (transitive) rozvíjet (III,i)/rozvinout (VI,p)(20G); (intransitive) rozvíjet se/rozvinout se (20G)

to DEVOTE oneself to — věnovat se (VII,i) + Dat. (17)

DIALOG — rozhovor (m) (Loc.sg. -u)(7); dialog (m) (17)

DICTIONARY — slovník (m) (14)

to DIE — umírat (I,i)/umřít (Vb,p)(18)

to DIFFER (from) — lišit se (II,i)(+ od + Gen.) (13)

DIFFERENCE — rozdíl (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(8)

DIFFERENT — (non-identical) jiný (7); (various) různý (5)

to DIFFERENTIATE — odlišovat (VII,i)/ odlišit (II,p)(něco od něčeho) (20G)

DIFFERENTLY — jinak (adv.) (11)

DIFFICULT — těžký (9)

DIFFICULTY — potíž (f)(Gen.sg. and Nom.pl. -e; Instr.pl. -emi) (11)

DILIGENT — pilný (17); vytrvalý (15)

DIMINUTIVE — (adj.) drobný (19)

DINING-ROOM — jídelna (f)(Gen.pl. jídelen) (20)

to DIRECT — řídit (II,i)(3); vodit (II, i)/vést (Va,p) (9)

DIRECTION — strana (f) (7); směr (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (16)

DIRECTLY — přímo (adv.) (11)

DIRTY — špinavý (10)

to get DIRTY — mazat se (IX,i)/umazat se (IX,p) (14G)

DISADVANTAGE — nevýhoda (f) (14)

to DISAPPEAR — mizet (III,i)/zmizet (III,p) (7)

DISCIPLE — žák (m) (10)

to DISCLOSE — objevovat (VII,i)/objevit (II,p)(14G)

to DISCONNECT — vypínat (I,i)/vypnout (Vb,p) (20G)

to DISCOVER — objevovat (VII,i)/objevit (II,p) (14G)

DISH — (vessel) mísa (f)(Gen.pl. mis/mís) (16); (food) jídlo (n)(Gen.pl. jídel)(9)

to DISPLAY — projevovat (VII,i)/projevit (II,p) (20G); ukazovat (VII,i) (9)

to DISPOSE of — zbavovat se (VII,i)/ zbavit se (II,p)(+ Gen.) (15)

to DISREGARD — přehlížet (III,i)/přehlédnout (VI,p) (20G)

to DISSUADE — rozmlouvat (I,i)/rozmluvit (II,p) (20G)

DISTANCE — dálka (f) (4)

DISTANT — daleký (13)

DISTANT (from) — vzdálený (od + Gen.) (17)

to DISTINGUISH — lišit (II,i)/rozlišit (II,p) (14G)

to DISTRIBUTE — rozdávat (I,i)/rozdat (I,p) (20G)

to DIVIDE — rozdělovat (VII,i)/rozdělit (II,p) (14)

DIVIDED — děleno (short neut. adj.)(12G)

DIVISION — dělení (n) (12G)

to DO — dělat (I,i)(1)/udělat (I,p)(5G); konat (I,i)/vykonat (I,p)(14)

DOCTOR — doktor (m) (2); lékař (m)(10)

DOG — pes/ps- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (8)

DOLLAR — dolar (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (6)

to DOMINATE — převládat (I,i)/převládnout (VI,p) (20G)

to DONATE — věnovat (VII,i)(někomu něco) (17)

DOOR -- dveře (f.pl.)(Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -mi; Loc.pl. -ích) (8)

  front DOOR -- vchod (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (18)

DOT -- bod (m) (19)

to DOUBT -- pochybovat (VII,i)/zapochybovat (VII,p) o + Loc. (12)

DOWN -- (location) dole (2); (direction) dolů (9)

DOWNRIGHT -- přímo (adv.) (11)

DOWNSTAIRS -- (location) dole (adv.)(2); (direction) dolů (adv.) (9)

DRAMA -- drama (n)(special decl.) (15)

to DRAW -- tahat (I,i, indet.)/táhnout (VI,i, det.) (19)

  to DRAW (someone's) attention to -- upozorňovat (VII,i)/upozornit (II,p) (někoho) na něco (14)

DRAWBACK -- nevýhoda (f) (14)

DRAWER -- zásuvka (f) (6)

DREAM -- sen/sn- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (15)

DRESS -- oblek (m) (8)

  to DRESS -- oblékat se (I,i) (1)/ obléknout se (VI,p)(7); (transitive) oblékat (I,i)/obléknout (VI,p) (14G)

to DRINK -- pít (VIII,i)/vypít (VIII,p) (10)

to DRIVE -- (operate) řídit (II,i)(3); (chase) honit (II,i, indet.)/ hnát (Vc,i, det.) (19)

  to DRIVE a car -- řídit auto (3)

to DRIZZLE -- poprchávat (I,i) (17)

to DROP (doing) something -- nechávat (I,i)/ nechat (I,p) + Gen. (17)

  to DROP in on -- chodit (II,i, indet.)/ jít (Va, irreg., i, det.) se podívat na + Acc. (15)

DROUGHT -- sucho (n) (9)

DRUGSTORE -- drogerie (f) (14)

DRY -- suchý (9)

  to DRY -- utírat (I,i)/utřít (Vb,p)(18)

DRY CLEANER'S -- čistírna (f)(Gen.pl. čistíren) (8)

DRYNESS -- sucho (n) (9)

DURING -- během + Gen. (10)

DUST -- prach (m) (17)

DUTY -- povinnost (f) (15)

E

EACH -- každý (6)

  EACH other -- navzájem (adv.) (14); se or si (14G)

EARLY -- brzo (1)

  EARLY in the morning -- brzo ráno (1)

EARTH -- země (f) (11)

EAST -- východ (m) (18)

EASY -- lehký (3); snadný (8)

  it's EASY for someone to say -- komu se to říká (11)

to EAT -- jíst (IV, irreg., i) (4)

  to EAT one's fill (of) -- najíst se (irreg., p) (+ Gen.) (14)

  to EAT up -- sníst (irreg., p) (19)

ECOLOGICAL -- ekologický (14)

ECOLOGY -- ekologie (f) (14)

to ECONOMIZE -- šetřit (II,i)(něčím)(15)

EDGE -- okraj (m) (20)

EDITION -- vydání (n) (14)

EFFECTIVE -- účinný (11)

to make an EFFORT -- snažit se (II,i)(6); pokoušet se (III,i)/pokusit se (II,p) (o něco) (18)

EGG -- vejce (n)(Gen.pl. vajec) (19)

  scrambled EGGS -- míchaná vejce (19)

EITHER...OR -- buď...nebo (8)

EIGHT -- osm (12G)

EIGHTEEN -- osmnáct (12G)

EIGHTEENTH -- osmnáctý (12G)

EIGHTH -- osmý (12G)

one-EIGHTH -- osmina (12G)

EIGHTIETH -- osmdesátý (12G)

EIGHTY -- osmdesát (12G)

ELECTRIC -- elektrický (12)

ELEVATOR -- výtah (m) (18)

ELEVEN -- jedenáct (12G)

ELEVENTH -- jedenáctý (12G)

one-ELEVENTH -- jedenáctina (12G)

ELSEWHERE -- (location) jinde (adv.) (3); (direction) jinam (adv.) (7)

to EMBRACE -- obsahovat (VII,i)/obsáhnout (VI,p) (20G)

to EMIT -- vydávat (I,i)/vydat (I,p) (20G)

to EMPHASIZE -- zdůrazňovat (VII,i)/zdůraznit (II,p) (12)

to EMPLOY -- používat (I,i)/použít (VIII,p) (12)

EMPTY -- prázdný (5)

to ENABLE -- umožňovat (VII,i)/umožnit (II,p) (20G)

to ENCOMPASS -- obsahovat (VII,i)/obsáhnout (VI,p) (20G)

END -- konec/konc- (m) (9); (purpose) účel (m) (20)

to END -- končit (II,i)/skončit (II,p)(7); (intransitive) končit se (II,i)/skončit se (II,p) (14G)

to ENDEAVOR -- snažit se (II,i) (6)

to ENDURE -- trpět se (IV,i)/strpět se (IV,p) (14G)

ENDURING -- trvalý (16)

ENGAGEMENT -- schůzka (f)(Gen.pl. schůzek) (12)

ENGINE -- motor (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (19)

ENGLISH -- (language) angličtina (f) (15); (adj.) anglický (2)

in ENGLISH -- anglický (2)

to ENJOY oneself -- bavit se (II,i)(2)/pobavit se (II,p) (5G)

ENOUGH -- dost (adv.)(quant.) (5)

to be ENOUGH -- stačit (II,i)/postačit (II,p) or vystačit (II,p) (14)

to ENTER -- vcházet (III,i)/vejít (Va, irreg., p) (12); vstupovat (VII,i)/vstoupit (II,p) (20G)

ENTHUSIASTIC (about) -- nadšený (+ Instr.) (17)

ENTIRE -- celý (4); úplný (9)

ENTIRELY -- úplně (9)

ENTRANCE -- vchod (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (18)

ENTRANCE examination -- přijímací zkouška (f) (16)

to ENTWINE -- plést (Va,i)/splést (Va,p) (14G)

ENVIRONMENT -- okolí (n) (19)

to EQUAL -- rovnat se (I,i) (12G)

ERROR -- chyba (f) (12); omyl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (15)

ESPECIALLY -- zvlášt' (4)

ESPECIALLY since -- tím spíš, že (14)

ESSAY -- úvaha (f) (15)

to ESTABLISH -- určovat (VII,i)/určit (II,p) (18)

ETC. -- a tak dále (abbreviated atd.)(7)

to EVALUATE -- oceňovat (VII,i)/ocenit (II,p) (20G)

EVEN -- (with nouns and pronouns) i (1); (adv.) dokonce (2); třeba (15); (adj.) rovný (18)

not EVEN -- ani (1)

EVENING -- večer (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (5)

this EVENING -- dnes večer (6)

EVENT -- událost (f) (14)

EVERY -- každý (6)

EVERYONE -- každý (adj.) (6)

EVERYWHERE -- všude (4)

EVIDENT -- zřejmý (4)

EVIL -- (adj.) zlý (6)

EXACT -- přesný (8)

EXACTLY -- přesně (8); totiž (4)

to EXAGGERATE -- nadnášet (III,i)/nadnést (Va,p) (19G); přehánět (III,i)(5)

EXAMINATION -- zkouška (f)(Gen.pl. zkoušek) (9)

entrance EXAMINATION -- přijímací zkouška (f) (16)

to EXAMINE -- prohlížet si (III,i)/prohlédnout si (VI,p) (14)

EXAMPLE -- příklad (m) (15)

for EXAMPLE -- například (abbreviated např.) (8)

EXCELLENT -- výborný (9)

EXCEPT (for) -- až na + Acc. (14); kromě + Gen. (9); mimo + Acc. (17)

to EXCUSE -- promíjet (III,i)/prominout (VI,p) + Dat. (7)

to EXCUSE oneself -- omlouvat se (I,i)/ omluvit se (II,p) (18)

to EXCUSE someone for something -- promíjet někomu něco (7)

EXERCISE -- cvičení (n) (3); (physical) pohyb (m)(loc.sg. -u) (9); (written) úloha (f) (15)

to EXERCISE -- (transitive) cvičit (II,i)/vycvičit (II,p) (18)

EXIT -- východ (m) (18)

to EXPAND -- rozšiřovat (VII,i)/rozšířit (II,p) (20G)

to EXPECT -- očekávat (I,i) (16)

EXPENSIVE -- drahý (3)

to EXPERIENCE -- prožívat (I,i)/prožít (VIII,p) (20G)

to EXPLAIN -- vysvětlovat (VII,i)(9G)/ vysvětlit (II,p) (7)

EXPRESSION -- výraz (m) (20)

EXQUISITE -- skvělý (13)

EXTREME -- prudký (14)

EYE -- oko (n) (13)

F

FABLE -- pohádka (f)(Gen.pl. pohádek) (18)

FACE -- obličej (m) (14); tvář (f)(Nom. pl. tváře) (14)

to make a FACE -- tvářit se (II,i)/ zatvářit se (II,p) (+ adv.) (14)

FACT -- fakt (m) (14)

in FACT -- vlastně (adv.) (6)

FAIR -- (just) slušný (12)

FAIRLY -- dost (adv.) (5)

FAIRY TALE -- pohádka (f)(Gen.pl. pohádek) (18)

FALL -- (season) podzim (m) (4)

to FALL -- padat (I,i)/padnout (VI,p)(11)

to FALL down -- upadnout (VI,p) (11)

to FALL (down from/off of) -- spadnout (VI,p) (11)

to FALL out -- vypadávat (I,i)/vypadnout (VI,p) (8)

to be FAMILIAR with -- vyznat se (I,p) (perfective only) (v + Loc.) (13)

FAMILY -- rodina (f) (10)

FAR -- (adj.) daleký (13)

as FAR as ... is concerned -- pokud jde o + Acc. (18)

FASHION -- (manner) způsob (m) (12); (trend) móda (f) (14)

FAST -- rychlý (1)

to FASTEN -- přibíjet (III,i)/přibít (VIII,p) (10)

FAT -- tlustý (7)

to get FAT -- tloustnout (VI,i)/ ztloustnout (VI,p) (7)

FATE -- osud (m) (12)

FATHER -- otec/otc- (m) (1); tatínek/ tatínk- (m) (3)

to FATTEN -- tloustnout (VI,i)/ztloustnout (VI,p) (7)

FAULT -- vina (f) (14)

in FAVOR of -- pro + Acc. (6)

FAVORABLE -- příznivý (16)

FAVORITE -- oblíbený (17)

FEAR -- strach (m) (1)

to FEEL -- cítit (II,i); cítit se (II,i) (2)

to FEEL like (having) -- mít chuť na + Acc. (3)

to FEEL like laughing -- být do smíchu (+ Dat.) (e.g. I feel like laughing. -- Je mi do smíchu.) (17)

FEEL free -- samozřejmě (adv.) (15)

FEELING -- pocit (m) (19)

FENCE -- plot (m) (20)

FESTIVE -- slavnostní (14)

to run and FETCH something -- skočit někam pro něco (18)

FEW -- (not enough) málo (adv. and quant.) (6)

a FEW -- několik (quant.) (8); několik málo (quant.) (11); pár (m)(Loc.sg.-u) (8)

FIELD -- pole (n) (13)

FIFTEEN -- patnáct (12G)

FIFTEENTH -- patnáctý (12G)

FIFTH -- pátý (12G)

one-FIFTH -- pětina (f) (12G)

FIFTIETH -- padesátý (12G)

FIFTY -- padesát (12G)

FIGHT -- zápas (m) (20)

to FIGHT (with) -- bít se (VIII,i) (s + Instr.) (14G)

to FIGURE up -- počítat (I,i)/spočítat (I,p) (12)

to FILL -- naplňovat (VII,i)/naplnit (II,p) (19)

to FILL out -- vyplňovat (VII,i)/ vyplnit (II,p) (20G)

to FILL up a partly filled container -- dolévat (I,i)/dolít (VIII,p) (20G)

FILM -- film (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13)

FILTHY -- špinavý (10)

FINAL -- konečný (5)

to FIND -- nacházet (III,i)/najít (Va,p) (6)

to FIND out -- zjišťovat (VII,i)/ zjistit (II,p) (12)

FINE -- (adj.) hezký, pěkný (4); (delicate) jemný (11); (adv.) dobře (11)

FINGER -- prst (m) (19)

to FINISH -- končit (II,i)/skončit (II,p) (7)

to FINISH ...-ing -- prefix do- + verb (See 20G)

FINISHED -- hotový (13)

to be on FIRE -- hořet (IV,i) (17)

FIRM -- (adj.) pevný (18)

FIRST -- (adj.) první (2); (adv.) nejdřív (5); dřív(e) (12)

to FIT (into something) -- vejít se (Va, p) (do + Gen.) (12)

FITTING -- vhodný (10)

FIVE -- pět (12G)

to FIX -- zařizovat (VII,i)/zařídit (II, p) (18)

to FLASH (of lightning) -- blýskat se (I,i)/zablýsknout se (VI,p) (17)

to FLEE -- utíkat (I,i)/utéci (Va,p)(18)

FLESH -- maso (n) (18)

FLOOD -- záplava (f) (16)

FLOOR -- podlaha (f) (14); zem (f), země (f) (11); (story) poschodí (n) (17)

FLOWER -- květina (f) (4)

to FLY -- létat (I,i, indet.)/letět (IV,i, det.) (9)

FOG -- mlha (f) (19)

the FOLLOWING -- (in sequence) další (adj.) (3); (in time) příští (adj.) (7)

to be FOND of -- milovat (VII,i) (10)

FONDNESS -- láska (f)(Gen.pl. lásek)(18)

FOOD -- jídlo (n) (8)

FOOT -- noha (f)(Gen.pl. nohou; Instr.pl. nohama; Loc.pl. nohou/nohách) (10)

on FOOT -- pěšky (adv.) (17)

FOR -- na + Acc. (1); pro + Acc. (6); za + Acc. (7); Dative Case (6G)

FOR instance -- třeba (adv.) (15)

FOR sure -- určitě (5)

FOR the most part -- většinou (adv.) (13)

FOR the sake of -- kvůli + Dat. (12)

FOR the time being -- zatím (adv.) (19)

FORCE -- síla (f)(Instr.sg. silou; Gen.pl. sil; Dat.pl. silám; Instr.pl. silami; Loc.pl. silách) (10)

to FORCE someone (to some action) -- nutit (II,i)/donutit (II,p) někoho (k něčemu/do něčeho or inf.) (14)

FOREHEAD -- čelo (n) (18)

FOREIGN -- cizí (3)

FOREIGNER -- cizinec/cizinc- (m) (14)

FORENOON -- dopoledne (n) (10)

to FORESEE -- předvídat (I,i) (20G)

FOREST -- les (m) (6)

to FORETELL -- předpovídat (I,i)/předpovědět (irreg.,p) (20G)

to FORGET -- zapomínat (I,i)/zapomenout (VI,p) (8)

to FORGIVE -- promíjet (III,i)/prominout (VI,p) (7); odpouštět (III,i)/odpustit (II,p) (někomu něco) (20G)

to FORGIVE someone for something -- promíjet/prominout někomu něco (7)

FORM -- forma (f) (16)

to FORM -- tvořit (II,i)/utvořit (II,p) (16)

FORMAL -- formální (13)

FORMER (adj) -- dávný (13)

FORTIETH -- čtyřicátý (12G)

FORTUNATELY -- naštěstí (adv.) (19)

FORTY -- čtyřicet (12G)

to look FORWARD to -- těšit se (II,i) na + Acc. (14G)

FOUR -- čtyři (2)

FOURTEEN -- čtrnáct (12G)

FOURTH -- čtvrtý (12G)

one-FOURTH -- čtvrtina (f)(12G)

FRAGRANT -- voňavý (4)

FRANK -- upřímný (16)

FRANKFURTER -- párek/párk- (m) (2)

FRANKNESS -- upřímnost (f) (7)

FREE -- volný (11)

to be FREE (not busy) -- mít volno (6)

feel FREE -- samozřejmě (adv.) (15)

to FREEZE -- mrznout (VI,i)/zmrznout (VI,p) (9)

FRESH -- čerstvý (3)

FRIDAY -- pátek/pátk- (m)(Gen.sg. -a)(12G)

FRIEND -- přítel (m)(Gen.-Acc.sg. -e; pl. stem přátel-) (4)

FRIENDLY -- přátelský (13)

FRIGID -- studený (11)

FROM -- od + Gen., z + Gen. (8); s + Gen. (9)

FROM here -- odtud (6)

FROM there -- odtud (6)

FROM where? -- odkud? (8)

FRONT -- čelo (n) (18)

FRONT door -- vchod (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(18)

in FRONT -- napřed (adv.) (12); (location) vpředu (adv.) (14)

in FRONT of -- před + Instr. or Acc. (10)

FRONTIER -- hranice (f)(Gen.pl. hranic) (20)

FROST -- mráz/mraz- (m)(used in pl. also) (17)

FRUIT -- ovoce (n)(sg. only) (16)

to FULFILL -- splňovat (VII,i)/splnit (II,p) (20G)

FULL (of) -- plný (+ Gen.) (8)

FUN -- legrace (f) (11)

to make FUN of -- dělat si (I,i)/udělat si (I,p) legraci z + Gen. (14)

FUNCTION -- funkce (f) (14)

to FUNCTION -- fungovat (VII,i) (11)

FUNNY -- (strange) divný (19)

FURLOUGH -- dovolená (f)(decl. as adj.) (16)

FURNITURE -- nábytek/nábytk- (m) (16)

FURTHER -- (adj.) další (3)

FUTILE -- marný (10)

FUTURE -- příští (adj.) (7)

G

to GAIN -- vyhrávat (I,i)/vyhrát (VIII, p) (20G)

to GAIN weight -- tloustnout (VI,i)/ ztloustnout (VI,p) (7)

GALA -- slavnostní (14)

to GAMBLE away -- prohrávat (I,i)/ prohrát (VII,p) (20G)

GAME -- hra (f)(Gen.pl. her) (7)

GARAGE -- garáž (f) (19)

GARDEN -- zahrada (f) (18)

GAS -- plyn (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (19)

GATE -- brána (f)(Gen.pl. bran) (19)

to GATHER -- sbírat (I,i)/sebrat (Vc,p) (18); trhat (I,i) (18)

GENTLE -- mírný (14)

GENTLEMAN -- pán (m) (6)

GENUINE -- opravdový (10); pravý (6)

GERMAN -- Němec/Němc- (m); Němka (f) (10)

to GET -- dostávat (I,i)(2)/dostat (Va,p) (7)

to GET a thing ready -- připravovat (VII,i)/připravit (II,p) (16)

to GET into -- dostávat se (I,i)/ dostat se (Va,p)

to GET out -- vystupovat (VII,i)/ vystoupit (II,p) (16)

to GET rid of -- zbavovat se (VII,i)/ zbavit se (II,p) (+ Gen.) (15)

to GET stuck/stranded -- zůstat (Va,p) viset (17)

to GET up -- vstávat (I,i)/vstát (Va, irreg., p) (7)

to be GETTING on -- dařit se (II,i)/ podařit se (II,p)(+ Dat. of person) (e.g. He is getting on well. -- Daří se mu dobře.) (17)

GIFT -- dar (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (17)

GIRL -- dívka (f) (4); děvče (n)(decl. like zvíře, Lesson 13) (15)

to GIVE -- dávat (I,i)(1)/ dát (I,p)(5); (provide) poskytovat (VII,i)/poskytnout (VI,p) (16)

to GIVE an account of -- popisovat (VII,i)/popsat (IX,p) (16); vypravovat (VII,i) (9)

to GIVE a call -- zavolat (I,p) (5)

to GIVE back -- vracet (III,i)/vrátit (II,p) (6)

to GIVE pain -- bolet (IV,i)/zabolet (IV,p) (18)

to GIVE up -- vzdávat se (I,i)/vzdát se (I,p) (něčeho) (20G)

GLAD -- rád/ráda (4)

GLASS -- sklenice (f) (2)

GLASSES -- brejle (f)(pl. only) (7)

GLOBE -- země (f) (11)

GLOVE -- rukavice (f)(Gen.pl. rukavic) (17)

to GO -- (on foot) chodit (II,i,indet.) (9)/jít (Va,irreg.,i, det.) (5); (not on foot) jezdit (II,i, indet.) (9)/ jet (Va,i, det.) (5)

GO ahead -- samozřejmě (15)

to GO after something -- jít/jet pro + Acc. (6)

to GO and fetch -- jít/jet pro + Acc. (6)

to GO away -- (on foot) odcházet (II,i)/odejít (Va,irreg.,p)(5); (not on foot) odjet (Va,p) (5)

to GO by -- míjet (III,i)/minout (VI,p) (7)

to GO in -- vcházet (III,i)/vejít (Va,irreg.,p) (12)

to GO on (continue) -- pokračovat (VII,i) (19)

to GO out -- vycházet (III,i)/vyjít (Va,irreg.,p) (15)

to GO out (socially) -- chodit do společnosti (15)

to GO to -- jít/jet na + Acc. (6)

to GO to (a place) -- docházet (III, i)/ dojít (Va,p) (18)

to be GOING on -- dít se (VIII,i)(10)

it GOES without saying -- samozřejmě (15) (15)

GONE -- pryč (adv.) (3)

to be GONE -- mizet (III,i)/zmizet (III,p) (7)

GOOD -- dobrý (3); hodný (18)

to be GOOD at -- vyznat se (I,p) v + Loc. (13)

to be GOOD for someone -- dělat někomu dobře (9)

GOODBYE -- nazdar (15)

to GRAB -- chytat (I,i)/chytit (II,p) (18)

GRADE -- známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek)(16)

GRADUAL -- postupný (18)

GRAM -- gram (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

GRANDFATHER -- dědeček/dědečk- (m)(15)

GRANDMOTHER -- babička (f)(Gen.pl. babiček) (16)

to GRASP -- (figurative) chápat (IX,i) (11)/pochopit (II,p) (6)

GRASS -- tráva (f)(Gen.pl. trav) (14)

GRATEFUL -- vděčný (7)

to GREASE -- mazat (IX,i)/namazat (IX,p) (11)

GREAT -- velký (3)

a GREAT deal -- spoustu (OČ)(quant.) (12)

GREATER part -- většina (f) (18)

GREEN -- zelený (4)

to turn/become GREEN -- zelenat (I,i)/ zezelenat (I,p) (14)

to be/appear GREEN -- zelenat se (I,i)/ zazelenat se (I,p) (14)

to GREET -- zdravit (II,i)/pozdravit (II,p) (7)

GREETING -- pozdrav (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (6)

GROUND -- zem (f), země (f) (11)

GROUP -- skupina (f) (14)

to GROW -- přibývat (I,i)/přibýt (Va,p) (20G); růst (Va,i)/vyrůst (Va,p), vzrůst (Va,p) (15)

to GROW fat -- tloustnout (VI,i)/ ztloustnout (VI,p) (7)

to GROW over/around -- obrůstat (I,i)/ obrůst (Va,p) (20G)

to GROW slim -- hubnout (VI,i)/zhubnout (VI,p) (7)

GROWN-UP -- dospělý (adj. and noun)(15)

to GRUDGE -- litovat (VII,i) + Gen. (17)

to GUARD -- hlídat (I,i)/ohlídat (I,p) (18)

GUEST -- host (m) (13)

to GUIDE -- vodit (II,i, indet.)/vést (Va,i, det.) (9)

H

HABIT -- zvyk (m) (18)

HABITUAL -- obvyklý (14)

HAIR -- vlas (m)(usually pl.) (15)

HALF -- půl (quant.) (8); polovina (f) (12G)

HALL -- chodba (f)(Gen.pl. chodeb)(7)

to HAMPER -- vadit (II,i)(+ Dat. of person) (9)

HAND -- ruka (f)(Nom.-Acc.pl. ruce; Gen.-Loc. pl. rukou; Instr.pl. rukama) (4)

to HAND in/over -- podávat (I,i)/podat (I,p) (20G)

to HAND out -- rozdávat (I,i)/rozdat (I,p) (20G)

HANDKERCHIEF -- kapesník (m) (1)

to HANDLE -- vědět si rady s + Instr. (14)

HANDSOME -- hezký (4)

HANDY -- praktický (13)

to HANG -- viset (IV,i) (4)

to HAPPEN -- dít se (VIII,i)/stát se (Va,p)(10); stávat se (I,i)/stát se (Va,p) (10)

HAPPENING -- událost (f) (14)

HAPPINESS -- štěstí (n) (11)

HAPPY -- rád (4); št'astný (9)

HARD -- tvrdý (comp. tvrdší) (18); (difficult) těžký (9), namáhavý (13)

HARDLY -- dohromady (adv.)(with negation) (14); sotva (adv.) (10)

HARD-WORKING -- pilný (17)

HAT -- klobouk (m) (2)

HATE -- nenávist (f) (18)

HATRED -- nenávist (f) (18)

to HAVE -- mít (I, irreg., i) (1)

to HAVE a good time -- bavit se (II, i) (2)/pobavit se (II,p) (5G)

to HAVE a rest -- odpočívat (I,i)/odpočinout si (VI,p) (13)

to HAVE doubts (about) -- pochybovat (VII,i)/zapochybovat (VII,p)(o + Loc.) (12)

to HAVE lunch -- obědvat (I,i)(1)/poobědvat (I,p) (5G)

to HAVE on -- mít na sobě (14)

to HAVE someone do something -- at' (particle) + 3rd person indicative (11)

to HAVE to -- muset (III,i)/musit (II,i) (3)

HEAD -- hlava (f)(5); (leader) vedoucí (m/f) (11)

at the HEAD of something -- v čele něčeho (18)

HEALTH -- zdraví (n) (10)

HEALTHFUL, HEALTHY -- zdravý (3)

to HEAR -- slyšet (IV,i) (4)/uslyšet (IV,p) (5G)

to HEAR of -- dovídat se (I,i)/dovědět se (irreg.,p) (o + Loc.) (14)

HEARER -- posluchač (m) (15)

HEART -- srdce (n) (6)

HEARTY -- srdečný (17)

HEAT -- horko (n) (4); teplo (n) (9)

HEATING -- topení (n) (11)

HEAVY -- těžký (9)

HECTARE -- hektar (m) (12G)

HECTO- (prefix) -- hekt(o)- (12G)

HEIGHT -- výška (f)(Gen.pl. výšek) (12)

to be HELD up -- (detained) zdržet se (IV,p) (6)

HELLER -- haléř (m) (12)

HELLO -- nazdar (15)

HELP -- pomoc (f) (16)

to HELP -- pomáhat (I,i)/pomoci (Va, irreg.,p) (6)

to HELP oneself -- brát si (Vc,i)/vzít si (Vb,p) (14G)

HER, HERS -- její; svůj/svá/své, etc. (8)

HERE -- (location) tady (adv.) (1); tu (enclitic) (15); zde (adv.)(SČ) (16); (direction) sem (adv.) (5)

from HERE -- odtud (6)

HERO -- hrdina (m) (11)

HESITANT -- rozpačitý (5)

to be/feel HESITANT -- být na rozpacích (10) to HESITATE -- zarážet se (II,i)/zarazit se (II,p) (15)

with HESITATION -- rozpačitě (5)

to HIDE -- (transitive) skrývat (I,i)/skrýt (VIII,p) (20G); (intransitive) skrývat se/skrýt se (20G)

HIGH -- vysoký (4)

HIGHWAY -- silnice (f)(Gen.pl. silnic) (17)

HILL -- kopec/kopc- (m) (4)

to HINT -- naznačovat (VII,i)/naznačit (II,p) (20G)

HIS -- jeho; svůj/svá/své, etc. (8)

HITHERTO -- dosud (adv.) (12)

HOBBY -- záliba (f) (10)

to HOLD -- držet (IV,i)(4)

to HOLD (capacity) -- vejít se (Va,p) (e.g. This room holds 15 persons. -- Do tohohle pokoje se vejde 15 lidí.) (12)

to HOLD on (to something/someone) -- držet se (IV,i)/podržet se (IV,p) (+ Gen.) (14)

to HOLD tight -- tisknout (VI,i)(7)

HOLIDAY -- svátek/svátk- (m) (4)

HOLIDAYS -- prázdniny (f)(pl. only)(18)

HOLY -- svatý (13)

HOME -- (direction) domů (adv.) (3)

at HOME -- doma (1)

HOMEWARD -- domů (3)

HOMEWORK -- domácí úkol (m) (15)

HONEST -- upřímný (16)

HOPE -- naděje (f) (12)

HORSE -- kůň/koň- (m)(irreg.) (16)

HOSPITAL -- nemocnice (f) (17)

HOT -- horký (4)

it's HOT -- je horko (4)

HOUR -- hodina (f) (5)

HOUSE -- dům/dom- (m) (3)

HOW -- jak (4)

HOW many -- kolik (quant.) (8)

HOW much -- kolik (quant.) (8)

HOWEVER -- ale (1); jenže (17); však (enclitic)(SČ)(14)

HUMAN being -- člověk (m)(sg. only) (4)

HUMAN beings -- lidé (pl. only)(Gen. lidí; Dat. lidem; Instr. lidmi; Loc. lidech) (4)

HUMID -- vlhko (short adj)(long form vlhký) (9)

HUNDRED -- sto (12G)

HUNDREDTH -- stý (12G)

HUNGER -- hlad (m) (1)

to be HUNGRY -- mít hlad (1)

to HURRY -- pospíchat (I,i)(1)/pospíšit (II,p) (13)

to HURRY to get to -- pospíchat/pospíšit na + Acc. (1)

to HURT -- bolet (IV,i)/zabolet (IV,p) (18)

HUSBAND -- muž (m) (5)

I

ICE -- led (m) (17)

ICY, ICE-COLD -- studený (11)

IDEA -- nápad (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (8); myšlenka (f)(Gen.pl. myšlenek) (13)

to have no IDEA -- nemít zdání (4)

IDENTICAL -- stejný (10)

IF -- jestli (7); jestliže (15); když (15G); -li (particle)(e.g. If you like -- chceš-li) (15G)

IF necessary -- třeba (adv.) (15)

IF only -- kéž (15)

IF possible -- pokud možno (18)

to IGNITE -- zapalovat (VII,i)/zapálit (II,p) (20G)

ILL -- nemocný (3)

ILLNESS -- nemoc (f) (10)

to ILLUMINATE -- rozsvěcet (III,i)/rozsvítit (II,p)(20G)

ILLUSTRATION -- obrázek/obrázk- (m) (7)

to IMAGINE --představovat si (VII,i)/představit si (II,p) (15)

to IMITATE -- napodobovat (VII,i)/napodobit (II,p) (20G)

IMMEDIATE -- okamžitý (14)

IMMEDIATELY -- hned (adv.) (5); okamžitě (14)

to IMPLANT -- vsazovat (VII,i)/vsadit (II,p) (20G)

to IMPLY -- naznačovat (VII,i)/naznačit (II,p) (20G)

IMPORT -- smysl (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (7)

IMPORTANCE -- význam (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(18)

IMPORTANT -- důležitý (7); vážný (10)

it is IMPOSSIBLE -- nelze (adv.) (17)

IMPOVERISHED -- chudý (13)

IMPRESSION -- dojem/dojm- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (8)

IN -- (location) na + Loc., v + Loc. (4); (time: both "within a period of time" and "after the lapse of a period of time") za + Acc. (7)

IN return -- za to (adv.) (6)

IN spite of -- přes + Acc. (9)

IN the end -- nakonec (adv.) (8)

IN the long run -- konec konců (adv.) (17)

IN the meantime -- zatím (adv.) (19)

IN the old days -- kdysi (adv.) (16)

to be IN one's way -- být někomu v cestě (14)

INCIDENTALLY -- mimochodem (adv.) (10)

INCLUDING -- (prep.) včetně + Gen. (18)

to INCREASE -- přibývat (I,i)/přibýt (Va,p) (20G) růst (Va,i)/vzrůst (Va,p) (15)

INCREASINGLY ... -- čím dál... (with comp.) (13)

to be INDEBTED to -- dlužit (II,i) (6)

INDEED -- opravdu (adv.) (2)

INDIVIDUAL -- (adj.) jednotlivý (16)

INDUSTRIAL -- průmyslový (19)

INDUSTRY -- průmysl (m) (19)

INFLUENCE -- vliv (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13)

to INFLUENCE -- zasahovat (VII,i)/zasáhnout (VI,p) (16)

to INFORM -- oznamovat (VII,i)/oznámit (II,p) (13)

to INFORM someone of something -- upozorňovat (VII,i)/upozornit (II,p) někoho na něco (14)

INFORMATION -- informace (f)(either sg. or pl.) (14)

piece of INFORMATION -- informace (f) (either sg. or pl.) (14)

to INJURE -- poškozovat (VII,i)/poškodit (II,p) (20G)

INQUISITIVE (about) -- zvědavý (na + Acc.) (13)

INSIDE -- uvnitř (adv.) (14)

to INSIST on -- trvat (I,i) na + Loc. (18)

to INSPECT -- prohlížet si (III,i)/prohlédnout si (VI,p) (14)

for INSTANCE -- třeba (adv.) (15)

INSTANT -- okamžik (m) (13)

INSTANTANEOUS -- okamžitý (14)

to INSULT -- urážet (III,i)/urazit (II,p) (20G)

INTELLIGENT -- inteligentní (5)

to INTEND -- chystat se (I,i) (5)

INTENSE -- prudký (14)

INTENTION -- úmysl (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (18)

INTEREST -- zájem/zájm- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (10)

to INTEREST -- zajímat (I,i) (5)

to be INTERESTED in -- mít zájem o + Acc. (10); zajímat se (I,i) o + Acc. (14)

INTERESTING -- zajímavý (5)

to INTERFERE in -- zasahovat (VII,i)/zasáhnout (VI,p) do + Gen. (16)

INTERMISSION -- přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek) (15)

to INTERRUPT -- přerušovat (VII,i)/přerušit (II,p) (15)

INTERVAL -- přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek) (15)

INTO -- do + Gen. (8)

to get INTO -- dostávat se (I,i)/dostat se (Va,p) do + Gen. (14G)

INTRINSIC -- vlastní (14)

to INVITE -- zvát (Vc,i)/pozvat (Vc,p) (13)

INVOLUNTARY -- bezděčný (4)

to get INVOLVED in -- dostávat se (I,i)/dostat se (Va,p) do + Gen. (14G)

IRRELEVANT -- vedlejší (20)

to IRRITATE -- zlobit (II,i)/rozzlobit (II,i) (14G)

ITEM -- bod (m) (19)

J

JACKET -- kabát (m) (13)

JAM -- džem (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (19)

JANUARY -- leden/ledn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

JOINT --(adj.) společný (13)

JOKE -- anekdota (f) (12)

JOY -- radost (f) (2)

JUDGING by -- soudě podle + Gen. (adv.) (16)

JULY -- červenec/červenc- (m) (12G)

to JUMP -- skákat (IX/I,i) skočit (II,p) (18)

JUNE -- červen/červn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

JUST -- (adv.) přímo (11); totiž (4); (this very moment) právě (6)

JUST now -- právě (adv.) (6)

it's JUST that -- totiž (adv.) (4)

K

to KEEP -- držet (IV,i)(4)/podržet (IV,p) (5G)

KEY -- klíč (m) (8)

to KILL -- zabíjet (III,i)/zabít (VIII,p) (20G)

KILO- (prefix) -- kilo- (12G)

KIND -- (noun) druh (m) (11); (adj.) laskavý (13), hodný (18)

KIND of -- jaksi (adv.) (16)

what KIND of ... is that? -- co je to za + Acc. (14)

KING -- král (m)(Nom.pl. králové) (18)

KITCHEN -- kuchyně (f) (12)

KNEE -- koleno (n) (18)

to KNOCK -- klepat (IX,i)/zaklepat (IX,p) (16)

to KNOCK at the door -- klepat/zaklepat na dveře (16)

to KNOCK down -- porážet (III,i)/porazit (II,p) (16); sházet (III,i)/shodit (II,p) (20G)

to KNOCK off -- urážet (III,i)/urazit (II,p) (20G)

to KNOW -- (to be acquainted with) znát (I,i)(1); (facts) vědět (IV,irreg.,i) (4)

to KNOW how to -- umět (III,i) (3); dovést (Va,p) (15)

to KNOW one's way around (in) -- vyznat se (I,p) (v + Loc.) (13)

L

LACK -- nedostatek/nedostatk- (m) (15)

LADY -- paní (f) (1)

LAKE -- jezero (n) (14)

LAMP -- lampa (f) (4)

LAND — země (f) (11)

LANDSCAPE — krajina (f) (4)

LANGUAGE -- jazyk (m) (15); řeč (f) (Instr. pl. řečmi) (15)

LARGE — trvalý (16)

LAST — (adj.) poslední (6); (in time) minulý (8); (adv.) naposled (11)

to LAST -- trvat (I,i)/potrvat (I,p) (7)

for the LAST time -- naposled (adv.) (11)

LAST year — loni (adv.) (3); minulý rok, minulého roku, v minulém roce (12G)

LASTLY -- naposled (adv.) (11)

LATE -- pozdě (3)

LATEST — poslední (6)

to LAUGH (at) — smát se (VIII,i)/ zasmát se (VIII,p) (+ Dat.) (11)

to burst out LAUGHING -- rozesmávat se (I,i)/rozesmát se (VIII,p) (20G)

to feel like LAUGHING -- být do smíchu (+ Dat.)(e.g. I feel like laughing. -- Je mi do smíchu.) (17)

LAUGHTER — smích (m) (2)

to LAY -- pokládat (I,i)/položit (II,p) (16)

LAYER -- vrstva (f)(Gen.pl. vrstev) (17)

to LEAD — vodit (II,i, indet.)/vést (Va,i, det.) (9)

LEADER — vedoucí (m/f) (11)

LEAN — hubený (7)

to LEAP — skákat (IX/I,i)/skočit (II,p) (18)

to LEARN — učit se (II,i)/naučit se (II,p) + Dat. (14G)

to LEARN of -- dovídat se (I,i)/ dovědět se (irreg.,p)(o + Loc.)(14)

at LEAST — při nejmenším (adv.) (16)

LEAVE -- dovolená (f)(declined as adj.) (6)

to LEAVE — nechávat (I,i)/nechat (I,p)(5); (on foot) odcházet (III,i) (3)/odejít (Va,irreg., p)(5); (not on foot) odjíždět (III,i)(19)/odjet (Va,p)(5); opouštět (III,i)/opustit (II,p) (20G)

to LEAVE off (doing) something -- nechávat (I,i)/nechat (I,p) + Gen. (17)

to LEAVE someone alone — dávat (I,i)/ dát (I,p) někomu pokoj (18)

LECTURE -- přednáška (f)(Gen.pl. přednášek) (1)

to LECTURE (on) — přednášet (III,i) (o + Loc.) (6)

LECTURE room — posluchárna (f)(Gen. pl. poslucháren) (15)

LEFT -- levý (6)

on the LEFT, to the LEFT -- nalevo (adv.) (2)

to be LEFT (over) -- zbývat (I,i)/ zbýt (Va,p) (17)

LEG — noha (f)(Gen.pl. nohou; Loc.pl. nohou/nohách; Instr.pl. nohama) (10)

to LEND -- půjčovat (VII,i)/půjčit (II,p) (9)

LENGTH — délka (f)(Gen.pl. délek)(12)

LESSON -- lekce (f) (15)

LET someone do something — ať (particle) + 3rd person indicative (11)

to LET -- nechávat (I,i)/nechat (I,p) (5); dovolovat (VII,i)/dovolit (II,p) (někomu něco) (15)

to LET go -- pouštět (III,i)/pustit (II,p) (20)

to LET have — půjčovat (VII,i)/půjčit (II,p) (9)

to LET know — dávat (I,i)/dát (I,p) vědět + Dat. (7)

LETTER -- dopis (m) (2); psaní (n) (16)

LETTER (of the alphabet) — písmeno (n) (16)

printed LETTER — tiskací písmeno (n) (16)

LEVEL -- rovný (18)

LIBRARY -- knihovna (f)(Gen.pl. knihoven) (16)

to LIE -- ležet (IV,i)(4); (tell lies) lhát (IX,i)/zalhat (IX,p) (11)

to LIE down -- lehat si (I,i)/lehnout si (VI,p) (19)

LIFE -- život (m) (2)

LIGHT -- (noun) světlo (n)(2); (adj.) (in color) světlý (19); (in weight) lehký (3) snadný (8)

to LIGHT up (fire) -- zapalovat (VII, i)/zapálit (II,p) (20G)

to LIGHT up (lights) -- rozsvěcet (III,i)/rozsvítit) (II,p) (20G)

to be LIGHTNING -- blýskat se (I,i)/zablýsknout se (VI,p) (17)

LIKE -- jako (2); (adj) stejný (10)

LIKE that -- podobně (adv.) (14)

LIKE this -- taklhle (adv.) (7)

and the LIKE -- a podobně (abbreviated apod.) (14)

to LIKE -- mít rád + noun (4); líbit se (II,i) (+ Dat. of persons)(e.g. He likes it. -- To se mu líbí.)(13)

to LIKE (of food) -- chutnat (I,i) (+ Dat. of person)(e.g. He likes it. -- To mu chutná.) (13)

to LIKE to do -- rád + Verb (4)

LIKELIHOOD -- možnost (f) (14)

LIKELY -- pravděpodobný (16)

LIKING -- záliba (f) (10)

LIMIT -- hranice (f)(Gen.pl. hranic) (20)

to LIMIT -- omezovat (VII,i)/omezit (II,p) (20G)

LINE -- (row) řada (f) (4); (line of print) řádka (f)(Gen.pl. řádek) (12); (direction) směr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (16)

to LINGER -- zdržovat se (VII,i) (9)

LINGUISTICS -- lingvistika (f) (4)

LIST -- seznam (m) (18)

to LISTEN -- poslouchat (I,i) (1)

LISTENER -- posluchač (m) (15)

LITER -- litr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (12)

LITERALLY -- doslova (adv.) (16)

LITERARY -- literární (13)

LITERATURE -- literatura (f) (8)

LITTLE -- málo (adv. and quant.) (6)

a LITTLE -- trochu (adv. and quant.) (2)

to LIVE -- žít (VIII,i)(10); bydlet (III,i)/bydlit (II,i) (3)

to LIVE to see somebody/something/something happen -- dočkat se (I,p) (+ Gen.) (no imperfective) (13)

to LIVE through (to experience) -- prožívat (I,i)/prožít (VIII,p)(20G)

LIVELY -- živý (4)

LIVING ROOM -- pokoj (m) (3)

LOAF -- chléb/chleb- (m) (Gen.sg. -a)(13)

to LOAN -- půjčovat (VII,i)/půjčit (II,p) (9)

LOCAL -- zdejší (17)

LOCATION -- poloha (f) (4)

LOCKED -- zavřený (8)

LOGICAL -- logický (14)

LONG -- dlouhý (7)

LONG way -- dálka (f) (4)

as LONG as -- dokud (conj.)(15); pokud (conj.) (5)

for a LONG time -- dlouho (adv.) (3)

in the LONG run -- konec konců (adv.) (17)

of LONG ago -- dávný (adj.) (13)

LOOK -- pohled (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (20)

LOOK out! -- pozor! (11)

to LOOK (at) -- dívat se (I,i)(1)/podívat se (I,p)(5G) na + Acc.

to LOOK (like) -- vypadat (I,i) (2)

to LOOK after — starat se (I,i)/postarat se (I,p) o + Acc. (10)

to LOOK for — hledat (I,i) (1)

to LOOK forward to — těšit se (II,i) na + Acc. (14G)

to LOOK into — dívat se (I,i)/podívat se (I,p) do + Gen. (14); uvažovat (VII,i)/uvážit (II,p) o + Loc. (16)

to LOOK over — přehlížet (III,i)/přehlédnout (VI,p) (20G)

to take a LOOK in — dívat se (I,i)/podívat se (I,p) do + Gen. (14)

LOOSE — volný (11)

to LOSE — ztrácet (III,i)/ztratit (II,p) (11); (lose completely) přijít (Va, irreg.,p) o + Acc. (14); (games) prohrávat (I,i)/prohrát (VIII,p) (20G)

to LOSE weight — hubnout (VI,i)/zhubnout (VI,p) (7)

a LOT — hodně (adv. and quant.)(6); mnoho (adv. and quant.)(8); spoustu (quant.) (12)

LOVE — láska (f)(Gen.pl. lásek) (18)

to fall in LOVE (with) — zamilovávat se (I,i)/zamilovat se (VII,p)(do + Gen.) (20G)

LOVELY — krásný (6)

LOW — nízký (4)

(good) LUCK — štěstí (n) (11)

bad LUCK — smůla (f) (7)

LUCKY — příznivý (16)

piece of LUGGAGE — zavazadlo (n)(Gen. pl. zavazadel) (18)

LUNCH — oběd (m) (6)

to LUNCH, have LUNCH — obědvat (I,i) (1)/poobědvat (I,p) (5G)

M

MACHINE — stroj (m) (11)

MAGAZINE — časopis (m) (20)

MAIL — (adj.) poštovní (18)

MAIL box — schránka (f) na dopisy/poštovní schránka (f) (18)

MAIN — hlavní (9)

MAJOR — hlavní (9)

MAJORITY — většina (f) (18)

to MAKE — dělat (I,i)(1)/udělat (I,p) (5G); tvořit (II,i)/utvořit (II,p), vytvořit (II,p)(16); (of food) vařit (II,i)(2)/uvařit (II,p)(5G); (perform) konat (I,i)/vykonat (I,p) (14)

to MAKE a face — tvářit se (II,i)/zatvářit se (II,p)(+ adv.) (14)

to MAKE an effort — pokoušet se (III, i)/pokusit se (II,p) (o něco) (18)

to MAKE fun of — dělat si (I,i)/udělat si (I,p) legraci z + Gen. (14)

to MAKE oneself heard — ozývat se (I,i)/ozvat se (Vc,p) (16)

to MAKE ready — chystat se (I,i)/přichystat se (I,p) (5)

to MAKE someone do something — nutit (II,i)/donutit (II,p) někoho (k něčemu/do něčeho or inf.) (14)

to MAKE up one's mind — rozmýšlet si (III,i)/rozmyslit si (IV,p)(7); rozhodovat se (VII,i)/rozhodnout se (VI, p) (o + Loc.) (14)

MAN — člověk (m) (4); (male) muž (m)(5)

to MANAGE to — stačit (II,i)(+ inf.)(14)

MANAGER — vedoucí (m/f) (10); správce (m) (11)

to MANIFEST — projevovat (VII,i)/projevit (II,p) (20G)

MANNER — způsob (m) (12)

MANY — mnoho (quant.) (8)

MAP — mapa (f) (18)

MARCH — březen/březn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

MARGIN — okraj (m) (20)

MARK — známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek) (16)

to get MARRIED -- (of women) vdávat se (I,i)/vdát se (I,p)(20); (of a man) ženit se (II,i)/oženit se (II,p)(s někým) (20G)

to MARRY (each other) -- brát se (Vc,i)/ vzít se (Vb,p) (14G)

to MARVEL at -- divit se (II,i)(+ Dat.) (5)

MATCH -- zápalka (f)(Gen.pl. zápalek) (20)

MATTER -- záležitost (f) (13)

as a MATTER of fact -- vlastně (adv.) (6)

it doesn't MATTER -- to nevadí (9); na tom nezáleží (14)

to be a MATTER of -- běžet o + Acc. (17); jít o + Acc. (11)

MATURE -- zralý (18)

MAY(month) -- květen/květn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

MAY (auxiliary verb) -- smět (III,i)(3)

MAYBE -- možná (4)

MEADOW -- louka (f)(Gen.pl. luk) (6)

MEAL -- jídlo (n)(Gen.pl. jídel) (8)

to MEAN -- znamenat (I,i) (7)

MEANING -- význam (m) (loc.sg. -u) (18)

MEANINGFUL -- významný (15)

by MEANS of -- pomocí + Gen. (18)

in the MEANTIME -- mezitím (adv.)(7); zatím (adv.) (19)

MEASURE -- míra (f)(Gen.pl. měr) (12)

to MEASURE -- měřit (II,i)/změřit (II,p) (12)

MEAT -- maso (n) (18)

to MEDDLE in -- zasahovat (VII,i)/zasáhnout (VI,p) do + Gen. (16)

to MEET (a person) -- potkávat (I,i) (4)/potkat (I,p) (5G)

to MEET (together) -- scházet se (III, i)/sejít se (Va,irreg.,p)(14); setkávat se (I,i)/setkat se (I,p) (19)

MEETING -- schůze (f) (8)

MEMOIRS -- paměti (f)(pl. only) (10)

MEMORANDUM BOOK -- zápisník (m) (16)

MEMORIAL -- pomník (m) (17)

MEMORY -- (the faculty) paměť (f) (10); (thing remembered) vzpomínka (f)(Gen.pl. vzpomínek) (18)

to MEND -- opravovat (VII,i)/opravit (II,p) (15)

don't MENTION it -- není zač (17)

MERE -- pouhý (17)

MERELY -- jen (2); jenom (15); pouze (adv.) (17)

MERIT -- přednost (f) (13); výhoda (f) (14)

MERRY -- veselý (13)

MESS -- zmatek/zmatk- (m) (14)

METER -- metr (m) (12G)

MIDDAY MEAL -- oběd (m) (6)

MIDDLE -- (adj.) střední (18)

in the MIDDLE of -- uprostřed (prep./ adv.) + Gen. (12G), 17)

MIDNIGHT -- půlnoc (f) (Nom.-Acc.pl. -i/e; Dat.pl. -ím; Loc.pl. -ích) (12)

MILD -- mírný (14)

MILK -- mléko (n) (2)

MILLI- (prefix) -- mili- (12G)

I don't MIND -- to mi nevadí (9)

not to MIND waiting -- čekat si (I,i)/ počkat si (I,p) (14G)

MINE -- můj/má/mé, etc. (8)

MINUS -- minus (12G)

MINUTE -- minuta (f)(8); (adj.) drobný (19)

MISS -- slečna (f) (1)

to be MISSING -- chybět (III,i) (7)

MISTAKE -- chyba (f) (12); omyl (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (15)

to be MISTAKEN -- mýlit se (II,i)/zmýlit se (II,p)(5G); plést se (Va,i)(5)

MISUNDERSTANDING -- nedorozumění (n) (16)

MODERATE -- mírný (14)

MODERN -- moderní (3)

MOIST -- vlhký (4)

MOISTURE -- vlhko (n) (9)

MOM -- maminka (f)(Gen.pl. maminek)(3)

MOMENT -- chvíle (f)(Gen.pl. chvil) (5); okamžik (m) (13)

at the last MOMENT -- na poslední chvíli (14)

MONDAY -- pondělí (n) or pondělek/pondělk- (m)(Gen.sg. -a)(oblique cases only) (12G)

MONEY -- peníze (m.pl.)(Gen. peněz; Loc. -ích) (8)

MONTH -- měsíc (m) (6)

MONUMENT -- pomník (m) (17)

MOOD -- nálada (f) (13)

not to be in the MOOD (for) -- nemít náladu (na + Acc.) (13)

MORAL character -- charakter (m) (16)

MORAVIA -- Morava (f) (Loc. = na Moravě) (15)

MORE -- víc(e) (13G)

MORE and more... -- čím dál... (with comparatives) (13)

the MORE so as -- tím spíš, že (14)

MORNING -- ráno (n) (1); (adj.) ranní (5); dopoledne (n) (10)

late MORNING -- dopoledne (n) (10)

MOST -- nejvíc(e) (13G)

for the MOST part -- většinou (adv.) (13)

MOSTLY -- většinou (adv.) (13)

MOTHER -- matka (f) (1); maminka (f) (Gen.pl. maminek) (3)

MOTION -- pohyb (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (9)

MOTION picture -- film (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13)

MOTION-picture theater -- biograf (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13)

MOTOR -- motor (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (19)

to MOUNT -- (ascend) vystupovat (VII,i)/vystoupit (II,p) (16); (put in place) nasazovat (VII,i)/nasadit (II,p) (18)

to MOVE -- (transitive) hýbat (I,i)/hnout (VI,p) (10); (intransitive) hýbat se (I,i)/hnout se (VI,p) (14G); (change residence) stěhovat se (VII,i)/přestěhovat se (VII,i) (18)

to MOVE in -- přistěhovat se (VII,p) (20G)

MOVEMENT -- pohyb (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13)

MOVIE -- film (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13)

MOVIES (theater) -- biograf (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13)

MR. -- pan (m) (1)

MRS. -- paní (f) (1)

MUCH -- hodně (adv. and quant.) (6); mnoho (adv. and quant.) (8); velmi (adv.) (2)

very MUCH -- moc (adv. and quant.) (OČ) (16)

MULTIPLICATION -- násobení (n) (12G)

MULTIPLIED -- násobeno (12G)

MUSIC -- hudba (f) (1)

MUSICIAN -- hudebník (m) (2)

MUST (auxiliary verb) -- muset (III,i)/musit (II,i) (3)

MUTUALLY -- navzájem (adv.) (14)

MY -- můj/má/mé, etc. (8); svůj/svá/své, etc. (8)

N

to NAIL -- přibíjet (III,i)/přibít (VIII, p) (10)

NAME -- jméno (f)(Gen.pl. jmen) (11); název/názv- (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (17)

to NAME -- (appoint) jmenovat (VII,i) (14G)

to be NAMED -- jmenovat se (VII,i) (9)

NARROW -- úzký (13)

NASTY -- ošklivý (9)

NATURAL -- přirozený (6); samozřejmý (15)

NATURE -- příroda (f) (4)

NEAR -- při + Loc. (4); blízko + Gen.; u + Gen. (8)

to bring/draw NEAR -- přibližovat (VII,i)/přiblížit (II,p) (20G)

NEARLY -- skoro (adv.) (6); téměř (adv.) (15)

NECESSARY -- nutný (5)

if NECESSARY -- třeba (adv.) (15)

it is NECESSARY -- je třeba (15)

NECK -- krk (m) (8)

NECKTIE -- kravata (f) (19)

to NEED -- potřebovat (VII,i) (9)

NEIGHBOR -- soused (m) (Nom.pl. sousedé/sousedi); sousedka (f)(Gen.pl. sousedek) (18)

NEIGHBORHOOD -- okolí (n) (19)

NEITHER...NOR -- ani...ani (2)

NEVER -- nikdy (8)

NEW -- nový (3)

NEWS -- zpráva (f) (19)

NEWSPAPER -- noviny (f)(pl. only) (9)

NEXT -- (in sequence) další (3); (in time) příští (7)

NEXT to -- vedle + Gen. (11)

NEXT year -- napřesrok, příští rok, příštího roku, v příštím roce (12G)

NEXT-DOOR -- (adj.) vedlejší (20)

NICE -- hezký (f); (of persons) hodný (18); milý (10); příjemný (4)

NIGHT -- (noun) noc (f)(Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) (6); (adj.) noční (17)

NINE -- devět (12G)

NINETEEN -- devatenáct (12G)

NINETEENTH -- devatenáctý (12G)

NINETIETH -- devadesátý (12G)

NINETY -- devadesát (12G)

NINTH -- devátý (12G)

one-NINTH -- devítina (f) (12G)

NO -- (adv.) ne (1); nikoli (SČ) (18); (adj.) žádný (9)

it's NO use -- nedá se nic dělat (11)

NO longer -- už ne (1)

NOBODY -- nikdo (8)

NOISE -- hluk (m) (10)

NONE -- žádný (9)

NONESSENTIAL -- vedlejší (20)

NOON -- poledne (n) (6)

NORMAL -- normální (10)

NORTH -- sever (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (18)

NOSE -- nos (m) (7)

NOT -- ne- (prefix) (1); nikoli (neg. adv.)(SČ) (18)

NOT any, NOT one -- žádný (9)

NOT at all -- vůbec ne (1)

NOT even -- ani (1)

NOT long ago -- nedávno (adv.) (7)

NOT only...but -- nejen...ale (2)

NOT so...as -- ne tak...jako (3)

NOT to speak of -- nemluvě o + Loc. (adv.) (16)

NOT yet -- ještě ne (3)

NOTE -- poznámka (f)(Gen.pl. poznámek) (7)

to NOTE -- zpozorovat (VII,p) (18)

NOTEBOOK -- zápisník (m) (16)

it should be NOTED -- vždyt' (adv.) (17)

NOTHING -- nic (9)

NOTHING can be done -- nedá se nic dělat (11)

to NOTICE -- zpozorovat (VII,p) (18); všímat si (I,i)/všimnout si (VI,p) (8)

to NOTIFY -- nápad (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (8)

NOTION -- nápad (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (8)

NOTWITHSTANDING -- nehledě k + Dat. (16)

NOVEL -- román (m) (16)

NOVEMBER -- listopad (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

NOW -- nyní (2); už (emphatic) (1); ted' (adv.) (OČ) (14)

just NOW -- právě (adv.) (6)

up to NOW -- dosud (adv.) (12)

NUMBER -- číslo (n)(Gen.pl. čísel)(12); (quantity) počet/počt- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (18)

NUMERAL -- číslo (n) (Gen.pl. čísel) (12)

NUMEROUS -- četný (15)

O

to OBEY -- poslouchat (I,i)(1)/poslechnout (VI,p) (11)

OBJECT -- předmět (m) (10)

OBLIGATION -- povinnost (f) (15)

to OBSERVE -- všímat si (I,i)/všimnout si (VI,p) (8); pozorovat (VII,i)/zpozorovat (VII,p) (18)

OBVIOUS -- zřejmý (4)

OCCASION -- příležitost (f) (14)

OCCASIONALLY -- někdy (1)

to OCCUPY -- zaujímat (I,i)/zaujmout (Vc,p) (14)

to OCCUPY oneself with -- zabývat se (I,i) + Instr. (10)

OCCURRENCE -- událost (f) (14)

OCTOBER -- říjen/říjn- (m)(Gen.sg. -a; Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

ODD -- divný (19)

ODDLY (enough) -- kupodivu (adv.) (4)

OF -- Genitive case (8G); z + Gen. (8); (about) o + Loc. (4)

OF course -- ovšem (3)

OFF (down from) -- s + Gen. (9)

to OFFEND -- urážet (III,i)/urazit (III, p) (20G)

to OFFER -- nabízet (III,i)/nabídnout (VI,p) (past. pass. part. nabídnut) (19)

OFFICE -- kancelář (f) (Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) (6)

OFTEN -- často (1)

OH, come on! -- prosím tě (5)

OH, really! -- no ne! (12)

to OIL -- mazat (IX,i)/namazat (IX,p) (11)

OLD -- starý (3)

in the OLD days -- kdysi (adv.) (16)

ON, ON top of -- (location) na + Loc. (4); (direction) na + Acc. (1)

ON account of -- kvůli + Dat. (12)

ON foot -- pěšky (adv.) (17)

ON the other hand -- zato (adv.) (6)

ON the whole -- celkem (adv.) (14)

to be ON (of lights) -- svítit (II,i) (2)

ONCE -- jednou (adv.) (7); dřív(e) (adv.) (12); kdysi (adv.) (16)

ONCE again -- znovu (adv.) (11)

ONCE upon a time -- jednou (adv.) (7)

ONE -- jeden/jedna/jedno, etc. (7)

ONE another -- navzájem (adv.) (14); se or si (14)

ONE day -- jednou (adv.) (7)

ONESELF -- samotný (14); sám, sama, samo, etc. (13)

ONLY -- (adj.) jediný (4); (adv.) jen (2); (no sooner than) teprv(e) (12); jenom (15); jenže (conj.) (17)

OPEN -- otevřený (4)

to OPEN -- otevírat (I,i)/otevřít (Vb,p) (16)

OPERA -- opera (f) (2)

to OPERATE -- fungovat (VII,i) (11)

OPERATION -- operace (f) (17)

OPINION -- názor (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13)

to be of the OPINION -- domnívat se (I,i) (18)

OPPORTUNITY -- příležitost (f) (14)

OPPOSITE -- naproti + Dat., proti + Dat. (6)

OPTIMIST -- optimista (m) (11)

OR -- nebo (2)

ORCHARD -- zahrada (f) (18)

ORDER -- pořádek/pořádk- (m) (1)

to ORDER -- objednávat (I,i)/objednat (I,p) (18)

in an ORDERLY manner -- pořádně (14)

ORIGINAL -- původní (11)

to ORIGINATE (from) -- vznikat (I,i)/vzniknout (VI,p) (z + Gen.)(14)

ORTHOGRAPHY -- pravopis (m) (14)

OTHER -- druhý (7); (different) jiný (7); (remaining) ostatní (11)

OTHERWISE -- jinak (11)

OUR, OURS -- náš, naše, naše, etc. (8)

OUT -- (location) venku (adv.) (2); (direction) ven (adv.) (9)

OUT of -- z + Gen. (8)

to get OUT of the way -- být z cesty (18)

way OUT -- východ (m) (18)

OUTING -- výlet (m) (14)

OUTSIDE -- (location) venku (adv.) (2); (direction) ven (adv.) (9); (prep.) mimo + Acc. (17)

OUTSIDER -- cizinec/cizinc- (m) (14)

OVER -- nad + Instr. or Acc. (10); přes + Acc. (9)

all OVER -- po + Loc. (4)

to be OVER -- končit (II,i)/skončit (II,p) (7)

OVERCOAT -- plášť (9); kabát (m) (13)

to OVERCOME -- překonávat (I,i)/překonat (I,p) (20G)

to OVERCROWD -- přeplňovat (VII,i)/přeplnit (II,p) (20G)

to OVEREAT -- přejídat se (I,i)/přejíst se (irreg., p) (20G)

to OVERFILL -- přeplňovat (VII,i)/přeplnit (II,p) (20G)

to become OVERGROWN -- obrůstat (I,i)/obrůst (Va,p) (20G)

to OVERLOOK -- přehlížet (III,i)/přehlédnout (VI,p) (20G)

to OWE -- dlužit (II,i) (6)

(one's) OWN -- svůj/svá/své, etc. (8); vlastní (14)

P

PAGE -- strana (f) (7); stránka (f)(Gen. pl. stránek) (16)

PAIN -- bolest (f) (2)

to give PAIN -- bolet (IV,i)/zabolet (IV,p) (18)

PAINFUL -- trapný (7)

to PAINT -- malovat (VII,i)/namalovat (VII,p) (10)

PAINTING -- obraz (m) (2)

PAIR -- pár (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (8)

PANEL -- tabule (f) (15)

to PARDON -- promíjet (III,i)/prominout (VI,p) (7)

PARENT -- rodič (m)(Nom.pl. rodiče or rodiči/rodičové) (10)

PARK -- park (m) (4)

PART -- část (f) (9); (theatrical) role (f) (15)

greater PART -- většina (f) (18)

to PART (with) -- loučit se (II,i)/rozloučit se (II,p)(s + Instr.) (10); rozcházet se (II,i)/rozejít se (Va, irreg., p) (s + Instr.) (13)

PARTICULAR -- zvláštní (8); konkrétní (12)

in PARTICULAR -- zvlášť (4)

PARTY — (side) strana (f) (7)

to PASS — míjet (III,i)/minout (VI,p) (7)

to PASS (time) — trávit (II,i)/ strávit (II,p) (13)

to PASS an examination — udělat (I,p) zkoušku (16)

PAST — (noun) minulost (f) (16); (adj.) minulý (8); (adv.) kolem (5); (prep.) mimo + Acc. (17)

PATIENT — (noun) pacient (m); pacientka (f)(Gen.pl. pacientek) (16); (adj.) trpělivý (17)

PATTERN — skladba (f)(Gen.pl. skladeb) (11)

PAUSE — přestávka (f)(Gen.pl. přestávek) (15)

to PAUSE — zarážet se (III,i)/zarazit se (II,p) (15)

to PAY — platit (II,i)/zaplatit (II,p) (6)

to PAY attention to — věnovat (VII, i) pozornost + Dat. (17)

to PAY off the rest of a debt — doplácet (III,i)/doplatit (II,p) (20G)

PEACE — klid (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13); pokoj (m) (3)

PEACEFUL — klidný (14)

PEAR — hruška (f)(Gen.pl. hrušek) (16)

PECULIAR — zvláštní (8); divný (19)

PEN — pero (n) (1)

ball-point PEN — kuličkové pero (14)

PENCIL — tužka (f) (7)

to PENETRATE — pronikat (I,i)/proniknout (VI,p) (20G); vnikat (I,i)/vniknout (VI,p) (20G)

PENNY — haléř (m) (12)

PEOPLE — lidé (m)(pl. only) (Gen. lidí; Dat. lidem; Acc. lidi; Instr. lidmi; Loc. lidech) (4)

PERFECT — dokonalý (11)

to PERFORM — konat (I,i)/vykonat (I,p) (14)

PERHAPS — asi (adv.) (2); možná (adv.) (4); snad (adv.) (7)

PERIOD of time — doba (f) (6)

PERIODICAL — časopis (m) (20)

PERMANENT — trvalý (16)

to PERMEATE — pronikat (I,i)/proniknout (VI,p) (20G)

to PERMIT — dovolovat (VII,i)/dovolit (II,p) (někomu něco) (15)

to be/feel PERPLEXED — být na rozpacích (10)

PERSEVERING — vytrvalý (15)

PERSON — člověk (m) (4); muž (m) (5)

PERSONAL — osobní (17)

PERSPIRATION — pot (m) (Loc.sg. -u)(18)

to PERSUADE — přesvědčit (II,p) (6)

PESSIMIST — pesimista (m) (11)

PHILOSOPHICAL — filosofický (16)

to PHONE — volat (I,i)/zavolat (I,p) (5)

PHOTOGRAPH — fotografie (f) (14)

to PHOTOGRAPH — fotografovat (VII,i)/ vyfotografovat (VII,p) (14)

PHOTOGRAPHY — fotografie (f)(14)

PHYSICIAN — doktor (m) (2); lékař (m) (10)

to PICK (flowers, etc.) — trhat (I,i) (18)

PICNIC — výlet (m) (14)

PIECE — kus (m) (15)

PIECE of information — informace (f) (either sg. or pl.) (14)

small PIECE — kousek/kousk- (m) (15)

PIGEON — holub (m) (19)

to PILFER — krást (Va,i)/ukrást (Va,p) (20G)

PILL — prášek/prášk- (m) (18)

PILLOW — polštář (m) (20)

it's a PITY — škoda (5)

PLACE — místo (n) (9)

at someone's (PLACE) — u + Gen. (8)

to someone's (PLACE) — k + Dat. (6)

to take someone's PLACE — zastupovat (VII,i)/zastoupit (II,p) (20G)

PLAN — plán (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (4)

to PLANT — sázet (III,i)(3)/zasadit (II,p)(5G);

to PLANT (one after another) — nasázet (III,p) (18)

PLAQUE — deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek) (16)

PLAY — hra (f)(Gen.pl. her) (7)

to PLAY — hrát (VIII,i)/zahrát (VIII, p) (11)

to PAY a part/role — hrát roli (15)

PLATE — talíř (m) (19); (plaque) deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek) (16)

PLAZA — náměstí (n) (16)

PLEASANT — příjemný (4)

PLEASE — prosím (1); prosím tě (5); prosím vás (11)

to be PLEASED by — mít radost z + Gen. (17)

PLENTY — spoustu (quant.) (12)

PLUM — švestka (f)(Gen.pl. švestek)(16)

PLUS — plus (12G)

POCKET — kapsa (f)(Gen.pl. kapes) (14)

POCKET NOTEBOOK — notýsek/notýsk- (m) (1)

POEM — báseň/básn- (f)(Gen.sg. -ě; Nom.pl. -ě; Loc.pl. -ích; Dat.pl. -ím) (8)

POINT — bod (m) (19)

POINT of the compass — světová strana (f) (18)

POINT of view — stanovisko (m) (13); stránka (f)(Gen.pl. stránek) (16)

to be the POINT — běžet o + Acc. (17); jít o + Acc. (11)

to POINT out — zdůrazňovat (VII,i)/zdůraznit (II,p)(12)

POINTLESS — zbytečný (11)

to take POISON — otravovat se (VII,i)/otrávit se (II,p) (15)

POISONING — otrava (f) (13)

POLICY — politika (f) (19)

POLITICAL — politický (12)

POLITICS — politika (f) (19)

POOR — chudý (13); (bad) špatný (3); (unhappy) ubohý (13)

POPULAR — oblíbený (17)

POSITION — poloha (f) (4); místo (n)(9)

POSSIBLE — možný (9)

as (early) as POSSIBLE — pokud možno (brzo) (18)

if POSSIBLE — pokud možno (18)

it is POSSIBLE — lze (adv.) (17)

it is POSSIBLE that — možná, že (4)

to make POSSIBLE — umožňovat (VII,i)/umožnit (II,p) (20G)

POSSIBILITY — možnost (f) (14)

POSSIBLY — možná (adv.) (4); snad (adv.) (7)

POST — (adj.) poštovní (18)

POST OFFICE — pošta (f) (4)

POSTAGE stamp — známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek) (16)

POSTAL — poštovní (18)

to POSTPONE — odkládat (I,i)/odložit (II,p) (17)

to POUR (liquids) — lít (VIII,i) (17)

POWDER — prach (m) (17); (medicinal) prášek/prášk- (m) (18)

POWER — moc (f) (16); síla (f)(Instr.sg. silou; Gen.pl. sil; Dat.pl. silám; Instr. pl. silami; Loc.pl. silách) (10)

PRACTICAL — praktický (13)

PRACTICE -- zvyk (m) (18)

PRAGUE -- Praha (f) (1)

PRAISE -- chvála (f) (4)

to PRAISE -- chválit (II,i)/pochválit (II,p) (7)

PRECISE -- přesný (8)

to PREDICT -- předpovídat (I,i)/předpovědět (irreg.,p) (20G)

to PREFER something to something -- dávat (I,i) přednost něčemu před něčím (13)

PREFERENCE -- záliba (f)(10); přednost (f) (13)

to PREPARE -- (transitive) chystat (I,i) (4)/ přichystat (I,p)(5G); připravovat (VII,i)/připravit (II,p) (16); (intransitive) chystat se/přichystat se (5)

to PREPAY -- předplácet (III,i)/předplatit (II,p) (20G)

PRESENCE -- přítomnost (f) (16)

PRESENT -- přítomnost (f) (16)

to PRESENT -- věnovat (VII,i)(někomu něco) (17)

to PRESS -- tisknout (VI,i) (7)

to PRESUME -- předpokládat (I,i) (17)

to PRETEND -- dělat se (I,i)(14G); předstírat (I,i) (20G); (by facial expression) tvářit se (II,i)/zatvářit se) (II,p) (+ adv.) (14)

PRETTY -- hezký (4); pěkný (4)

to PREVENT something/someone from doing something -- zabraňovat (VII,i)/zabránit (II,p) + Dat. or někomu v něčem (15)

PREVIOUSLY -- předtím (adv.) (11)

PRICE -- cena (f) (12)

PRIMARILY -- hlavně (12)

PRINCIPAL -- hlavní (9)

PRINCIPLE -- zásada (f) (18)

to PRINT -- tisknout (VI,i) (7)

PRIORITY -- přednost (f) (13)

PRISONER -- vězeň/vězň- (m) (12)

PRIZE -- cena (f) (12)

PROBABLE -- pravděpodobný (16)

PROBLEM -- problém (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(10)

PRODUCT -- výrobek/výrobk- (m) (19)

PROFESSOR -- profesor (m) (1)

PROGRAM -- program (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (14)

to PROMISE -- slibovat (VII,i)/slíbit (II,p) (13)

to PRONOUNCE -- vyslovovat (VII,i)/vyslovit (II,p) (11)

PROPER -- slušný (12)

to PROPOSE -- navrhovat (VII,i)/navrhnout (VI,p) (16)

to PROVE -- dokazovat (VII,i)/dokázat (IX,p) (16)

to PROVIDE -- poskytovat (VII,i)/poskytnout (VI,p) (16)

PSYCHOLOGY -- psychologie (f) (17)

PUBLIC -- veřejný (19)

PUBLICATION -- vydání (n) (14)

to PUBLISH -- vydávat (I,i)/vydat (I,p) (20G)

to PULL -- tahat (I,i, indet.)/táhnout (VI,i, det.) (19)

PUPIL -- žák (m) (10)

to make PURCHASES -- nakupovat (VII,i)/nakoupit (II,p) (15)

PURE -- čistý (10)

PURPOSE -- účel (m) (20)

to PURSUE -- honit (II,i, indet.)/hnát (Vc,i, det.) (19)

to PUT -- pokládat (I,i)/položit (II,p) (16)

to PUT (on) -- nasazovat (VII,i)/nasadit (II,p) (18)

to PUT away -- odstraňovat (VII,i)/odstranit (II,p) (něco z něčeho)(20G)

to PUT forward -- navrhovat (VII,i)/navrhnout (VI,p) (16)

to PUT in (time) -- odpracovávat (I,i)/odpracovat (VII,p) (20G) to PUT in order -- dávat (I,i)/dát (I,p) do pořádku (11)

to PUT off -- odkládat (I,i)/odložit (II,p) (17)

to PUT on -- (transitive) oblékat (I,i)/obléci (Va,p)(14G); (intransitive) oblékat se (I,i)(1)/obléknout se (VI,p) (7)

to PUT on top of -- dávat (I,i)/dát (I,p) na + Acc. (1)

to PUT things in order -- dělat (I,i)/udělat (I,p) pořádek (1)

to PUT together -- sestavovat (VII,i)/sestavit (II,p) (20G)

to be PUZZLED (by) -- nevědět si rady (s + Instr.) (14)

PUZZLEMENT -- rozpaky (m.pl.) (10)

Q

QUANTITY -- množství (n) (19)

QUARTER -- čtvrt (f) (8); čtvrtina (f) (12G)

QUARTER (of a year) -- čtvrtletí (n) (17)

QUEEN -- královna (f)(Gen.pl. královen) (18)

QUESTION -- otázka (f) (6)

to be a QUESTION of -- běžet o + Acc. (17); jít o + Acc. (11)

QUICK -- rychlý (1)

QUIET -- (noun) ticho (n)(4); klid (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (13); (adj.) tichý (3); klidný (14)

QUITE -- docela (adv.) (5)

QUITE a bit -- dost (adv.) (5)

R

RADIO -- rádio (n) (20)

RAILROAD STATION -- nádraží (n) (1)

RAIN -- dešt' (or déšt' - Nom.-Acc.sg. only) (m) (16)

to RAIN -- pršet (IV,i) (4)

RARE -- řídký (19)

RARELY -- zřídka (adv.) (11)

RATHER -- dost (adv.) (5); spíš (adv.)(9); moc (adv.) (16)

RE- (prefix) -- prefix pře - plus verb (See 20G)

to READ -- číst (Va,i)/přečíst (Va,p)(5); (to be read) číst se (Va,i)/přečíst se (Va,p) (14G)

to READ aloud to someone -- předčítat (I,i)/předčíst (Va,p) (20G)

READER -- čtenář (m); čtenářka (f) (17)

READING -- četba (f) (7)

READY -- hotový (13)

to get a thing READY -- připravovat (VII,i)/připravit (II,p) (16)

to make READY -- (transitive) chystat (I,i)(4)/přichystat (I,p)(5G); (intransitive) chystat se/přichystat se (5)

REAL -- opravdový (10)

to REALIZE -- uskutečňovat (VII,i)/uskutečnit (II,p) (20G)

REALLY -- opravdu (adv.) (2)

oh, REALLY! -- No ne! (12)

REASON -- důvod (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (8)

REASONABLE -- rozumný (5)

to RECALL -- vzpomínat si (I,i)(1)/vzpomenout si (VI,p) na + Acc. (8)

to RECAPITULATE -- opakovat (VII,i)/zopakovat (VII,p) (9)

to RECEIVE -- dostávat (I,i)(2)/dostat (Va,irreg.,p)(7); přijímat (I,i)/přijmout (Vb,irreg.,p) (16)

RECENTLY -- nedávno (adv.) (7)

to RECKON -- počítat (I,i)/spočítat (I,p) (12)

to RECOGNIZE -- poznávat (I,i)/poznat (I,p) (5)

RECOLLECTION -- vzpomínka (f)(Gen.pl. vzpomínek) (18)

to RECOMMEND -- doporučovat (VII,i)/ doporučit (II,p) (16)

RECORD -- (gramofonová) deska (f)(Gen. pl. desk/desek) (16)

to RECORD (in writing) -- zapisovat (VII,i)/zapsat (IX,p) (20G)

to have RECOURSE to -- obracet se (III,i)/obrátit se (II,p) na + Acc. (15)

RED -- červený (11)

REFINED -- jemný (11)

to REFLECT -- rozmýšlet si (III,i)/ rozmyslet si (IV,p) (7)

to REFLECT (on) -- přemýšlet (III,i)/ (o + Loc.) (14)

to REFUSE -- odmítat (I,i)/odmítnout (VI,p) (18)

to REGARD someone/something as someone/ something -- považovat (VII,i) + Acc., + za + Acc. (10)

REGARDLESS of -- nehledě k + Dat. (adv.) (16)

REGISTRATION -- přihláška (f)(Gen.pl. přihlášek) (16)

to REGRET -- litovat (VII,i) + Gen. (17)

REGULAR -- pravidelný (15)

to REJECT -- odmítat (I,i)/odmítnout (VI,p) (18)

to RELATE (tell) -- vypravovat (VII,i) (9)

RELATED -- příbuzný (8)

RELATION -- vztah (m) (17); (person) příbuzný (8)

RELATIONS -- styky (m.pl.) (13)

RELATIONSHIP -- vztah (m) (17)

RELATIVE -- (noun) příbuzný (8); (adj.) poměrný (19)

to RELAX -- odpočívat (I,i)/odpočinout (VI,p) (13)

to RELEASE -- pouštět (III,i)/pustit (II,p) (20); vydávat (I,i)/vydat (I,p) (20G)

RELENTLESS -- vytrvalý (15)

RELIABLE -- spolehlivý (13)

to REMAIN -- zůstávat (I,i)/zůstat (Va, irreg.,p) (7); zbývat (I,i)/zbýt (Va,p) (17)

REMAINDER -- zbytek/zbytk- (m) (20)

REMAINING -- ostatní (11)

REMARK -- poznámka (f) (7)

REMEDY -- lék (m) (6)

to REMEMBER -- vzpomínat si (I,i)(1)/ vzpomenout si (VI,p) (8); pamatovat si (VII,i)/zapamatovat si (VII,p) (10)

REMEMBRANCE -- vzpomínka (f)(Gen.pl. vzpomínek) (18)

to REMIND of -- připomínat (I,i)/připomenout (VI,p) někomu něco/někoho (14)

to REMOVE -- odstraňovat (VII,i)/odstranit (II,p) (něco z něčeho) (20G)

to REPAIR -- opravovat (VII,i)/opravit (II,p) (15)

to REPEAT -- opakovat (VII,i)/zopakovat (VII,p) (9)

to REPLY -- odpovídat (I,i)(1)/odpovědět (IV, irreg., p) (5)

to REPLY to something -- odpovídat/ odpovědět na + Acc. (6)

REPORT -- zpráva (f) (19)

to REPORT -- hlásit (II,i)/ohlásit (II,p) (14G)

REPUBLIC -- republika (f) (16)

to REQUEST -- žádat (I,i)/požádat (I,p) (o + Loc.) (14)

to REQUEST (from) -- prosit (II,i)/ poprosit (II,p)(někoho o něco) (15)

to REQUIRE -- žádat (I,i)/požádat (I,p) (o + Loc.) (14)

to RESCUE -- zachraňovat (VII,i)/zachránit (II,p) (20G)

RESEMBLING -- podobný (7)

to RESIDE -- bydlet (III,i) or bydlit (II,i) (3)

RESERVE -- zásoba (f) (17)

RESOLUTE — rozhodný (13)

to RESOUND — ozývat se (I,i)/ozvat se (Vc,p) (16); znít (IV,irreg.,i)/ zaznít (IV,irreg.,p) (4)

to RESPECT — vážit si (II,i) + Gen. (8)

to RESPOND — hlásit se (II,i)(2)/ ohlásit se (II,p)(5G); ozývat se (I,i)/ ozvat se (Vc,p) (16)

REST — (remainder) zbytek/zbytk- (m) (20)

to REST — odpočívat (I,i)/odpočinout si (VI,p) (13)

RESTAURANT — restaurace (f) (9)

to RESTRICT — omezovat (VII,i)/omezit (II,p) (20G)

RESULT — výsledek/výsledk- (m) (11)

RETURN — (adj.) zpáteční (14)

in RETURN — zato (adv.) (6)

to RETURN — vracet se (IV,i)/vrátit se (II,p) (6)

to REVEAL — objevovat (VII,i)/objevit (II,p) (14G)

to REVIEW — opakovat (VII,i)/zopakovat (VII,p) (6)

RHEUMATISM — revma (n) (15)

RHYTHM — rytmus (m) (15)

RICH — bohatý (13)

to get RID of — zbavovat se (VII,i)/ zbavit se (II,p) + Gen. (15)

to RIDE — jezdit (II,i)(9)/jet (Va,p) (5)

RIGHT — (adj.) správný (12); (direction) pravý (6)

to be RIGHT — mít pravdu (4)

on the RIGHT, to the RIGHT — napravo (2)

RIGHT there — tamhle (4)

RIPE — zralý (18)

to RISE — růst (Va,i)/vzrůst (Va,p)(15)

to RISE (of the sun) — vycházet (III, i)/vyjít (Va,irreg.,p) (15)

RIVER — řeka (f) (9)

ROAD — cesta (f) (5); silnice (f)(Gen. pl. silnic) (17)

ROCK — kámen/kamen- (mixed decl.) (13)

ROLE — role (f) (15); úloha (f)(15)

to play a ROLE — hrát roli (15)

ROLL (bread) — houska (f) (15)

ROOF — střecha (f)(Loc.sg. střeše) (19)

ROOM — pokoj (m)(3); místnost (f) (14); (space) místo (n) (9)

lecture ROOM — posluchárna (f)(Gen. pl. poslucháren) (15)

living ROOM — pokoj (m) (3)

ROOMMATE — spolubydlící (m/f) (17)

ROSE — růže (f) (11)

ROUGHLY speaking — celkem (adv.) (14)

ROW — řada (f) (4)

RUG — koberec/koberc- (m) (2)

RULE — pravidlo (n)(Gen.pl. pravidel) (14)

to RUN — běhat (I,i, indet.)/běžet (IV, i, det.) (9)

to RUN and fetch something — skočit někam pro něco (18)

to RUN away — utíkat (I,i)/utéci (Va,p) (18)

RUSSIAN — ruský (2)

in RUSSIAN — rusky (adv.) (2)

S

SACRED — svatý (13)

SAD — smutný (13)

SAINT — svatý (13)

SALAMI — salám (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (15)

SALT — sůl/sol- (f)(Dat.pl. -ím; Loc. pl. -ích; Instr.pl. -emi) (20)

SAME — stejný (10)

at the SAME time — přitom (adv.)(4); záróveň (adv.) 9(15)

in the SAME way -- stejně (adv.) (11)

the very SAME — ten samý, ta samá, to samé, etc. (7)

SANDWICH — obložený chlebíček/chlebíčk- (m) (15)

SATISFIED -- spokojený (6)

SATURDAY — sobota (f) (12G)

SAUSAGE — salám (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (15)

to SAVE (rescue) — zachraňovat (VII,i)/zachránit (II,p) (20G)

to SAY — říkat (I,i)(4)/říci (VI,irreg., p) (7)

to SAY goodbye to — loučit se (II,i)/rozloučit se (II,p) (s + Instr.) (10)

to SAY nothing — mlčet (IV,i) (13)

SCALES -- váha (f) or váhy (f.pl.) (12)

SCARCELY — sotva (adv.) (10);(with negation) dohromady (adv.) (14)

SCENE — scéna (f) (11)

SCENERY — krajina (f) (4); (theatrical) scéna (f) (11)

SCHOOL — škola (f) (9)

SCIENTIST — vědec/vědc- (m) (13)

to SCORCH — pálit (II,i)/spálit (II,p) (14); připalovat (VII,i)/připálit (II,p) (20G)

SCRAMBLED EGGS — míchaná vejce (n.pl.) (Gen.pl. vajec) (19)

SEA — moře (m) (6)

SEASHORE — moře (n) (6)

SECOND — (noun) vteřina (f) (8); (adj.) druhý (7)

to SEE -- vidět (IV,i)(4)/uvidět (IV,p) (5)

to SEEM — zdát se (I,i)(+ Dat.) (15)

to SEGREGATE — oddělovat (VII,i)/oddělit (II,p) (něco od něčeho) (20G)

to SEIZE — zabavovat (VII,i)/zabavit (II,p) (20G)

SELDOM — zřídka (adv.) (11)

to SELECT — vybírat si (I,i)/vybrat si (Vc,p) (14)

one's SELF -- samotný (14); sám/sama/samo, etc. (13)

SELF-EVIDENT -- samozřejmý (15)

to SELL -- prodávat (I,i)/prodat (I,p) (13); (be sold) prodávat se (I,i)/prodat se (I,p) (14G)

to SEND — posílat (I,i)(4)/poslat (IX,p) (6, 11)

SENSATION -- pocit (m) (19)

SENSE -- smysl (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (7)

SENSIBLE -- rozumný (5)

SENTENCE — věta (f) (7)

SEPARATE -- jednotlivý (16)

to SEPARATE — oddělovat (VII,i)/oddělit (II,p) (něco od něčeho) (20G)

SEPARATELY -- zvlášt' (adv.) (14)

SEPTEMBER — září (n) (12G)

SEQUENCE — řada (f) (4)

SERIES -- řada (f) (4)

SERIOUS -- vážný (10)

SERVICE — služba (f)(Gen.pl. služeb)(17)

to SET about — dávat se (I,i)/dát se (I,p) do + Gen. (14G)

to SET in — nastávat (I,i)/nastat (Va,p) (20G)

SEVEN -- sedm (12G)

SEVENTEEN — sedmnáct (12G)

SEVENTEENTH -- sedmnáctý (12G)

SEVENTH -- sedmý (12G)

one-SEVENTH — sedmina (f) (12G)

SEVENTIETH -- sedmdesátý (12G)

SEVENTY -- sedmdesát (12G)

SEVERAL — několik (8)

SEVERAL times -- několikrát (adv.) (17)

SHADE -- stín (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (18)

SHADOW — stín (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (18)

to SHAKE — třást (Va,i)/zatřást (Va,p) (+ Instr.) (18)

it's a SHAME — škoda (5)

to SHELTER — krýt (VIII,i) (10)

to SHINE -- svítit (II,i) (2)

SHIRT — košile (f)(Gen.pl. košil) (14)

SHOE — bota (f) (18)

SHORE — břeh (m) (16)

SHORT — krátký (5)

SHORTAGE — nedostatek/nedostatk- (m) (14)

SHOP -- obchod (m) (13)

SHOP window -- výkladní skříň (f)(15)

to SHOP — nakupovat (VII,i)/nakoupit (II,p) (15)

SHOULDER — rameno (n) (13)

to SHOUT — křičet (IV,i)(4)/křiknout (VI,p) (7)

to SHOW — ukazovat (VII,i)(9)/ukázat (IX,p) (11)

to SHOW off — ukazovat se (VII,i)/ukázat se (IX,p) (15)

to SHOWER (i.e. rain) briefly — napršet (IV,p) (20G)

SHRUB — keř (m) (3)

SHUT — zavřený (8)

to SHUT — zavírat (I,i)/zavřít (Vb,p) (16)

SICK — nemocný (3)

SICKNESS — nemoc (f) (10)

SIDE — strana (f) (7)

SIDEWALK — chodník (m) (19)

to SIGH — vzdychat (I,i)/vzdychnout (VI,p) (20G)

SIGHT — pohled (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (20)

to catch SIGHT of — uvidět (IV,p)(5)

SIGN — známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek)(16)

to SIGN one's name — podpisovat se (VII,i)/podepsat se (IX,p) (20G)

SIGNIFICANT — významný (15)

SILENCE — ticho (n) (4)

in SILENCE — mlčky (adv.) (20)

to break SILENCE — ozývat se (I,i)/ozvat se (Vc,p) (16)

SILENT — tichý (3)

to be SILENT -- mlčet (IV,i) (13)

SILENTLY (wordlessly) — mlčky (adv.) (20)

SIMILAR — podobný (7)

SIMILARLY — stejně (11); podobně (14)

SIMPLE — jednoduchý (8); jediný (4)

SIMPLY — prostě (5)

to SIMULATE — předstírat (I,i) (20G)

SINCE -- když (5); poněvadž (conj.) (16)

especially SINCE -- tím spíš, že (14)

SINCE the time that — od té doby, co (11)

SINCERE -- upřímný (16)

SINCERITY — upřímnost (f) (7)

to SING -- zpívat (I,i)/zazpívat (I,p) (11)

to SINGE -- připalovat (VII,i)/připálit (II,p) (20G)

SINGING — zpěv (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (11)

SINGLE -- jednotlivý (16)

SISTER -- sestra (f) (1)

to SIT, be SITTING — sedět (IV,i)(4)

to SIT down -- sedat si (I,i)/sednout si (VI,p) (7)

SITUATION — situace (f) (8); poloha (f) (4)

SIX -- šest (12G)

SIXTEEN — šestnáct (12G)

SIXTEENTH — šestnáctý (12G)

SIXTH — šestý (12G)

one-SIXTH — šestina (f) (12G)

SIXTIETH — šedesátý(12G)

SIXTY — šedesát (12G)

SIZE — číslo (n)(Gen.pl. čísel) (12)

SKY — nebe (n) (4); obloha (f) (19)

to SLEEP — spát (IV, irreg., i) (4)

to have a night's SLEEP — vyspat se (IV,irreg.,p) (14)

SLIGHT — slabý (6)

SLIM — hubený (7)

SLIP (of paper) — lístek/lístk- (m) (18)

SLOVAKIA — Slovensko (n) (16)

SLOW — pomalý (13G)

SLOWLY — pomalu (adv.) (8)

SMALL — malý (3)

to SMASH — rozbíjet (III,i)/rozbít (VIII,p) (19)

to SMEAR — mazat (IX,i)/namazat (IX,p), umazat (II,p) (11)

to SMELL — cítit (II,i)(2)/ucítit (II, p) (5G)

to have a pleasant SMELL — vonět (III,i)/zavonět (III,p) (16)

to SMELL good — vonět (III,i)/zavonět (III,p) (16)

to SMILE (at) — smát se (VIII,i)/zasmát se (VIII,p) (+ Dat.) (11)

to SMOKE — kouřit (II,i)(3)/vykouřit (II,p) (5G)

SNOW — sníh/sněh- (m) (16)

to SNOW — sněžit (II,i) (9)

SO — (adv.) tak (2); tedy (7)

SO long as — dokud (conj.) (15)

SO much, SO many — tolik (quant.)(8)

SO that — takže (conj.) (20)

SOAP — mýdlo (n)(Gen.pl. mýdel) (10)

SOCIAL — společenský (14)

SOCIETY — společnost (f) (13)

SOFT — měkký (comp.: měkčí) (18)

SOIL — zem (f), země (f) (11)

to SOIL — mazat (IX,i)/umazat (IX,p) (11)

SOLEMN — slavnostní (14)

SOLID — pevný (18)

to SOLVE — řešit (II,i)/rozřešit (II,p) (20G)

SOME — (adv.) několik (quant.) (8); (adj.) (some kind of) nějaký (4); (of a series, of a number) některý (9)

SOMEONE — někdo (8)

SOMEONE else's — cizí (3)

SOMEHOW — jaksi (adv.) (16)

SOMETHING — něco (8)

SOMETIMES — někdy (1)

SOMEWHERE — někde (8)

SON — syn (m)(Nom.pl. synové) (9)

SOON — brzo (adv.) (1)

as SOON as — jakmile (conj.) (15)

to be SORRY — líto (pred.adj.) (e.g. I'm sorry for you. — Je mi vás líto.) (17)

I'm SORRY to say — bohužel (1)

SORT — druh (m) (11)

all SORTS of — všelijaký (15)

to SOUND — znít (IV,i) (4)

SOUP — polévka (f)(Gen.pl. polévek)(20)

SOURCE — pramen (m)(mixed decl.) (13)

to use SPARINGLY — šetřit (II,i)(něčím) (15)

SPATE — záplava (f) (16)

to SPEAK — mluvit (II,i) (2)

not to SPEAK of (prep.) — nemluvě o + Loc. (adv.) (16)

SPECIAL — zvláštní (8)

SPECIES — druh (m) (11)

to deliver a SPEECH — promlouvat (I,i)/promluvit (II,p) (16)

SPELLING — pravopis (m) (14)

to SPEND (time) — trávit (I,i)/strávit (II,p) (13)

to SPILL over — polévat (I,i)/polít (VIII, p) (něco něčím) (20G)

SPIRITS — nálada (f) (13)

SPOT — skvrna (f)(11); bod (m) (19)

SPOT (dog's name) — Punt'a (m) (11)

to SPREAD — rozšiřovat (VII,i)/rozšířit (II,p) (20G)

SPRING — (water) pramen (m)(mixed decl.) (13); (season) jaro (n)(Loc.sg. -u) (4)

to SPRINKLE (something all over with something) — posýpat (I,i)/posypat (IX,p)(něco něčím) (20G)

SQUARE — (adj.) čtvereční (12G); (noun) (plaza) náměstí (n) (16)

STAGE — scéna (f) (11)

STAIN — skvrna (f) (11)

STAIRS — schody (m,pl.) (9)

postage STAMP — známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek) (16)

to STAND — stát (IV,i) (4)

to be able to STAND someone/something — snést (Va,p) (5)

not to be able to STAND someone — nemoci cítit + Person (5)

to STAND for — znamenat (I,i) (7)

STANDPOINT — stanovisko (n) (13)

STAR — hvězda (f)(Gen.pl. hvězd) (13)

to STATE — prohlašovat (VII,i)/prohlásit (II,p) (20G)

STATION — stanice (f)(Gen.pl. stanic) (17)

to STAY — zůstávat (I,i)/zůstat (Va, irreg.,p) (7); zdržovat se (VII,i) (9G)

to STAY a while — pobýt (Va,p)(5)

to STEAL — krást (Va,i)/ukrást (Va,p) (20G)

STEAM — pára (f) (19)

STEP — krok (m) (8); (stairstep) schod (m) (9)

STILL — (adj.) tichý (3); (adv.) ještě (1); (with present tense only) pořád (1)

to STIR — (intransitive) hýbat (I,i)/hnout (VI,p) (10); pohnout (VI,p)(20G)

STOMACH — žaludek/žaludk- (m) (5)

STONE — kámen/kamen- (mixed decl.)(13)

STOP — (noun) stanice (f)(Gen.pl. stanic) (17)

to STOP (while in motion) — zastavovat se (VII,i)/zastavit se (II,p) (15)

to STOP (doing) — přestávat (I,i)/přestat (Va,irreg.,p) (7); zarážet se (III,i)/zarazit se (II,p) (15)

STORE — (supply) zásoba (f) (17)

STORM — bouře (f) (16)

STORY — (floor) poschodí (n) (17)

STRAIGHT — rovný (18)

to STRAIGHTEN up — dělat (I,i)/udělat (I,p) pořádek (1)

STRAIN — napětí (n) (19)

to get STRANDED — zůstat (Va,irreg.,p) viset (17)

STRANGE — zvláštní (8)

STRANGER — cizinec/cizinc- (m) (14)

STRATUM — vrstva (f)(Gen.pl. vrstev) (17)

STREET — ulice (f) (5)

STREETCAR — tramvaj (f)(Nom.-Acc.pl. -e; Dat.pl. -ím; Instr.pl. -emi; Loc.pl. -ích) (17)

STRENGTH — síla (f)(Instr.sg. silou; Gen.pl. sil; Dat.pl. silám; Instr.pl. silami; Loc.pl. silách) (10)

STRENUOUS — namáhavý (13)

to STRESS — zdůrazňovat (VII,i)/zdůraznit (II,p) (12)

to STREW (something all over with something) — posýpat (I,i)/posypat (IX,p) (něco něčím) (20G)

STRIP — pás (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (11)

STRONG — silný (3); pevný (18); prudký (14)

STRUGGLE — zápas (m) (20)

to get STUCK -- zůstat (Va,irreg.,p) viset (17)

STUDENT -- student (m) (3); studentka (f) (4); posluchač (m) (15)

STUDY -- studium (n) (15)

to STUDY -- studovat (VII,i)/prostudovat (VII,p) (9); učit se (II,i)/naučit se (II,p) + Dat. (10)

to STUFF -- vyplňovat (VII,i)/vyplnit (II,p) (20G)

SUBJECT (in school) -- předmět (m)(10)

to SUBSCRIBE to -- předplácet (III,i)/předplatit (II,p) (20G)

to SUBSCRIBE -- ubývat (I,i)/ubýt (Va,p) (20G)

SUBSTANTIAL -- značný

to SUBSTITUTE for -- zastupovat (VII,i)/zastoupit (II,p) (20G)

SUBTRACTION -- odčítání (n) (12G)

to SUCCEED (in something or in doing something) -- dařit se (II,i)/podařit se (II,p) + Inf. (+ Dat. of person)(e.g. He's succeeding (in doing that). -- Daří se mu (to dělat).)(17)

SUCCESS -- úspěch (m) (12)

SUCCESSFUL -- úspěšný (10)

SUCH -- takový (3)

SUCH...as -- takový...jako (3)

SUDDEN -- náhlý (19)

to SUFFER -- trpět (IV,i)/strpět (II,p) (10)

to SUFFICE -- stačit (II,i)/postačit (II,p) or vystačit (II,p) (14)

to SUGGEST -- navrhovat (VII,i)/navrhnout (VI,p) (16); naznačovat (VII,i)/naznačit (II,p) (20G); připomínat (I,i)/připomenout (VI,p)(někomu) něco/někoho (14)

SUGGESTION -- rada (f) (14)

SUIT -- oblek (m) (8)

to SUIT -- hodit se (II,i)(+ Dat. or k + Dat.)(e.g. That suits me. -- To se mi hodí. This color doesn't suit your eyes. -- Tahle barva se nehodí k vašim očím) (17)

SUITABLE -- vhodný (10)

SUITCOAT -- kabát (m) (13)

SUMMER -- (noun) léto (n)(4); (adj.) letní (4)

to SUMMON -- svolávat (VII,i)/svolat (I,p) (20G)

SUN -- slunce (n) (2)

in the SUN -- na slunci (6)

SUNDAY -- neděle (f) (7)

SUNRISE -- východ (m) (18)

SUNSET -- západ (m) (18)

SUPPER -- večeře (f) (4)

SUPPLY -- zásoba (f) (17)

to SUPPLY -- poskytovat (VII,i)/poskytnout (VI,p) (16)

to SUPPORT -- podkládat (I,i)/podložit (II,p) (20G)

to SUPPOSE -- domnívat se (I,i)(18); předpokládat (I,i) (17)

I SUPPOSE -- asi (adv.) (2)

to be SUPPOSED to -- mít + Inf. (5)

SURE -- jistý (13)

to be SURE -- (interj.) vždyť (17)

SURELY -- určitě (5); přece (11)

to SURMOUNT -- překonávat (I,i)/překonat (I,p) (20G)

SURPRISE -- překvapení (n) (16)

to SURPRISE -- překvapovat (VII,i)/překvapit (II,p) (10)

to be SURPRISED (at) -- divit se (II,i) (+ Dat.) (5)

SURPRISINGLY, SURPRISINGLY enough -- kupodivu (4)

to SURRENDER -- vzdávat se (I,i)/vzdát se (I,p) (něčeho) (20G)

SURROUNDINGS -- okolí (n) (19)

to be SUSPENDED -- viset (IV,i) (4)

SWEAT -- pot (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (18)

SWEET -- sladký (adv. = sladce, comp.: sladší) (15)

to SWITCH on -- zapínat (I,i)/zapnout (Vb,p) (20G)

SYMBOL -- známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek)(16)

SYNTAX -- skladba (f) (11)

T

TABLE -- stůl/stol- (m) (1)

TABLECLOTH -- ubrus (m) (19)

TABLET -- (plaque) deska (f)(Gen.pl. desk/desek) (16)

TACITLY -- mlčky (adv.) (20)

to TAKE -- brát (Vc,i)/vzít (Vb,p)(5); (accept) přijímat (I,i)/přijmout (Vb, irreg.,p)(16); (by conveyance) vozit (II,i, indet.)/vézt (Va,i, det.)(9); (lead) vodit (II,i, indet.)/vést (Va, i, det.)(9); (time) trvat (I,i)/potrvat (I,p) (7)

to TAKE a call -- hlásit se (II,i)(2)/ ohlásit se (II,p)(5G)

to TAKE a look in -- dívat se (I,i)/ podívat se (I,p) do + Gen. (14)

to TAKE a seat -- sedat si (I,i)/ sednout si (VI,p) (7)

to TAKE a walk -- procházet se (II,i)/ projít se (Va,irreg.,p) (6)

to TAKE an examination -- dělat (I,i)/ udělat (I,p) zkoušku (16)

to TAKE away -- odvážet (III,i)/ odvézt (Va,p) (17)

to TAKE care of -- (look after) hlídat (I,i)/ohlídat (I,p) (18); (arrange) zařizovat (VII,i)/zařídit (II,p)(18); (attend to) starat se (I,i)/postarat se (I,p) o + Acc. (10)

to TAKE off (clothes) -- odkládat (I,i)/odložit (II,p) (17); svlékat (I,i)/svléci (Va,p) (20G)

to TAKE over -- převzít (Vb,p) (20G)

to TAKE part in -- účastnit se (II,i)/ zúčastnit se (II,p) + Gen. (8)

to TAKE pictures -- fotografovat (VII, i)/vyfotografovat (VII,p) (14)

to TAKE place -- konat se (I,i) (14)

to TAKE someone's place -- zastupovat (VII,i)/zastoupit (II,p) (20G)

to TAKE to a place -- odvážet (II,i)/ odvézt (Va,p) (17)

to TAKE up -- zaujímat (I,i)/zaujmout (Vc, irreg.,p) (14)

TALE -- pohádka (f)(Gen.pl. pohádek)(18)

fairy TALE -- pohádka (f)(Gen.pl. pohádek) (18)

TALK -- rozhovor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (7)

to have a TALK with -- promlouvat (I,i)/ promluvit (II,p) s + Instr. (16)

to TALK -- hovořit (II,i) (2)

to TALK about -- povídat (I,i)/po- vědět (IV, irreg., p) o + Loc. (11)

to TALK back -- odmlouvat (I,i)(20G)

to TALK someone out of something -- rozmlouvat (I,i)/rozmluvit (II,p) někomu něco (20G)

TALL -- vysoký (4)

TANGLE -- zmatek/zmatk- (m) (14)

TAPE -- pás (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (11)

TAPE recorder -- magnetofon (m) (11)

TASK -- úkol (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13)

TASTE -- chuť' (f)(Nom.pl. -e)(3); vkus (m) (13)

to TASTE -- (intransitive) chutnat (I,i)(+ Dat. of person)(13); (transitive) ochutnávat (I,i)/ochutnat (I,p) (19)

TEA -- čaj (m) (2)

to TEACH (something to someone) -- učit (II,i)/naučit (II,p)(+ Acc. of persons and Dat. of things) (10)

TEACHER -- učitel (m)(Gen.sg. -e; Nom. pl. učitelé); učitelka (f)(Gen.pl. učitelek) (10)

TEAR -- slza (f) (15)

TEDIUM -- otrava (f) (13)

TELEGRAM -- telegram (m)(Loc.sg. -u)(4)

TELEPHONE -- (noun) telefon (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (10); (adj.) telefonní (15)

TELEVISION -- (noun) televize (f)(15); (adj.) televizní (15)

TELEVISION set -- televizor (m)(Loc. sg. -u) (15)

to TELL -- říkat (I,i)(4)/říci (VI, irreg.,p)(7); povídat (I,i)/povědět (IV,irreg.,p) (11)

TEMPER -- nálada (f) (13)

TEMPERATURE -- teplota (f) (1)

TEN -- deset (12G)

TENSION -- napětí (n) (19)

TENTH -- desátý (12G)

one-TENTH -- desetina (f) (12G)

TERRIBLE -- hrozný (6)

THAN -- než (conj.) (11)

to THANK -- děkovat (VII,i)/poděkovat (VII,p) (9)

THANKFUL -- vděčný (7)

THANKS -- (noun) dík (m)(Used in sg. or pl.) (17)

a word of THANKS -- dík (m) (17)

THAT -- ten/ta/to, etc. (8); (rel.pron.) který (4); (conj. introducing noun clauses) že (4)

THAT (over there)(adj.) -- tamten/tamta/tamto, etc. (7)

THAT is to say -- totiž (adv.) (4)

THAT is why -- proto (4)

THAT one -- ten/ta/to, etc. (7)

THAT one over there -- tamten/tamta/tamto, etc. (7)

THAT way -- tak (2)

THE....THE... -- čím..., tím....(with comparatives) (18)

THE very -- sám/sama/samo, etc. (13)

THEATER -- divadlo (n) (7)

THEIR, THEIRS -- jejich (8)

THEME -- téma (n) (15)

THEN -- potom (5); tedy (7); tehdy (11); pak (OČ) (14); tenkrát (14)

THERE -- tam (2)

over THERE -- tamhle (4)

THEREFORE -- proto (4)

THEY say -- prý (adv.)(enclitic) (6)

THICK -- (size) tlustý (7); (consistency) hustý) (13)

THIN -- (size) hubený (7); (consistency) řídký (19)

THING -- věc (f)(Nom.pl. -i)(2)

the THING is -- jde o + Loc. (11)

to THINK -- myslet (IV,i) (4)

I THINK -- snad (adv.) (7)

to THINK highly of -- vážit si (II,i) + Gen. (8)

to THINK of, about -- vzpomínat si (I,i)(1)/vzpomenout si (VI,p) na + Acc. (8); přemýšlet (III,i)(o + Loc.) (14)

to THINK over -- rozmýšlet si (III,i)/rozmyslet si (IV,p) (7)

THIRD -- třetí (12G)

one-THIRD -- třetina (f) (12G)

THIRST -- žízeň/žízň- (f) (11)

THIRTEEN -- třináct (12G)

THIRTEENTH -- třináctý (12G)

THIRTIETH -- třicátý (12G)

THIRTY -- třicet (12G)

THIS -- ten/ta/to, etc. (7)

THIS one -- ten/ta/to, etc. (7)

THIS, THIS one (right here) -- tenhle/tahle/tohle, etc. (7)

THIS time -- tentokrát (2)

THIS year -- letos (3); tohohle roku, v tomhle roce (12G)

THIS year's -- letošní (16)

THOROUGHLY -- pořádně (14)

THOUGH -- ačkoli (6); přestože (conj.) (17); třebaže (15)

THOUGHT -- myšlenka (f)(Gen.pl. myšlenek) (13)

THOUSAND -- tisíc (12G)

to THREATEN -- hrozit (II,i)/pohrozit (II,p) (někomu něčím) (20)

THREE -- tři (2G)

THROAT -- krk (m) ([illegible])

THROUGH -- (prep.) skrze + Acc. (19)

to THROW -- házet (II,i)/hodit (II,p) (18)

to THUNDER -- hřmět (IV,i) or hřmít (II,i)/zahřmět (IV,p) or zahřmít (II,p) (17)

THURSDAY -- čtvrtek/čtvrtk- (m)(Gen.sg. -a) (12G)

TICKET -- lístek/lístk- (m) (18)

to TIDY up -- uklízet (III,i)(3)/uklidit (II,p) (5G)

TIE -- kravata (f) (19)

TIME -- čas (m) ([illegible])

  all the TIME -- pořád (1); stále (adv.) (18)

  at that TIME -- tehdy (11); tenkrát (adv.) (14)

  at the same TIME -- zároveň (adv.) (15)

  for the TIME being -- zatím (adv.) (19)

  from TIME to TIME -- občas (adv.)(6)

  in/on TIME -- včas (adv.) (6)

  period of TIME -- doba (f) (6)

  several TIMES -- několikrát (adv.) (17)

  to have a good TIME -- bavit se (II,i) (2)/pobavit se (II,p) (5G)

  up to the TIME when -- dokud (conj.) (15)

TIMES -- (multiplication) -krát (suffix) (12G)

to TINT -- zabarvovat (VII,i)/zabarvit (II,p) (20G)

TIRED -- unavený (5)

TIRING -- namáhavý (13)

TITLE -- název/názv- (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (17)

TO -- k + Dat. (6); do + Gen. (8); Dative case (6G)

  TO a certain extent -- jaksi (adv.)(16)

  TO all appearances -- podle všeho (13)

  TO a different place -- jinam (adv.)(7)

TOAST -- topinka (f)(Gen.pl. topinek)(19)

TODAY -- dnes (1)

TODAY'S -- dnešní (13)

TOGETHER -- spolu (10); dohromady (adv.) (14); (all at once) najednou (2)

  to come TOGETHER -- (meet) scházet se (III,i)/sejít se (Va,irreg., p)(14); setkávat se (I,i)/setkat se (I,p)(19)

to TOLERATE -- trpět (IV,i)/strpět (IV,p)(10); snést (Va,p) (5)

TOMORROW -- zítra (1)

TONGUE -- jazyk (m) (15)

TOO -- (also) také (1); (excessively) příliš (adv.) (6)

  it's TOO bad -- škoda (f)(5)

TOOTH -- zub (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (14)

TOOTHBRUSH -- kartáček/kartáčk- (m) na zuby (14)

TOPCOAT -- plášť (m) (9)

TOPIC -- téma (n) (15)

TOWARD -- k + Dat. (6); (in relation to) vůči + Dat. (18)

TOWN -- město (n) (4)

TRACE -- známka (f)(Gen.pl. známek)(16)

TRADE -- obchod (m) (13)

TRAFFIC -- provoz (m) (Loc.sg. -u) (5); doprava (f) (17)

TRAIN -- vlak (m) (1)

  to TRAIN -- cvičit (II,i)/vycvičit (II,p) (18) to TRANSLATE — překládat (I,i)/přeložit (II,p) (11)

TRANSPORT — doprava (f) (17)

TRANSPORTATION — doprava (f) (17)

TRANSLATION — překlad (m) (15)

TREE — strom (m) (3)

TREND — směr (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (16)

TRIAL — zkouška (f)(Gen.pl. zkoušek) (9)

TRILLION — bilion (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (12G)

TRIP — cesta (f)(5); výlet (m) (14)

TROUBLE — potíž (f)(Gen.sg. and Nom.pl. -e; Instr.pl. -emi) (11)

to TROUBLE — rušit (II,i) (18)

TROUSERS — kalhoty (f)(pl.only) (20)

TRUE — opravdový (10)

it is TRUE...but — sice...ale (6)

to TRUST — věřit (II,i)/uvěřit (II,) + Dat. (6)

TRUTH — pravda (f) (2)

to TRY — snažit se (II,i)(6); zkoušet (III,i)/zkusit (II,p)(11); pokoušet se (III,i)/pokusit se (II,p)(o něco) (18)

to TRY out — zkoušet/zkusit (11)

TUESDAY — úterý (n) (12); úterek/úterk- (m) (12G)

to TUG — tahat (I,i, indet.)/táhnout (VI,i, det.) (19)

to TURN — dávat se (I,i)/dát se (I,p) (17)

to make a TURN — dávat se (I,i)/dát se (I,i) (17)

to TURN (around) — obracet se (III,i)/obrátit se (II,p) (15)

to TURN green — zelenat (I,i)/zezelenat (I,p) (14)

to TURN off — vypínat (I,i)/vypnout (Vb,p) (20G)

to TURN on — zapínat (I,i)/zapnout (VI,p) (20G)

to TURN on (lights) — rozsvěcet (III,i)/rozsvítit (II,p) (20G)

to TURN out — dopadat (I,i)/dopadnout (VI,p) (20G)

to TURN to — obracet se (III,i)/obrátit se (II,p) k + Dat. (15)

to TURN up — objevovat se (VII,i)/objevit se (II,p) (11)

TWELFTH — dvanáctý (12G)

one-TWELFTH — dvanáctina (f) (12G)

TWELVE — dvanáct (12G)

TWENTIETH — dvacátý (12G)

TWENTY — dvacet (12G)

TWO — dva/dvě (12G)

TWIST (bread) — houska (f) (15)

to TYPE — psát (IX,i)/napsat (IX,p) na stroji (11)

TYPEWRITER — psací stroj (m) (11)

U

UGLY — ošklivý (9)

UNCOMFORTABLE — trapný (7)

UNCONSCIOUSLY — bezděčně (4)

UNDER — pod + Instr. or Acc. (10)

to UNDERESTIMATE — podceňovat (VII,i)/podcenit (II,p) (20G)

to UNDERSTAND — rozumět (III,i)/porozumět (III,p) (6)

I UNDERSTAND — prý (adv.) (6)

to UNDERTAKE — podnikat (I,i)/podniknout (VI,p) (20G)

to UNDRESS — svlékat (I,i)/svléci (Va,p) (20G)

to be/feel UNEASY — být na rozpacích (10)

UNEXPECTED — náhlý (19); neočekávaný (16) to UNFOLD -- (transitive) rozvíjet (III, i)/rozvinout (VI,p) (20G); (intransitive) rozvíjet se/rozvinout se (20G)

UNFORTUNATELY -- bohužel (1); naneštěstí (adv.) (19)

UNINTENTIONALLY -- bezděčně (adv.) (4)

UNIVERSITY -- universita (f) (4)

UNLESS -- ledaže (conj.) (16)

UNLOOKED for -- neočekávaný (16)

UNNECESSARY -- zbytečný (11)

UNRESTRAINED -- volný (11)

UNTIL -- až (5); dokud ne- (conj.) (15)

UNTIL now -- dosud (adv.) (12)

not UNTIL -- až (5)

UP -- (adv.) vzhůru (19); (location) nahoře (2); (direction) nahoru (9)

to get UP -- vstávat (I,i)/vstát (Va, irreg., p) (7)

UP and down -- (prep.) po + Loc. (4)

UP to -- do + Gen. (8)

UP to now -- dosud (adv.) (8)

UP to the time when -- dokud (conj.) (15)

UPRIGHT -- rovný (18)

to UPSET -- porážet (III,i)/porazit (II,p) (16)

UPSTAIRS -- (location) nahoře (2); (direction) nahoru (9)

UPWARDS -- vzhůru (adv.) (19)

URGENT -- nutný (5)

to USE -- používat (I,i)/použít (VIII,p) (12)

to USE sparingly -- šetřit (II,i) (něčím) (15)

USED to -- zvyklý (9)

USEFUL -- užitečný (14)

USUAL -- běžný (17); obyčejný (1); obvyklý (14)

V

VACATION -- dovolená (f)(declined as adj.) (6); prázdniny (f)(pl. only) (18)

VAIN -- marný (10)

VALUABLE -- užitečný (14)

VALUE -- hodnota (f) (13)

VAN -- vůz/voz- (m) (16)

to VANISH -- mizet (III,i)/zmizet (III, p) (7)

VAPOR -- pára (f)(Gen.pl. par) (19)

VARIOUS -- různý (5)

VEGETABLES -- zelenina (f) (18)

to VERIFY -- zjišt' ovat (VII,i)/zjistit (II,p) (12)

VERY -- velmi (2); moc (adv.) (16)

the VERY (same) -- samotný (14); sám/sama/samo, etc. (13)

VERY much -- moc (adv. and quant.)(16)

VESSEL -- (container) nádoba (f) (19)

VIEW -- názor (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (13); pohled (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (20)

point of VIEW -- stanovisko (n) (13); stránka (f)(Gen.pl. stránek) (16)

VILLAGE -- vesnice (f) (13)

VIOLENT -- prudký (adv. prudce) (14)

VISIT -- návštěva (f) (4)

to VISIT -- (people) navštěvovat (VII, i)/navštívit (II,p) (15); (places) prohlížet si (III,i)/prohlédnout si (VI,p) (14)

VISITOR -- návštěvník (m) (4)

VIVID -- živý (4)

VOGUE -- móda (f) (14)

VOICE -- hlas (m) (4)

VOLUME -- svazek/svazk- (m) (17)

W

- WAGON -- vůz/voz- (m) (16)
- WAIST -- pás (m) (15)
- to WAIT (for) -- čekat (I,i)(1)/počkat (I,p)(na + Acc.) (5)
  - to WAIT a while -- počkat (I,p) (5)
  - to WAIT to see somebody/something/something happen -- dočkat se (I,p) (+ Gen.)(no imperfective) (13)
- WAITING room -- čekárna (f)(Gen.pl. čekáren) (19)
- to WAKE up -- probouzet se (III,i)/probudit se (II,p) (19)
- WALK -- procházka (f) (4)
  - to WALK -- chodit (II,i, indet.)(9)/jít (Va,i, det.) (5)
  - to go for a WALK -- jít na procházku (7)
- WALL -- stěna (f) (4)
- to WANT -- chtít (irreg.,i) (9)
- WAR -- válka (f)(Gen.pl. válek) (10)
- WARDROBE -- skříň (f)(Nom.pl. -ě) (2)
- WARM -- teplo (short adj.)(long form teplý) (9)
- WARMTH -- teplo (n) (9)
- to WASH (oneself) -- mýt (se)(VIII,i)/umýt se (VIII,p) (10)
- WATCH -- hodinky (f)(pl.only)(Gen. hodinek) (9)
  - to WATCH -- dívat se (I,i)(1)/podívat se (I,p)(5G) na + Acc.; hlídat (I,i)/ohlídat (I,p)(18); pozorovat (VII,i)/zpozorovat (VII,p) (18)
- WATER -- voda (f) (2)
  - to WATER -- zalévat (I,i)/zalít (VIII, p) (20G)
- WAY -- cesta (f)(5); (manner) způsob (m) (12)
  - in this WAY -- takhle (adv.) (7)
  - to be in someone's WAY -- být (někomu) v cestě (14)
  - to be out of someone's WAY -- být (někomu) z cesty (18)
  - WAY out -- východ (m) (18)
- WEAK -- slabý (6)
- to WEAR -- nosit (I,i, indet.) (2)
- to be WEARING -- mít na sobě (10)
- WEATHER -- počasí (n) (9)
- WEDNESDAY -- středa (f) (12G)
- WEEK -- týden (m)(irreg.) (10)
- to WEEP -- plakat (IX,i)/zaplakat (IX,p) (15)
- to WEIGH -- vážit (II,i) (12)
- WEIGHT -- váha (f)(Gen.pl. vah) (12)
  - to put on WEIGHT -- tloustnout (VI,i)/ztloustnout (VI,p) (12)
- to WELCOME -- vítat (I,i)/přivítat (I,p) or uvítat (I,p) (19)
- WELL -- (adv.) dobře (2); (interjection) vždyt' (17)
- WELL-KNOWN -- známý (7)
- WEST -- západ (m) (18)
- WHAT? -- co (interrog. pron.) (1)
  - WHAT (adj.) -- který (4); (of a numbered series) kolikátý? (12) (sort of) jaký (4)
  - WHAT else? -- co ještě? (4)
  - WHAT is the reason for that...? -- čím je to, že ...? (10)
- WHEEL -- kolo (n) (8)
- WHEN -- (rel.) když (5); (future) až (5); (interrog.) kdy? (5)
  - up to the time WHEN -- dokud (conj.) (15)
- WHENEVER -- kdykoli (4)
- WHERE -- (location) kde (rel. and interrog.) (5); (direction) kam (rel. and interrog.) (1)
- WHETHER -- jestli (7); zda, zdali (15)
  - WHETHER...or -- at'...nebo (conj.)(13)

WHICH — který (4); (of a numbered series) kolikátý (12)

WHICH way — kudy (adv.) (16)

WHILE -- (noun) chvíle (f)(5); zatímco (conj.) (13)

a WHILE longer, a WHILE yet — ještě chvíli (5)

WHIM -- nápad (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (8)

WHITE -- bílý (11)

WHO -- který (rel.)(6); kdo (interrog.) (1)

WHOLE -- celý (4)

on the WHOLE -- celkem (adv.) (14)

WHOLE-HEARTED -- upřímný (16)

WHY? -- proč (2)

that is WHY -- proto (4)

WICKED — zlý (6)

WIDE -- široký (12)

to WIDEN — rozšiřovat (VII,i)/rozšířit (II,p) (20G)

WIDTH -- šířka (f)(Gen.pl. šířek)(12)

WIENER -- párek/párk- (m) (2)

WIFE -- žena (f) (5)

WILD -- divoký (13)

WILL — vůle (f) (6)

to WIN -- vyhrávat (I,i)/vyhrát (VIII,p) (20G)

WIND -- vítr/větr- (m) (16)

WINDOW — okno (n) (2)

shop WINDOW -- výkladní skříň (15)

WINTER -- zima (f) (4)

to WIPE — utírat (I,i)/utřít (Vb,p)(18)

WIRE — (telegram) telegram (m)(Loc.sg. -u) (4)

to WISH — chtít (irreg., i) (9)

to WISH (for) — přát si (VIII,irreg., i)/popřát si (VIII,irreg.,p) (16)

to WISH a person something — přát (VIII,irreg.,i)/popřát (VIII,irreg.,p) někomu něco (16)

WITH -- s (se) + Instr. (10); (by means of) Instrumental case (10G)

WITHIN -- do + Gen. (time)(8); uvnitř (adv.) (14)

WITHOUT — bez + Gen. (11)

WITHOUT ...-ing -- aniž (conj.) (16)

WITHOUT knowing what to do — rozpačitě (5)

WOMAN — žena (f) (5)

WOODS -- les (m) (6)

WORD -- slovo (n) (6)

a WORD of thanks -- dík (m) (17)

WORK -- práce (f)(5); (product) dílo (n)(Gen.pl. děl) (13)

to WORK -- dělat (I,i)(1); pracovat (VII,i) (10); (of machines) fungovat (VII,i) (11)

to WORK off — odpracovávat (I,i)/ odpracovat (VII,p) (20G)

WORKER -- dělník (m); dělnice (f) (20)

WORLD -- (noun) svět (m)(Gen.sg. -a)(10); (adj.) světový (18)

WORLD - WIDE -- světový (18)

WORRY -- starost (f) (7)

not to WORRY -- být bez starosti (13)

to WORRY (irritate)-- zlobit (II,i)/ rozzlobit (II,p) (14G)

to be WORTH it -- stát (IV,i) za to (17)

WRETCHED -- ubohý (13)

to WRITE -- psát (IX,i)/napsat (IX,p)(11)

to WRITE back — odpisovat (VII,i)/ odepsat (IX,p) (20G)

WRITING — psaní (n) (16)

to be WRONG — mýlit se (II,i)(2)/ zmýlit se (II,p) (5G)

WRONGLY — špatně (6)

XYZ

YARD -- zahrádka (f)(Gen.pl. zahrádek) (3)

YEAR -- rok (m)(Gen.sg. roce/roku)(4)

last YEAR -- loni (adv.) (6); minulý rok, minulého roku, v minulém roce (12G)

next YEAR -- napřesrok, příští rok, příštího roku, v příštím roce (12G)

this YEAR -- letos (adv.) (3); tohohle rolu, v tomhle roce (12G)

this YEAR'S -- letošní (16)

YELLOW -- žlutý (11)

YESTERDAY -- včera (adv.) (6)

YESTERDAY morning -- včera ráno (6)

YESTERDAY'S -- včerejší (16)

YET -- (in questions) už (1); (nevertheless) přece (adv.) (11)

not YET -- ještě ne (3)

YOU don't say! -- No ne! (12)

YOU see (interjection) -- totiž (4)

YOUNG -- mladý (3)

YOUNG woman, young lady -- slečna (f) (1)